CANCER RISK ASSESSMENT

edited by
PETER G. SHIELDS
Georgetown University Medical Center
Washington, D.C., U.S.A.

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton  London  New York  Singapore
Contents

Preface . . . xi  
Contributors . . . xv

1. Carcinogenesis and Molecular Genetics . . . . . .......... 1  
Diane L. Carlisle and Steven R. Patierno  
1. Introduction . . . . 1  
2. Steps in Carcinogenesis . . . . 2  
3. Molecular Genetics . . . . 4  
4. Concluding Comments . . . . 8

2. Epidemiological Approaches to Studying Cancer I:  
Study Design, Confounding Variables, Misclassification,  
and Cancer Clusters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 17  
Elizabeth Ward  
1. Introduction . . . . 17  
2. Cohort Studies . . . . 18  
3. Case–Control Studies . . . . 23  
4. Issues in Interpreting Epidemiological Study  
Results . . . . 26  
5. Other Study Designs . . . . 29  
6. Methods for Combining the Results of Epidemiological  
Studies . . . . 32  
7. Cancer Clusters . . . . 32
3. Epidemiological Approaches to Studying Cancer II: Molecular Epidemiology ........................................... 39
   Loïc Le Marchand
   1. Introduction . . . . 39
   2. Applications of Biomarkers . . . . 40
   3. Categories of Biomarkers . . . . 44
   4. Development of a Biomarker . . . . 50
   5. Methodological Issues . . . . 53
   6. Ethical Issues . . . . 54
   7. Conclusion . . . . 55

   Haruhiko Sugimura and Peter G. Shields
   1. Introduction . . . . 61
   2. Mutated Genes in Human Cancers . . . . 62
   3. Genetical Assays . . . . 63
   4. Conclusions . . . . 70

   Laura Gunn, Luoping Zhang, and Martyn T. Smith
   1. Introduction . . . . 77
   2. Role of Different Types of Genetic Damage in Cancer . . . . 78
   3. Measuring Point Mutations in Cancer-Related Genes . . . . 79
   4. Measuring Genetic Damage at the Chromosome Level . . . . 82
   5. Measurement of Chromosome Rearrangements by PCR . . . . 86
   6. Other Potential Applications of Real-Time PCR . . . . 90
   7. Conclusions . . . . 92

6. Quantitative Cancer Risk Assessment ............................. 99
   John Whysner
   1. Introduction . . . . 99
   2. Hazard Identification for Carcinogens . . . . 100
   3. Dose–Response Assessment . . . . 103
   4. Exposure Assessment . . . . 107
5. Risk Characterization . . . . 109
6. Risk Management Considerations . . . . 111
7. Discussion and Future Directions . . . . 111

   Jerry M. Rice
   1. Introduction . . . . 115
   2. IARC Monographs Identifications of Carcinogenic Hazard . . . . 118
   3. IARC Group 1—Carcinogenic to Humans . . . . 123
   4. IARC Group 2A—Probably Carcinogenic to Humans . . . . 126
   5. IARC Group 2B—Possibly Carcinogenic to Humans . . . . 127
   6. IARC Group 3—Not Classifiable as to Carcinogenicity to Humans . . . . 129
   7. IARC Group 4—Probably Not Carcinogenic to Humans . . . . 130

   Peter G. Shields
   1. Introduction . . . . 137
   2. Carcinogenesis . . . . 138
   3. Summary . . . . 146

9. Cancer Epidemiology ........................................ 149
   James R. Cerhan
   1. Introduction and Overview . . . . 149
   2. The Causes of Cancer . . . . 173
   3. Conclusions and Future Directions . . . . 176

   Ragnhild A. Lothe and Anne-Lise Børresen-Dale
   1. Hereditary Cancer Syndromes . . . . 183
   2. Identification of Inherited Cancer Genes . . . . 183
   3. Function of Inherited Cancer Genes . . . . 189
   4. Cancer Risk in Carriers . . . . 191
   5. Familial Clustering of Cancer . . . . 192
6. Common Gene Variants Predisposing to Increased Cancer Risk . . . . 192
7. How to Identify Cancer Patients Who Are Genetically Predisposed . . . . 196

11. Chemical Causes of Cancer ................................. 205
   Gary M. Williams and Alan M. Jeffrey
   1. Chemical Carcinogenesis . . . . 205
   2. Interactive Carcinogenesis . . . . 223
   3. Types of Chemical Carcinogens . . . . 226
   4. Carcinogen Biotransformation and Cellular Effects . . . . 228
   5. Chemicals and Human Cancer . . . . 248
   6. Cancer Prophylaxis . . . . 256
   7. Concluding Remarks . . . . 258

12. Viral Causes of Cancer ................................. 287
   Michie Hisada and Charles S. Rabkin
   1. Introduction . . . . 287
   2. Epstein–Barr Virus . . . . 290
   3. Human T-Lymphotropic Virus Type I . . . . 292
   4. Human Immunodeficiency Viruses . . . . 295
   5. Human Herpesvirus Type 8 . . . . 297
   6. Human Papillomavirus . . . . 299
   7. Hepatitis B Virus and Hepatitis C Virus . . . . 301
   8. Conclusions . . . . 303

13. Uncertainty in the Estimation of Radiation-Related Cancer Risk ................................. 313
   Charles E. Land
   1. Overview . . . . 313
   2. Introduction . . . . 314
   3. Ionizing Radiation . . . . 314
   4. Summary and Conclusions . . . . 327

14. Occupational Cancer ................................. 331
   Robert J. McCunney and Lee Okurowski
   1. Introduction . . . . 331
   2. History . . . . 332
   3. Identifying Carcinogens . . . . 334
4. Special Issues in Occupational Epidemiology . . . . 337
5. In Vitro Studies . . . . 340
6. In Vivo Experiments . . . . 342
7. Regulated Carcinogens . . . . 343
8. Clinical Issues . . . . 344
9. Future Efforts . . . . 347

15. Quantification of Occupational and Environmental Exposures in Epidemiological Studies ................. 353
   Mustafa Dosemeci
   1. Background . . . . 353
   2. Exposure Assessment Methods Used in Epidemiological Studies . . . . 354
   3. Selection of the Optimal Index of Exposure in Occupational Epidemiology . . . . 361
   4. Recommendation to Exposure Assessors to Minimize the Effects of Exposure Misclassification on Risk Estimates . . . . 362
   5. Issues to be Considered in Using Retrospective Epidemiological Studies for Risk Assessment . . . . 363

16. Cancer Risk for Tobacco and Alcohol Use .............. 369
   Peter G. Shields
   1. Introduction . . . . 369
   2. Tobacco . . . . 370
   3. Alcohol Drinking . . . . 378

17. Hormones and Cancer ...................................... 405
   Heather Spencer Feigelson and Roberta McKean-Cowdin
   1. Model of Carcinogenesis . . . . 405
   2. Endogenous Hormones . . . . 406
   3. Exogenous Hormones . . . . 408
   4. Epidemiological Review of Hormone-Dependent Cancers . . . . 413
   5. Conclusions . . . . 424

18. Cancer in Multiracial and Multiethnic Populations ....... 437
   Carrie P. Hunter
   1. Introduction . . . . 437
   2. Cancer Incidence . . . . 438
## 19. Respiratory Tract Cancer

*Aage Haugen*

1. Overview . . . . 455
2. Lung Cancer Etiology . . . . 456
3. Lung Carcinogenesis . . . . 458
4. Lung Cancer Susceptibility . . . . 461
5. DNA Repair . . . . 465
6. Gender Differences in Lung Cancer Risk . . . . 467
7. Conclusion . . . . 467

## 20. Head and Neck Cancers

*Qingyi Wei, Hongbing Shen, Margaret R. Spitz, Erich M. Sturgis, and Peter G. Shields*

1. Introduction . . . . 475
2. Risk Factors for SCCHN . . . . 476
3. Molecular Epidemiology of SCCHN . . . . 481

## 21. Breast Cancer

*Christine B. Ambrosone, Kirsten B. Moysich, and Helena Furberg*

1. Introduction . . . . 503
2. Known Breast Cancer Risk Factors and Paradigms of Carcinogenesis . . . . 504
3. Modification of Exposures by Nongenetic Factors . . . . 505
4. Modification of Exposure/Disease Relationships by Genetic Factors . . . . 506
5. Traditional and Suspected Risk Factors for Breast Cancer . . . . 507
6. Future Directions . . . . 519
7. Conclusion . . . . 519

## 22. Gynecological Cancer—Ovarian, Endometrial, Cervical

*Kala Visvanathan and Kathy J. Helzlsouer*

1. Introduction . . . . 535
2. Ovarian Cancer . . . . 536
3. Endometrial Cancer . . . . 550
4. Cervical Cancer . . . . 559
5. Future Research Needs . . . . 568
23. The Natural History of Esophageal Cancer ............ 601
   Philippe Tanière, Ruggero Montesano, and Pierre Hainaut
   1. Introduction ........ 601
   2. Risk Factors and Preneoplastic Lesions ........ 603
   3. Sequence of Genetic Events in Esophageal Cancers ........ 604
   4. Adenocarcinoma of the Cardia: A Specific Genetic Entity ........ 610
   5. Lessons from TP53 Mutation Analysis ........ 611
   6. Genetic Biomarkers of Early Tumorigenesis or Prognosis ........ 611
   7. Conclusions and Perspectives ........ 613

24. Liver Cancer: Risk Factors and Prevention ............ 621
    Christopher Loffredo and Christina Frank
    1. Overview ........ 621
    2. Prevalence of Hepatocellular Carcinoma ........ 622
    3. Gender Differences ........ 623
    4. Infectious Agents ........ 624
    5. Environmental and Genetic Factors ........ 631
    6. Summary and Conclusions ........ 635

25. Brain Cancer ........................................ 647
    Randa El-Zein, Yuri Minn, Margaret Wrensch, and Melissa L. Bondy
    1. Introduction ........ 647
    2. Histology and Molecular Genetics of Brain Tumors ........ 648
    3. Etiology and Risk Factors of Brain Tumors ........ 650
    4. Susceptibility to Brain Tumors ........ 658
    5. Summary ........ 662

26. New Perspectives on the Epidemiology of Hematological Malignancies and Related Disorders ........ 671
    Martha S. Linet, Susan S. Devesa, and Gareth J. Morgan
    1. Introduction ........ 671
    2. Myeloid Malignancies and Myelodysplasia ........ 672
    3. Diseases of Lymphoid Lineage ........ 678
27. Bladder Cancers ............................................. 717
   Paolo Vineis
   1. Introduction . . . . 717
   2. Population Risk Assessment . . . . 717
   3. Clinical Risk Assessment . . . . 721

28. Molecular and Biochemical Approaches to the Etiology
    of Prostate Cancer ............................................ 735
    Richard B. Hayes
    1. Introduction . . . . 735
    2. Familial Risk and Major Cancer Genes . . . . 736
    3. Steroidal Hormones . . . . 736
    4. Growth Factors . . . . 738
    5. Dietary Factors . . . . 739
    6. Metabolic Polymorphisms . . . . 741
    7. Sexually Transmitted Diseases . . . . 742
    8. Summary . . . . 743

Index ............................................................................ 753
Humans are continuously exposed to carcinogens from environmental, occupational, and endogenous sources. Health professionals, regulatory agencies, and cancer researchers are frequently challenged to identify the causes of cancer, to predict risks, and to develop methods to prevent cancer. The assessment of cancer risk in individuals or the population is a complex process that reflects both actual science and scientific intuition. There is an exploding amount of information—in many cases conflicting information—and a confusing array of sources to consider about the applicability and use of biomarkers. New data from the Human Genome Project, the latest technologies in molecular genetics (e.g., proteomics, microarrays, high-throughput assay methods), are rapidly being incorporated into risk assessment and epidemiological studies, and there are many challenges to the interpretation of the resulting data. Clearly, the use of biomarkers and genetic susceptibility analysis is improving our ability to predict risk in the population and the individual, but it is a rapidly evolving and complicated area of research. Students of molecular epidemiology and people outside of the field need guidance to use and interpret biomarker data, and a context from to evaluate whether the data improve the risk assessment process.

This book is intended for health professionals, public health specialists, persons within regulatory agencies, and cancer researchers who need more than a summary of recent data. It provides a practical approach to conducting risk assessment for the population and the individual in the
context of biomarkers and genetic susceptibilities, especially within a broader perspective of background cancer risk and an individual’s exposures within a complex environment. While the risk assessment process usually focuses on a single particular exposure, people are constantly exposed to a multitude of known and potential human carcinogens—from the air, their diet and lifestyle, etc. When setting public health priorities or evaluating a person with cancer, this broader context makes the risk assessment process much more challenging. This text helps the reader place cancer risk within such a context, and understand the relative risks from different exposures and how biomarkers and genetic susceptibilities help in the risk assessment process.

Biomarkers are tests conducted on any biological tissue or fluid, including air. Assays to assess an individual’s risk through specific genes, thereby assessing genetic susceptibilities, also are a type of biomarker. However, the term *biomarker* usually refers to an assay of exposure, biologically effective dose, or some effect of exposure. The term *genetic susceptibility* refers to an individual’s heritable capacity to respond to exposures, which would therefore result in modifying cancer risk. Biomarkers can be used as intermediate markers of cancer risk, reflecting a mechanistic pathway to cancer. Genetic susceptibilities would therefore affect the level of biomarkers, reflecting a gene–environment interaction. Therefore, the term *gene–environment interaction* refers to an effect of exposure that is increased or decreased by genetic susceptibilities; it is used generically and there are formal statistical methods to assess interactions. Most cancers are considered to be caused by carcinogenic exposures, although with most cancers and therefore in most people, the causes have not been identified. Although the body has the capacity to repair much of the damage from gene–environment interactions, it is the sheer number of gene–environment interactions that actually contribute to the carcinogenic process. Biomarkers now are enhancing our understanding about the causes of cancer, and in some cases are helping identify what specifically caused a cancer in a particular person.

The use of biomarkers is not new and has been around for more than 50 years. But the last 20 years have seen rapidly developing technologies, which recently have greatly accelerated. These newer methods bring analytical and bioinformatic challenges but nonetheless show great promise for enhancing our risk assessment processes further.

Frequently the public and individuals with cancer make conclusions about the causes of cancer that are not founded upon sound data or based on appropriate assessment methodologies. The public health community is obligated to understand and communicate the latest scientific data in the context of the risk assessment process for the general population, persons at high risk, and individuals within the general population. This text provides the reader with the tools to assess cancer causation with specific methodologies, rather than relying on intuition and speculation.
Cancer is a multistage process that is triggered by multiple steps through many pathways. There are many repair and protective mechanisms in the human body to prevent most DNA damage that would otherwise lead to cancer. Typically, the determination of a cancer risk factor requires the examination of a potential etiological agent against a background of many real etiological agents. Many new laboratory and epidemiological findings are impacting how we think about cancer risk, while many principles used in the assessment of causation remain conceptually important. This book presents recent data that impact cancer risk for the general population and individual, and reviews data for some known and potential human carcinogens. It reviews the methods for determining what causes cancer and what does not. Practical approaches to the determination of cancer risk in individuals and the population are offered, including counseling of individuals, groups of exposed persons, and society as a whole.

This text is organized to provide the most current information in two ways. The first approaches risk assessment from a methodological perspective. The reader is provided information about carcinogenesis in general and then specifically for chemical, radiation, viral, occupational, and familial cancers. While there is overlap in some of these mechanisms (e.g., chemical and occupational carcinogenesis), there are different mechanistic approaches to consider depending on the perspective. One particular focus includes recent data for tobacco, alcohol, and hormonal mechanisms in cancer risk, as these are among the major known human carcinogens and carcinogenic mechanisms. Additionally, how people are exposed to known and suspected carcinogens is identified, with particulars on how to measure this in the workplace using industrial hygiene methods. Information about differences in cancer risk among various ethnic and racial populations in the context of different exposures and mechanistic etiologies are also discussed.

The second methodology includes basic epidemiological approaches as they apply to molecular epidemiology, including both the use of biomarkers and genetics within an epidemiological framework. Detailed approaches in the use of genetic testing for cancer risk, using both markers in cancers and then measures of genetic damage in persons without cancer, are given. The actual approach to risk assessment is highlighted in detail in three separate chapters. The readers are provided with the distinct approaches to population and individual risk assessment, and also with information about how regulatory agencies determine what is a carcinogen. The chapter on individual risk assessment is particularly unique as the reader is provided with a framework for evaluating an individual who has cancer, or is thought to be at risk for cancer.

The second half of the text provides the reader with cancer risk information by organ system for major cancers. It uses the principals established in the first part of the text, which provided the reader with the tools to evaluate risk, and applies them to single organ sites. While this text provides a
summary of the latest data for biomarkers and genetic susceptibilities within
the risk assessment process, it cannot provide a critique of all available data.
However, it will equip the reader to explore and assess further data.

The production of this text required the hard work of many people,
and I would like to thank my co-authors and contributors specifically for
their patience and multiple iterations to produce what are outstanding chap-
ters. I also will like to thank Sandi Crawford and Regina Jackson for the
expert organizational assistance, without which this book would never have
been completed.

Peter G. Shields
Contributors

Christine B. Ambrosone  Department of Epidemiology, Roswell Park Cancer Institute, Buffalo, New York, U.S.A.

Melissa L. Bondy  Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

Anne-Lise Borresen-Dale  Department of Genetics, Institute for Cancer Research, University Clinic of the Norwegian Radium Hospital, Oslo, Norway

Diane L. Carlisle  Department of Pharmacology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, U.S.A.

James R. Cerhan  Health Sciences Research, Mayo Clinic College of Medicine, Rochester, New York, U.S.A.

Susan S. Devesa  Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

Mustafa Dosemeci  Occupational and Environmental Epidemiology Branch, Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Rockville, Maryland, U.S.A.

Randa El-Zein  Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

Heather Spencer Feigelson  Department of Epidemiology and Surveillance Research, American Cancer Society, Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A.
Christina Frank  Department of Epidemiology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, Maryland, U.S.A.

Helena Furberg  Department of Genetics, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, U.S.A.

Laura Gunn  Division of Environmental Health Sciences, School of Public Health, University of California at Berkeley, Berkeley, California, U.S.A.

Pierre Hainaut  International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon, France

Aage Haugen  Department of Toxicology, National Institute of Occupational Health, Oslo, Norway

Richard B. Hayes  Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, DHHS, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

Kathy J. Helzlsouer  Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Maryland, U.S.A., and Prevention and Research Center, Mercy Medical Center, Baltimore, Maryland, U.S.A.

Michie Hisada  Viral Epidemiology Branch, Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

Carrie P. Hunter  North Potomac, Martland, U.S.A.

Alan M. Jeffrey  Department of Pathology, New York Medical College, Valhalla, New York, U.S.A.

Charles E. Land  Radiation Epidemiology Branch, Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

Loïc Le Marchand  Cancer Research Center of Hawaii, University of Hawaii, Honolulu, Hawaii, U.S.A.

Martha S. Linet  Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

Christopher Loffredo  Cancer Genetics and Epidemiology Program, Department of Oncology, Georgetown University School of Medicine, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.
Contributors

Ragnhild A. Lothe  Department of Genetics, Institute for Cancer Research, University Clinic of the Norwegian Radium Hospital, Oslo, Norway

Robert J. McCunney  Department of Biological Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Pulmonary Division, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts, U.S.A.

Roberta McKean-Cowdin  Norris Comprehensive Cancer Center, Keck School of Medicine, Los Angeles, California, U.S.A.

Yuri Minn  Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

Ruggero Montesano  International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon, France

Gareth J. Morgan  Department of Hematology, Institute of Pathology, University of Leeds, Leeds, U.K.

Kirsten B. Moysich  Department of Epidemiology, Roswell Park Cancer Institute, Buffalo, New York, U.S.A.

Lee Okurowski  Department of Orthopedics, Occupational Health, New England Baptist Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts, U.S.A.

Steven R. Patierno  Department of Pharmacology, George Washington University, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.

Charles S. Rabkin  Viral Epidemiology Branch, Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

Jerry M. Rice  Department of Oncology, Lombardi Comprehensive Cancer Center, Georgetown University, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.

Hongbing Shen  Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

Peter G. Shields  Cancer Genetics and Epidemiology Program, Department of Medicine and Oncology, Lombardi Comprehensive Cancer Center, Georgetown University Medical Center, Washington, U.S.A.
Martyn T. Smith  Division of Environmental Health Sciences, School of Public Health, University of California at Berkeley, Berkeley, California, U.S.A.

Margaret R. Spitz  Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

Erich M. Sturgis  Department of Head and Neck Surgery, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

Haruhiko Sugimura  Department of Pathology, Hamamatsu University School of Medicine, Hamamatsu, Shizuoka, Japan

Philippe Tanière  International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon, France

Paolo Vineis  Unit of Cancer Epidemiology and Chair of Biostatistics, Dipartimento di Scienze Biomediche e Oncologia Umana, University of Turin, Turin, Italy

Kala Visvanathan  Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Maryland, U.S.A.

Elizabeth Ward  Industrywide Studies Branch Division of Surveillance, Hazard Evaluations and Field Studies, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S.A.

Qingyi Wei  Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.


Gary M. Williams  Department of Pathology, New York Medical College, Valhalla, New York, U.S.A.

Margaret Wrensch  Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

Luoping Zhang  Division of Environmental Health Sciences, School of Public Health, University of California at Berkeley, Berkeley, California, U.S.A.
1. INTRODUCTION

All tissues have a rate at which cells naturally die, while other cells divide to take their place. The skin, for example, consists of large numbers of cells that are dying or dead and are constantly sloughed off, while new layers of skin regenerate by cell division beneath the cell surface. Maintaining the homeostatic balance of cell loss and cell gain is crucial to the health and survival of the tissue and organism, and so the balance is tightly regulated in all tissues throughout the body. Disturbing this balance of cell loss and cell proliferation can lead to disease. Tumor formation occurs when cell division exceeds cell death. This happens in one of two ways: either cell proliferation is increased so that it occurs faster than cell death or cell death is prevented or slowed so that it no longer keeps up with cell division. The progression of cellular changes leading to this excess growth and formation of a malignant tumor is the process known as multistage carcinogenesis. Most, if not all, of the morphological and biochemical characteristics of malignant cells have as their source either genetical or epigenetical alterations in gene expression. Therefore, the controls that usually tightly regulate the cell growth and death processes on a molecular level must be examined and manipulated in order to fully understand multistage...
carcinogenesis. Many factors can contribute to carcinogenesis, including viruses, chemicals, radiation, diet, hormones, and genetical predisposition.

Currently, there is much attention ascribed to cancer genes that can increase or decrease an individual’s chance of getting cancer and influence a person’s prognosis after the diagnosis of cancer has been made. In addition to providing risk assessment information, knowledge of why these genes are important and how they work may yield important clues to the molecular causes of cancer. Genes that are important in cancer come in two general types, operationally defined as oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes (1).

Oncogenes are genes which act to stimulate cell division or increase cell survival, when expressed in a biochemically abnormal environment which is permissive for their growth stimulatory effects. When overexpressed or expressed aberrantly, they may disrupt the division–death ratio. Tumor suppressor genes have an equally important role in tissues, but in preventing in tumor formation. Normally, they protect cells from abnormal growth in several ways and, in cancers, are often found to be mutated so that their function is either altered or lost entirely. The complex interplay between oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes can be exemplified using the \textit{ras} oncogene which becomes oncogenic by expressing altered function after a single base change, and the \textit{bcl-2} gene, which codes for a mitochondrial protein that helps prevent apoptotic cell death. Overexpression of a mutant \textit{ras} oncogene is actually lethal to normal cells, but in the context of a cell which has lost expression of \textit{bcl-2}, mutant \textit{ras} becomes promitogenic (2).

2. STEPS IN CARCINOGENESIS

The carcinogenic process is complex and involves many genetical changes. For example, mutation of the \textit{brca1} or \textit{brca2} gene, which has been implicated in familial breast cancer (3,4), leads only to an increased risk of breast cancer; it does not mean that there is a 100% certainty of any particular woman having breast cancer during her lifetime. In fact, the penetrance of \textit{brca1} mutation, i.e., the chance that a woman with a \textit{brca1} mutation will be diagnosed with breast cancer by age 70, has been shown to be anywhere from 37% to 90%, depending on the population studied (5). In order to study carcinogenesis, the process has been historically and conceptually divided operationally into three steps: initiation, promotion, and progression. These divisions are a helpful starting point, but as we learn more about the molecular genetics and epigenetics of cancer, the distinctions between these divisions become less and less clear.

The first step in carcinogenesis, historically referred to as initiation, is one that produces an altered cell that has some selectable growth advantage over other cells. This step can be facilitated by genetical predisposition, and caused by exposure to chemicals, radiation, viruses, or other permanent cellular changes. These changes reduce the stringency of the regulation of
cell growth and death. Initiation is always a permanent event and may occur at any time during a person’s lifetime, but usually many years before cancer is diagnosed. Historically, the initiation event was thought to be nearly synonymous with mutation after genotoxic insult. Recently, however, this notion has been challenged. More and more evidence is accumulating, linking cancer initiation with epigenetical alterations in transcriptional patterning, perhaps invoked as a cellular response to genotoxic insult and other forms of cellular stress (6,7).

The next operationally defined stage in the development of cancer is promotion. Promotion is not a permanent event, but a transient process that promotes cell growth. However, because initiation is permanent, promotion can occur at any time, either at the same time as initiation, or many years after initiation takes place (Fig. 1). The role of promotion is to stimulate an initiated cell to divide, and then to stimulate the net accumulation of initiated cells by either stimulating cell division or inhibiting cell death (8). Promotion may have indirect effects as well. For example, the stimulation of cell division increases the possibility that a mistake in the fidelity of DNA replication may occur, leading to mutation. This situation could be especially dangerous if the cell being provoked to divide has already incurred alterations in the function of genes required for DNA repair or for governing the cell cycle. For example, the \( p53 \) gene, often referred to as the guardian of the genome, functions to inhibit the cell from entering the DNA synthesis (S) phase of the cell cycle, in the presence of unrepaired DNA damage (9). Forcing a cell with defective \( p53 \) to enter the S phase with unrepaired DNA damage may increase the frequency of mutation and lead to genomic instability and development of the mutator phenotype (see below).

While some agents are strictly initiating agents, and others strictly promoting agents, many of the most potent carcinogens are both initiators and promoters. Cigarette smoke is one such example (10). Many of the chemicals in cigarette smoke are both genotoxic and toxic, cause mutations and gene expression changes, as well as cell death. The events associated with the genotoxic insult may be initiating events, creating populations of abnormal cells. Cigarette smoke also serves as a promoter, for example, by stimulating proliferation of genetically damaged cells following cytotoxicity and loss of neighboring cells.

The final stage of carcinogenesis is historically defined as progression. Progression occurs when an initiated cell undergoes promotion, and that promotion leads to cellular changes that deregulate the cell growth controls. This stage of carcinogenesis is self-sustaining, but occurs in part by chance. Cells that are growing without the normal controls will, by chance, gain mutations. If a mutation occurs in a tumor suppressor gene such as a DNA repair gene, this will allow that cell to acquire mutations at an even higher rate. A cell which has this type of mutation is said to have a mutator
phenotype or genomic instability, exhibiting acceleration of accumulation of mutations (11,12). Eventually, due to a decrease of negative growth controls and an increase in expression of regulators that encourage cell division, the growth of these cells becomes independent of the signals of the surrounding tissue. Over time, these neoplastic cells may also acquire the ability to undergo neo-vascularization (angiogenesis) and may gradually metastasize and establish new tumors elsewhere in the body (13,14). Potent carcinogens such as tobacco smoke may have a role in this stage of carcinogenesis because exposure to cigarette smoke is ongoing, unless the person decides to quit. The continuous inhalation of mutagenic chemicals may encourage cells through the progression stage of carcinogenesis as well.

It only takes clonal expansion of one cell (and its progeny) with many types of mutations to go through the process of carcinogenesis to establish a tumor, and it is thought that most cancers arise from one precursor cell (the monoclonal origin theory of cancer). When one considers the number of mutagens we are exposed to daily, the number of times our cells divide over our lifetime, and the realization that it takes only one cell to go awry to cause cancer, it is actually surprising that cancer is not more prevalent in our society. Fortunately, our cells and tissues have many mechanisms designed to keep this process from occurring.

3. MOLECULAR GENETICS

3.1. The Role of Oncogenes

Oncogenes, the genes that encourage cell growth, can come from an outside source, such as viruses, or can be our own genes (proto-oncogenes) that are expressed inappropriately. Viral oncogenes, such as those found in the human papilloma virus (HPV) genome, take advantage of our genetics to promote cell division in order to increase the number of viral infected cells, and therefore the number of viruses. HPV, known in oncology for its association with cervical cancer, does this by making two oncogenes, E6 and E7 (15). The proteins produced by these oncogenes work by binding to, and altering the function of the proteins that control the cell cycle. E6 binds to p53, a protein that stops the cell cycle and initiates cell death. The binding of E6 to p53 targets p53 for degradation. E7 acts by binding to the Rb protein. Rb normally binds to and inactivates the E2F protein, which pushes the cell through the cell cycle. E7 prevents this interaction, leaving E2F free to start the process of cell division. In some cases, the viral genome may integrate into the host cell genome, allowing permanent expression of these viral oncogenes, beginning the process of carcinogenesis (15).

Proto-oncogenes are genes that have a normal role in cells and only become oncogenes when they are expressed inappropriately. One example of this is the role of the c-myc gene in Burkitt’s lymphoma, a B cell tumor
c-myc is involved in the cell cycle, and it is expressed in a tightly controlled manner in response to normal stimuli when cell growth is required. However, in Burkitt’s lymphoma, the c-myc gene is translocated from its normal position on chromosome 8 to chromosome 14. This puts c-myc in the place of an immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene. The immunoglobulin gene is normally highly expressed in B cells. This translocation causes an overexpression of c-myc in B cells, which leads to Burkitt’s lymphoma. Other B cell lymphomas have similar causes. bcl-2, a gene which promotes cell survival, has been implicated in a large number of B cell tumors because it is often translocated from its position on chromosome 18 to chromosome 14, much as c-myc is in Burkitt’s lymphoma.

### 3.2. The Role of Tumor Suppressor Genes

There are a number of types of genes in the tumor suppressor category. The most obvious are genes that “turn off” cell growth or increase cell death. These are sometimes called the gatekeepers. Other tumor suppressors include genes that safeguard the genome, protecting the integrity of other important growth-regulating genes, and are called the caretakers. The final, less-defined type of tumor suppressor gene is the landscaper gene. The landscaper genes define the interaction of epithelial cells with their environment, the supporting stromal cells. If the stromal cells do not send the correct signals, through cell–cell interactions, about cell growth to epithelial cells, the epithelial cells may grow inappropriately. When any of these types of tumor suppressor genes are mutated or prevented from functioning as they normally do, they become important in the pathogenesis of cancer.

One of the most well-known tumor suppressors is the p53 gene. This gatekeeper gene was first identified in colorectal cancer because it is mutated in up to 50% of all colorectal cancers. Since then, mutation of this gene has been recognized in a large percentage of other types of cancers, including 70–80% of small-cell lung cancers. The p53 gene is thought to play an important regulatory role in both inhibition of cell growth and initiation of cell death.

The brca1 and brca2 genes are also examples of tumor suppressors. Genetical tests that analyze these caretaker genes for mutations are being examined for use both as risk factors in women who have a family history of breast cancer and as prognostic indicators after women are diagnosed with breast cancer. These genes may be involved in DNA repair. Their role in cancer is therefore more complicated. These tumor suppressors protect cells not by directly preventing uncontrolled cell growth, but by protecting the integrity of the genome in general. Mutations in the caretaker genes may predispose women to cancer by allowing any DNA damage that does occur to go unrepaired. This increases the chance that they will acquire...
Table 1  Gatekeeper Tumor Suppressor Genes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Cancers often inactivated in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Growth and apoptosis regulators</td>
<td>APC</td>
<td>Colorectal (19), gastric (20), ovarian (21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CTCF</td>
<td>Breast (22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FHIT</td>
<td>Gastric (23), leukemia (24), lung (25), pancreatic (26), thyroid (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ING1</td>
<td>Head and neck (28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>Astrocytoma (29), breast (30), colorectal (31), esophageal (32), gastric (33), head and neck (34), leukemia (35), lung (36), osteosarcoma (37), ovarian (38), skin (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PTENS/MMAC</td>
<td>Breast (40), glioma (41), hepatic (42), prostate (43), thyroid (44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RB1</td>
<td>Bladder (45), lung (46), osteosarcoma (47), retinoblastoma (48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SMAD4</td>
<td>Pancreatic (49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STK11/LKB1</td>
<td>Colorectal (50), gastric (50), ovarian (51), pancreatic (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDK inhibitors</td>
<td>p15&lt;sup&gt;ink4A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Glioma (52), leukemia (53), melanoma (54)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>p16&lt;sup&gt;ink4B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Glioma (52), head and neck (55), leukemia (53), melanoma (54)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>p21&lt;sup&gt;Waf1/cip1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Lymphoma (56), prostate (57)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oncogene inactivators</td>
<td>Bax</td>
<td>Colorectal (58), gastric (59), lymphoma (60), oral (61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MS11</td>
<td>Neurofibromatosis (62), glioma (63), prostate (64),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>DLC1</td>
<td>Esophageal, lung, kidney (65)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LEU1, LEU2</td>
<td>Leukemia (66)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MCC</td>
<td>Colorectal (67), esophageal (68), lung (69)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEN1</td>
<td>Pancreatic parathyroid, pituitary (70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NF2</td>
<td>Neurofibromatosis (71)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRLTS</td>
<td>Prostate (72)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STK11/LKB1</td>
<td>Colon, gastric, melanoma, ovarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VHL</td>
<td>Renal (73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>WT1, WT2</td>
<td>Wilms tumor (74)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
dangerous mutations in oncogenes or other tumor suppressors. These changes act together to accelerate a cell through the process of carcinogenesis (Table 2).

Less is known about the role of landscaper genes in cancer, but they are believed to play a role in several kinds of cancers, such as colon cancer in patients who also suffer from ulcerative colitis, colorectal cancer in patients with juvenile polyposis syndrome, and endometrial cancer in patients who suffer from endometrial polyps (18). The common link that defines cancers that may develop from mutations in landscaper genes is that there is overgrowth of stromal, noncancerous cells first. This provides an environment that encourages inappropriate growth and, in some cases, carcinogenesis in neighboring epithelial cells.

### 3.3. Other Molecular Events in Cancer

Not all changes that lead to cancer are necessarily genetical changes. Other types of changes can throw off the careful cellular balance that usually keeps uncontrolled growth in check. Cellular controls of transcription and translation, as well as RNA and protein degradation, can lead to inappropriately high or low expression of oncogenes or tumor suppressors, respectively.

Methylation of DNA is one such nongenetical control of gene expression. Normally, genes that are not expressed in cells are highly methylated, while those genes that are actively suppressed are not. Inappropriate methylation of genes prevents their expression. This usually occurs in CpG islands of DNA at specific gene promoters, which are responsible for allowing transcription of the gene. Hypermethylation prevents transcription from occurring and allows for changes in a cell’s phenotype with any actual

### Table 2  Caretaker Tumor Suppressor Genes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Cancers often inactivated in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DNA repair</td>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>Breast (80), cervical (81), leukemia (82,83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BRCA1, BRCA2</td>
<td>Breast (84,85), ovarian (86), prostate (87)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ERCC1, ERCC2</td>
<td>Ovarian (88), glioma (89)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MLH1</td>
<td>Breast (90), colorectal (91), endometrial (92), ovarian (93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MSH2, MSH3, MSH6</td>
<td>Endometrial (94), leukemia (95)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PMS1, PMS2</td>
<td>Colorectal (96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XPA, XPB, XPC, XPD</td>
<td>Skin (97)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mutation of the DNA. Because methylation patterns are inherited from cell to cell, a potentially neoplastic cell may pass this aberrant methylation pattern down to its daughter cells when it divides (98). The \( p16 \) gene, an important tumor suppressor, is one gene that is frequently inactivated in this manner. Inactivation of \( p16 \) has been shown to occur in several tumor types, including pancreatic cancer and lung cancer. In addition, it was shown that in lung cancer, inactivation of \( p16 \) by hypermethylation is a very early event in carcinogenesis and may be a marker to help identify lung tumors earlier (99).

4. CONCLUDING COMMENTS

At the cellular level, cancer is heritable. This means that the characteristic (phenotypic) alterations in a cell that make it malignant are somehow caused by heritable alterations of genetical structure and function. It is generally accepted that most cancers arise from a complex interaction between genetics and the environment (here, loosely defined as anything of either intracellular or extracellular origin that can impact genetical structure and/or function). Genetical factors influencing carcinogenesis and cancer risk include heritable susceptibility factors, such as genetical polymorphisms in carcinogen metabolism, heritable defects in DNA repair genes, and even gender, ethnicity, and race. On the environmental side, cancer risk is influenced by cultural and lifestyle factors (such as smoking, diet and nutritional status, and infectious disease), environmental and occupational exposure to potentially carcinogenic chemicals and radiation, and endogenous genotoxic challenges that arise from living in an oxidative atmosphere (i.e., intracellular production of reactive oxygen species, organic free radicals, and nitric oxide). It is often argued that cancer is largely a preventable disease, and this is certainly true if the focus is on the major cancers with the most easily identifiable environmental risk factors. Stopping smoking would markedly reduce the incidence of lung and other cancers, minimizing gross exposure to sunlight would drastically cut the incidence of skin cancer, modifying diet would likely have an enormous impact on the rates of stomach and colon cancer, and preventing viral infections would significantly decrease the global cancer incidence. Perhaps a more challenging question is if the measures just described were fully implemented and successful, could the incidence of cancer be significantly decreased even further by more stringent controls on low-level environmental exposures?

Most smoking-induced lung cancers are associated with high dose and long duration of exposure (resulting in concomitant chronic tissue damage) to multiple carcinogens present in cigarette smoke. Nevertheless, only 1 in 10 heavy smokers develop lung cancer. This underscores the importance of answering some key questions. How vast and effective are the body’s natural anticancer protective mechanisms? Is it more important to identify
genetically susceptible individuals than to more stringently regulate general environmental exposures? What potentially unchangeable proportion of the overall cancer incidence is simply a function of genetics, hormones, aging, and the natural promutagenic consequences of life at the molecular level? Further research into the molecular genetics of carcinogenesis will help elucidate answers to these important questions.

REFERENCES


54. Walker GJ, Flores JF, Glendening JM, Lin AH, Markl ID, Fountain JW. Virtually 100% of melanoma cell lines harbor alterations at the DNA level within CDKN2A, CDKN2B, or one of their downstream targets. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1998; 22:157.


Epidemiological Approaches to Studying Cancer I: Study Design, Confounding Variables, Misclassification, and Cancer Clusters

Elizabeth Ward

Industrywide Studies Branch Division of Surveillance, Hazard Evaluations and Field Studies, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

In recent years, several authors have advocated the use of epidemiological data, if available, in developing cancer risk assessments (1–5). Epidemiological data may be used in a variety of ways in risk assessment, principally in hazard identification and exposure–response analysis (4). This chapter will review basic concepts in the design and interpretation of epidemiological studies, focusing on their application in risk assessment.

Two major epidemiological study designs have contributed substantially to understanding the etiology of human cancer. Cohort studies are studies in which a defined group of people are followed for a period of time. They can be either retrospective studies, in which the group is defined at a point or period in the past and followed to the present, or prospective, in which the group is defined in the present and followed into the future. The cohorts can be derived from the general population, to study the effects of common exposures such as smoking and diet, or selected on the basis of a particular exposure. Outcomes measured may be intermediate markers,
incident disease, or death. Cohort studies can detect the effect of a rare exposure because by design a relatively large number of exposed subjects can be assembled and studied; cohort studies often focus on a single exposure and multiple outcomes. *Case–control studies* are studies in which risk factors for disease are compared between individuals with the disease and those without. Case–control studies may be community based or nested within cohorts. In community based case–control studies, information about risk factors is generally obtained directly from study subjects, but in some cases, additional measurements are made of biological tissues or environmental exposures, or supplementary information is gained from medical or other records. Case–control studies are particularly useful for studying rare diseases; they examine the relationship between a single outcome and multiple exposures. General aspects of the design and analysis of both types of studies are covered in textbooks of epidemiology (6,7).

Cohort studies of occupational groups or populations with environmental exposure to radiological or chemical hazards have been the primary source of information for a number of important risk assessments to date (e.g., asbestos, arsenic, benzene, and radon daughters) (1). The use of case–control studies in risk assessment has been more limited, with some noteworthy exceptions, such as environmental tobacco smoke and lung cancer (8,9) and residential radon exposure and lung cancer (10).

Epidemiological studies may be hypothesis testing or hypothesis generating. Ecological studies, in which correlations are made at a group level (i.e., comparing fat consumption and breast cancer incidence by country) are often used to generate hypotheses about exposure–disease associations and typically cannot do more than that. Cohort and case–control studies may be hypothesis generating when the basis for a priori hypotheses is limited, but they are often designed to test hypotheses about disease causation. A causal association between an exposure and disease is rarely established by the results of a single epidemiological study. A number of investigators have proposed criteria for defining causality based on epidemiological study results (6). Some of the most important criteria include temporal sequence (the cause must precede the effect), strength of the association, dose–response relationship, replication of the findings, and biological plausibility (6). Table 1 defines some important terms used in epidemiological studies.

### 2. COHORT STUDIES

Occupational cohort studies have played a central role in the understanding of radiation-induced and chemically related cancer, because occupational exposures are often orders of magnitude higher than exposures in the general population, making exposure effects easier to observe in relatively small populations. As early as the 1950s, occupational cohort studies documented
the risk of cancer associated with occupational exposure to aromatic amines (beta-naphthylamine, benzidine) (11) and asbestos (12). Many occupational cohort studies have used duration of employment in the occupation or industry under study as an index of cumulative exposure. However, as methods were developed and utilized to measure air concentrations of chemicals in the workplace, studies began to incorporate quantitative estimates of exposure, enabling researchers to associate level of exposure with level of risk (13). In some studies, exposure estimates are generated for multiple agents in a single population, with the goal of evaluating which agents are associated with observed cancer excesses. For example, in a study of the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incidence</td>
<td>The number of new cases of a disease that occur in a specified period of time divided by the number of people in the population at risk of developing the disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevalence</td>
<td>The number of cases of a disease present in a population at a specified time divided by the number of persons at that point in time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period prevalence</td>
<td>How many people have had the disease at any time during a certain period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortality rate</td>
<td>The number of deaths in the population divided by the number of persons in the population at midyear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportionate mortality ratio (PMR)</td>
<td>The number of deaths from a particular cause divided by the total number of deaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standardized mortality ratio (SMR)</td>
<td>Observed number of deaths per year divided by expected number of deaths; expected number of deaths based on age, calendar time, gender- and race-specific death rates in the referent population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standardized incidence ratio (SIR)</td>
<td>Observed number of new cases per year divided by expected number of new cases; expected number of new cases based on age, calendar time, gender- and race-specific incidence rates in the referent population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative risk (RR)</td>
<td>Disease risk (incidence rate) in an exposed population divided by disease risk (incidence rate) in an unexposed population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odds ratio</td>
<td>Estimate of association calculated in a case-control study; approximates relative risk when the risk of disease is low (see Section 3 for how to calculate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributable risk</td>
<td>The amount or proportion of disease incidence (or disease risk) that can be attributed to a specific exposure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Adapted from Refs. 6, 7, 63, 64.*
synthetic rubber industry, quantitative estimates of exposure to 1,3-butadiene, styrene, and benzene were developed to evaluate exposure–response relationships with leukemia (14).

Occupational cohort studies include all individuals entering and leaving a workforce during a defined time period (for example, from January 1, 1940, to January 1, 1979) and observe the number of incident cases or deaths during the time interval of study per number of person-years of observation (15). Most commonly, occupational cohort studies use mortality as the outcome, ascertaining deaths from national vital registry data. Use of mortality as the outcome has the advantage that it is possible to achieve nearly 100% ascertainment of deaths, at least in the United States. There is, however, a significant possibility of misclassification of cancer site on death certificates (16) and histologic type is often unspecified. Occupational cohort studies may be analyzed using life table methods, in which person-years-at-risk (PYAR) are accumulated for each individual from the time they enter the cohort until death, loss to follow-up, or end of study. Person-years-at-risk may be stratified by age, calendar time, race, time since first employment, duration of employment, and other occupational exposure characteristics. The number of expected deaths is calculated by multiplying age, calendar time, and race-specific PYAR by the relevant referent rates in the general population, such as national mortality or state-based cancer registry data. Life table analysis yields standardized mortality ratios (SMRs) or standardized incidence ratios (SIRs), which compare the number of observed and expected deaths, based on indirect standardization to control for age, calendar time, and race. Life table analysis programs are available from several sources (17–19). Analysis of cohort studies using external referents suffers from the problem that the external referent population may not be comparable to the study population in attributes other than the one under study. For example, it is common to find that occupational cohorts have substantially lower mortality than the general population due to selection of healthy individuals into the workforce and the survival of healthier individuals, which permits long-term employment (this has been called the “healthy worker effect”) (13). This effect is strongest for cardiovascular disease and is less apparent for cancer (13). Use of internal referents, i.e., members of the cohort with no or minimal exposure, may circumvent this problem. Internal comparisons within cohort studies require additional analytical methods, such as direct standardization or Mantel–Haenzel techniques, to adjust for age and other factors that may differ between subcohorts. Poisson regression analysis can be utilized to examine the effect of all the study variables on the disease incidence or mortality rate simultaneously (6,20).

There are a number of important issues to be considered in the design of cohort studies intended to assess the carcinogenicity of chemical or physical exposures. Often chemical studies are triggered by new, positive animal bioassay results. The first step in designing a cohort study is to determine in
what occupations and industries the chemical is used, the numbers of workers exposed, and a selection of those industries or occupations that provide the best opportunity for study. Important factors in choosing the occupation or industry to study include the level of exposure to the chemical and the presence of potential confounding exposures. Once an industry or occupational group has been selected, factors considered in choosing the actual study sites include length of operation, numbers of workers, and quality of personnel, production, and exposure records (21). Great care must be taken to ensure that the entire targeted study population is identified, because nonrandom losses, such as failing to identify records of retirees or other subgroups, may seriously bias the study results.

Exposure assessment in occupational cohort studies should include, at a minimum, a complete history of plant operations, including major products, starting materials, by-products, and potential contaminants present in all major departments or process areas and review of existing environmental or personal monitoring data. Such data can be used to classify workers (through their department and job codes) as exposed or unexposed to the chemical of interest, as well as potential confounders, and to establish the date at which exposure began and its duration. Once preliminary data have been collected for a retrospective study, a decision is made about whether it is feasible to reconstruct historical exposures and conduct an exposure–response assessment. Factors in this decision include whether there is sufficient detail in the personnel records to determine the detailed job history of individuals (i.e., department, operation, starting and ending dates) and whether there are sufficient monitoring data available to generate meaningful exposure estimates. Often these conditions are not met, but a decision is made to proceed with a study because it is the best available population or because there is interest in the health effects in a specific population although it does not have sufficient information to characterize exposure–response.

Issues in the reconstruction of historical exposures for occupational cohort studies have recently been reviewed (22,23). Stewart et al. (22) define several steps in developing quantitative retrospective exposure estimates for epidemiological studies: (1) identification of appropriate agents of exposure, including consideration of physical states and routes of exposure; (2) development of “exposure groups,” defined as groups of persons whose exposures are similar enough so that monitoring of any worker in the group provides data useful for predicting the exposure of the remaining workers; (3) evaluation of availability and representativeness of existing sampling data; development of procedures for generating quantitative estimates by exposure group, including methods of extrapolation or interpolation for time periods and exposure groups where data are sparse or nonexistent. Often there are no exposure measurements for early decades of plant operation. Assumptions made in deriving exposure estimates for these time
periods may lead to considerable variation in the estimates (24,25) and the resulting risk assessments (26,27).

Cohort studies also have been conducted among individuals in the general population who have one-time (or short term) exposure to chemical or physical agents as a result of accidental or intentional releases. One of the earliest such studies was initiated in 1946 among atomic bomb survivors in Hiroshima and Nagasaki (28). Prospective study cohorts (or registries) have been established for individuals exposed to 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzodioxin (TCDD) after an accidental release in Seveso, Italy, in 1976 (29) and individuals exposed to radioactive isotopes after a nuclear reactor malfunctioned in Chernobyl, USSR, in 1986 (30). Cox regression may be used to analyze clinical trials or cohort study in which the event times are observed (17). When the relationship between predictor variables and disease outcome are modeled using Cox regression, the partial regression coefficients of the model are the natural logarithms of the respective rate ratios (6).

Prospective study cohorts may also be established to study chronic rather than one-time exposures. In the United States, a large prospective cohort has been established of registered pesticide applicators in two states; the cohort will be followed periodically to ascertain pesticide exposure and health status (31). Because of the high cost and great effort required by researchers, a prospective study should be launched only for high-priority topics for which retrospective studies cannot provide adequate data, for example, when retrospective exposure assessment is difficult due to substitution of products over time and varied use over workers in similar job categories (31).

Cohorts may also be assembled from the general population without regard to a specific exposure, and subsequently exposure groups can be identified (e.g., smokers). Population-based cohort studies, such as the Framingham study, have been invaluable in understanding the etiology of cardiovascular disease (33), and have contributed to the understanding of cancer etiology as well (34). Prospective studies of the general population may be geographically based, including a sample or the total of a defined population, or defined by other criteria, such as membership in a health maintenance organization (35). For example, a prospective mortality study [Cancer Prevention II Study (CPS II)] of about 1.2 million U.S. men and women was begun by the American Cancer Society in 1982. Participants were identified and enrolled in by more than 77,000 ACS volunteers in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico. Data collected at baseline included personal identifiers, demographic characteristics, personal and family history of cancer and other diseases, reproductive history, and various behavioral, environmental, occupational, and dietary exposures. This study has yielded information on health effects of occupational exposure to diesel exhaust (36), aspirin use, and reduced risk of gastrointestinal
tract cancers (37) and the relationship between exposure to environmental tobacco smoke and lung cancer (38). Other recent findings from population-based cohort studies relate to the relationship between aflatoxin exposure, hepatitis B infection, and hepatocellular carcinoma (39,40) the effects of hepatitis B and hepatitis C infection on the development of hepatocellular carcinoma (41), and the relationship between alcohol consumption and breast cancer in women (42). While some population-based studies have involved measurement of risk factors at baseline and follow-up for mortality as the outcome, prospective studies may involve multiple measurements of risk factors in individuals over time, intermediate outcomes, and incident disease. Studies in which there are repeated measures of exposure and outcome over time, and whose focus is to examine individual heterogeneity, time-dependent changes, rates of change, or natural history of complex disease states have been termed “longitudinal” cohort studies (43). Such studies may play an important role in understanding gene–environment interaction, and the interplay of multiple risk factors, in cancer and other diseases.

3. CASE–CONTROL STUDIES

The case–control design has played an important role in the understanding of lifestyle, infections, and familial risk factors for cancer, and in generating and testing hypotheses about environmental and occupational causes. For example, the first evidence for a strong association between cigarette smoking and lung cancer was derived from two case–control studies, published in 1950 (44,45). Much of our current knowledge of the contribution of alcohol consumption and cigarette smoking to esophageal cancer (46,47) and hepatitis B and C infection to liver cancer (48) has been derived from case–control studies, to give just two of numerous examples.

Unlike cohort studies, which measure rates of disease and relative risks, case–control studies compare probabilities (or odds ratios) of exposure and disease between cases and controls. Case–control studies are often community based, where both cases and controls are drawn from the general population. A second type of case–control study is nested within a retrospective cohort study; this design is often used in occupational studies when the cost of obtaining detailed exposure information for every cohort member is high. The nested case–control design is also an integral part of many prospective studies. For example, in a large prospective study of pesticide applicators in the United States (known as the Agricultural Health Study), nested case–control studies will be conducted to examine the association between specific cancers and pesticide exposures (31). In the EPIC project, a prospective study of nutritional and other risk factors for cancer, blood samples have been collected from approximately 400,000 men and
women; plasma, serum, white blood cells, and erythrocytes have been banked for future analyses on cancer cases and matched healthy controls (49). The emergence of new technologies for gene sequencing, identifying genetic polymorphisms, and determining their functional significance (50,51) will make this and similar studies particularly powerful tools in the assessment of gene–environment interactions.

Methods for the design and analysis of case–control studies are available from many sources (6,7,52). Case definition for cancer studies is facilitated by highly standardized methods for classification and coding of neoplasms (53); cases may be selected from hospital records or from geographically based cancer registries. In some instances, cases may be further restricted by age or other factors. For example, in designing a study of the relationship between oral contraceptives, which began being marketed in the United States in the 1960s, and breast cancer, cases were restricted to women under 45 years who had opportunity for exposure throughout their entire reproductive years (54).

Perhaps the most difficult and critical issue in case–control studies is appropriate control selection. Issues in control selection are best understood in the conceptual context that every case-control study takes place within some hypothetical cohort (55). Cases and controls should be “representative of the same base experience” or members of the same underlying cohort or source population (55). In order to meet this condition when hospital controls are utilized, care must be taken that the catchment area and referral patterns for the disease under study and diseases included in the control group are similar (56). A second important feature in selecting hospitalized controls is that diseases or conditions thought to be related to the exposure of interest should be excluded (56). Population controls are an appropriate choice when there is a high degree of case ascertainment from the base population (56). Population controls have been identified by a variety of methods, including random digit dialing, selection from neighborhood rosters or Department of Motor Vehicle records, and selection from case-nominated friends or relatives (56,57). In all of these methods, procedures must be carefully evaluated to ensure as much as possible that the control group is representative of the base population (or that a random sample of eligible subjects is obtained). For example, in the use of random digit dialing to identify controls, factors such as incomplete phone coverage, residences that can be reached by more than one telephone number, more than one person in the house who is eligible to be a control, and nonresponse bias among selected individuals can lead to possible selection bias (56).

Another important issue in the design of case-control studies is whether individual matching will be employed in the selection of controls. Matching is often done to improve efficiency in the estimation of the effect of exposure by protecting against the situation where the distributions of a confounder (a factor that is related to both the exposure and the disease
under study, but not in the causal pathway between the exposure and the disease of interest) are substantially different in cases and controls (58). Other reasons to match are to control unmeasured confounders and to ensure time comparability for exposures that vary over time (58). On the other hand, there is a danger of overmatching, where reducing the variability of potential confounding variables may also reduce variability in exposures of interest (58). The latter are critical to observe differences in disease rate by exposure level. In studies where individual matching is employed, analysis methods must be used that take the matching into account.

The data layout for an unmatched case–control study with a bivariate risk factor is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure status</th>
<th>Cases</th>
<th>Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The odds ratio is the ratio \( \frac{ad}{bc} \) and is interpretable as the ratio of incidence rates for disease among exposed vs. unexposed members of the population (59). The data layout for a matched study, with one control per case, is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control exposed</th>
<th>Control not exposed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case exposed</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control exposed</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For an analysis that incorporates control only for the matching variables, the odds ratio is calculated as \( \frac{b}{c} \) (59). Multivariate methods for the analysis of case–control studies are covered in textbooks of epidemiology (6,7) and other sources (59). The goals of such analyses are: (1) to determine whether there is a statistically significant association between the exposure and the disease of interest after accounting for the possibly confounding variables; (2) to determine whether there is evidence for effect modification (heterogeneity in the association under study across the strata); and (3) to provide an estimate of the overall odds ratio and confidence limits (6). Unmatched case–control studies may be analyzed using multiple logistic regression, in which the partial regression coefficients are estimates of the natural logarithms of the adjusted odds ratios contrasting exposed (coded as 1) with unexposed (coded as 0) persons (6). Matched case–control studies are analyzed using conditional logistical regression (6).

One of the frequently cited concerns about the case–control study design relates to the reliability and validity of the (necessarily retrospective)
exposure data (60). Correa et al. (60) reviewed exposure measurement methods in 223 reports of population-based case–control studies conducted in 34 countries and published in 25 journals during 1992; 143 of these studies had cancer as the outcome. Most of these studies relied on a questionnaire as the primary source of exposure data; relatively few employed biological monitoring or other types of information (60). Recent methodological refinements increase the potential for case–control data to generate semiquantitative or even quantitative information on occupational and environmental exposures. These methods include expert review of detailed occupational history data to identify potential exposures and estimate the level, frequency, and mode of exposure (61) and use of computer assisted interviews with job-specific modules that ask detailed questions relevant to exposure assessment for that particular job (62).

4. Issues in Interpreting Epidemiological Study Results

4.1. Statistical Power

Statistical power is the ability of a study to demonstrate an association if one exists. The power of a study is determined by several factors, including the frequency of the condition under study, the magnitude of the effect, the study design, and the sample size (63).

4.2. Bias

Bias has been defined as “any systematic error in the design, conduct, or analysis of a study that results in a mistaken estimate of an exposure’s effect on the risk of disease” (63). Some important potential biases in epidemiological studies are:

- Selection bias: Error due to systematic differences in characteristics between members of the source or base population who are selected for study and those who are not (63).

- Ascertainment bias: Error due to systematic failure to represent equally all classes of cases or persons supposed to be represented in a sample. Ascertainment bias may arise from the nature of the sources from which the persons come (63).

- Response (or participation) bias: Error due to systematic differences in characteristics between those who choose to volunteer to take part in a study and those who do not (63).

- Information (or observational) bias: A flaw in measuring exposure or outcome data that results in differences in the quality (accuracy) of information between comparison groups (63).

- Recall bias: Systematic error due to differences in accuracy or completeness of recall to memory of past events or experiences (63). For example, a
mother whose child has leukemia is more likely than the mother of a healthy child to remember details of past experiences such as the use of x-ray services when the child was in utero.

**Surveillance bias:** Systematic error due to differences in monitoring between the groups under study: for example, better detection of cases of thrombophlebitis among patients taking oral contraceptives than among those who are not (64).

**Interviewer bias:** Systematic error due to interviewers’ subconscious or conscious gathering of selective data (63), for example, more extensive probing when interviewing cases compared to controls.

Minimizing the potential for such biases is important in the design of epidemiological studies. Interviewer bias may be avoided if it is possible to blind interviewers to case or control status. Other biases, such as recall bias, may be unavoidable, but measures may be taken to evaluate or control for them. For example, recall bias may be evaluated by asking questions about exposures thought not to be plausibly related to the disease under study, and comparing the responses of cases and controls. Some reported exposures, such as in utero x-rays, may be subject to validation from record sources, thus minimizing the impact of recall bias.

### 4.3. Confounding and Interaction

Confounding refers to a distortion in the apparent effect of the exposure of interest due to an extraneous factor. Confounding is of particular concern in epidemiological studies because if it is not recognized, study results may be interpreted as suggesting a causal relationship between the risk factor and the disease of interest, when in fact there is none. An example of confounding that is easy to understand is provided in Rothman and Greenland (7). In this example, an investigator wishes to examine the relationship between alcohol consumption and oral cancer. Even in the absence of any causal association, alcohol drinkers will have a higher incidence of oral cancer than nondrinkers because consumers of alcoholic beverages are more likely to be smokers, and smoking is associated with oral cancer. In order to understand whether alcohol consumption itself is associated with oral cancer, one would have to analyze this relationship separately in smokers and nonsmokers. A stratified analysis of this sort, with a subsequent calculation of a single relative risk (a weighted average across strata), is what is meant by “adjusting for” or “controlling for” smoking. In order to be a confounder, the extraneous variable must be associated with both the exposure under study and the disease.

Factors that are on the causal pathway between exposure and disease should not be considered confounders. Determining whether a factor is likely to be on the causal pathway requires integration of clinical, epidemiological, and mechanistic data, and the answer may not be clear-cut (7).
Controlling for a factor that is on the causal pathway may lead to underestimation of the relationship between the exposure and the disease.

Many epidemiological studies, particularly case–control studies, examine the relationship between multiple risk factors and disease outcome. For example, in the study of oral cancer discussed above, the investigator might be interested in the independent effects of alcohol and smoking, and also their effects in combination. The concept of interaction in the simplest sense means that the effect of factor A differs depending on the level of factor B. Such would be the case, for example, if after examining the effects of alcohol consumption and smoking, one found that among nonsmokers, alcohol consumption was not associated with oral cancer, but among smokers, it was highly associated. In practice, the definition of interaction depends on whether an expected relationship under conditions of no interaction is defined to be additive or multiplicative. For example, if there is a fivefold risk of oral cancer associated with smoking and a threefold risk associated with alcohol consumption, a multiplicative model would predict a 15-fold risk among those with both exposures, while an additive model would predict an eightfold risk. While there has been considerable debate in the epidemiological literature on the statistical and conceptual meaning of interaction, a pragmatic approach is to evaluate whether an additive or a multiplicative model provides the best fit to the data (65).

In occupational cancer studies, concerns about confounding often relate to a higher prevalence of adverse lifestyle factors, such as smoking, in the study population than in the referent population, and also to the presence of potential confounding exposures in the work environment. Siemiatycki et al. (66) have shown, however, that even for lung cancer, differences in smoking habits between an occupational group and the general population from which referent rates are derived are unlikely to result in a relative risk or SMR greater than 1.2–1.4. Although there are rarely any data on smoking status available for all members of an occupational cohort, smoking data may be available for a subset of the cohort, which are used to estimate the magnitude of the predicted smoking related effect (67). With regard to the potential confounding effect of concomitant chemical exposures in the work environment, a preliminary assessment may be made from the toxicological and epidemiological literature of whether the chemicals present are likely to be carcinogenic. Depending on the distribution of the exposures and hypothesized target organs, it may or may not be possible to control for potential confounding. For example, in a study of bladder cancer incidence related to occupational exposure to o-toluidine and aniline, the presence of vinyl chloride at the study plant was considered unlikely to be a confounding exposure, because the bladder is not a target organ for vinyl chloride. In addition, potential confounding by vinyl chloride could be assessed in the analysis because exposure to aromatic amines and vinyl chloride took place in separate areas of the plant. However, it was not
possible to separate the effects of o-toluidine and aniline because these exposures occurred in the same area and both chemicals were likely to have the bladder as a target organ (68).

4.4. Measurement Error and Misclassification

Exposure measurement error is an inherent part of epidemiological studies because of the way information is obtained. Table 2 summarizes the sources of information for epidemiological studies and their advantages and limitations. No source of information can be considered absolutely accurate; even “objective” measurements such as levels of a contaminant in the environment or in biological fluids may be affected by sampling method, biological variability, or laboratory error (69). The terms “measurement error” and “misclassification” both refer to any discrepancy between the true value of a variable $x$ and its measured value $z$, although the term misclassification is more often used with categorical variables and measurement error with continuous variables (69). Errors may be systematic or random; systematic errors refer to errors that are not distributed randomly around the true value (69). Both systematic and random errors may be “differential” or “nondifferential” with respect to disease status. In nondifferential misclassification, the probability and/or direction of misclassification differs between those with disease and those without, as might occur, for example, if an interviewer who knew the health status of the subjects and the study hypotheses probed more intensely when asking about these exposures in case compared to control interviews. Nondifferential misclassification can introduce serious bias in the study results, but can often be avoided by a good study design, i.e., blinded assessment of the study variables (69). Prior to the late 1980s, it was thought that nondifferential exposure measurement error or misclassification would bias studies toward the null (i.e., in the direction of finding no effect), but it is now recognized that there are exceptions to this rule (71).

Where possible, epidemiologic studies try to minimize measurement error and also to estimate its magnitude. For example, in classifying subjects with respect to current smoking status, self-reported data may be compared to the serum cotinine level; for self-reported exposures, data reported at two different times may be evaluated for consistency; in studies where laboratory analyses are done, blinded split sample analysis and spiked samples with known standard compounds may be used to estimate laboratory error.

5. OTHER STUDY DESIGNS

In reviewing the epidemiological literature on cancer, there are a number of other epidemiological study designs that the reader should be familiar with. All of the study designs are covered in detail in epidemiology textbooks (6,7,64).
Table 2  Commonly Used Assessments for Exposures in Epidemiological Studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source of exposure data</th>
<th>Advantages/limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Measurement of substance in biological samples| Good methods available for measuring recent exposures (i.e., cotinine and current smoking status) or retrospective exposure to chemical or physical agents with long half-lives (i.e., organochlorines such as DDT)  
Time period of interest in cancer studies is often 20–30 years prior to onset of disease; some shorter half-lived exposures can be detected in stored sera or urine, if available  
Accessible samples in living individuals (blood, urine, buccal cells, etc.) may not reflect exposure at the target tissue of interest (i.e., asbestos in lung tissue)  
Studying intermediate markers such as hemoglobin or urothelial cell adducts may yield information about biologically effective dose (84) |
| Interview data                                | Able to gain information about a wide range of risk factors throughout life, which is generally not possible with any single record source  
Interview data are dependent on the accuracy and completeness of participant recall, may lack detail on specific exposures, such as chemicals or medications, and may be influenced by recall bias |
| Medical records                               | May be an excellent source for confirming self-reported medically related exposures; medical records are especially valuable for identifying cohorts for follow-up of medical exposures, i.e., children exposed to diethylstilbestrol during pregnancy  
Location and retrieval of medical records may be difficult in retrospective studies; investigator may need patient’s permission to access medical records |
| Work history records                          | Generally a good source to identify individuals for cohort studies, provided that they are complete; may or may not contain detailed information about jobs held, which is needed |

(Continued)
Ecological studies: There are enormous variations in the incidence of some cancers worldwide; correlations between site-specific cancer incidence and dietary and other risk factors may lead to potential clues about cancer etiology. Studies looking at such correlations on a population level are termed ecological studies; the unit of observation is a group and not an individual.

Cross-sectional (or prevalence) studies: These studies examine risk factors and the presence of disease or disease markers simultaneously. In the area of cancer risk assessment, cross-sectional studies may provide valuable information on exposure, including biological indicators such as levels of DNA adducts.

Proportionate mortality ratio (PMR) studies: In some instances, it is not possible to enumerate the entire population at risk for a cohort study, but it is possible to identify deaths that have occurred, for example, from a union-based pension plan. Proportionate mortality ratio studies compare the proportion of deaths by cause in the study and the referent populations, with appropriate control for age, calendar time, gender and race.

Table 2  Commonly Used Assessments for Exposures in Epidemiological Studies (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source of exposure data</th>
<th>Advantages/limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Industrial hygiene monitoring data</td>
<td>Only in rare instances, such as film badge data available for radiation workers, is it possible to reconstruct exposure data for individuals based on their own measured exposures. Exposure reconstruction in cohort studies is based on industrial hygiene samples to characterize exposures by work area, rather than on sampling results for individuals; sampling data are often incomplete and may not cover specific jobs or time periods; assumptions are made to extrapolate data to these periods; often there are no air sampling results available for early decades of operation. Exposure reconstruction for case-control studies is usually based on information provided by the study subject combined with to provide a more detailed assessment of exposure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Case–cohort studies: A variant of the nested case–control study design, in which cases occurring in a study cohort are compared to a sample of the whole cohort (which may include some cases).

6. METHODS FOR COMBINING THE RESULTS OF EPIDEMIOLOGICAL STUDIES

There are two main methods for combining the results of epidemiological studies: meta-analysis and pooled analysis. These methods are important for the application of epidemiological study results to risk assessment, as they may provide an overall summary of effect across all studies.

Meta-analysis: A meta-analysis is a statistical analysis of a collection of studies with the aim of identifying consistent patterns and sources of disagreement among the results. Meta-analysis generally relies on study results provided in the published literature (72).

Pooled analysis: In a pooled analysis, the investigator conducts a combined analysis of a collection of studies, after standardization of the studies to allow exposure variables to be combined. Unlike in meta-analysis, in pooled analysis the investigator uses the primary data (73). A recent article compared the results of a meta-analysis and a pooled analysis of studies of sinusonal cancer among wood workers and proposed criteria for whether a pooled analysis of raw data or a meta-analysis should be carried out (74).

7. CANCER CLUSTERS

A cluster refers to an unusual aggregation of health events that are grouped together in time and space. Although clusters may come to light through surveillance systems, more often they are reported to public health agencies by concerned citizens or groups. Responses to inquiries about perceived clusters may consume substantial resources on the part of public health agencies, yet rarely lead to the identification of etiological agents (75–78). Those clusters that have led to important etiological findings have often been clusters of new or rare diseases, and/or clusters of disease in very highly defined populations. For example, the well-known association between vinyl chloride and angiosarcoma of the liver was first recognized through a cluster of cases at a single company (79).

Many observations of apparent clusters since the early part of this century have involved leukemia (80), childhood leukemia in particular (81). There is currently little understanding of the causes of leukemia, which is the most common childhood cancer. There has been considerable interest in the possibility that childhood leukemia has an infectious etiology, although in recent years, residence near nuclear facilities, contaminated water, and electromagnetic fields have been studied (81). A systematic
investigation of spatial clustering of 13,351 cases of childhood leukemia in 17 European countries between 1980 and 1989 found evidence of clustering of total childhood leukemia within small census areas, but the magnitude of the clustering was small (81). No specific cell type, age group, or etiology was highlighted.

Although the study of cancer clusters has not had direct applicability to regulatory risk assessment to date, knowledge and perspective on this topic are of considerable value to the public health and medical practitioner. The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has provided recommendations for local and state health departments in the management and investigation of cancer and other disease clusters reported by the public (82). A scientific publication of the International Agency for Research on Cancer provides information on choices of statistical methods for investigating localized clustering of disease (83).

REFERENCES


Epidemiological Approaches to Studying Cancer II: Molecular Epidemiology

Loïc Le Marchand
Cancer Research Center of Hawaii, University of Hawaii, Honolulu, Hawaii, U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

It is thought that most cancers result from the combined effects of environmental factors and inherited susceptibilities and that only few cancers (5–10%) are due to purely genetic or endogenous factors (1,2). Thus substantial prevention opportunities should result from the identification of key environmental risk factors (i.e., lifestyle factors, environmental pollutants, drugs, radiation, and infectious agents) and the characterization of genetic susceptibilities involved in the process. Epidemiology has already played a crucial role in identifying important causes of cancer in populations, such as smoking in lung cancer, hepatitis B virus in liver cancer, and UV radiation in skin cancer. However, the traditional epidemiologic approach, relying mainly on record and questionnaire information, has had difficulty detecting weak or attenuated associations. Studies have often been inconsistent when the relative risk associated with exposure has been smaller than 2.0. For example, despite 20 years of intense effort, only few specific dietary components have been convincingly demonstrated to be risk factors for cancer (3). Difficulty in measuring exposure accurately and the inability to distinguish susceptible from resistant individuals have been major impediments to the study of cancer risk.

The field of epidemiology has dramatically changed in the past 10 years and, as a result, is poised to make new major contributions to our
understanding of cancer etiology, risk assessment and prevention. Taking advantage of new advances in laboratory methods, epidemiologists and laboratory scientists have worked toward refining measurement of study variables through the use of biomarkers. The widespread incorporation of biological measurements at the cellular and molecular levels into large-scale studies has given rise to the term molecular epidemiology, which characterizes more an evolutionary step than the birth of a new discipline. In this regard, an analogy can be drawn with the effects of the computer revolution in the 1980s and the 1990s on the field of epidemiology. Enhanced computational power has made possible the application of sophisticated statistical techniques (e.g., logistic regression, proportional hazards regression, generalized estimating equation) aimed at identifying new risk factors from an intricate web of causal factors, confounders, and effect modifiers. These methods have allowed the investigation of inter-related exposures (e.g., lifestyle factors) in the etiology of complex diseases, such as cancer and coronary heart disease. The sequencing of the human genome and the genomics/proteomics revolution that is currently unfolding, and other technical advances, such as in analytical chemistry, are providing epidemiologists with the capability for an even greater methodological leap based on increasingly sensitive and accurate measurements of susceptibility, exposure, and disease. With some of these scientific advances, however, come social and ethical issues that need to be addressed before the potential benefits can be fully realized.

This chapter provides an overview of the opportunities offered by the use of biomarkers in cancer epidemiology and risk assessment, as well as summarizes the main categories of biomarkers and the issues related to their application. For further exploration of these topics, we refer the reader to recent textbooks on molecular epidemiology (4–6).

2. APPLICATIONS OF BIOMARKERS

Although biomarkers have limitations of their own (see secs. 4 and 5), their use offers new opportunities in cancer epidemiology. At the least, the use of biomarkers can provide independent confirmation of results obtained with exposure information collected through questionnaire or external monitoring. More importantly, it can also help to identify new associations or refine risk estimates for exposures that have been difficult to assess or quantify by conventional means. It also offers the possibility of delineating mechanistic pathways between exposures and disease, and identifying milestones along these pathways that could not be tested or recognized before. Thus, molecular epidemiology has the potential for contributing greatly to our further understanding of cancer biology, as well as to early detection and risk assessment. The current paradigm guiding molecular epidemiology and risk assessment is illustrated in Figure 1.
Figure 1  Current paradigm for molecular epidemiology and risk assessment. Source: Modified from Refs. 7, 8.
2.1. Assessing Health Effects of Small Doses and Past Exposures

Powerful analytical techniques have markedly lowered the detection limits of many biological measurements, making possible the study of the health effects associated with low-dose exposures, such as those typically experienced by the general population. Most health regulations for suspected or established carcinogens have been derived from data obtained in individuals exposed to moderate or high doses; for example, in occupational settings or in the aftermath of an environmental disaster. Because, in most cases, the marked reduction or complete elimination of a known carcinogen from the environment is socially and economically costly, it is important to determine with greater certainty the risk associated with low-dose exposures and whether such exposures can be tolerated.

Biomarkers can also be used to integrate past exposure over an extended period of time; thus, better reflecting usual exposure [e.g., trace elements in toenails (9)], or to "reconstruct" doses received in the past by estimating body burden through, for example, sampling adipose tissue for lipid soluble compounds or detecting protein adducts, somatic mutations, or chromosome aberrations (7).

2.2. Focusing on Mechanistic Pathways

Recent advances in our biological understanding of cancer has led to the unraveling of some of the many steps in the sequence of events leading to clinically detectable tumors. This new information provides opportunities for epidemiologists to refine etiologic hypotheses, identify the most appropriate study design, examine more specific forms of exposure, and consider new possible effect modifiers. All these improvements lead to a more effective testing of an hypothesis. Epidemiologists now have the capability of contributing significantly not only to the identification of cancer causes but also to the further clarification of the mechanisms involved, potentially leading to major new opportunities for prevention. Information can potentially be gained not only on the specific nature and extent of the needed intervention but also on its most appropriate target groups, defined by inherited or acquired susceptibility and/or preclinical events (7).

2.3. Better Defining Disease Entities

Tumor characterization is increasingly based on the use of molecular markers. They help to define disease variants that are unrecognizable through traditional clinical and pathological tools. For example, molecular assays applied to tumor tissue may reveal an absence of expression, or overexpression, of a particular protein (e.g., through immunohistochemistry), or the presence of a localized or genome-wide genetic defect (e.g., chromosome translocation or microsatellite instability due a DNA mismatch repair
deficiency). These defects may point to a specific disease pathway or help to identify a subgroup of patients that may differ in their prognosis or respond differently to treatment.

Recent progress in the development of DNA microarrays and in bioinformatics have also made possible the classification of tumors based on their genome-wide patterns of gene expression. Through these techniques, the expression of thousands of genes can be assessed in a semiquantitative fashion and clustering algorithms are used to identify tumor expression profiles. These expression patterns can then be statistically associated with different exposures or clinical outcomes (10).

2.4. Assessing Host Susceptibility

The fact that not all similarly exposed individuals (e.g., smokers) get the same disease (e.g., lung cancer, coronary heart disease), or any disease at all, is central to assessing risk at the individual level. However, health and regulatory policies have historically been based on the working assumption that all individuals in a population have the same biological response to a specified dose of carcinogens (10). Molecular epidemiology techniques have allowed for major advances in our ability to define the role of host factors, particularly genetic factors, in accounting for the interindividual variation in response.

The discoveries of a number of familial cancer genes (e.g., BRCA1, BRCA2) have received a great deal of attention from the public in recent years because an inherited mutation in one of these genes confers a dramatic increase in cancer risk. However, these highly penetrant mutations are rare and explain only a small percentage of cancer cases in the population. More common and, thus, potentially more important to public health, are a number of inherited sequence variations (polymorphisms) in genes regulating key physiological processes (e.g., carcinogen metabolism, growth factors, cell signaling, cell cycle regulation, angiogenesis, oxidative stress, inflammation, DNA synthesis and repair) or health-related behaviors (e.g., nicotine addiction), which may affect cancer risk. Because their effects on cancer risk are usually small to moderate, these genetic polymorphisms are unlikely to be useful for predictive genetic testing in individuals. However, these associations may provide a basis for defining population groups with an increased susceptibility to a specific exposure, for example, based on ethnic origin, which could be the focus of special interventions (11). At the least, associations of functional genetic variants with disease are helpful in establishing the relevance of the mechanistic pathway under study.

2.5. Improving Early Detection

In the past 10 years, there has only been limited progress in the application of biomarkers to the early detection of cancer. Only the prostate-specific
antigen (PSA) test has been widely adopted in clinical practice to screen for prostate cancer. Elevated and, especially, rising PSA indicates cell proliferation in prostatic tissue and, thus, is a marker of disease progression. Similarly, a decrease in the level of this marker can be used as an endpoint for interventions. Unfortunately, no comparable markers have been identified for other common cancers.

Molecular genetics may provide new sensitive detection methods in the coming years. Recent studies have shown that circulating tumor DNA ("cell-free DNA") can be isolated in peripheral blood and used to detect selected mutations that, individually or as a group, can be highly specific of the solid tumor from which the DNA originated (12). Tumor DNA with signature mutations have also been detected in sputum, breast fluid, and feces. However, it is still unclear how early in the disease process these tests could be used. Another emerging approach, namely proteomics, allows for the screening of hundreds or thousands of proteins in peripheral blood to detect patterns that may be highly specific for certain diseases, including cancers (13).

2.6. Improving Risk Assessment

More homogeneous disease groupings, improved measurement of study variables, and accounting for effect modification due to genetic or acquired susceptibility result in reduced misclassification in epidemiological studies, allowing for risk estimates that are more precise and that pertain to more refined subgroups of the population. Since epidemiological data are used in risk assessment to formulate individual risk functions, molecular epidemiologic studies can increase the validity and specificity of these functions.

3. CATEGORIES OF BIOMARKERS

Biomarkers used in epidemiological studies have been classified into markers of internal dose, markers of biologically effective dose, markers of susceptibility, and markers of early biological effects. These categories of biomarkers are better suited to some study designs than others, as described below.

3.1. Markers of Internal Dose

Biomarkers of internal dose typically measure a compound in biological specimens to assess the subjects’ exposure to biological, nutritional, occupational, medical, or environmental agents, or to levels of endogenously produced compounds, such as hormones (7). Examples of markers of internal dose are given in Table 1. The utility of this type of biomarkers depends upon the half-life of the agent in the body and the pattern of the exposure it is measuring (e.g., daily vs. episodic). If the compound measured is rapidly
### Table 1 Examples of Markers of Internal Dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biomarkers</th>
<th>Specimens</th>
<th>Exposure</th>
<th>Half-life</th>
<th>Target organ</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxin B1 and metabolites</td>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>Aflatoxin in diet</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic</td>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>Copper smelting</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotinine</td>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>Tobacco</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDE</td>
<td>Serum</td>
<td>DDT</td>
<td>Several months/years</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascorbic acid</td>
<td>Plasma</td>
<td>Dietary vit. C</td>
<td>Few hours</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Red blood cell</td>
<td>Dietary folate</td>
<td>120 days</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Toe nails</td>
<td>Dietary selenium</td>
<td>&gt;1 year</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estradiol</td>
<td>Plasma</td>
<td>Endogenous estrogens</td>
<td>&gt;1 year</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Modified from Refs. 8 and 21.*
eliminated or if the exposure is episodic, multiple measurements may be required in order to reduce the ratio of within- to between-individual variance (see Sec. 4) and estimate a “usual” level. Biomarkers of internal dose are particularly useful in prospective studies because the problem of reverse causality (i.e., disease status affecting the level of the biomarker) that can plague case–control studies is minimized or eliminated. However, markers of internal dose can sometimes be used in case–control studies when it is unlikely that either the exposure or the markers have been affected by the disease process or treatment (i.e., when studying a precursor lesion or early disease stage), or when the marker reflects past (presumably, prediagnostic) exposure (e.g., DDT metabolites in adipose tissue) and is not affected by disease status.

3.2. Markers of Biologically Effective Dose

In contrast to markers of internal dose, which measure the internal level of a compound or its metabolites, markers of biologically effective dose assess the amount of this compound that interacts with critical subcellular or cellular targets. Thus, these markers have the advantage of integrating the effects of both exposure and host susceptibility. For example, certain chemicals can bind covalently to proteins in the cell to form an adduct (Table 2). DNA adduct formation often occurs after metabolic activation of a carcinogen and can be followed by DNA repair. Thus, measurement of adducts can assess both exposure to a specific carcinogen and the individual’s capacity to activate this carcinogen and repair DNA, as well as other possible host factors. Since formation of chemical–DNA adducts are thought to be important in carcinogenesis, individuals with the highest levels of DNA adducts are expected to be at greater cancer risk. A frequent limitation of adduct studies is that samples of target tissues are often not available and that surrogate tissue needs to be used. DNA adducts have limited applications in case–control studies due to the relatively short life of most adducts evaluated to date. However, protein adducts (hemoglobin or albumin adducts) have a longer half-life and, thus, their use may be possible in retrospective studies of early-stage cancers.

3.3. Markers of Susceptibility/Resistance

Cancer families have been noted for centuries. Linkage studies followed by positional cloning have allowed the identification of the genes responsible for a number of familial cancer syndromes, such as retinoblastoma, Wilm’s tumor, Li–Fraumeni syndrome, Von Hippel–Lindau disease, familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), and familial breast–ovary cancers (44). These mutations are typically rare in populations but carry a high disease risk (high penetrance).
### Table 2  Examples of Markers of Biologically Effective Dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adducts&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Exposure</th>
<th>Biospecimen&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alkylated Hb</td>
<td>Propylene oxide</td>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>Workers</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-Aminobiphenyl–Hb</td>
<td>Cigarette smoking</td>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>Smokers</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFB&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;–guanine</td>
<td>Diet</td>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFB&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;–DNA</td>
<td>Diet</td>
<td>Liver tissue</td>
<td>Taiwanese</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAH–DNA</td>
<td>PAH in cigarette smoke/ environment</td>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>Lung cancer patients, smokers, workers</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNK–Hb</td>
<td>Cigarette smoke</td>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>Smokers</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>AFB<sub>1</sub>, aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub>; PAH, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon; NNK, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butaneone.

<sup>b</sup>RBC, red blood cells; WBC, white blood cells.

*Source*: Modified from Ref. 8.
They can be used for predictive genetic testing in situations where preventive interventions are possible.

Potentially more relevant to public health are low-penetrance but common susceptibility genes, such as those listed in Table 3. Examples include genetic polymorphisms associated with interindividual differences in the metabolism of xenobiotics, DNA repair, or metabolism of hormones or key nutrients. Markers of susceptibility to behavioral exposures include genetic polymorphisms controlling metabolic processes affecting one’s adoption of healthy or unhealthy lifestyle habits (e.g., toxic reaction to alcohol curtailing ethanol consumption; biological basis for susceptibility to nicotine or ethanol addiction).

Measuring enzymes or hormones that are thought to be the basis for the susceptibility, directly by assessing their levels in plasma or tissue, or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mechanism</th>
<th>Gene examples</th>
<th>Cancer</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dominant oncogene</td>
<td>ras, myc</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor suppressor genes</td>
<td>p53, rb</td>
<td>Lung, bladder</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinogen activation</td>
<td>CYP1A1</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CYP1A2</td>
<td>Bladder, colon</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CYP2E1</td>
<td>Lung, NPC</td>
<td>30, 32, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NAT2</td>
<td>Colon</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinogen detoxification</td>
<td>NAT2</td>
<td>Bladder, bladder</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormone metabolism</td>
<td>CYP17</td>
<td>Bladder, prostate</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormone receptor</td>
<td>Androgen receptor</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin metabolism</td>
<td>Vitamin D receptor</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol metabolism</td>
<td>MTHFR</td>
<td>Colon</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ADH, ALDH</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addiction</td>
<td>Dopamine receptors</td>
<td>Smoking related cancers</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA repair</td>
<td>XP, AT hOGGI</td>
<td>Skin, Burkitt lymphoma, lung</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Modified from Ref. 44.
indirectly by using a pharmacological probe (e.g., caffeine for NAT2 or CYP1A2 activity, chlorzoxazone for CYP2E1), is often possible in order to characterize the phenotype of interest. Such phenotyping assays are often difficult to use in case–control studies as the disease or its treatment may affect these measurements. In contrast, genotyping using genomic DNA has often been favored in case–control studies since the genotype of an individual is determined at birth and remains unaffected by disease or treatment. However, even with genotyping, the prospective design remains optimal when studying rapidly lethal diseases because of biases resulting from potential differential survival (e.g., due to differences in response to therapy by genotypes (45)) that may plague case–control studies. Moreover, the genes studied may convey an increased or decreased risk only in individuals who have been exposed (gene–environment interaction); hence, the importance of carefully assessing exposure. Compared to case–control studies, prospective studies offer the advantage of generating exposure data that are devoid of recall bias since this information is collected before the disease develops.

3.4. Markers of Early Biological Effects

Markers of early biological effects represent processes that are intermediate on the etiological pathway between exposure and clinically detectable disease. Examples of such markers are given in Table 4. These markers may help identify a mechanistic link between exposure and disease. They may also be used as disease surrogates for intervention studies or as screening tools for primary studies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marker</th>
<th>Exposure</th>
<th>Biospecimen</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sister chromatid exchange</td>
<td>Industrial, radiation</td>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micronuclei</td>
<td>Cigarette smoke</td>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromosomal aberrations</td>
<td>Industrial, radiation</td>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutations in tumor suppressor genes</td>
<td>Dietary AFB1, Benzo[a]pyrene, UV</td>
<td>Liver cells, Bronchial epithelial cells, Skin</td>
<td>50, 51, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codon 249&lt;sup&gt;ser&lt;/sup&gt; p53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p53 hot spot mutations at codons 157, 248 and 273</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC to TT mutation in p53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and secondary prevention. For example, somatic mutations may be identified in target genes (e.g., p53), providing evidence of irreversible genetic damage. In some cases, specific mutations in the gene may indicate exposure to specific agents (DNA fingerprints) or may point to specific mechanisms. They may also be used clinically as prognostic factors or as endpoints in intervention studies evaluating genetic responses to various exposures.

Chromosomal aberrations are less specific markers but they are also thought to be intermediate in the etiological pathway to cancer. They have been used as markers of exposure or to evaluate individual sensitivity to mutagens or carcinogens.

4. DEVELOPMENT OF A BIOMARKER

A model for the development and validation of a biomarker is illustrated in Figure 2. Biomarkers are selected on their biological relevance to the question under study and on their practicality and validity. The biological relevance of a biomarker is usually established in animal studies and other experimental systems. It is based on specific knowledge about metabolism, product formation, and general mechanism of action. The development of a biomarker in the laboratory also includes the optimization of the specificity, sensitivity, and reproducibility of the assay used in its measurement, as well as the determination of the most appropriate biospecimen for the measurement (serum, plasma, red blood cells, spot urine, overnight urine, 24-h urine, etc.). In addition, optimal conditions are established for collecting, processing, and storing the samples in which the assay will be performed.

Whether a biomarker appears promising for use in large-scale studies rests on its validity, reliability, and practicality, which need to be assessed in preliminary field studies. A biomarker is considered valid if it measures well what it is supposed to measure. Although the concept is straightforward, validity is often difficult to establish as it requires a comparison to a gold standard that is rarely available. In contrast, reliability measures the extent to which a marker provides consistent results across repeated measurements. Although high validity implies high precision and reliability, high reliability can be obtained with a highly biased measure. Validity and reliability are, thus, two different attributes that are important in assessing the potential value of a biomarker (54). Considerations about the feasibility of using a biomarker in the field include the amount and type of biological specimen needed, the time required for the assay, and its cost.

When the potential value of a biomarker has been established, information on the extent and sources of its variability needs to be collected in order to adequately design studies that will use the biomarker. An estimate of the variation in the biomarker measurement in the population under study is required in order to carry out power estimations. Information on
Figure 2  Model for the development of a biomarker. *Source:* Modified from Ref. 59.
sources of variability is needed in order to identify potential confounders and effect modifiers that will need to be assessed as covariates.

The variation in a biomarker measurement is made up of two components, the intra- and interindividual variations. The intraindividual variability represents the extent to which the biomarker changes when measured several times on the same individual. Intraindividual variability is itself composed of laboratory variation (due to technical variation in the laboratory), sampling variation (variation resulting from a change in the way the sample was collected, processed, or stored), and intrasubject variation (true variation in the marker over a certain period of time). The components of laboratory variability are described in Table 5, along with the types of quality control samples required to assess them. Sources of sampling variability due to differences in biospecimen collection, processing, and storage are listed in Table 6. The true interindividual variability is the extent to which the level of the marker differs among individuals (due to exposure, host characteristics, etc.). The intraindividual variability can be considered as

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 5</th>
<th>Determinants of Variability in Laboratory Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relative degree of variability</td>
<td>Comparison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimal</td>
<td>Same analytical run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Different analytical runs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximal</td>
<td>Different laboratories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Different methods</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Modified from Ref. 54.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 6</th>
<th>Sources of Variability in Sample Collection, Processing, and Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collection</td>
<td>Processing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor (e.g., fasting vs. nonfasting; sitting vs. supine)</td>
<td>Time since collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of venipuncture</td>
<td>Refrigeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of collection tube/additives</td>
<td>Exposure to light (carotenoids)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of collection (e.g., spot vs. 12 hr urine)</td>
<td>Speed of centrifugation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemolysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
noise and the interindividual variability as the signal of interest. Biomarkers that have a high interindividual variability compared to its intraindividual variability (i.e., a high signal-to-noise ratio) are particularly useful and will require a smaller sample size to test an hypothesis.

When the inter- vs. intraindividual variability of a biomarker has been described, additional investigations need to be conducted to characterize the main sources for this variability. These studies will help to identify potential confounders or effect modifiers that should be considered in hypothesis-testing studies using the biomarker. These preliminary studies typically use a cross-sectional design to assess the level of the marker by subject characteristics, such as age, sex, ethnic group, and other known risk factors for the disease of interest (e.g., dietary factors, smoking, and genotypes). They may also be small intervention studies assessing the effects of important modifiable variables (e.g., diet, smoking) on the level of a marker.

5. METHODOLOGICAL ISSUES

Although the use of biomarkers may increase the amount of useful information gained from epidemiological studies, the validity of the results, as in traditional epidemiology, rests on the adherence of these studies to time-tested epidemiologic principles. Of primary importance are the concepts of selection bias, random and systematic errors, confounding, and effect-modification. As primarily an observational science, molecular epidemiology is subject to the same biases and limitations as traditional epidemiology and should be practiced and evaluated with the same rigor.

It has been construed that molecular epidemiologic studies, because they deal with biological measurements, are less affected by selection bias or confounding. This view is untenable and should be rejected. In biology, cause and effect relationships rarely occur in isolation. They are often impacted upon by multiple host or extraneous factors that, themselves, may correlate with subject selection factors (resulting in selection bias) or other risk factors (resulting in confounding).

Although the justification for using biomarkers in an epidemiological study is that they will yield better measurements of study variables than conventional methods, minimizing measurement error and avoiding systematic error is even more a priority in molecular epidemiology than in traditional epidemiology. This is because inferences in traditional epidemiology are typically made based on relative differences using categorical exposures (e.g., quartiles), whereas the interpretation of biomarker data emphasizes more absolute levels and individual results. Strict quality standards are required in the laboratory and in the field to maximize the accuracy of the results and minimize measurement error due to laboratory and sampling variability. Particularly problematic is the systematic error that may occur if samples of
cases and controls (or “exposed” and “nonexposed” subjects in prospective studies) are collected, processed, stored, or analyzed under different conditions. As a rule, samples for cases and controls (or “exposed” and “nonexposed” subjects) should be matched on collection conditions and storage duration, and the matched samples analyzed together in the same batch. Also, laboratory personnel analyzing the samples should remain blind to the case–control status of the samples. Duplicate samples should be used to monitor both intra- and inter-run laboratory variability throughout the study and those data should be published with the study findings.

Also of particular relevance to molecular epidemiological studies is the need for adequate statistical power in order to accept or reject the null hypothesis with confidence. Because molecular epidemiological studies are often expensive and logistically complex to carry out, many studies have been small and, as the result, inconclusive. Since studies with positive findings, even if they are inadequately small, are more likely to be published than negative studies, the influence on the field of these small studies tends to be excessive. Furthermore, when studying complex diseases, such as cancer, using a molecular epidemiology approach to home in on a specific step of a particular biological pathway, effect size is expected to be smaller than when studying a complex exposure that acts through multiple pathways (e.g., smoking, specific dietary components or patterns, hormones). Thus, it is an imperative for null studies to report their statistical power to detect weak effects. Finally, sample size requirements are especially taxing when interactions are tested, as very large sample sizes (sometimes in the thousands) are typically needed (55).

Because molecular epidemiological studies often attempt to identify individual susceptibility factors, the relationships observed are often found to be limited to, or stronger for, subgroups of the study population (56). Sometimes even opposite effects are expected for different study subgroups (57). Exploration of these interactions must be part of an a priori, biology-based hypothesis since the testing of an association in multiple subgroups increases the likelihood of a chance finding. A related problem is the testing of multiple hypotheses in the same study, a common practice to increase cost-efficiency. This practice also increases the probability that a chance association emerges as statistically significant. Thus, the knowledge of the number of hypotheses tested in a study is useful in interpreting the results. Similarly, findings that were not part of the initial study hypotheses should clearly be identified as such, as they need to be reproduced in other studies before being given much credence.

6. ETHICAL ISSUES

The use of biomarkers may present ethical issues that do not manifest themselves as acutely in traditional epidemiological studies. Biomarker studies
may generate particularly sensitive information on exposure, early biological effects, or susceptibility to cancer about individual research participants. This information may be misused, for example, as the basis for denying insurance coverage or employment. In order to protect the participants from any kind of stigmatization or discrimination, as well as to assure their privacy in general, strict confidentiality measures are required. Access to physical and electronic files must be severely restricted. This includes the use of encryption, fire walls, and passwords to protect electronic datafiles. In addition, in the United States, when the information to be collected is particularly sensitive, investigators may apply, at the start of the study, for a “Certificate of Confidentiality,” which would prevent the researcher from having to release data to a third party, even if required as part of a legal proceeding (58). There remains differences in opinion as to whether research participants should be told of test results obtained in a research setting. This is particularly relevant to those biomarkers that have a high predictive value. In addition to the risks involved in participating in the study, the type of tests conducted and the significance and limitations of the test results should be explained to the subjects as part of the study informed consent process. The decision to report results to the subjects should be limited to preventable conditions and should be based on the degree of clinical usefulness and the reliability of the information provided by the biomarker. Positive results may require repeat testing, counseling, and diagnostic evaluation.

7. CONCLUSION

Historically, epidemiologists have investigated the distributions of diseases by person, time, and place in order to make inferences about their causes. Over the years, methodological tools have been introduced in order to better characterize each of these three key elements. For example, laboratory assays have been used to monitor the ambient environment (air, food, soil, water, etc.) or to detect present or past exposure to an infectious agent. The recent interest in the development of exquisitely sensitive and specific biomarkers offers much promise for the continued contributions of epidemiology to our knowledge of cancer etiology, risk assessment, and prevention. The purpose of this chapter was to summarize the applications of biomarkers, as well as the methodological aspects of their use. It should be stressed that, although the current technology permits the detection of changes at the cellular and molecular levels, and of very low doses of exposure, at these levels inherited and acquired host factors can be strong sources of variability and confounding. Thus, more than ever, the soundness of the epidemiological approach remains critical to the quality of the data.
REFERENCES


Methods for Genetic Testing I: Assessing Mutations in Cancers

Haruhiko Sugimura
Department of Pathology, Hamamatsu University School of Medicine,
Hamamatsu, Shizuoka, Japan

Peter G. Shields
Cancer Genetics and Epidemiology Program, Department of Medicine and Oncology, Lombardi Cancer Center, Georgetown University Medical Center, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

There are over 100,000 human genes located on 46 chromosomes. Genes are composed of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) in two strands joined by nucleotide base pairing. The DNA sequence provides a written language of three base codons that are transcribed to mRNA, which then are translated to proteins. These expressed proteins then govern cellular function. The codons code for specific amino acids. Not all of a gene, however, and not all of a chromosome, codes for amino acids. The nucleotides are organized together into either exons, which are transcribed, and introns, which are not. There also are promoter regions within introns that decide when and how much a gene is transcribed. Among people, most of the genetical sequence is the same, but there are important differences too, which affect such things as hair color, height, and facial characteristics. This diversity is controlled through variations in DNA sequence. Any variation that occurs in more than 1% of the population is considered a polymorphism (a single-base polymorphism also is known as an SNP). It is estimated that genetical polymorphisms occur
approximately every 500 bases. But other polymorphisms include more than one base insertion or deletion (and there can be variable numbers in different people—variable nucleotide tandem repeats). In some cases, whole exons or large parts of genes can be inserted or deleted.

Familial cancers involving highly penetrant mutations of single genes account for less than 5–10% of human cancers (1,2). The identification of these cancers is not difficult with an adequate level of curiosity and knowledge. But to do this, it is essential that clinicians make a thorough record of clinical information, including the onset of symptoms, other sites of malignancy, family history, the ages of both affected and unaffected family members, lifestyle information, occupations, ethnicity, and consanguinity. This information is confirmed or supplemented with mutational analysis. But, molecular techniques for detecting inherited mutations cannot compensate for a lack of clinical data.

Human tumors occur through an accumulation of multiple mutations and genetical changes (3–5). They affect gene function and the coding of proteins, which allows cancer to develop. The study of mutations provides insights into tumorigenesis and forecasting of clinical behavior. The significance of mutations also provide etiological clues for associations with individual and population cancer risks. Genetical changes that are acquired and seen in tumors include point mutations, base deletions, base insertions, loss of heterozygosity (LOH) (gene deletion), chromosomal loss, amplifications, microsatellite instability, rearrangements, translocation, and chromosomal instability.

Mutations affect genetical function as they alter the genetical code in an exon, splice-site region or promoter region. Thus, mutations can be nonsense (change into stop codon), frame-shift (three bases plus one or two bases insertion or deletion change a reading frame or possibly generate a premature stop codon), or missense (amino acid substitution) mutations. Mutations also can be silent (no amino acid change). Nonsense and frame-shift mutations have potentially drastic effects on the gene product by causing a truncated protein. Amino acid substitutions may or may not be associated with a change in protein function, polarity, or pH.

In this chapter, possible interpretations of the mutations in tumors and how they are identified are addressed from the standpoint of individual cancer risk. The assessment of mutations in cancer must always be done from the viewpoint of its primary role in initial tumorigenesis.

2. MUTATED GENES IN HUMAN CANCERS

Mutations in the early stages of cancer and precancerous lesions are among the most informative for providing information about the carcinogenic process. These mutations can be directly involved in augmenting carcinogenesis. However, some mutations occur without consequence and result from an abnormal cellular process (6). These mutations are also called “passenger”
mutations, the sequels of the genetical instability during the tumorigenesis, and are probably not the cause of the tumor development, although, it is still possible that these “passenger” mutations may confer some peculiar characteristics to the biological behavior of the tumors. When studying cancer risk and the resulting mutations, lesions in genes affecting early stages probably represent early exposures.

We can categorize cancer genes as oncogenes (including signal transduction molecules, receptor and nonreceptor kinases and phosphatases) and suppressor genes (nuclear transcription factors, cell cycle dependent genes, and cell adhesion molecules). The former are genes that augment cell proliferation and tumorigenesis by increasing gene expression. The latter augments cell proliferation and tumorigenesis when function is lost due to a mutation. Oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes are mutated in essentially every human tumor. Interestingly, only a few genes play a role in cancers from multiple organs, but most appear to be specific to some tumors.

Cancer-related genes also can be categorized into gatekeeper, caretaker, and landscaper genes (7). Caretaker genes are responsible for maintaining cell integrity (i.e., DNA repair). Mutations in gatekeeper genes are nearly always found in early precursor lesions and their (in) activation is essential for initiation of specific neoplasms. These genes include BRca1, p53, and others. Inactivation of gatekeeper genes may be necessary for passing the genetical “threshhold” of the neoplastic process. Gatekeepers control cell proliferation in each tissue and include APC (8–10), beta-catenin (11–14); NF1 (15), patched (16), and others. Generally speaking, once inactivation occurs (for example, in the case of ret) in a gatekeeper gene, clonal expansion is more likely to occur followed by the accumulation of multiple genetical events.

An individual’s risk for cancer is a function of their genetical predisposition (preinherited mutations found in the germline) and environmental exposures. This is then added to by acquired mutations that occur as a result of those gene–environment interactions, such as a mutation in a caretaker gene. We believe that mutations are nonrandom profiles of what caused a particular cancer. Nonrandomness of the mutations of certain genes (p53, ATM, Brca1, APC, and others) help us understand what causes cancer, especially when studied in animal and in vitro cell culture models. This so-called “carcinogen fingerprint,” as methodologies are further developed, is considered among the best ways of determining carcinogenic etiologies.

3. GENETICAL ASSAYS

In this chapter, the practical aspects of mutation assessment are reviewed. Physicians, surgeons, diagnostic pathologists, laboratory technologists, nurses, epidemiologists, and other health workers need to be prepared for research studies and clinical decision making (17,18). Health professionals
working in developing countries also are encouraged to participate in this field (19). Every cancer patient, whether suspected as representing a familial cancer syndrome or not, should be considered unique and their tissues irreplaceable. Biopsy and other surgical specimens must be properly handled, and different simultaneous pathological processing procedures should be used to allow for different types of assays. More and more, tissues collected in community hospitals, otherwise not involved in research, are serving as a valuable resource in large studies. So, staff members must prevent autolysis. It is helpful to use different fixations because these provide different DNA yields. As described later, a success rate for DNA recovery from the paraffin blocks depends on appropriate fixation. For example, long immersion of resected tissues in formalin fixatives damages tissues for further molecular investigations. Frozen tissue is essential for many genetical assays, but is not sufficient for RNA analysis or cell culture without special processing. Quick fixation is required for electron microscopy, but not for DNA extraction.

Good pathological examination using standard techniques is required to ensure success at subsequent analysis. The histological type of cancer should be confirmed when planning to assay DNA, then microdissection is needed so tumor cells are separated from other cells. This is best done from fixed tissues.

Every step in the process of tumor collection, fixation, and storage affects the ability to perform subsequent genetical assays because they can affect DNA quality and quantity. The most commonly used fixative is formaldehyde (so-called 1/10, which is 3.6%). Many laboratories recommend neutral buffered formalin. Some institutes use AMEX fixation, which has been asserted to be one of the best ways to keep the tissues as a possible good source of DNA, RNA, and protein (20,21). This procedure takes some extra steps in the routine histopathological laboratory and at least one person knowledgable in that procedure is needed. The time between resection and fixation should be short and the fixation time should be short. An alternate fixative is ethanol, which is better for subsequent DNA studies. And more laboratories are using OCT with rapid freezing with success.

Other variables that affect DNA quality and quantity occur during DNA extraction, such as insufficient time for dewaxing with xylene, detergent (SDS or tween-20) or insufficient time for proteinase K digestion. Greater quantities of the paraffin embedded tissue are not necessarily better for DNA assays, because this allows for greater amounts of inhibitors from the blocks. Several agents are available for extracting DNA from fixed tissues that are thought to reduce these inhibitors, e.g., Chelex-100 (22).

Table 1 lists the biomarker assays used for risk assessment and diagnosis. Basic and additional protocols are available elsewhere (23–26).

There are many types of genetical assays in use today. Some of these will be described below. The majority of molecular genetical tests used today begin with the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). There are emerging
Table 1  Biomarkers of Cancer Risk and Diagnosis

**Biomarkers for disease risk**

Markers of inherited susceptibility
- Genetical variation causing impaired metabolic activation or excretion of toxins
- Genetical variation causing defects in the repair of DNA, cell cycle control, or programmed cell death

Markers of acquired susceptibility
- Formation of DNA adducts
- Integration of viral DNA
- Mutations in critical genes
- Mutations in noncritical genes
- Hypermethylation of gene promoter region
- Altered gene expression
- Clastogenic abnormalities
- Antibodies to DNA adducts
- Altered protein or mRNA expression patterns

**Biomarkers for preclinical disease**

Markers of cellular alteration
- Altered morphology of cells
- Altered phenotypic expression of cells
- Clonal proliferation of cells
- Altered gene expression
- Antibodies to gene products
- Altered protein or mRNA expression patterns

**Biomarkers for clinical disease**

Markers of cellular alteration
- Altered morphology of cells
- Altered phenotypic expression of cells
- Immunohistochemical staining
- Clonal proliferation of cells
- Altered gene expression
- Antibodies to gene products
- Altered protein or mRNA expression patterns

Markers of prognosis
- Pathological diagnosis
- Immunohistochemical staining
- Altered gene expression
- Cytogenetic abnormalities
- Altered protein or mRNA expression patterns
technologies that will eliminate this need, but none have been sufficiently validated for use in the clinical setting. Polymerase chain reaction, in fact, is among the most important recent advances in molecular genetics. The reaction is the amplification of small amounts of DNA to make lots of DNA, which are then available for subsequent analyses. Polymerase chain reaction is facile and inexpensive. It has been used in forensic medicine for DNA fingerprinting from a single hair follicle or blood stain (27); mutation detection in single sperm cells to assess teratogenicity rates (28); and amplification of DNA from paraffin embedded tissue blocks (29), serum (30) or ancient DNA (31). It also forms the basis for microarray technology (32,33). Polymerase chain reaction relies upon a temperature stable enzyme (Taq polymerase) that can replicate DNA when using gene- and site-specific primers that begin the reaction. While PCR is generally used for DNA amplification, it also can be used for RNA amplification using a different enzyme (reverse transcriptase) (34). The major limitations of PCR lie in its sensitivity that allows for contamination by unwanted DNA from other sources. It also is critical to choose primers carefully to ensure specificity and prevent amplifying the wrong gene.

There are many applications for PCR. It is being used directly without other techniques for diagnosing viral infections (e.g., HIV in lymphocytes (35), hepatitis B virus in liver and serum (36), and papilloma virus in uterine cervix (37)). It can be used to amplify mutated and structurally altered regions of a given gene (e.g., translocation of chromosomes by determining the break-point cluster region for the bcr-abl oncogene for the diagnosis of chronic myelogenous leukemia (38). Other applications involve the identification of single-base mutations or genetical polymorphisms by designing primers that anneal only if matched to the unique sequence (e.g., oligo-specific PCR for the identification of polymorphisms in the N-acetyl transferase gene predictive of cancer risk in workers exposed to aromatic amines (39). Polymerase chain reaction also is combined with other techniques whereby PCR amplification products can be subjected to restriction enzyme digestion to identify genetical polymorphisms or mutations [e.g., restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis for cytochrome P450 genetical polymorphisms (40)] or used for hybridization with mutation-specific probes (e.g., oligonucleotide hybridization for the detection of Ras mutations (41). Another important application is the use of PCR to amplify sufficient quantities of DNA fragments for nucleotide sequencing. This method allows for the determination of specific sequences from unknown genes or for the detection of mutations (42).

3.1. Genotyping

Genotyping to determine genetical variation (e.g., color of hair, metabolic activity, DNA repair) can be done by using different types of detection methods following PCR. This genetical variation can happen via SNPs, or
multiple-base pair insertions or deletions. A common way is to utilize RFLP analysis. Restriction fragment length polymorphism enzymes identify short, specific DNA sequences, cutting the DNA at those sequences into uniquely sized fragments that can be separated electrophoretically. Restriction enzymes recognize palindromic sites where the sequence on each strand is identical with each other (when read in 5' to 3' direction). Restriction fragment length polymorphism enzymes are only useful when a palindromic site exists. In other cases, the variant may be determined using single-strand conformational polymorphism (SSCP) analysis. If the variant results in the insertion or deletion of a base or bases, then electrophoretic methods that separate fragments based on size can be used. The fortunate property of DNA, where each strand is complementary and annealed by nucleic acid base-pairing (guanine to cytosine and adenine to thymine), can be taken advantage of to identify specific genetical sequences. Under experimental conditions the two complementary DNA strands can be separated and reannealed. Single-stranded probes of short DNA fragments can be used to identify a specific genetical sequence by exposing DNA to the probe. Using oligo-specific hybridization, a radioactive or fluorescently labeled probe marker will bind to the matched DNA. Two probes are used in tandem that are matched to one variant or the other. This unique property allows for Southern blot analysis of DNA (43), which subjects DNA to restriction enzyme digestion, separation of the resulting fragments by electrophoresis, and then probing the fragments for the genetical sequence and measuring the lengths of the fragments. The method also is used for northern blot analysis of messenger RNA (mRNA) (44), which is almost identical with Southern blot analysis except that RNA is used instead of DNA.

Several new methodologies exist for high through-put genotyping. These include microarrays that can determine 2000 SNPs following 24 different PCR assays, real-time PCR that allows for detection of SNPs without gel electrophoresis, matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time of flight (Maldi-TOF) mass spectroscopy (45), denatured high-performance liquid chromatography (46), capillary gel electrophoresis, and fluorescence detection (47) and pyrosequencing (48).

3.2. Sequencing

DNA sequencing can be used to determine the actual genetical code. This may be used for identifying an inherited code (i.e., sequence of entire gene or SNPs) or mutations in tumors. The dideoxy-mediated chain termination method was among the first established and allows for the determination of the nucleic acid sequence of a gene (49). For example, a PCR fragment is amplified and four dideoxy reactions are carried out for each of the four nucleotides. The amplified product, radiolabeled nucleotides, 2,3'-dideoxy-nucleotides, and a polymerase are mixed so that the 2,3'-dideoxynucleotide
is randomly incorporated into the DNA. Based on the location of the dideoxynucleotide incorporation, the DNA sequence can be determined after electrophoretic separation. More recent high-throughput methods rely on microarray technology following PCR (32) or capillary electrophoresis.

Because sequencing can be labor intensive, some investigators use methods to screen for mutations. The SSCP analysis was originally developed by Orita et al. (50) as such a screening method. Here, DNA is denatured into single strands and analyzed by gel electrophoresis. If there are base changes, then the migratory distance on the gel changes. The basis for this technique is still empirical, thus the sensitivity of the detection of mutation depends on which product you like to screen (51). The electrophoresis conditions including the glycerol content and gel temperature determine the specificity and sensitivity of the procedures, but there is no general principle about which condition is the best. For some fragments, only 12.5% glycerol can identify the migratory differences while at other times electrophoresis at 4°C is needed.

3.3. Gene Loss and Loss of Heterozygosity

Assessing for loss at heterozygosity (LOH) is a major way for determining gene deletions. Using PCR and SNP analysis, we examine tumors in people who are heterozygous for the loci (germline polymorphisms where each allele is different) and determine if both or only one allele is present in the tumor. This only works in persons who have inherited different sequences on the allele from each parent, but then in the tumor only one of those alleles is seen. Southern blotting is the classical technique for LOH, named after the inventor. In this procedure, extracted DNA is enzymatically digested with restriction enzymes and the digested products are transferred to a membrane. The membrane with the products is then hybridized to a “probe.” The probe is a labeled marker matching the gene of interest. The procedure usually takes 3 days or more including electrophoresis, transferring, hybridization, washing, and exposure to the film. The required DNA amounts are greater than in other procedures described in the following sections. This method requires that the DNA is of good quality. Previously a few years ago, Southern blotting has essentially been replaced by PCR amplification of several genes assessment for loss of heterozygosity, using the SNP analysis. This allows for greater odds for informative cases, especially if the loci is a minisatellite (tandem repeats of 20–30 DNA bases).

Several methods are available to analyze the gross structure of chromosomes in metaphase and prophase of mitosis. Chromosome aberrations can be observed by identifying each of the 23 chromosomal pairs for completeness and number (52). Common uses of such analyses include the detection of trisomy 21, which is diagnostic for Down’s syndrome, and the detection of a translocation between chromosomes 9 and 21, which is diagnostic for chronic
myelogenous leukemia and the Philadelphia chromosome. The availability of specific chromosomal markers now makes this method more specific. Another gross chromosomal change detectable in human cells includes the sister chromatid exchange (53). In this case, sister chromatids of one chromosome are switched, which can be counted using nonspecific markers and correlated with exposures to tobacco and certain chemicals. A method of detecting DNA damage that does not require cell culture and examination of chromosomes during mitosis is the detection of micronuclei (54). Small chromosomal fragments are sometimes found to exist outside the nucleus.

3.4. **Microsatellite Instability**

The assessment of microsatellite instability is a marker for altered DNA repair. Analysis of tumors indicates that there are increased numbers of repeat DNA sequences that are not present in the patient's nontumor tissues. Thus, there were errors during DNA replication. Mono-, di-, tri-, quadra-, and pentanucleotide repeats are ubiquitous in human genomes, probably due to replication errors through evolution, but then in tumors, these loci are possible sites for more slippage during replication. Microsatellite instability is one of the common genetical alterations in human tumors where the repeats might be more or less. They are caused by somatic changes, and also occur in people with genetical mismatch repair deficiencies in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. The germline mutations of MLH1 and MSH2 (PMS1, PMS2, MSH6) have been most commonly documented in some, not all, families with high rates of colon cancer (55,56). Target molecules can be surrogate markers for microsatellite instability (replication error type). These include TGF beta II receptor, MSH3, MSH6, IGF II receptor, and Bax gene (57). The alterations in repetitive sequences in the coding exon of these genes can be predictive of progress.

3.5. **Immunohistochemistry**

Overexpression of genes relating to DNA damage can be detected with immunohistochemistry. Using tumor tissues fixed on slides, antibodies raised against specific proteins can be labeled and used to bind to the protein on the slide. The more the binding, the more the overexpression. This method, though, can have pitfalls like false positives (the antibody is not specific for the protein of interest) and negatives (the antibody is not good enough to stay bound to the protein during binding). In addition to the quality of the antibody, these can occur because of poor slide preparation, denatured antibodies, or high background.

3.6. **Carcinogen–DNA Adducts**

There are many types of DNA damage that can be detected using molecular genetical methods, such as carcinogen–DNA adduct detection. Chemicals or
their reactive metabolites can bind to DNA, resulting in promutagenic lesions. The combination of the chemical and the nucleotide is an adduct. The measurement of DNA adducts allows for the distinction between the measurement of chemicals in the environment and exposures inside the body and in target organs, because the former is not always indicative of the latter. DNA adducts reflect the biologically effective dose of an exposure, resulting from the competition of exposure, absorption, activation, detoxification, and DNA repair. Thus, the measurement of DNA adducts reflects both exposure and inherited susceptibilities. Elevated levels of DNA adducts have been correlated with cigarette use (58), occupational exposures to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (59), and air pollution (60).

Several methods are currently available for the measurement of DNA adducts, although all remain research tools. These include the $^{32}$P-postlabeling assay that uses hydrolytic enzymes to reduce DNA to individual nucleotides and then uses another enzyme to radiolabel the nucleotides (61). Any adducts that are present are then resolved chromatographically and quantitated by measuring the radioactivity incorporated into the nucleotide. This assay can be used as a screening method to detect unknown adducts (61) or can be combined with purification techniques to identify specific compounds such as adducts formed from polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (62) and N-nitrosamines (63). Several important immunological methods are available for the detection of DNA adducts. Using procedures such as enzyme-linked immunoadsorbant assays (ELISA) or radioimmunoassays, adducts for polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons can be measured (64–66). More recent methods utilize improved mass spectroscopy methods (67) and fluorescence detection.

4. CONCLUSIONS

Advances in technology will improve accuracy, cost, and speed of genetical testing. Further studies will elucidate the mechanistic relationships of genetics to disease, while epidemiology will assist in the identification of relevant assays for human risk. Ultimately, the institution of any clinical test depends on its reliability, sensitivity, specificity, predictive value, and cost. Quality control and quality insurance are critical parts of genetical testing (68). The evaluation of research findings requires an understanding and evaluation of the research tools that produce the findings. New assays should be evaluated against proven assays, and methods should be shown to measure what they purport to measure. The technological advances happening today are coming more rapidly than ever before.

REFERENCES


Methods for Genetic Testing II: New Methods for Assessing Acquired DNA Damage in Humans Without Cancer

Laura Gunn, Luoping Zhang, and Martyn T. Smith
Division of Environmental Health Sciences, School of Public Health, University of California at Berkeley, Berkeley, California, U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

Cancer is an abnormal genetic phenomenon, involving multiple steps of somatic mutation (1,2). Genetic damage can occur at the level of the gene (e.g., point mutations and deletions) or the chromosome (e.g., aneuploidy, translocations). During the last two decades, a wide spectrum of biomarkers of genetic damage have been developed to detect early mutational and chromosomal effects of carcinogenic exposure in humans (3). Historically, biomarkers have tended to measure mutations in surrogate genes, including hypoxanthine phosphoribosyltransferase (HPRT) and glycophorin A (GPA) (4), or use cytogenetics to assess overall changes in chromosome structure and number, such as classical and banded chromosomal aberrations (CAS), sister chromatid exchanges (SCEs), and micronucleus formation (MN) (5–7). These biomarkers have been shown to be associated with a wide range of carcinogenic exposures, but they are not truly biomarkers of early effect as they are not on the causal pathway of disease.

Identification of early causal genetic events in cancer has been the key to the recent development of novel biomarkers of early effect in high-risk populations. These novel biomarkers measure changes frequently observed among cancer patients, including point mutations in genes such as p53 and RAS,
altered gene methylation, aneuploidy (chromosome loss or gain) including monosomy 7 and trisomy 8, and specific chromosome rearrangements such as translocations. Application of these biomarkers to study individuals who may be at risk, but who do not yet have cancer, will result in improved early detection, as well as better understanding of carcinogenesis itself.

The development of valid biomarkers of early effect in individuals without cancer depends on the ability to detect infrequent mutational events at critical loci in a large background of normal DNA. Therefore, detection of these novel biomarkers employs cutting edge technologies, such as real-time quantitative polymerase chain reaction (PCR), fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) analysis, and genotypic selection methods which introduce new levels of sensitivity and specificity. Such biomarkers will be useful in epidemiological studies of environmentally induced cancers which have long latency periods as well as provide early detection for those individuals at risk. This chapter outlines a number of these new methods and examines their potential application in detecting novel biomarkers of early effect.

2. ROLE OF DIFFERENT TYPES OF GENETIC DAMAGE IN CANCER

Carcinogenesis is a complex, multistage process which involves the accumulation of a variety of mutations within a particular cell and its progeny (1). Although carcinogenesis depends on a number of factors including exposure, genetics, and target tissue, certain general characteristics of cancers are known. The role of particular genes in cancer has opened a new avenue of research over the past two decades. Oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes have taken center stage with their respective roles in cancer. Alterations in these genes ranging from small insertions, deletions, point mutations, and aberrant methylation, to gross chromosomal aberrations, like translocations, and gene amplification either enhance or inactivate the normal function of the gene and lead to abnormal proliferation, lack of cell cycle control, genomic instability, and eventually cancer. Mutations in these genes provide telltale signs of genetical changes or damage and possible cancer risk, often long before the onset of cancer. Particular genes, chromosomal regions, or entire chromosomes are vulnerable to mutation at variable points in carcinogenesis (1). This suggests that certain mutations play a specific role in the ability of a cell to survive and continue to the next step of this multistep process, as well as potentially determining what the next mutation will be. These mutations, particularly early events, may provide markers, which are indicative of genetical damage and potential cancer risk.

Thus far, few cancers have been well characterized in terms of which mutations occur at what point in the multistep process. Because much of cancer research depends on backtracking from tumor tissue, it is virtually
impossible to assess the point at which one mutation arose relative to another and how that mutation may encourage future hits. However, a few models exist which have provided valuable information about the clonal evolution of cancer. Possibly the best known model that exists is the Vogelstein and Kinzler (1) model of colon cancer (Fig. 1A). This model provides a unique opportunity to observe morphological changes resulting from each mutation acquired in a stepwise progression. From normal tissue, the cells acquire one mutation after another, beginning with the loss of a key gene involved in cell proliferation (APC), aberrant methylation, further mutation of oncogenes (RAS), and finally, loss of the DCC and p53 genes, which pushes the cell over the cancer threshold. Although the order of mutation may vary slightly in the later stages, the pattern is strikingly similar in approximately 50% of colorectal cancers. For example, late events such as the loss of p53 and DCC are only observed in late adenomas, whereas loss of APC is observed even in benign polyps. This suggests that each type of mutation plays a unique, key role in the clonal evolution, without which the cells might not transform to malignancy.

Since the original model of colon cancer, a few other models have emerged demonstrating similar patterns of mutation accumulation. Figure 1 shows three hypothetical models for three different cancer types. It is important to observe the differences in mutation pattern in each cancer type; for example, p53 mutations are believed to be early events in astrocytoma, in contrast to p53 mutations in colon cancer, which are later events. However, although the specific mutation varies among different cancers, the pattern of accumulation of mutation and the progressive impact of each mutation on cell proliferation and morphology are similar in each.

3. MEASURING POINT MUTATIONS IN CANCER-RELATED GENES

Conventional methods used to detect point mutations such as single-stranded conformation polymorphism (SSCP) and sequencing, are labor intensive and require the use of radionucleotides. Recently, a number of assays, most of which employ PCR, have been developed which do not require radioactivity, are relatively quick, and are much more sensitive than conventional methods.

The use of PCR technology has vastly improved detection and identification of mutations in cancers. Increased sensitivity and reproducibility have provided the possibility of utilizing these mutation assays as biomarkers of early effect, and for detection of minimal residual disease or precursors to relapse. Because of the low frequency of many of these mutations in the normal population, the normal background levels and variability have not yet been established. Recently, a number of assays have been developed
Figure 1  Three multistep models of carcinogenesis. (A) Vogelstein and Kinzler model of mutation pattern in colon cancer. (B) Cavanee and White model (1) of astrocytoma. (C) Theoretical model of therapy-induced leukemia.
which improve sensitivity orders of magnitude over previously used methods. Many of these assays employ methods to selectively amplify the relative number of mutants in a large pool of wild type in order to increase the sensitivity of detecting rare mutant alleles, a method referred to as genotypic selection.

3.1. Measurement of Point Mutations in RAS

One recently published assay used genotype selection for the detection of mutations in the H-RAS gene. By combining two previously published methods (8,9), the MutEx + allele-specific competitive blocker PCR (ACB-PCR) technique (10) is one of the most sensitive methods of genotypic selection. This assay begins with the denaturation of a heterogenous sample of mutant and wild-type double-stranded DNA. When reannealing, mutant DNA forms heteroduplex DNA with normal strands, while normal DNA strands form homoduplexes. Mut S, a thermostable protein, is added which binds to the mispaired sequence of the heteroduplex which protects the short sequence of mutant DNA from digestion from 3'–5' exonuclease activity of T7 DNA polymerase, whereas the wild-type DNA is digested. This Mut-Ex step results in a 1000-fold enrichment of mutant alleles relative to wild type. To further increase sensitivity, the next step utilizes an additional selection technique, ACB-PCR. This genotypic selection method is based on preferential amplification by allele-specific primers. The first primer has more mismatches to wild type than mutant, resulting in preferential amplification of mutant DNA. The second primer is blocker primer, which preferentially anneals to the wild-type sequence, but is modified with a 3'-dideoxyguanosine residue, which prevents extension. The ACB-PCR method therefore results in preferential amplification of mutant with a sensitivity of as few as 10 mutant alleles detected in the presence of $10^8$ copies of the wild-type allele.

As one of the most sensitive methods available for mutation detection, the MutEx+ ACB-PCR technique has many potential applications for mutation detection. This method is based on increasing the ratio of mutant DNA relative to wild type and is therefore a sensitive method for the detection of rare mutations. However, this method is not appropriate for unknown mutations, as the sequence of the mutated region is necessary for the design of ACB-PCR primers.

3.2. Measurement of Point Mutations in p53

Genotypic selection methods have also been applied to p53 mutation detection. Sites which are commonly mutated in the p53 gene, referred to as mutational hotspots, have been targeted as potential biomarkers of early effect. Assays utilizing allele-specific PCR have been designed to detect and preferentially amplify mutations in these hotspots. These assays either
used alone or in combination with SSCP and sequencing result in a considerable improvement in sensitivity over conventional methods of mutation detection. For example, an allele-specific PCR method developed by Wada et al. (11) has been shown to be more sensitive than SSCP alone. Allele-specific PCR resulted in the detection of mutated cells accounting for 0.01–1% of cells, in comparison to SSCP alone which has a detection limit of approximately 10% mutant cells. This method has been successfully applied to p53 hotspots to detect rare point mutations in acute myeloid leukemia (AML) and acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL) relapse cases (12). Behn and Schuermann (13) developed a similar method called p53-mutant enriched PCR-SSCP which also targets mutational hotspots in the p53 gene. This method combines PCR-SSCP with sequence specific-clamping by peptide nucleic acids (PNAs). Peptide nucleic acids are designed to preferentially bind to wild-type DNA, and do not extend, thereby blocking amplification of wild-type DNA. This results in a mutant enriched sample. Mutations are then detected by SSCP and identified by sequencing. This combination of PCR with PNAs and SSCP improves sensitivity 10–50-fold higher than conventional PCR-SSCP.

As in Mut-EX + ACB-PCR, these methods are only appropriate for certain applications. Because they target mutational hotspots of p53, they do not account for mutations outside this region, and are therefore not applicable to mutation spectrum analysis. In general, genotypic selection methods offer higher specificity and sensitivity than traditional methods. Although they are not appropriate for all applications, they are vast improvements over conventional methods previously used for these applications, including SSCP analysis.

4. MEASURING GENETIC DAMAGE AT THE CHROMOSOME LEVEL

Genetic damage at the chromosome level has been shown to be involved in the development of cancer. For example, leukemias and lymphomas are characterized by clonal chromosomal aberrations that appear to have a central role in tumorigenesis (14,15). Chromosome aberrations encompass all types of changes in chromosome structure and number. The most common numerical changes called aneuploidy are the loss (monosomy) or gain (trisomy) of one chromosome; less frequent types include the loss of both copies or the gain of more than one copy of a chromosome. Structural changes include translocations, inversions, breaks, and deletions. Generally, chromosome loss can lead to the loss of tumor suppressor genes, while chromosome gain can lead to increased oncogene expression. Further, chromosome translocations or other types of chromosome rearrangements may lead to the formation of fusion genes that are oncogenic.
4.1. Conventional Cytogenetics

Classical chromosome aberrations are the only cytenetical end point that have been shown to have predictive value for risk of cancer (6,16), particularly for hematologic malignancies (17). Therefore, classical chromosome aberrations appear to be a particularly promising early-effect biomarker of carcinogen exposure. However, classical aberrations are a measure of overall chromosome damage, not of specific events on the causal pathways of particular diseases. In order to understand the mechanisms of exposure-related diseases, we need to measure specific events on the causal pathways of those diseases. Since these specific events are relatively rare among non-diseased populations, it is important to screen levels among much larger populations or examine much greater quantities of cells from each subject in order to attain sufficient statistical power.

In myeloid leukemia, loss of part or all of chromosomes 5 and 7 is a common event, along with trisomy of chromosome 8 and various specific translocations and inversions including inv(16), t(8;21), t(9;22), t(15;17), and t(11q23) (18). These rearrangements are associated with particular types of myeloid leukemia (Fig. 2). In ALL, particularly in childhood ALL, translocation t(12;21) is common (~25%) and in non-Hodgkin lymphomas the translocation t(14;18) is found in follicular lymphoma (14). Therefore, the

![Figure 2](image-url)

**Figure 2** Chromosome rearrangements in leukemias and lymphomas. AML = acute myeloid leukemia; CML = chronic myeloid leukemia, ALL = acute lymphocytic leukemia.
detection of these changes at the chromosomal level could be very important in predicting risk of these diseases.

Many specific chromosome aberrations have been recognized using classic karyotyping among patients with clinical syndromes. For example, an extra copy of chromosome 21 is routinely detected among children born with Down syndrome. As a result, classic karyotyping has become a widely used tool of clinical diagnosis for many diseases, including leukemia. However, classic cytogenetical techniques have several drawbacks for the detection of chromosome-specific aneusomy and rearrangements. For example, the cells must be cultured to make metaphase spreads, a limited number (25–100) of scorable cells can be examined, and recognition of specific chromosomes is problematic. In addition, certain rearrangements, such as t(12;21), cannot be detected by classic banding assays because the rearranged fragments barely affect the morphology of the involved chromosomes. These problems can be now overcome by using FISH to measure aberrations in specific chromosomes in large numbers of interphase cells and metaphase spreads (19,20).

4.2. Measurement of Specific Chromosome Aberrations by Molecular Cytogenetics

Fluorescence in situ hybridization has several advantages over conventional cytogenetics, including selectivity of specific DNA probes, multiple color labeling, sensitivity of detection, and speed of microscopic analysis. Interphase FISH, in particular, offers several advantages over classical cytogenetics (21). First, interphase FISH allows analysis of non-dividing cells. Second, a much larger number of cells, at least 1000 or more, may be analyzed. Third, the detection of aneuploidy is facilitated by simply counting the number of labeled regions representing a particular chromosome of interest within the isolated interphase nucleus. By contrast, metaphase FISH can readily detect structural rearrangements in addition to aneuploidy. Furthermore, because metaphase FISH, like classical cytogenetics, analyzes dividing cells, the results from these two methods may be directly compared. A number of studies have determined that FISH is both more sensitive and convenient than classical cytogenetics (22–24). Therefore, FISH appears to be the more suitable method for large-scale population biomonitoring.

Fluorescence in situ hybridization is now a widely used tool in the analysis of chromosomal changes in human cancers, including leukemias, and in prenatal diagnostics (20,25). It has been extensively used to analyze chromosomal damage induced by exposure to ionizing radiation (26,27) and has also been gradually applied to populations exposed to chemicals and various carcinogens (28–30).

One example of a specialized FISH assay primarily employed in radiation research is that developed by Tucker and coworkers (31,32). This assay
uses single-color FISH by painting the chromosome pairs 1, 2, and 4 (or 3, 5, and 6) the same color, which allows for the detection of (1) numerical and structural chromosome aberrations among these painted chromosomes and (2) structural rearrangements between these and other untargeted chromosomes. This assay has been applied in vitro and in vivo in both animal and human studies (31–33). Since radiation is thought to cause equal levels of damage across all chromosomes (34), and chromosomes 1 through 6 (the largest chromosomes) make up 40% of the genome (35), it is hypothesized that measurement of damage in these large chromosomes can be extrapolated to the whole genome (31). This may not be true for chemical exposures as certain chemicals may have selective or preferential effects on certain chromosomes (36). For example, we showed that epoxide metabolites of 1,3-butadiene had more effect on some chromosomes than on others (37). Indeed, the hypothesis of equal levels of damage across the genome may not hold true even for low doses of radiation, as inversion of chromosome 10 has been shown to be highly sensitive to low-intensity radiation exposure (38). Interestingly, inv(10) rearranges the \textit{RET} gene and is associated with thyroid cancer, potentially caused by linear energy transfer (LET) radiation.

Our laboratory is currently employing FISH to examine the cytogenetical changes in human blood cells caused by exposure to the established leukemogen, benzene. Our plan is to examine all 22 autosomes and to particularly examine for chromosome changes associated with the development of leukemia. This study is being performed along with Drs. Rothman and Hayes of the National Cancer Institute (NCI), Drs. Li and Yin at the Chinese Academy of Preventive Medicine in Beijing, and others at the Shanghai Anti-Epidemic Center as well as other institutions in the United States. We have applied various FISH techniques in this collaborative study of 43 Chinese workers highly exposed to benzene (median exposure level = 31 ppm, 8 h. time-weighted average) and 44 frequency-matched controls. To date, five chromosomes (1, 5, 7, 8, and 21) have been examined by metaphase FISH in these highly exposed Chinese workers and their matched controls. Frequencies of monosomy 5, 7, and 8, but not 1 or 21, increased with elevated exposure levels, whereas a significant trend was observed for trisomy of all five chromosomes (36,39). The most striking dose-dependent increases were found in monosomy 7 and trisomy 7, 8 and 21. The most common structural changes detected among chromosomes 1, 5, 7, 8, and 21 were t(8;21), t(8;?) (translocation between chromosome 8 and another unidentified chromosome), breakage of chromosome 8, and deletions of the long (q) arms of chromosomes 5 and 7. A significant trend was observed for all these changes (36,39). The loss and long arm deletion of chromosomes 5 and 7, two of the most common cytogenetical changes in therapy- and chemical-related leukemia, were significantly increased in benzene-exposed workers over controls (36).
Since the development and popularization of FISH, other novel cytogenetical methods, such as comparative genome hybridization (CGH), spectral karyotyping (SKY), and color banding, have been developed. Comparative genome hybridization involves the comparison of total DNA extracted from normal and cancerous cells in order to look for specific gains or losses in genetical material associated with cancer (27). The SKY method involves painting each of the 24 different chromosomes a different color using four or five fluorophores with combined binary ratio labeling, which allows the entire karyotype to be screened for chromosome aberrations (40). Since the human eye cannot effectively distinguish the 24 colors, this method requires the use of an automated imaging system. In color banding, which is based on traditional banding techniques, each chromosome is labeled by subregional DNA probes in different colors, resulting in a unique “chromosome bar code” (41). This method allows the rapid identification of chromosomes and chromosome rearrangements. These techniques, however, are at present relatively new and have not been employed as widely or as extensively as FISH.

4.3. Limitations of FISH

While FISH can be used to measure both structural and numerical chromosome aberrations and is a powerful tool in molecular epidemiology, its sensitivity is limited to 1 in $10^{3-4}$ cells and it is relatively expensive because of the high cost of probes. This makes it difficult to use FISH to detect rare translocations between multiple chromosomes, such as t(21q22) and t(11q23). The PCR technique allows much more sensitive detection of these types of changes and is also less expensive in comparison with FISH.

5. MEASUREMENT OF CHROMOSOME REARRANGEMENTS BY PCR

Chromosome translocations produce novel fusion genes or products that can be detected at the DNA or RNA level by PCR or reverse-transcriptase PCR (RT-PCR) as well as by FISH. Polymerase chain reaction holds a number of advantages over FISH, including: (1) the ability to detect very rare events (1 copy/$10^{6-7}$ cells vs. $1/10^{3-4}$ cells by FISH) and (2) the ability to study large numbers of people easily and at low cost. These potent advantages are accompanied, however, by two disadvantages. First, the high sensitivity of PCR makes it prone to false-positive results caused by sample contamination. However, contamination artifacts can be overcome with extremely rigorous laboratory procedures (42) as well as the use of dUTP and uracil glycosylase in PCR reactions to prevent carryover contamination. Second, until recently, quantitation was difficult, especially for RT-PCR. Quantitation has also become feasible through recent advances in
exonuclease-dependent real-time PCR. This quantitative PCR assay, now generally called real-time PCR, allows for an absolute number of novel sequences to be quantified in a cell population without the need for gel electrophoresis. In addition, real-time PCR is more sensitive than conventional PCR, where a sensitivity of 1 in 10^7 can be reached if a stochastic multitube approach is taken (43,44). This technology has therefore paved the way for a new generation of biomarkers to be developed. While no methods yet exist which employ PCR to measure rare aneuploidies or genome-wide structural damage, real-time and conventional PCR techniques which measure specific chromosome rearrangements, such as translocations and inversions, and the methylation status of genes have become available.

5.1. Conventional PCR Detection of Chromosome Rearrangements

Reverse-transcriptase PCR and PCR have previously been used to detect a number of translocations including t(14;18), t(8;21), t(9;22) and t(4;11). Using these techniques, t(9;22) and t(14;18) have been detected in unexposed individuals of different ages and in smokers (45–47). Both translocations were found to increase with age and the t(14;18) translocation was increased in cigarette smokers (48). Studies from our laboratory showing detectable t(8;21) by RT-PCR in an otherwise healthy benzene exposed worker (39) clearly demonstrate the potential of RT-PCR for monitoring specific aberrations in populations exposed to suspected or established leukemogens. Because many of these translocations have multiple breakpoints or translocation partners, multiplex assays have also been developed to detect multiple or unknown rearrangements. Despite recent improvements in sensitivity and applicability, conventional PCR methods remain semiquantitative. However, with the recent advent of real-time PCR, quantitation is no longer an obstacle. Now that quantitation problems can be overcome, a whole new avenue of biological monitoring for early detection of cancer has been opened. Polymerase chain reaction-based procedures therefore hold further promise for detecting specific chromosome aberrations, especially when used in combination with FISH.

5.2. The Development of Quantitative Real-Time PCR Methods for Chromosome Rearrangements

Real-time PCR is comparable to conventional PCR in that it uses sense and antisense primers to amplify a targeted sequence of DNA. However, real-time PCR employs an additional, nonextendable oligonucleotide probe, which is positioned between the two primers during the annealing phase of amplification (Fig. 3) (49). The oligonucleotide probe is labeled with a fluorescent reporter dye [such as FAM 6-carboxy-fluorescein] at the 5’ end and a quencher fluorescent dye [such as TAMRA 6-carboxy-tetramethyl-
rhodamine] at the 3’ end. When the probe is intact, fluorescence resonance energy transfer to TAMRA quenches the FAM emission. During the extension phase of amplification, the Taq polymerase extends the primer to the region of the probe, at which point the 5’ exonuclease property of Taq cleaves the reporter dye from the probe. This results in an increase in fluorescent signal that is proportional to the amount of amplification product. The increase in reporter molecules is measured in real time by the ABI Prism 5700 or 7700 Sequence Detection Systems (PE Applied Biosystems). After each cycle fluorescence signal is measured resulting in an amplification plot, in which the point at which the fluorescence crosses a defined threshold, $C_t$, is proportional to the starting copy number. $C_t$s of positive control samples are used to generate a standard curve. From this standard curve, it is possible to calculate the copy number of unknown samples. Methods for the quantitative detection of translocations using the above TaqMan

Figure 3  Diagram of TaqMan technology in quantitative PCR R, reporter dye; Q, quencher dye. Source: Adapted from PCR Applications (49), 1999.
technology have recently been reported. For example, methods for the analysis of t(14;18), t(8;21), t(9;22), and other translocations have been presented or published (43,50–53).

5.3. Measurement of t(14;18) Found in Lymphocytic Leukemia and Lymphoma

The structural rearrangements observed in lymphocytic leukemia and lymphoma may be caused by mistakes made by the V(D)J recombinase enzyme complex while it is generating new immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor gene rearrangements (54). Illegitimate V(D)J recombinase activity could therefore be centrally involved in the development of these blood cancers and could result from mistakes brought on by chemical exposure.

The t(14;18) translocation is thought to arise by illegitimate V(D)J recombination in pre-B cells as a result of aberrant immunoglobulin gene rearrangement. Liu et al. (45) first described the fact that this translocation was found at low levels in normal, healthy individuals. They subsequently showed that the incidence of t(14;18) increased with age and was higher in the blood of smokers (48). Recently, two groups have described novel quantitative PCR procedures that measure very low levels of t(14;18) (43,44). Luthra et al. (43) detected rearrangements at the bcl-2 mbr in 36% of lymphoma cases and found a 98% concordance between real-time PCR and conventional PCR (43). In addition, using serial dilution they demonstrated that real-time PCR was 100-fold more sensitive than conventional PCR. BCL-2/JH fusion sequences were consistently detected when diluted 10^5 fold with normal genomic DNA. Doelken et al. (44) confirmed the sensitivity of this assay and concluded that the detection of single-genome copies is possible if a stochastic multiple tube approach is taken.

5.4. Measurement of t(8;21) Associated with Acute Myeloid Leukemia and Myelodysplasia

The t(8;21) translocation results in the fusion of the ETO gene, at 8q22, with the AML1 gene at chromosome 21q22. This translocation is one of the most frequent karyotypic abnormalities observed in acute myeloid leukemia. The presence of t(8;21) is associated with a high complete remission rate and a high survival rate (55), suggesting that the levels of the translocation may be predictive of relapse. On the basis of potential prognostic value of the t(8;21), Marcucci et al. (56) developed a real-time reverse-transcriptase PCR method to detect AML1/ETO fusion transcript in patients with AML. Each patient showed 10^5 copies of AML1/ETO transcript at diagnosis and each showed a 2–4-log decrease in copy number following successful induction chemotherapy. The sixth patient had a high copy number immediately following successful remission induction chemotherapy, which continued to increase during early remission, and was followed by relapse.
These results suggest that t(8;21) translocation is detectable at low levels and may be a valuable biomarker of early effect or potential relapse.

5.5. Measurement of t(9;22) Associated with Leukemia

A real-time RT-PCR method has also been developed for the detection of the t(9;22) translocation (57), which is common in CML (chronic myelogenous leukemia). This translocation results in the fusion of the ABL gene, an oncogene, with the BCR gene (58). Under the regulation of the BCR promoter, a fusion gene product is expressed in malignant cells. By performing serial dilutions of a positive control diluted in wild-type RNA, a sensitivity of $10^{-5}$ was achieved, which is comparable to conventional PCR methods.

6. OTHER POTENTIAL APPLICATIONS OF REAL-TIME PCR

6.1. Measurement of Aberrant Gene Methylation

In addition to the wide range of genetical damage involved in carcinogenesis, epigenetic mechanisms, such as DNA methylation, have gained attention as potential key players in certain cancer types. Aberrant methylation, which may be induced by environmental exposures, may result in altered carcinogen metabolism, cell cycle regulation, and DNA repair. For example, in leukemia and lymphoma translocations cause the formation of novel fusion genes that produce excessive growth (14,15), and other genes undergo transcriptional silencing by methylation, which causes aberrant cell cycle control (59). Aberrant methylation and transcriptional silencing appear to be early events in both solid tumors, including lung (60), colon (61), hepatocellular (62), and bladder (63), as well as hematological malignancies (59). A number of different methods have been developed to detect aberrant methylation of genes, including the use of methylation sensitive restriction enzymes, bisulfite sequencing, and methylation-specific PCR (MSP).

Perhaps one of the most interesting targets of aberrant methylation is the tumor suppressor gene $p16^{INK4a}$, which is a key component in the G1/S cell cycle check point and has been shown to be involved in colon cancer, leukemia, and lung cancer. Recently, a real-time methylation specific PCR protocol has been developed by Lo et al. (64) and applied to bone marrow samples of patients with multiple myeloma as well as cell lines with known methylation status. The authors demonstrated that the real-time method had very high concordance with the conventional method, but with the added sensitivity and specificity of the real-time technology. In addition, the authors correlated methylation status with $p16$ mRNA expression and observed that transcription was inversely correlated with methylation status. As with other real-time methods, this application shows great potential for future studies involving methylation of key genes in carcinogenesis as well as other biological processes.
6.2. **Multiplex Real-Time PCR with Molecular Beacons**

Yet another novel application of real-time PCR technology is the multiplex amplification of DNA by Vet et al. (65). Using molecular beacons (MB) rather than TaqMan probes, the authors successfully performed multiplex PCR reactions which were monitored in real time. Although similar to TaqMan probes, molecular beacons do not require the 5’ exonuclease properties of Taq polymerase. Instead, when unbound, the fluorescent moiety is kept in physical proximity to the quencher in a loop conformation. When the probe anneals to a target sequence, the loop is linearized and the reporter and quencher are separated in space, and the reporter emits fluorescence. In a multiplex reaction, different colored fluorescent moieties are used for each amplicon. The potential applications of this assay are very promising. Unfortunately, research potential is often limited by the amount of material available for analysis. The possibility of real-time multiplex PCR provides the opportunity to examine multiple points of interest simultaneously with the same amount of material previously required for one point.

6.3. **Digital PCR**

Another recent contribution to this spectrum of novel methods combines the process of genotypic selection with the sensitive new molecular beacon-based PCR methodologies. Digital PCR, developed by Vogelstein and Kinzler (66) is an assay designed to quantitatively measure the proportion of mutant sequences within a DNA sample. Single molecules of DNA are isolated and amplified by PCR in a multiple-well plate, resulting in completely mutant or completely wild-type products. After amplification, asymmetric PCR is used to generate a single-stranded product to which the molecular beacons could anneal. Two molecular beacons (red and green) are added, one which recognizes only wild-type sequence and one which is common to all PCR products. Using mutations in the \( RAS \) gene, the authors designed the wild-type beacon which would react better with the wild type than any mutant sequence within the target sequence. In other words, any mutations in the region complementary to the molecular beacon sequence would inhibit wild-type beacon binding. This was possible due to the fact that \( RAS \) has proximal mutational hotspots within codons 12, 13 which are within the range of the probe sequence. This assay, however, in most cases, would require molecular beacons for the expected mutational sequences, as well as wild-type beacons. Each well is then analyzed separately for the presence (or absence) of mutation by the fluorescent probes. The ratio of red/green is determined and normalized against known controls. Those wells containing mutant sequences are then analyzed by sequencing to determine the nature of the mutation. Although the authors chose to add the molecular beacons after amplification, the beacons may also be used during the amplification process and monitored in real time.
Digital PCR is only appropriate for predefined mutations. As with genotypic selection methods, the specific area or mutational hotspot must be known in order to design primers and beacon sequences. In addition, unless the molecular beacons are added prior to amplification, the amplification will not be monitored in real time. Like many other PCR methods, this method assumes 100% efficient PCR and that both wild type and mutant will amplify with equal efficiencies. Because the results are based on the ratio of the red/green signal, any discrepancies in amplification efficiencies may affect this ratio. Finally, it is important to understand that this method is only a quantitative measure of the proportion of mutant sequences within a sample, but is not a measure of the starting number of mutant and wild-type copies.

7. CONCLUSIONS

A new generation of biomarkers of early effect in carcinogenesis are now available and widely employed. These methods utilize the latest advances in molecular cytogenetics and PCR allowing for mutations to be detected and measured in cancer-related genes and in specific regions of chromosomes that are rearranged, lost, or amplified in carcinogenesis. Measurement of aberrant gene methylation and loss of heterozygosity is also possible. These new early-effect biomarkers are on the causal pathway to disease and, as such, should be predictive markers of future cancer risk. In addition, the high sensitivity of these assays will allow the detection of genetical damage in normal, healthy individuals, which is a key to the validation of these potential biomarkers. However, their true value can only be tested in prospective epidemiological studies. It is important that epidemiologists begin to collect biological samples from large cohorts of people being followed for disease onset and process them in a sophisticated manner so that large quantities of RNA and DNA are available for analysis as the studies progress. In this manner development and validation can proceed hand in hand.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This work was supported by grants from the National Institute for Environmental Health Sciences RO1 ES06721, P42 ES04705, and P30 ES01896 and the National Foundation for Cancer Research.

REFERENCES


1. INTRODUCTION

Risk assessment provides a quantitative approach to toxicology and chemical carcinogenesis. Before the development of risk assessment methods, there was no established method to determine the probability of disease due to measured exposure levels. The Food Additives Amendment of 1958 included the Delaney Clause, which required that no chemical determined to be carcinogenic in either humans or animals be allowed as a food additive by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). As a consequence, food additives were regulated without risk assessment determinations. Later, in the case of residues of animal drugs in foods, acceptable levels were determined by the FDA based upon calculated risks of cancer. However, these risk estimates developed by the FDA were not derived using a particular model of carcinogenesis, but were calculated based upon probabilities of differences in sensitivities of individuals within a population.

During the 1970s, risk assessment methods were developed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the U.S. Occupational Health and Safety Administration (OSHA). It was largely assumed that all carcinogens were DNA reactive, and that such interactions requiring only one event could be additive to ongoing, spontaneous gene mutation. The Armitage and Doll multistage model of cancer (1) proposed that the carcinogenic agent caused several irreversible steps of genetic change. Cancer policy and statistical methods for high- to low-dose extrapolations were developed using this model, which included an assumption of the lack of a threshold
for chemicals producing neoplastic development. However, it is now known that carcinogens may act by mechanisms that may exhibit a threshold due to the role of target organ toxicity in the carcinogenic process.

In 1983, the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) published a study of how risk assessment should be conducted in the Federal government (2). The NAS established a framework to guide future risk assessment by Federal agencies, which included the use of default assumptions where gaps were present in general knowledge or available data for a particular chemical. As defined by the NAS and is now generally recognized, risk assessment consists of the following four steps:

1. Hazard identification
2. Dose–response assessment
3. Exposure assessment
4. Risk characterization

Hazard identification is the review of relevant biological and medical information to determine whether or not particular substances may cause adverse health effects. Dose–response assessment defines the relationships between the exposure or dose of an agent and the magnitude of the health response. This includes a quantitative estimate of the possible impact of a health effect for a range of doses. Exposure assessment produces an estimate of the extent of exposure to the populations of interest. Risk characterization integrates the hazard identification, dose–response assessment, and exposure assessment, in order to describe the nature and the magnitude of health risk. The risk characterization includes presentation of uncertainties and provides a framework to help judge the significance of the risks.

2. HAZARD IDENTIFICATION FOR CARCINOGENS

Carcinogen risk assessment begins with an evaluation of whether a chemical has been shown to cause increased rates of specific neoplasms in either humans or animals. Various types of information are available for determining the carcinogenic potential of a compound. Useful data for hazard identification comes from epidemiological studies, controlled human experiments, in vivo and in vitro toxicological tests, and analysis of physical/chemical properties, structure–activity relationships, and pharmacokinetic properties. Epidemiological studies of humans and toxicological studies of experimental animals provide the most important information and are essential in determining the hazardous potential of a compound. The other types of information serve mainly as supporting data to the toxicological and epidemiological studies, although data on cancer mechanisms are being increasingly used to evaluate whether certain rodent tumors are relevant to human cancer risk determination.
The resulting data are evaluated and chemicals have been classified according to the “strength of evidence” for positive responses, and usually with little regard for studies showing no carcinogenic effects. Major default assumptions used by regulatory agencies are that neoplastic responses in rodents are potentially relevant to human cancer and that target organ site concordance in not necessary for extrapolation to humans. However, it is now recognized that these assumptions are naive and that many tumor types are not relevant for human cancer risk assessment.

One source of hazard identification information is the EPA’s Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS), which is available on-line (http://www.epa.gov/iris). Another source is the IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC), which is part of the World Health Organization.

2.1. Carcinogen Classifications

An EPA carcinogen group designation that characterizes the strength of evidence for human cancer risk, has been established for each substance reviewed by the intra-agency work group, which consists of scientists from throughout the EPA. The basis for the classification is included in the IRIS database. In the case of the IARC, the classification is based upon the deliberations by cancer experts from throughout the world at meetings that develop the monographs. The classifications systems for carcinogens vary somewhat among the IARC, other nations and regulatory agencies within the United States.

Traditionally, there has been an alphanumeric system used with Group A (EPA) and Group 1 (IARC) identifying chemicals known to produce cancer in humans based upon epidemiology studies. Other groups such as Groups B and C (EPA) or Group 2 (IARC) identify chemicals that are known to produce cancer in animals but not proven in humans. These are termed probable or possible carcinogens based upon the premise that it is prudent for regulatory purposes to act as if they represent a risk to humans. However, this does not imply that a causal relationship has been proven between the agent and human cancer. The EPA classification system for the characterization of the overall weight of evidence (animal, human, and other supportive data) of carcinogenicity of a substance includes the following five groups (3):

1. **Group A: Human carcinogens.** Sufficient evidence from epidemiological studies to support a causal association between exposure to the agents and cancer.

2. **Group B: Probable human carcinogens.** Sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity based on animal studies. This group is divided into two subgroups. Group B1 is reserved for agents for which there
is limited evidence of carcinogenicity from epidemiological studies. Agents for which there is “sufficient” evidence from animal studies and for which there is “inadequate evidence” or “no data” from epidemiological studies would usually be categorized under Group B2.

3. **Group C: Possible human carcinogens.** Limited evidence of carcinogenicity in animals in the absence of human data. This group includes a wide variety of evidence such as (1) a malignant tumor response in a single well-conducted experiment that does not meet conditions for sufficient evidence, (2) tumor responses of marginal statistical significance in studies having inadequate design or reporting, (3) benign, but not malignant tumors with an agent showing no response in a variety of short-term tests for mutagenicity, and (4) responses of marginal statistical significance in a tissue known to have a high or variable background rate.

4. **Group D: Not classifiable as to human carcinogenicity.** Inadequate (or negative) human and animal evidence of carcinogenicity, or no data are available.

5. **Group E: Evidence of noncarcinogenicity for humans.** No evidence for carcinogenicity in at least two adequate animal tests in different species or in both adequate animal tests in different species or in both adequate epidemiological and animal studies.

Groups A and B and, in some cases, C are treated similarly for risk assessment purposes. In general, once a chemical has been shown to produce a particular tumor type in rodents by two independent studies, risk assessment proceeds regardless of whether humans studies are positive, negative or nonexistent.

### 2.2. Changes in the Carcinogen Classification Systems

Recently, the EPA has begun to move away from alphanumeric systems for classification and instead to integrate additional information into a weight of evidence approach, which includes the mode of action and exposure conditions required to express a neoplastic response (4). One category “known/likely” may approximately replace the designation of known and probable according to proposed new regulations (5). In the case of agents that have data that raise the suspicion of carcinogenicity, but the data is not adequate to convincingly demonstrate a carcinogenic potential, the designation would be “cannot be determined.”

In addition, regulatory agencies have been changing hazard identification methodology by using additional information available for the chemicals. For example, they have been incorporating a “weight of evidence” approach, whereby well-conducted negative studies are used in
the evaluation process (5). Such negative studies may be used to contradict poorly conducted studies that have reported a positive finding.

It is now recognized that certain chemical-induced neoplastic effects in animals within certain target organs may not be predictors of risks for humans, especially at human exposure levels. Such mechanistic evaluations formed the basis for a monograph published by the International Expert Panel on Carcinogen Risk Assessment (6). In these series of evaluations, evidence whether a chemical produced cancer in animals by a DNA-reactive mechanisms was found to be of primary importance in the assessment of human cancer risk. The designation of a chemical as producing tumors in animals by a non-DNA-reactive mechanism raises the possibility that these chemicals would not produce cancer in humans. Several chemicals have been evaluated and found to be unlikely to cause cancer in humans. These include the food additives d-limonene (7), butylated hydroxyanisole (8), and saccharin (9).

In those cases where a chemical has been shown to produce neoplasms in animals by a mode of action that could not be operative in humans, risk assessment is not performed based upon such neoplasms. In the case of the EPA's proposed descriptors (5), such agents would be designated as "not likely to be carcinogenic in humans." This is the same designation as for chemical that have been shown to be negative in adequate well-conducted rodent testing. The IARC has also begun using cancer mechanism data for risk assessment, and several chemicals including melamine, d-limonene, saccharin, and atrazine were placed in Group 3 (insufficient evidence) based on such considerations (10).

3. DOSE–RESPONSE ASSESSMENT

After a chemical has been identified as a human or experimental carcinogen, the dose–response for the tumor response is assessed. Dose–response assessment for a chemical is the key element in the risk assessment process, because this forms the basis for the quantitative nature of the process. Epidemiological data are preferred over animal data when conducting a dose–response assessment since extrapolation from animals to humans is not required (3). This eliminates the uncertainty associated with interspecies extrapolation. For many known human carcinogens, studies of humans have included exposure information sufficient to determine the dose–response relationship. In most instances, human exposure information comes from industrial hygiene measures in the workplace.

In order to estimate the dose–response, either an upper bound estimate or a maximum likelihood estimate (MLE) is derived, which is the statistically best estimate of the value of a parameter from a given data set. The difference between the upper bound estimate and the MLE is that the upper bound is more conservative in the face of uncertainty due to a lesser amount of data, whereas the MLE is better if there is a significant level of confidence.
in deriving point estimates of risk. An MLE approach is better to use with large numbers of data points. For most chemicals, the only reliable dose–response information comes from studies in rats or mice. In these cases the upper bound estimate is used, and various mathematical models can be used to fit the data (Fig. 1A).

### 3.1. Extrapolation to Doses Below the Observed Effects

The relationship between dose and toxicological response of any particular chemical is usually a complex one and may involve sublinear, linear, and supralinear components (Fig. 1). This is also true of neoplastic responses and depends upon the mode of action. When cancer risk assessment was first developed, all carcinogens were believed to act as mutagens producing irreversible changes and acting at one or more steps in a sequence of events leading to neoplasia. It is now known that chemicals may be involved in many steps of a neoplastic process in which they may directly or indirectly produce mutagenic effects, alternatively they may produce other changes that enhance neoplastic conversion or development.

The underlying default assumption for dose–response has been that the low-dose portion of the curve is linear unless proven otherwise. The original justification for this assumption was mathematical and derived from the multistage model of carcinogenesis. Animal tumor data is analyzed by the linearized multistage (LMS) procedure, which provides a first-order cancer potency factor at low dosage levels. The cancer slope factor ($q_1^*$) is

![Figure 1](image1.png)

**Figure 1** Dose–response extrapolation for carcinogens. Data points represent hypothetical data for tumor response versus dose. (A) Dose–response extrapolation using a linear-at-low-dose approach for estimates of human risk. (B) Dose response extrapolation using the margin of exposure (MOE) approach. Abbreviations are defined in the text. Note that the “human exposure of interest” is usually much nearer to the zero dose than shown.
the linear extrapolation line of the dose–response data and is expressed in units of risk per dosage (mg/kg b.w./day)^−1. The $q_1^*$ represents the 95% upper confidence limit on that slope.

Since the early 1980s, the FDA has used a somewhat different low-dose extrapolation where linear extrapolation to zero proceeds from the upper confidence limit on the lowest experimental dose (11). In this procedure, a point on the dose–response curve (tumor incidence vs. dose) for a chemical is chosen below which the data no longer appear to be reliable and a straight line is drawn form the upper confidence limit to the origin. The EPA has recently developed a similar method for deriving the relationship between dose and response for low doses (4,5), which uses a straight line extrapolation to the origin from the low-end dose of the observed tumor data, usually the 10% tumor response, which is termed the LED$_{10}$ (Fig. 1A).

Several other procedures have been used for dose–response extrapolation, which lead to widely differing estimates of potency. The model with the most significant departure from the LMS model is the threshold model, which assumes that no significant risk is present below an identified exposure. In this model, a no-observed-adverse effect level (NOAEL) is determined, which serves a point of departure for the development of an acceptable dose. The NOAEL approach has been used extensively along with safety or uncertainty factors for the determination of acceptable doses for toxic effects other than cancer. However, this procedure has also been used by some European nations and on a limited basis in the United States where the chemical is believed to produce neoplasia by a process that involves a threshold (12). The major determinant for the use of a threshold model for a chemical is the lack of DNA reactivity coupled with a plausible explanation, such as chronic toxicity of the target organ, as the basis for the tumorigenic response.

The EPA has recently developed a similar procedure for carcinogens that exhibit a dose–response that either has a lack of demonstrated effect at low doses (threshold dose) or a much lower than expected effect at low doses (sublinear dose–response) (5). In this case a margin of exposure (MOE) is determined, which is the difference between the LED$_{10}$ and the estimated human exposure level (Fig. 1B). This procedure is similar to the use of uncertainty factors with a NOAEL; however, the use of the MOE method does not require the experimental determination of a threshold dose for the neoplastic effect.

3.2. Rodent-to-Human Extrapolation

Although humans have been exposed to many chemicals classified as carcinogens, usually adequate exposure information is lacking from epidemiology studies for use in dose–response development. Also, for most chemicals that have been found to produce tumors in experimental animals, human studies
are lacking or have not found increases in cancer that can be quantified. Con-
sequently, the estimation of cancer risks for humans are usually based upon 
extrapolation from rodents. In addition, animal studies have two primary 
advantages over epidemiological studies: 1) dose, environmental, and extra-
neous exposures are strictly controlled, and 2) adverse affects are directly 
measured through pathological examination and necropsy. The obvious dis-
advantage is that humans may not respond to chemicals in the same manner 
as rodents either qualitatively or quantitatively.

For carcinogens, the EPA’s default method of extrapolation from 
animals to humans has been traditionally based upon comparative surface 
areas, which is related to metabolic rate. The surface area is approximately 
proportional to the two-third power of body weight. However, based upon 
empirical data for chemotherapeutic drugs in rodents and humans, the ratio 
of the three-quarter power of body weight or \( (BW_1)^{3/4}/(BW_2)^{3/4} \) is now 
used both by the EPA and FDA (13). In practice, this means that the cancer 
slope factor in mg/kg/day for the rat or mouse would be multiplied by a 
factor of between 5 and 10 for humans.

If data regarding the chemical-specific relative metabolic rates, tissue 
distributions, or other factors are available for rodents and humans, phar-
macologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) modeling may be used to 
extrapolate between species. PBPK modeling is a mathematical method 
for extrapolating between species that accounts for differences in target 
organ concentrations of the reactive metabolite(s) due to absorption, bio-
transformation, distribution and elimination. Difficulty in applying this 
level of sophistication to the species-to-species extrapolation is usually due 
to the lack of information in human parameters for many chemicals. 
Furthermore, individual differences among humans for many of these 
parameters requires that PBPK modeling use statistical distributions of 
parameters, and the combinations of distributions may give a result with 
a large range of values.

Ideally, the route of administration of animal studies used for dose– 
response data should be the same as the human route of exposure (i.e., 
inhalation, dermal contact, ingestion). If it is not, an extrapolation from 
the animal route of administration to the human route of exposure may 
be possible. The target organ(s) and mechanism(s) of action determine 
whether route-to-route extrapolation is appropriate. For an agent causing 
adverse effects at the point of contact (e.g., skin, lung) extrapolation from 
one route of administration is usually not valid. But for carcinogens with a 
systemic mode of action, route-to-route extrapolation may be biologically 
plausible. In order to perform route-to-route extrapolation, pharmacoki-
netic data for the substance being evaluated are desirable, but not always 
available, and estimates can be made in the absence of such data. Pharma-
cokinetic data can also be used in PBPK models to convert the dose to a 
different route.
4. EXPOSURE ASSESSMENT

In exposure assessment, the amount of a chemical that may contact the human body is determined, but there is also a difference between external exposure and internal exposure, which is the dose, and this depends on the efficiency of absorption. The dosage is summed for all pathways and routes of exposure resulting in an numerical estimate that is usually expressed in units of milligrams per kilogram body weight per day (mg/kg/day).

For pharmaceuticals, food additives, food contaminants, and drinking water contaminants, the only pathway of concern is usually oral ingestion and the amount of the medicine, food, or water can be estimated with some degree of certainty. As a default assumption, the external and internal exposure is often considered to be the same, i.e., there is 100% absorption. For contaminants in food regulated by the FDA, the average total diet of an adult is generally assumed to include 1500 g of solid food and 1500 g of liquid per day. In the absence of a measured distribution of intakes among individuals in a population or a direct measure of the 90th percentile, a two- to three-fold excess is used on the observed average consumption of the medium that contains the contaminant (11).

The exposure assessment process varies in complexity depending upon the conditions under which individuals may contact the agent. For example, dermal exposure usually results in a lower dose to the target organ than an oral dose, and in the dermal exposure scenario, the chemical may be bound to a matrix such as soil, which would be expected to decrease dermal absorption. In other cases, the exposure estimate includes the use of sophisticated mathematical models, and the exposures related to all significant potential pathways are estimated (14). An example of a complicated site-specific exposure assessment is that of a hazardous waste incinerator where air levels are models based upon meteorological data, and deposition of particulates on edible plants and water are estimated. These data are then used to calculate the amount inhaled or ingested from consumption of plants and animals including fish. Route- and chemical-specific absorption factors are then used to translate exposure to doses, which are summed for all exposure pathways. Current EPA risk assessment guidelines promote estimating “high end” and “central tendency” exposures (14). High end exposure scenarios are supposed to result in reasonable but highly conservative estimates of risk that generally represent the degree of exposure to only the most exposed members of the population (2–10%). Central tendency exposure scenarios reflect the degree of exposure of typical or average individuals. Unfortunately, the exposure assessment may also include highly implausible estimates that would include few, if any, of the people with potential exposures.

A detailed description of exposure assessment methods is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, two of the most common and direct risk
scenarios will be briefly described: oral ingestion of contaminated drinking water and inhalation of contaminated air. These will provide the reader with some understanding of the estimates made of exposure. More detailed guidance for exposure assessment is available from EPA publications (14–16).

4.1. Drinking Water

Exposure to drinking water is direct and does not require the differentiation between external and internal exposure. A default assumption used is that adults can consume up to 2 L of water per day. Therefore, for a one part per billion (ppb) level of contamination in drinking water, a person may consume the following:

\[
\frac{1 \text{ mg contaminant}}{1 \text{ kg water}} \times \frac{1 \text{ kg water}}{1 \text{ L water}} \times \frac{2 \text{ L water}}{\text{day}} \times \frac{1}{70 \text{ kg b.w.}} = 3 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mg/kg/day}
\]

4.2. Inhalation and the Inhalation Unit Risk

For breathing contaminants in air, the amount of exposure is usually determined by the breathing volume per day divided by the human body weight. In this case, there usually are no adjustments made for the difference between external and internal dose. The calculation of exposure for microgram per cubic meter contaminant level in air is shown below:

\[
1 \mu g/m^3 \times 20 \text{ m}^3/\text{per day} \times 1/70 \text{ kg (b.w.)} \times 10^{-3} \text{ mg/\mu g} = 0.0003 \text{ mg/kg/day}
\]

For some inhalation exposures, it is a relatively straightforward procedure to translate cancer slope factors into mathematical relationships that are termed unit risk levels, which represent an estimate of the increased cancer risk from a lifetime (70-year) exposure to a concentration of one unit of exposure. Unit risk values incorporate the cancer potency and the amount of air consumed per day. The inhalation unit risk (IUR) is expressed as risk per micrograms per cubic meter.

For radionuclides in air such as uranium-238 and thorium-232, data is published yearly by the EPA in the Health Effects Assessment Summary Tables (HEAST) that estimate risks based upon total lifetime dose in risk/pCi, which is irrespective of body weight. In the case of radionuclides, the IUR can be calculated from the data presented in the HEAST tables as follows:

\[
\text{IUR} = \frac{\text{risk}}{\text{pCi}} \times \frac{20 \text{ m}^3}{\text{day}} \times \frac{25,550 \text{ days}}{\text{lifetime}} = \text{Risk} (\text{pCi/m}^3)^{-1}
\]
5. RISK CHARACTERIZATION

In risk characterization, exposure assessment is coupled with the dose–response information. By this method risks can be estimated based upon various exposure scenarios. Along with quantitative estimates of risk, risk characterization should identify the key assumptions, their rationale, and the effect of reasonable alternative assumptions on the conclusions and estimates. Second, the risk characterization identifies any important uncertainties in the assessment.

In order to calculate risk, the dose determined by exposure assessment is multiplied by the cancer slope factor, which in this example is 0.1 risk (mg/kg/day)\(^{-1}\), as in the following example:

\[
3 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mg/kg b.w./day} \times 0.1 \text{ risk (mg/kg/day)}^{-1} \\
= 3 \times 10^{-6} \text{ risk}
\]

In site-specific risk assessment, all significant exposure routes are determined related to contaminant levels in a specific situation such as a Superfund site. Based upon exposure assessment calculations, a risk is determined. Alternatively, the calculation can be performed in reverse order to develop regulatory levels for chemicals in air, water, soil, or food based upon specified risk levels.

The risk assessment of chemical mixtures results in an estimation of the total risk for all chemicals to which an individual is exposed from a particular source. In the case of carcinogens, the risks are assumed to be additive, since most risks are calculated assuming a linear risk–dose relationship, and the risks calculated are incremental risks.

5.1. Individual vs. Population Risks

Maximum individual lifetime risk (MIR) is commonly used to express individual risks. MIR is defined as the hypothetical probability of cancer following exposure to an agent at the maximum modeled long-term exposures assuming a 70-year (lifetime) duration of exposure. Estimates of MIR are usually expressed as a probability represented in scientific notation as a negative exponent of 10, which may be indicated in the tables by “e.” For example, 5e-8 is the same as 5 \times 10^{-8}, which is 0.00000005.

Population risk descriptors are intended to estimate the extent of risk for the population as a whole. This typically represents the sum total of individual risks within the exposed population. Two important population risk descriptors are usually estimated and presented (14):

- the probabilistic number of health effect cases estimated in the population of interest over a specified time period; and
- the percentage of the population, or the number of persons, above a specified level of risk or range of health benchmark levels.
5.2. Sensitive Subpopulations

Individual risk descriptors are intended to estimate the risk borne by individuals within a specified population or subpopulation. These descriptors are used to answer questions concerning the affected population, the risk levels of various groups within the population, and the maximum risk for individuals within the population. The “high end” risk descriptor is intended to estimate the risk that is expected to occur in a small but definable segment of the population. The intent is to convey an estimate of risk in the upper range of the distribution, but to avoid estimates which are beyond the true distribution. Conceptually, high end risk means risk above the 90th percentile of the population distribution, but not higher than the individual in the population who has the highest risk (14).

Certain groups within a population may be more sensitive to environmental exposure than other groups. However, EPA considers the linear default assumption for low-dose extrapolation to be health protective to the extent that human variability of response would be taken into account (5). Concerns regarding exposures to children have been given special attention. However, for carcinogens and most noncarcinogens, the particular sensitivity of children has not been characterized. In risk assessment calculations involving contaminated soil that could be ingested by children, the young child’s exposure is calculated separately due to the possibility of children ingesting soil directly. Contamination of food sources are also calculated separately for children due to the greater consumption of certain foods per body weight compared to adults.

5.3. Uncertainty Analysis

EPA guidance calls for a full characterization of risk, not just the single point estimate, which has become synonymous with risk characterization. Critical to full characterization of risk is a discussion of the uncertainty in the overall assessment and in each of its components. Uncertainty in risk assessment can be classified into three broad categories according to EPA (14):

1. Uncertainty regarding missing or incomplete information needed to fully define the exposure and dose (scenario uncertainty)
2. Uncertainty regarding some parameter (parameter uncertainty)
3. Uncertainty regarding gaps in scientific theory required to make predictions on the basis of causal inferences (model uncertainty)

Uncertainty can be introduced into a health risk assessment at many steps in the process. It occurs because risk assessment is a complex process, requiring the integration of many items. The fate and transport of substances in a variable environment that require complex models with uncertain assumptions. The potential for adverse health effects in humans may require uncertain extrapolations from animal bioassays; and the probability
of adverse effects in a human population may be variable genetically, in age, in activity level, and in lifestyle.

Even using the most accurate data with the most sophisticated models, uncertainty is inherent in the process. In order to account for uncertainty, risk assessment generally uses assumptions that overestimate the risks so that the risks are likely to be less, rather than greater, than those predicted.

### 6. RISK MANAGEMENT CONSIDERATIONS

Risk management has been described as the process of evaluating alternative regulatory actions and selecting among them. This selection process necessarily requires the use of value judgements on such issues as the acceptability of risk (2). Risk levels that have been deemed “acceptable” range from one per thousand \((10^{-3})\) lifetimes to less than one per million \((10^{-6})\). Differences in acceptable risk depend upon judgments that are based on societal values. Risk assessment has been used by the OSHA to regulate cancer risks resulting in air levels that have associated risks of one per thousand \((10^{-3})\) lifetimes or less. The use of risk assessment by OSHA balances the reduction of risk with practical concerns in the workplace. The resulting unit dose is called the permissible exposure limit (PEL), which is based upon exposures over a working lifetime, 8 hr per day, 5 days per week.

For the general public, air levels have also been developed by air toxics programs of the states. In the case of the general public, risks of one per one-hundred thousand \((10^{-5})\) or one per million \((10^{-6})\) are generally used as a starting point. The \(10^{-6}\) risk level has been chosen historically in an arbitrary manner as a basis for regulation (17), and the EPA has regulated chemicals involving exposures to large populations at about this risk level. For decisions where the population risk is a fraction of a cancer case per year for the entire population, a \(10^{-5}\) risk level seems to be in the range of what EPA might consider to be an insignificant average individual lifetime risk (18). A review of policies by Travis et al. (19) has found that EPA does not consider individual risks of less than \(10^{-4}\) in small geographic areas to necessarily require regulation. The legislation that created superfund clean-up standards has indicated that a range of \(10^{-4}–10^{-6}\) risk level is generally acceptable. At these specified hypothetical risk levels, the actual risk to an individual is usually negligible due to the many health protective assumptions that are incorporated into the risk assessment process.

### 7. DISCUSSION AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The risk assessment methodology has now been used extensively in a wide variety of circumstances, and due to the quality of the database the results have ranged from reasonable estimates of cancer probability for known
human carcinogens to controversial risk speculations that are seemingly improbable. Consequently, it is important to understand that quality and validity of the data regarding a particular chemical greatly affects the reliability of the risk estimate. Even where the data are technically sound but the extrapolation of risk to humans is unclear, the relevance to human risks may be questionable. It is likely that many chemicals pose no cancer risk to humans at any realistic exposure level although risks can be calculated.

Risk assessment does not determine real probabilities of an individual or a population developing cancer from a particular agent. Calculated risks are intended to provide upper-bound estimates, and one must understand that the real risks may be much lower or zero (3). In other words, one cannot deduce the true probability of cancer causation by doing a risk assessment calculation since there are usually several health protective assumptions that inflate the risk. An excellent argument has been made that a MOE-type approach (Fig. 1) be used for assessment of all toxic effects including cancer, since the toxicological information generally available does not warrant numerical estimates of risk at low levels of human exposure (20).

Risk assessment does provide a framework for decreasing the probability of harm from chemical exposures. Consequently, it is useful for regulatory purposes. The coincidence of real probability and risk assessment calculations will be greater for those agents that have been shown to cause cancer in epidemiology studies, which can be used for dose-response assessment and in which the exposure levels are close to or within the range of observation. However, for those agents that are positive in animal studies but are negative or untested in epidemiology studies, extrapolation is always problematic.

The mode of action by which an agent causes cancer in animals is of primary importance for extrapolation to humans. The induction of neoplasia through a mechanism that is likely to operate both in humans and rodents, such as DNA adduct formation leading to mutation, tends to increase the validity of risk assessment. In contrast, many chemical-related cancer mechanisms are now known to be either unique to the rodent or are suspected to only occur in the rodent at very high exposure levels. In such cases, risk assessment would unrealistically calculate risks to humans.

One of the most important developments in risk assessment is the identification of species-specific modes of actions for some carcinogenic effects in rodents. As a consequence, the EPA has determined that tumors formed in the male rat related to α2μ-globulin nephropathy are not relevant to humans (21). Also, the IARC has determined that chemicals producing tumors by this mode of action do not pose a risk to humans (22). In addition, IARC has found that other agents producing bladder tumors involving calcium phosphate-containing precipitate formation, such as saccharin and certain chemicals producing thyroid follicular-cell neoplasms, do not pose a risk to humans.
The future of risk assessment lies in the development of better epidemiology data and the diversification of rodent to human extrapolation methods based upon sound scientific data regarding mode of action. Consequently, more and more emphasis is being placed on the generation of data regarding cancer mechanisms for use in quantitative risk assessment. As additional data becomes available, the use of chemical-specific information that replaces the traditional default assumptions will provide a enhanced scientific certainty in the risk assessment process.

REFERENCES

Cancer Risk Assessment I: How Regulatory Agencies Determine What Is a Carcinogen

Jerry M. Rice*

Department of Oncology, Lombardi Comprehensive Cancer Center, Georgetown University, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

The first stage in cancer risk assessment is the process known as carcinogenic hazard identification. This is the qualitative determination that a substance, complex mixture, agent, or exposure is capable of causing cancer in humans, that is, it is a carcinogen.

An agent is a carcinogen if exposure to it causes an increased incidence of malignant neoplasms at one or more anatomic sites in humans, experimental animals, or both. In experimental animal studies, carcinogenicity may also be indicated by increased multiplicity or accelerated appearance of neoplasms. Known human carcinogens include certain infectious agents; all forms of ionizing radiation; and a wide variety of chemical agents and mixtures, some of which occur naturally and some of which are produced by human activities. Carcinogens rarely increase the frequency of tumors at all organ sites, in either humans or experimental animals. Most carcinogens cause tumors at a single site or at a limited number of sites, which in the

* Chief (Emeritus), IARC Monographs Programme, International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon, France.
case of chemicals is largely determined by pathways of metabolism and by the routes of exposure, which affect the dose of active carcinogen delivered to various tissues. Inorganic arsenic, for example, causes human skin cancer when taken in medicinals by ingestion; lung cancer when inhaled under occupational circumstances such as smelting of metal-containing ores; and both of the above plus cancers of the urinary tract and certain other internal organs when present at high concentrations in drinking water (1).

Essentially, all neoplasms occur at some “natural” or “background” frequency. Some human neoplasms are so regularly associated with exposure to a specific agent that diagnosis of a case automatically raises the suspicion that the patient was exposed to a known carcinogen (e.g., mesothelioma suggests previous exposure to asbestos; clear-cell carcinoma of the female reproductive tract suggests prenatal exposure to diethylstilbestrol), but these are exceptions. For most kinds of tumors, at nearly all anatomic sites, it is rarely possible, on the basis of either morphological or molecular characteristics of an individual neoplasm that has been caused by a specific agent, to distinguish it reliably from other cancers of the same kind that may occur naturally or as a result of concurrent exposure to some other carcinogen. This applies to both humans and experimental animals. Accordingly, conclusions regarding causality are almost always based on statistical analyses of tumor frequencies in exposed vs. nonexposed populations. Genetical, molecular, or morphological markers of exposure to a specific carcinogen may sometimes indicate that a specific case of cancer has resulted from exposure to a specific agent (e.g., base-pair-specific mutation of the tumor suppressor gene TP53 can implicate exposure to aflatoxin B1 in human hepatocellular carcinoma). At present, for chemicals and chemical mixtures this situation is the exception rather than the rule.

For suspect agents that are already present in the environment, data that are relevant for carcinogenic hazard identification may be available in the international scientific literature. These may include epidemiological studies of health effects, including cancer experience, in exposed human populations. When such studies exist, they are of primary interest for assessing possible carcinogenic hazard. In the case of widely studied agents or exposures (e.g., ionizing radiation, human papillomaviruses, tobacco use) the database for carcinogenic hazard identification may be extremely robust, and is often strengthened by the existence of studies from several different laboratories or study groups. This allows assessment of the consistency of findings among different studies. Consistently positive findings from several independent studies are strong evidence that a carcinogenic hazard truly exists. However, even for many agents whose existence in the environment has been recognized for decades, epidemiological studies that are adequate to establish whether a given substance is or probably is not a human carcinogen do not exist. Those studies that do exist often are limited by the fact that most environmental exposures are not “pure” exposures to a single
substance (e.g., 1-nitropyrene), but rather to multiple suspect substances or to complex mixtures of substances (e.g., to many different nitro-polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons and other substances that occur together in diesel engine exhaust). In such cases additional data are needed to decide whether a specific substance is in fact a carcinogen.

Carcinogenicity, like most other forms of toxicity, increases in severity with increasing duration and intensity of exposure. However, the relative potencies of various carcinogens are highly variable. Low levels of exposure, especially to weak carcinogens, may not be detectable, either by epidemiological methods in human populations or by increased tumor frequency in bioassays in experimental animals. For this reason, negative epidemiological and experimental findings must be treated with caution when there are strong reasons to suspect that an agent may be carcinogenic, as when a substance is markedly similar in chemical structure to known carcinogens, or if it possesses biological properties that are often associated with carcinogenicity, such as mutagenicity in mammalian or nonmammalian cells and organisms. The most convincing data for establishing carcinogenicity are those that show a statistically significant increasing trend in tumor incidence with increasing intensity and duration of exposure, as well as statistically significantly increased incidences of tumors in populations that have been exposed to doses above the minimum level of detection.

A broadly based data set on which carcinogenic hazard identification can be based includes:

- Epidemiological studies
- Carcinogenicity bioassays in laboratory animals (where appropriate)
- Studies of genetical and related effects in laboratory animals and in human cells, or even in exposed humans
- Studies of mode(s) of carcinogenic action of the agent.

Commonly, however, decisions on whether to treat a substance as a carcinogen must be taken on the basis of incomplete data sets, which lack data from one or more of these categories. For example, for truly novel substances, such as new agricultural chemicals (e.g., herbicides or insecticides) or new drugs, there is no epidemiology. The basis for carcinogenic hazard identification then consists of carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals, generally rats and conventional and/or genetically engineered mice, together with studies on the metabolism of the agent, its genetical and related effects in experimental animals in vivo and in microorganisms, animal cells, and often human cells in vitro. There may also be studies on the mode of action of the agent as a carcinogen in animals. Such studies will usually have been conducted, or contracted for, by a single commercial entity for purposes of compliance with regulatory requirements. Results of such studies that are submitted to regulatory agencies are often unpublished and are usually
regarded by the sponsor as proprietary information, i.e., trade secrets, that may never be published in a scientific journal. The database for evaluation of new chemicals as possible carcinogens may therefore be much more limited, and previous scientific peer review much less vigorous, than for environmental agents that have been studied more widely.

Agencies that have responsibilities for carcinogenic hazard identification exist in several international organizations, including the Commission of the European Union and the World Health Organization (WHO). Such agencies also exist in many individual countries, at the national level and sometimes also within the governments of constituent geopolitical units, such as individual states of the United States of America (e.g., California). Generally, all such agencies work from the same basic kinds of data, but they differ fundamentally in whether they evaluate:

- Agents and exposures that already exist in the human environment
- Novel substances proposed for introduction into that environment.

Within the WHO, an internationally recognized carcinogen identification program is conducted by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC). The *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans* is an international, interdisciplinary approach to carcinogenic hazard identification. *Monographs* evaluations are assessments of the strength of the published scientific evidence for the existence of an environmental carcinogenic hazard to humans, but they are qualitative rather than quantitative in nature and do not address issues of relative carcinogenic potency. Also, the *Monographs* are confined to published scientific data, and therefore do not evaluate novel agents about which only proprietary data exist. The *Monographs* are published as a basis for cancer prevention initiatives, which are not limited to regulation. The IARC is not a regulatory agency, and the *Monographs* explicitly avoid any recommendation regarding regulation or legislation. The *Monographs* are widely consulted by regulatory agencies worldwide, however, and the series can serve as a model for how regulatory agencies determine what is a carcinogen, and how different kinds of data are used to make carcinogenic hazard identifications. The criteria applied, and some examples of overall evaluations based on those criteria, are summarized in the following pages.

2. **IARC MONOGRAPHS IDENTIFICATIONS OF CARCINOGENIC HAZARD**

During the period 1972–2002 a total of 888 agents and exposure circumstances have been reviewed by the IARC Monographs Programme in Volumes 1–84 of the series. Many have been evaluated more than once as
new data have become available in the scientific literature. Because the nature and the strength of published evidence for carcinogenicity vary greatly from one agent or exposure circumstance to another, in most cases it is not possible to conclude definitively whether a given agent or exposure is either definitely a human carcinogen or is probably not one. Of these 888 agents and exposure circumstances, only 89 are currently classified as definitely carcinogenic to humans. In 1987 a classification system was introduced (2) which stratifies agents according to the strength of the total evidence for carcinogenicity to humans. This evidence may include epidemiological studies of cancer risk in humans; bioassays for carcinogenicity in experimental animals; and other relevant data of various kinds that may modify the conclusions that would be drawn on the basis of epidemiology and/or bioassays alone.

2.1. Epidemiological Studies

Epidemiological Studies to assess the possibly increased risks of cancer in exposed humans are critically reviewed, and the strength of that evidence is evaluated according to the criteria listed in Table 1. The IARC Monographs criteria require specific, critical consideration of the possibility that the results of each published study may be affected by chance, bias or confounding.

The strength of an association between an exposure and a disease outcome, and the possible role of chance are estimated by standard statistical methods. These methods commonly report the strength of an association as an odds ratio, relative risk, standardized mortality ratio, or other measurement that presents the observed incidence of disease in a study population relative to that in an unexposed control population. For example,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>IARC Criteria for Strength of Evidence for Increased Cancer Risk in Exposed Humans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sufficient</strong>—a positive relationship has been established between exposure to the agent and increased risk of cancer in humans, in which chance, bias, and confounding can be ruled out with reasonable confidence.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Limited</strong>—a positive relationship has been observed between exposure to the agent and human cancer for which a causal association is credible, but chance, bias, and confounding cannot be ruled out with reasonable confidence.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inadequate</strong>—available studies are of insufficient quality, consistency, or statistical power to permit a conclusion regarding presence or absence of a causal association (or no data are available).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity</strong>—several adequate studies covering the full range of exposures encountered by humans are mutually consistent in showing no positive association between exposure to the agent and human cancer, at any observed level of exposure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a ratio of 5.0 indicates that there were five times as many cases of the disease in question among members of the study population as among controls. Whether this ratio is consistent with simple chance association or not is indicated by the calculated confidence interval surrounding the point estimate; in this hypothetical case, a 95% confidence interval of 2.8–7.7 would strongly support a significant association. On the other hand, a confidence interval of 0.3–15 for the same ratio would indicate that the ratio is not statistically significant and is likely due to chance. Any confidence interval that includes unity indicates lack of statistical significance at the level specified.

In epidemiology, *bias* refers to “systematic errors in the way subjects are selected or followed up, or in the way information was obtained from them. *Confounding* occurs when an estimate of the association between an exposure [e.g., occupational exposure to mineral dusts containing crystalline silica] and an outcome [e.g., lung cancer] is mixed up with the real effect of another exposure [e.g., cigarette smoking] on the same outcome, the two exposures being correlated” (3).

In general, the criteria for causality in epidemiological studies are those articulated by Hill (4) (Table 2). A comment is in order, however, on the criterion of biological plausibility. What is considered biologically plausible at any given point in time depends on the state of knowledge at that time. Observations of increased cancer rates in certain populations have often been made before the cause was understood. A striking example is that of lung

**Table 2**  Hill Criteria for Causality

| **Temporal relationship**: for an exposure to be the cause of a disease, it has to precede its biological onset. |
| **Biological plausibility**: the association is more likely to be causal if it is consistent with other biological knowledge. |
| **Consistency**: the association is more likely to be causal if similar results have been found in different populations (however, a lack of consistency does not exclude a causal association). |
| **Strength**: the stronger the association—the greater the relative measure of effect—the more likely it is to reflect a true causal association. |
| **Exposure–response relationship**: further evidence is provided if increasing levels of exposure are associated with increasing incidence of disease. |
| **Specificity**: if a particular exposure increases the risk of a certain disease, but not the risk of other diseases, this provides evidence favoring a cause–effect relationship. |
| **Reversibility**: when the removal of a possible cause results in a reduced incidence of the disease, the likelihood that the association is causal is strengthened. |
| **Coherence**: the putative cause–effect relationship should not seriously conflict with the natural history and biology of the disease. |

*Source*: From Hill (4), modified by Silva (3).
cancer among hard-rock underground miners in Europe (5), which was a mystery when first described but is now generally attributed to high levels of radon in the atmosphere in poorly ventilated mines. This observation preceded the discovery of radioactivity, and of radon, by more than a decade.

Credible evaluation of chance, bias, and confounding and application of the Hill criteria to establish causality require considerable experience. For further details, a textbook (3) or a treatise (6) on cancer epidemiology should be consulted.

2.2. Bioassay Data for Carcinogenicity in Experimental Animals

Bioassay data for carcinogenicity in experimental animals (generally rats and mice) are similarly evaluated according to the criteria listed in Table 3. For sufficiency of evidence, these criteria emphasize reproducibility of outcomes among studies and malignant tumors, evaluated and confirmed histologically, as experimental findings. As all kinds of tumors do occur naturally in untreated animals, at frequencies that can range from 1% or less (e.g., tumors of the brain or intestine in rats) to 50% or more, careful quantification of tumors in treated animals and untreated controls and proper statistical evaluation of the results is essential.

In the absence of adequate data in humans, in general IARC considers that “it is biologically plausible and prudent to regard agents for which there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals as if they

| Table 3 | IARC Criteria for Strength of Evidence for Carcinogenicity in Experimental Animals |
|-----------------------------------------------|
| **Sufficient**—a causal relationship has been established between exposure to the agent and increased incidence of malignant neoplasms, or an appropriate combination of benign and malignant neoplasms, in two or more species or in two or more independent studies in one species, conducted at different times or in different laboratories or under different protocols; exceptionally, a single study in one species may suffice when malignant neoplasms occur to an unusual degree with regard to incidence, site, tumor type, or age at onset. |
| **Limited**—data suggest a carcinogenic effect, but consist of a single experiment; or questions regarding adequacy of design, conduct, or interpretation of the studies are unresolved; or the effect is limited to benign tumors or lesions of uncertain neoplastic potential only, or to certain neoplasms that may occur spontaneously in high incidences in certain strains. |
| **Inadequate**—the studies cannot be interpreted as showing either presence or absence of a carcinogenic effect because of major qualitative or quantitative limitations; or no data are available. |
| **Evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity**—adequate studies in at least two species are negative, within the limits of the tests used. |
presented a carcinogenic risk to humans.” However, not all tumors in experimental animals are considered equally predictive of cancer hazard to humans. Some kinds of tumors occur in such high and variable incidence in the inbred strains of mice and rats that are conventionally used in bioassays (e.g., Leydig cell tumors of the testis in male Fischer 344 rats, hepatocellular tumors in male mice of many inbred strains and their F1 hybrids) that when an apparent increase in tumor frequency in treated animals is limited to these kinds of tumors, the evidence for carcinogenicity may be considered suggestive (“limited” in the IARC vocabulary) rather than conclusive.

It is now clearly established that tumors can be induced in certain tissues through several distinct mechanisms of carcinogenic action, and that not all these mechanisms operate in all species. Animal carcinogenicity data may not predict carcinogenic risk to humans when tumors are induced in animals by a mechanism of carcinogenicity that does not operate in humans. This subject is discussed further below, and in the Appendix, and represents another exception to the basic principle that carcinogenicity in experimental animals predicts human cancer risk.

2.3. Other Relevant Data

These are data other than tumor incidence in humans and in experimental animals, and include how a substance is metabolized in experimental animals and in humans, whether the substance and/or its metabolites are genotoxic, manifestations of toxicity other than carcinogenicity, and the mode of action by which the substance acts as a carcinogen.

2.4. Overall Evaluations of Carcinogenicity

Evidence from epidemiological and experimental studies is finally combined with other relevant data to produce an overall qualitative evaluation and classification in one of the five groups defined in Table 4. This table reflects criteria that were introduced in 1992 for use of “other relevant data” in overall evaluations of carcinogenicity (7). Carcinogenic hazard identifications formulated on the basis of bioassay data in rodents can be either strengthened or weakened by additional information on the mode of action of the carcinogen in animals.

As new data are published, agents are re-evaluated. When the strength of the total evidence for carcinogenicity of an agent changes as a result of new data, the classification of the agent may also change. All evaluations, and narrative summaries of the supporting data, are available in the Internet at http://monographs.iarc.fr.

Some representative examples of IARC Monographs evaluations and classifications at various levels of evidence are presented in the sections that follow. These are intended to illustrate how the IARC criteria have been applied to a variety of substances and exposures, but are necessarily
The serious student of the process of carcinogen hazard identification will find numerous additional examples in the Monographs database at the above website.

### Table 4  *IARC Monographs* Overall Evaluations of Carcinogenicity to Humans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 1—carcinogenic to humans</strong></td>
<td>Sufficient epidemiological evidence of increased risk of cancer in exposed humans; exceptionally, human evidence that is less than sufficient, but is supported by sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals together with strong evidence in exposed humans that the agent acts through a relevant mechanism of carcinogenicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 2A—probably carcinogenic to humans</strong></td>
<td>Limited epidemiological evidence of increased cancer risk in humans, but sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals; or inadequate evidence in humans but sufficient evidence in experimental animals, together with strong evidence that the carcinogenic mechanism also operates in humans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 2B—possibly carcinogenic to humans</strong></td>
<td>Inadequate evidence in humans but sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals; or inadequate evidence in humans but limited evidence in animals supported by other relevant data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 3—not classifiable as to carcinogenicity to humans</strong></td>
<td>Inadequate evidence in humans and less than sufficient evidence in animals; exceptionally, agents for which there is inadequate evidence in humans but sufficient evidence in animals may be placed in this category when there is strong evidence that the mechanism of carcinogenicity does not operate in humans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 4—probably not carcinogenic to humans</strong></td>
<td>Evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity in both humans and animals; or inadequate evidence in humans, and evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity in experimental animals, consistently and strongly supported by a broad range of other relevant data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **IARC GROUP 1—CARCINOGENIC TO HUMANS**

When epidemiological evidence of increased cancer risk in exposed humans is *sufficient*, according to the definition given in Table 1, the agent is classified in Group 1—*carcinogenic to humans*. Even without any further information about the mode of action of the agent, such carcinogenic hazard identifications carry a very high level of certainty. In rare cases where the evidence for increased cancer risk is less than sufficient but other relevant data including carcinogenicity in experimental animals are compelling, an agent may also be classified in Group 1. Some examples of IARC Group 1 carcinogens are presented in Table 5.
Table 5  Some IARC Monographs Evaluations from Group 1—Carcinogenic to Humans\textsuperscript{a}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Evidence in Humans and Experimental Animals</th>
<th>Evidence in Experimental Animals</th>
<th>Evidence in Exposed Humans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vinyl chloride (8,9)</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence of angiosarcoma of the liver and possibly other kinds of tumors at other sites in occupationally exposed chemical workers</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence in experimental animals: angiosarcoma of liver and at other sites, also tumors of lung, mammary gland, external auditory canal (Zymbal’s gland), and kidney in mice and rats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Naphthylamine (10,11)</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence in humans: urinary bladder carcinomas in occupationally exposed chemical workers</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence in experimental animals other than standard bioassay species: hepatocellular tumors in mice; marginal effects in rats; urinary bladder carcinomas in dogs, monkeys, and Syrian golden hamsters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smokeless tobacco products (12,13)</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence of oral cancers in individuals who chew tobacco</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analgesic mixtures containing phenacetin (14,15)</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence of urothelial carcinomas of renal pelvis and urinary bladder in patients who ingested large quantities of phenacetin-containing analgesics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene oxide (16,17)</td>
<td>Limited evidence of increased risk of lymphoid and hematopoietic neoplasms in workers using ethylene oxide as a sterilant</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence that ethylene oxide induced brain tumors, peritoneal mesotheliomas, and other tumors in rats, and lung and Harderian gland tumors in mice plus lymphomas in female mice when given by inhalation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) (18)</td>
<td>Limited evidence of slight increased risk of all cancers combined (relative risk = 1.4) in workers most highly exposed in industrial accidents</td>
<td>Sufficient evidence for carcinogenicity in both mice and rats at various sites,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
For a significant number of agents, there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in both exposed humans and experimental animals. In Table 5 vinyl chloride and 2-naphthylamine are examples of such agents. Both of these are (or were, in the case of 2-naphthylamine) industrial chemicals, and human risk was from occupational exposures, but there are many other IARC Group 1 agents that do not necessarily present primarily occupational hazards. Vinyl chloride causes one relatively rare kind of tumor, hepatic angiosarcoma, in both humans and experimental animals, as well as tumors at additional sites in rodents. This overlapping tumor spectrum is not always seen; in fact, it is relatively uncommon for tumor sites in rats and mice to be the same in response to a given carcinogen, or to overlap with cancer sites in humans where those are known. For example, 2-naphthylamine is one of the most potent human urinary bladder carcinogens known, but in mice it causes only hepatocellular tumors (limited evidence of carcinogenicity!), and it has only marginal carcinogenic effects in rats. In certain other species that are not commonly used in bioassays, 2-naphthylamine induces bladder tumors like those seen in humans, but if the only data for carcinogenic hazard of 2-naphthylamine that were available at the time of evaluation had been conventional bioassays in rats and mice, and this compound had not yet been used industrially, it would almost certainly not have been identified as a carcinogen. Bioassays in rats and mice are very useful for identifying possible human carcinogens, but they are not infallible. When positive, they should not be overinterpreted as necessarily predicting what kind of tumor a substance would cause in a human being.

Table 5  Some IARC Monographs Evaluations from Group 1—Carcinogenic to Humansa (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance/Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Including thyroid, liver, skin, oral cavity, lung, and soft connective tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other relevant data supporting the concept that TCDD acts by binding to human and rodent Ah receptors, which are transcription factors, rather than by genotoxic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutron radiation (19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inadequate evidence in humans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sufficient evidence for induction of leukemia and of ovarian, mammary, lung, and liver tumors in mice, and at various sites in rats, rabbits, dogs, and Rhesus monkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross chromosomal aberrations are induced in lymphocytes of people exposed to neutrons, and the spectrum of DNA damage induced by neutrons is similar to that of X rays (for which evidence of carcinogenicity to humans is sufficient), but contains more of the more serious, less readily reparable types of damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aExamples given are illustrative only and are not a comprehensive listing. For a complete and regularly updated listing of agents evaluated by the IARC Monographs Programme, and for narrative summaries of the evidence supporting each evaluation, consult the Internet posting at http://monographs.iarc.fr.
Agents can also be placed in IARC Group 1 on the strength of sufficient evidence for cancer causation in humans only. Supporting bioassays for carcinogenicity in experimental animals are not necessary for classification in Group 1. Agents and exposures for which there are only human data include certain biological agents that have a host range that is restricted to humans only, and occupational circumstances or personal or cultural habits that cannot be tested in experimental animals. Rats, for example, obstinately refuse to chew tobacco, and the carcinogenicity of “tobacco habits other than smoking” depends solely on epidemiological studies of humans who do chew tobacco (12,13).

Analgesic mixtures containing phenacetin, taken as over-the-counter analgesics, can clearly cause urothelial tumors in humans when taken in excessive quantities for prolonged periods. The phenacetin in the mixture (which by itself causes urothelial tumors when fed to rats in bioassays) is almost certainly responsible for this effect, but there is no direct evidence for this, as phenacetin alone has not been taken by humans for pain relief. Accordingly, while there is sufficient evidence in humans that the mixture is carcinogenic, there is only limited evidence for the carcinogenicity to humans of phenacetin itself, which is therefore classified in Group 2A (see Table 6).

Ethylene oxide and neutron radiation are two examples of agents that are classified as human carcinogens, but with only limited evidence of increased cancer risk in exposed humans (ethylene oxide) or even inadequate evidence (neutrons). In both cases, animal carcinogenicity data are convincing, and other relevant data supporting genetical damage as a mode of action are compelling.

2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) is an example of a compound that is carcinogenic, not by a genotoxic mechanism, but by interaction with a cellular receptor. Other examples of receptor-based carcinogens are natural and synthetic estrogens.

4. IARC GROUP 2A—PROBABLY CARCINOGENIC TO HUMANS
Agents which are carcinogenic in experimental animals and for which there are also certain kinds of supplementary data may be classified in Group 2A—probably carcinogenic to humans (Table 6). Such supplementary data may consist of limited evidence, of cancer in exposed humans, as in the case of phenacetin, or may include various kinds of experimental data, for example, on genetical and related effects of an agent in microbial and mammalian cells and in experimental animals in vivo (as for acrylamide). Certain kinds of exposures that are not amenable to testing in experimental animals (for example, occupational exposures in petroleum refining) may be classified
in Group 2A based only on limited evidence for increased cancer risks in exposed humans when other relevant data support this evaluation.

5. IARC GROUP 2B—POSSIBLY CARCINOGENIC TO HUMANS

Carcinogenic hazard identifications are frequently made only on the basis of empirical carcinogenicity data in experimental animals, when there are no data on human exposures and nothing else is known about the mode of action of the agent. When this is the only information available, the identification is generally qualified as having a lower level of certainty than human data. Agents for which there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals by the criteria of Table 3, but for which there are few or no other data, are classified in Group 2B as possibly carcinogenic to humans (Table 7).

For some chemicals, such as 1,2-epoxybutane, bioassay data are too weak to meet the criteria for sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in
animals, but other relevant data support the likelihood that the agent is potentially carcinogenic. This is especially common when the agent or its metabolites are genotoxic. However, in the Monographs Programme, there must be at least some empirical evidence of carcinogenicity or an agent would not be placed in Group 2B—and, in fact, would not be selected for evaluation in the first place.

Exposures and agents may also be classified in Group 2B on the basis of limited epidemiological data alone, in the absence of bioassay data in experimental animals or when the bioassays are negative. Extremely low-frequency magnetic fields are an example; the only evidence that these fields may be causally related to human cancer is a consistent, statistically significant increased incidence of childhood leukemia in households where such fields are high. It was the consistency of this finding in several independent studies that determined the outcome of limited, rather than inadequate,

---

**Table 7** Some Representative *IARC Monographs* Evaluations from Group 2B—Possibly Carcinogenic to Animals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification Type</th>
<th>Agent/Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Inadequate evidence or no data in humans; sufficient evidence in experimental animals** | Acrylonitrile (21)<sup>a</sup>  
Inadequate evidence in humans; no consistent evidence of increased lung or other cancer risk in exposed workers  
Sufficient evidence (brain, mammary gland, liver, and other tumors) in rats exposed by inhalation, in several independent studies  
Naphthalene (22)  
No data in exposed humans  
Olfactory carcinomas in rats on inhalation; lung tumors in mice |
| **Less than sufficient evidence in experimental animals, but support from other relevant data** | 1,2-Epoxybutane (23)  
No data on exposed humans  
Limited evidence in experimental animals: nasal adenomas (benign tumors) and a low incidence of lung tumors including both adenomas and carcinomas in rats on inhalation; no significant carcinogenic effect in mice  
Other relevant data: direct-acting alkylating agent that is mutagenic in a variety of test systems |
| **Limited evidence in humans; no evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals** | Extremely low-frequency magnetic fields (24)  
Limited evidence in humans: consistent excess risk of childhood leukemia in households where magnetic fields are highest  
No support of causality from either bioassays in experimental animals or data on putative mechanism of carcinogenic action |

---

<sup>a</sup>See also the previous classification in Group 2A, in part on the basis of limited evidence of increased lung cancer risk in occupationally exposed workers that was not confirmed by subsequent epidemiological studies with greater statistical power (25).
evidence for increased cancer risk in exposed humans. This is also a good example of a case where the criterion of biological plausibility was considered inapplicable by the IARC Working Group (24).

6. IARC GROUP 3—NOT CLASSIFIABLE AS TO CARCINOGENICITY TO HUMANS

An agent is placed in Group 3 when there are no epidemiological data, or published studies provide inadequate evidence for increased cancer risk in humans, and experimental animal data are less than sufficient. More than half of all the agents ever evaluated by the IARC Monographs Programme are in Group 3, most of them because of various limitations in the available data.

Agents may also be placed in Group 3 when experimental carcinogenicity data are sufficient but the mechanism of carcinogenicity in animals is considered not to predict human risk. Of most practical importance are mechanisms that operate in experimental rodent species to cause tumors in a specific tissue, but that because of physiological differences between rodent species and humans do not lead to human cancer. Tumors can arise in certain tissues in rodents—sometimes in a single sex of a single species—by such “rodent-specific” mechanisms. The most important and best characterized of these modes of action are summarized in Table 8. Considerations of how such data should be used in carcinogenic hazard identification are summarized in the Appendix; these are condensed from the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Organ site</th>
<th>Mechanism/mode of carcinogenic action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat, mouse</td>
<td>Thyroid follicular epithelium</td>
<td>Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) dysregulationa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (males only)</td>
<td>Renal cortical epithelium</td>
<td>ã2-Urinary globulin nephropathya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Urinary bladder</td>
<td>Urinary calculus formationab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Urinary bladder</td>
<td>Calcium phosphate-containing urinary precipitatesa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, mouse</td>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>Peroxisome proliferationc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aFor details see Capen et al. (26).
*bIndividuals with urinary tract stones do have a small excess risk of urothelial cancers; this mode of carcinogenic action in rodents is considered not to predict human risk at levels of exposure where urinary calculi do not form.
*cFor details see IARC (27).
consensus statements from IARC publications on these subjects (26,27). The full consensus statements can be found at http://monographs.iarc.fr.

Some examples of IARC Monographs evaluations that have been made on the basis of such mechanistic data are listed in Table 9.

### Table 9  Some IARC Monographs Evaluations of Chemicals That are Carcinogenic to Experimental Animals by Modes of Action Listed in Table 8, and Placed by the IARC Monographs in Group 3—Not Classifiable as to Carcinogenicity to Humans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Target tissue and mechanism of carcinogenicity in rodents</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saccharin and its salts</td>
<td>Rat urinary bladder: calcium phosphate-containing urinary precipitates</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melamine</td>
<td>Rat urinary bladder: urinary calculi</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d-Limonene</td>
<td>Rat kidney (males only): $\alpha_2$-urinary globulin nephropathy</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene thiourea</td>
<td>Rat and mouse thyroid follicular epithelium: TSH dysregulation</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate (DEHP)</td>
<td>Rat and mouse liver parenchyma: peroxisome proliferation</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. **IARC GROUP 4—PROBABLY NOT CARCINOGENIC TO HUMANS**

When regulatory agencies conclude that an agent or exposure is not carcinogenic, typically no action is taken to broadcast such findings. The IARC selects agents for evaluation on the basis of two criteria: there must be evidence or suspicion of carcinogenicity, and there must be human exposure, but occasionally on review it is found that there is evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity in humans or in experimental animals. When there are adequate data both from epidemiological studies of exposed humans and from bioassays in experimental animals, and both the human and the animal data are negative, an agent may be placed in Group 4—probably not carcinogenic to humans. At the present time there is only one substance, caprolactam, in Group 4.

**APPENDIX**

IARC Monographs guidelines on the use of mode-of-action data for extrapolation of organ-specific rodent carcinogenicity findings to humans when the mode of carcinogenic action in rodents does not exist in humans,
under realistic conditions of human exposures to the agent. This appendix is condensed from the consensus statements for the various mechanisms/modes of carcinogenic action originally published in Capen et al. (26) and in IARC (27).

**Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone-Associated Follicular-Cell Neoplasms**

Agents that lead to the development of thyroid neoplasia through an adaptive physiological mechanism belong to a different category from those that lead to neoplasia through genotoxic mechanisms or through mechanisms involving pathological responses with necrosis and repair.

Agents causing thyroid follicular-cell neoplasia in rodents solely through hormonal imbalance can be identified using the following criteria:

- There is a lack of genotoxic activity (agent and/or metabolite) based on an overall evaluation of in vitro and in vivo data
- The presence of hormone imbalance has been demonstrated under the conditions of the carcinogenicity assay
- The mechanism whereby the agent leads to hormone imbalance has been defined.

When tumors are observed both in the thyroid and at other sites, they should be evaluated separately on the basis of the modes of action of the agent.

Agents that induce thyroid follicular tumors in rodents through interference with a thyroid hormone homeostasis can, with a few exceptions, also interfere with thyroid hormone homeostasis in humans if given at a sufficient dose for a sufficient period of time. These agents can be assumed not to be carcinogenic in humans at exposure levels which do not lead to alterations in thyroid hormone homeostasis.

**\(\alpha_2\)-Urinary Globulin Nephropathy and Renal Cell Tumors in Male Rats**

In making overall evaluations of carcinogenicity to humans, it can be concluded that production of renal cell tumors in male rats by agents that fulfill all of the following criteria for an \(\alpha_2\)-globulin-associated response is not predictive of carcinogenic hazard to humans:

- Lack of genotoxic activity (agent and/or metabolites) based on an overall evaluation of in vitro and in vivo data
- Male rat specificity for nephropathy and renal tumorigenicity
- Induction of the characteristic sequence of histopathological changes in shorter-term studies, of which protein droplet accumulation is obligatory
Identification of the protein accumulating in tubule cells as $\alpha_2\mu$-globulin

Reversible binding of the chemical or metabolite to $\alpha_2\mu$-globulin

Induction of sustained increased cell proliferation in the renal cortex

Similarities in dose–response relationship of the tumor outcome with the histopathological end points (protein droplets, $\alpha_2\mu$-globulin accumulation, cell proliferation).

In situations where an agent induces tumors at other sites in the male rat or tumors in other laboratory animals, the evidence regarding these other tumor responses should be used independently of the $\alpha_2\mu$-globulin-associated tumorigenicity in making the overall evaluation of carcinogenicity to humans.

Urinary Bladder Calculi and Urothelial Neoplasms of the Bladder in Rats

For chemicals producing bladder neoplasms in rats and mice as a result of calculus formation in the urinary bladder, the response cannot be considered to be species specific; thus, the tumor response is relevant to an evaluation of carcinogenicity to humans. There are quantitative differences in response between species and sexes. Calculus formation is dependent on the attainment in the urine of critical concentrations of constituent chemicals which form the calculus; therefore, the biological effects are dependent on reaching threshold concentrations for calculus formation. Microcrystalluria is often associated with calculus formation, but its relevance to species-specific mechanisms cannot be assessed.

Calcium Phosphate-Containing Urinary Precipitates and Urothelial Bladder Tumors in Rats

Calcium phosphate-containing precipitates in the urine of rats, such as those produced by the administration of high doses of some sodium salts, including sodium saccharin and sodium ascorbate, can result in the production of urinary bladder tumors. This sequence can be considered to be species and dose specific and is not known to occur in humans.

In making overall evaluations of carcinogenicity to humans, it can be concluded that the production of bladder cancer in rats via a mechanism involving calcium phosphate-containing precipitates is not predictive of carcinogenic hazard to humans, provided that the following criteria are met:

- The formation of the calcium phosphate-containing precipitate occurs under the conditions of the carcinogenicity bioassay which is positive for cancer induction
- Prevention of the formation of the urinary precipitate results in prevention of the bladder proliferative effect
• The agent (and/or metabolites) shows a lack of genotoxic activity, based on an overall evaluation of in vitro and in vivo data
• The agent being evaluated does not produce tumors at any other site in experimental animals
• There is evidence from studies in humans that precipitate formation or cancer does not occur in exposed populations.

In situations where an agent induces tumors at other sites in rats or tumors in other laboratory animals, the evidence regarding these other tumor responses should be used independently of information on tumors associated with calcium phosphate-containing precipitates in making the overall evaluation of carcinogenicity to humans.

Peroxisome Proliferation and Hepatocellular Tumors in Rats and Mice

The responses to the following questions are based on the interpretation of hepatocellular tumor induction in rats and mice, since the mechanisms of carcinogenesis have been evaluated in detail only in the liver. The available information on the mechanisms of tumor response elicited by some peroxisome proliferators in rats and mice at sites other than the liver suggests that peroxisome proliferation does not play a role in the formation of tumors at those sites.

1. What mechanisms are critical to peroxisome proliferation?

The evidence suggests that peroxisome proliferation in mouse and rat liver is mediated by activation of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors, which are members of the steroid hormone receptor superfamily. Receptor activation may be a direct effect of the peroxisome proliferator or may be mediated through perturbation of lipid metabolism. Such receptors have also been identified in humans.

2. Is peroxisome proliferation an indicator of cancer risk in rats and mice?

There is a strong concordance between peroxisome proliferation and hepatocellular carcinogenesis in rats and mice. On the basis of a more limited database, a similar concordance is seen between hepatocellular proliferation induced by peroxisome proliferators and hepatocellular tumor induction.

3. What are the mechanisms of carcinogenesis mediated by chemically induced peroxisome proliferation?

Two major biological responses to peroxisome proliferators are associated with increased cancer induction in rats and mice. One is peroxisome proliferation, and the other is increased hepatocellular proliferation. The proposed mechanisms of peroxisome proliferator-induced hepatocellular carcinogenesis include oxidative stress, increased hepatocellular
proliferation, and preferential growth of preneoplastic lesions. These mechanisms may not be mutually exclusive.

Hepatocellular carcinogenic peroxisome proliferators are generally inactive in assays for genotoxicity. Some such agents can cause morphological cell transformation and inhibit gap-junctional intercellular communication. These cellular effects appear to be independent of the process of peroxisome proliferation. Chemicals that induce peroxisome proliferation may have additional carcinogenic effects unrelated to that phenomenon.

4. Does peroxisome proliferation also occur in humans, and do the mechanisms of carcinogenesis mediated by peroxisome proliferation in rats and mice also operate in humans?

Data on the effects in humans of peroxisome proliferators are derived from studies of subjects receiving hypolipidaemic drugs and from studies of cultured human hepatocytes. The limited data in vivo suggest that therapeutic doses of hypolipidaemic agents produce little if any peroxisome proliferation in human liver. Hypolipidaemic fibrates and other chemicals that induce peroxisome proliferation in rat and mouse hepatocytes when given at high concentrations do not do so in cultured human hepatocytes.

Marginal, statistically nonsignificant increases in hepatocellular peroxisome proliferation in human liver have been reported after exposure to clofibrate, but a comparable increase in peroxisome proliferation was not associated with hepatocellular carcinogenesis in rats or mice.

5. How can data on peroxisome proliferation be used in making overall evaluations of carcinogenicity to humans?

Chemicals that show evidence of inducing peroxisome proliferation should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis. The evaluation of agents by independent expert groups is a matter of scientific judgement.

When the database supports the conclusion that a tumor response in mice or rats is secondary only to peroxisome proliferation, consideration could be given to modifying the overall evaluation, as described in the Preamble to the IARC Monographs, taking into account the following evidence:

- Information is available to exclude mechanisms of carcinogenesis other than those related to peroxisome proliferation.
- Peroxisome proliferation (increases in peroxisome volume density or fatty acid á-oxidation activity) and hepatocellular proliferation have been demonstrated under the conditions of the bioassay.
- Such effects have not been found in adequately designed and conducted investigations of human groups and systems.

REFERENCES

Determination of What Is a Carcinogen


1. INTRODUCTION

Commonly, patients with cancer wonder why they have become victims. Physicians and patients alike speculate about the causes of the patients’ cancer. The internet, a wide array of agencies and organizations, and the public health community are looked to in different ways to provide answers. But, for the individual, the available data that will allow for less speculation and a better understanding of causality are frequently limited. There are few biomarkers or fingerprints of a particular carcinogenic process that have been sufficiently validated to indicate what actually happened to a person. An individualized cancer risk assessment or determination of what caused cancer in an individual necessarily relies on available epidemiological data that actually provide risk estimates for populations, and have limitations for use in understanding the risks for an individual within a population.

Patients and health care providers become frustrated at the lack of answers, and intuition is relied upon. However, there are a multitude of sources that can be considered, such as epidemiological, laboratory animal, and in vitro studies. A comprehensive review may be beyond the time, resources, or expertise of a health care provider. Review articles or
documents from regulatory agencies and other organizations may be available. However, it is important to consider the focus and goals of the authors for any particular document, because frequently the analysis is not aimed at providing for a causality assessment in an individual. In fact, usually such documents are intended to provide insights to protecting the public health. As such, the authors provide assessments that will focus on safety, and utilize data that will maximize such.

2. CARCINOGENESIS

Cancers result from multiple gene–environment interactions that occur over long periods of time. The environment is now defined as the area surrounding the affected critical macromolecules, specifically DNA. So, it is more important to understand what is happening at the cellular level, and the origin of exposures might be exogenous (from outside of the body) or endogenous (produced by the body).

Carcinogenesis is a multistage process of normal growth, differentiation, and development gone awry. It is driven by spontaneous and carcino-gen-induced genetic and epigenetic events. Tumor initiation involves the direct effects of carcinogenic agents upon DNA that cause mutations and altered gene expression. The attendant defects lead to selective reproductive and clonal expansion of cells. This may be augmented through growth factors that control signal transduction. Progressive phenotypic changes and genomic instability occur (aneuploidy, mutations, or gene amplification). These genetic changes enhance the probability of “initiated” cells transforming into a malignancy, the odds of which are increased during repeated rounds of cell replication. During tumor progression, angiogenesis allows for a tumor to grow beyond one or two millimeters in size. Ultimately, tumor cells can disseminate through vessels invading distant tissues and establishing metastatic colonies.

The primary genes involved in driving the cancer process are proto-oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. Proto-oncogenes are important to the regulatory mechanisms of growth, cell cycle, and terminal differentiation. Activation of proto-oncogenes enhances the probability of neoplastic transformation, which can either be an early or late event. Carcinogens can cause mutations in proto-oncogene DNA sequences or they can act as tumor promoters enhancing the activity of oncogene protein products. Examples of a proto-oncogene are those in the \textit{RAS} family.

Tumor suppressor genes also code for products that regulate cell growth and terminal differentiation. However, they have the opposite effect by limiting growth and stimulating terminal differentiation. If inactivated, then the cell may grow or replicate uncontrollably, with limits defined only by blood supply and space. For this to occur, both copies of the tumor suppressor genes must be affected, and thus it is a recessive event. This is
exemplified by inheritance of a predisposition to retinoblastoma and/or osteosarcoma, where patients possess a homozygous loss of the Rb1 gene on chromosome 13 (1–3). In the familial form, loss of one allele is inherited and the other is lost through later mutation. Loss of suppressor and antime-tastasis genes can be an early or late event involving several steps, including angiogenesis and metastasis (4).

Another way of considering genes involved in the carcinogenic process is to classify them as caretaker and gatekeeper genes (5). This recognizes their respective roles in the maintenance of genomic integrity (e.g., DNA repair) and cellular proliferation, respectively. Landscaper genes are also considered that are responsible for maintaining the general environment around the cells (i.e., effects on stromal cells and signaling between cells). Some examples of caretaker genes are those that are involved in DNA repair and carcinogen metabolism, while examples of gatekeeper genes are those involved in cell cycle control and DNA replication. Dysfunctional caretaker genes increase the probability of mutations in gatekeeper genes, which are necessary to initiate the molecular pathogenesis of cancer. It is interesting that the carcinogenic effects of caretaker and gatekeeper genes appear to be tissue-specific and lead to cancer only in those organs, even though these genes are expressed in many different organs.

Carcinogenic agents affect DNA in different ways. They can covalently bind to nucleotides and form adducts. These adducts may be promu-tagenic, and if present at the time of DNA synthesis, can cause mutations. N-nitrosamines, for example, present in the diet and linked to esophageal and gastric carcinoma, result in nucleotide base substitutions due to mispairing at sites where adducts are formed. Some mutations may reflect specific carcinogen exposures or endogenous mechanisms, and frequently exhibit target organ specificity. For example, p53 mutations at codon 249 frequently observed in hepatocellular carcinoma from China (6) or southern Africa (7) are consistent with the type of damage caused by aflatoxin B1 exposure, a common dietary carcinogen linked to this tumor. In contrast, several types of p53 mutations have been observed in lung cancer (8), which is consistent with a multiple carcinogen exposure etiology from tobacco smoke. To date, however, the mutational spectra of p53 or other genes cannot be used to determine what caused a cancer in a person.

Independent of carcinogen exposure, human cells are continuously undergoing spontaneous mutations at a low rate. Oxidative damage, pol-ymerase infidelity, chromosomal rearrangement, recombinase infidelity, and telomere reduction are other sources of error. The process of cell and DNA replication can increase the rate of mutation (9). When one considers that the human body contains $10^{14}$ cells and that these cells undergo $10^{16}$ divisions over a person’s life span, it is quite possible that genomic instabil-ity plays an important role in carcinogenesis (10,11).
Balancing the ongoing exposure to carcinogens, cells have the ability to repair DNA damage, such as the removal of carcinogen DNA adducts through nucleotide excision repair or gross chromosomal damage through homologous recombination. When DNA is sufficiently damaged and cannot be repaired, then cells have the ability to trigger apoptosis (cell death), in which case it is no longer viable and cannot become a cancer cell.

In almost every step of the multistage process of carcinogenesis, person-to-person differences in cancer susceptibility can be found (12). Interindividual differences for particular traits can be acquired, or inherited. Inherited susceptibilities, manifest through evolutionary changes in nucleotide sequence, may augment human cancer pathogenesis that can vary from high penetrance with an attendant high likelihood of causing cancer to low penetrance genes with an attendant increased risk of causing cancer albeit less likely than high penetrance genes. Nevertheless, the range from low to high penetrance genes is a continuum, and studies in animal models indicate that the effects of high penetrance genes can be modified by other genes (13). High penetrance genes that cause family cancer syndromes can have substantial impact in affected families (e.g., BRCA1, hereditary nonpolyposis coli or Li–Fraumeni syndrome) (13), but they affect only a small percentage of the population. In contrast, the manifestations of cancer susceptibility genes with less penetrance contribute to common sporadic cancers, and thus affect a large segment of the population.

2.1. Methods to Assess Carcinogenesis

There are many tests that are used to increase our understanding of carcinogenesis and risk; these range from in vitro and experimental animal in vivo studies to human clinical and epidemiological studies. The usefulness of each method can be contrasted with its limitations (Table 1). Short-term assays for mutagenesis provide quick and inexpensive screens for potential carcinogens. Among the most widely used is the Ames’ test (14), which assesses mutagenic potential in Salmonella typhimurium bacteria. The Ames’ test has also been used as a biomonitor in humans, as exemplified by urine mutagenicity studies from cigarette smokers (15). While other assays exist, there are none with proven increased predictive value. Although short-term assays are useful in identifying potentially carcinogenic compounds, the same sensitivity makes the results difficult to extrapolate to humans. Positive results might be unique to the strain, and factors such as metabolism, repair, and exposure cannot be assessed.

Experimental animal studies provide a short-term ability to assess the effects of a carcinogen in mammals. However, the predictivity for human risk is poor, but few better methods to study possible cancer risk and carcinogenesis exist. As used by the National Toxicology Program and others, rodent carcinogenicity studies are performed using lifetime exposures with
up to maximally tolerated doses (MTD), that is, those not producing clinically evident toxic effects. To infer that a carcinogenic effect is present in laboratory animals, dose–response relationships are examined, along with overall mortality rates and consistency with other species. The limitations in these experiments include the routine use of the MTD, thus potentially increasing cell replication with resultant increased endogenous mutations; interspecies, and interstrain differences; use of rodents known to have high spontaneous rates of cancer; an inability to account for metabolic differences between high- and low-dose exposure, and difficulty in interpreting data from doses that commonly exceed those received by humans (16–18). Also, the tumors of experimental animals may not resemble human cancer, or may not be malignant.

Human investigations provide the most relevant data regarding human risk. Clinical studies might be done, where exposures are unavoidable. For example, while it is conceivable to intentionally expose a person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In vitro testing</td>
<td>Economical</td>
<td>Uncertain in vitro to in vivo extrapolations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rapid results</td>
<td>Frequent false positives and negatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Human cells can be used</td>
<td>Mutagenicity is not the same as carcinogenicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-laboratory variation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal bioassay</td>
<td>More predictive of human experience than short-term tests</td>
<td>Expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Elucidates species differences</td>
<td>Doses are higher than those experienced by humans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human clinical studies</td>
<td>Direct measurement of human experience</td>
<td>Uncertain animal-to-human extrapolation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biomarkers show biologically effective dose and intermediate markers of cancer risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Short-term results</td>
<td>Cancer is not an endpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>Direct measurement of human experience</td>
<td>Insensitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Covariables examined</td>
<td>Does not prove causation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dose–response data</td>
<td>Unknown confounding variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biomarkers can be used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interindividual variation considered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
who already smokes to a modified tobacco product intended to reduce exposure, it would not be advisable to expose a person to a new chemical that has not been considered to be safe through laboratory testing. Epidemiology measures the incidence or prevalence of disease in human populations. One limitation is that epidemiology can inform us about cancer risk from prior exposures, the latency effect of most carcinogens is so long that we cannot wait to assess a cancer risk in the future, and these study repeat effects after too many people get cancer. Also, it must be realized that epidemiologic methods, by themselves, do not demonstrate causation. The assessment of causation can be aided by Sir Austin Bradford–Hill’s (19) proposed criteria, summarized in Table 2.

A formal quantitative risk assessment using mathematical models is used by regulatory agencies to estimate a potential cancer risk to a population exposed to a particular carcinogen at a specific dose. Risk assessments serve public health interests as they attempt to predict the frequency of cancer in a population before epidemiologic investigations can be performed, that is, before significant exposure and adverse outcomes occur. Among the reasons that population risk assessment informs little understanding about individual cancer risk, or causality, is that the risk assessment process makes a variety of interpretations and assumptions in the public health interest, and many of these are open to debate. Examples include subjective evaluations of the literature and extrapolations from laboratory animals to humans, and the use of safety quotients to compensate for a lack of knowledge in some areas.

### 2.2. Gathering Risk Factor Information

The initial approach before considering the individual’s situation and possible risk factors is to assess what risk factors are known, and the scientific basis that identifies these risk factors. In the case of a potential carcinogen exposure, the scientific data are considered at any level of exposure. This

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strength of association</td>
<td>What is magnitude of risk?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consistency</td>
<td>Are there repeated observations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by multiple investigators in different populations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specificity</td>
<td>Is the effect specific or are there other known causes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporality</td>
<td>Does exposure precede effect?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biological gradient</td>
<td>Is there a dose–response relation?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biological plausibility</td>
<td>Is the effect predictable?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coherence</td>
<td>Is the effect consistent with other scientific data?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogy</td>
<td>Do other similar agents act similarly?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: From Ref. 19.*
is done by reviewing scientific textbooks and articles identified by doing computerized literature searches.

For literature searches, public websites such as the National Library of Medicine PubMed website can be useful (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi). Abstracts of publications are frequently available, some articles can be downloaded for free, or at a cost, and all can be ordered through a related service on that site called Loansome Doc. Search strategies should be broad in order to identify related articles that might not be categorized appropriately. PubMed also includes links to related articles, which are sometimes helpful.

The websites for governmental agencies and other organizations can provide information, including downloads of various monographs. For example, one can view the websites of the Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/) and its parent website for the Centers for Disease Control (http://www.cdc.gov/), the American Conference of Governmental Hygienists (http://www.acgih.org), the Environmental Protection Agency (http://www.epa.gov), Food and Drug Administration (http://www.fda.gov), the International Agency for Research on Cancer of the World Health Organization (http://www.iarc.fr), National Institutes of Environmental Health Sciences (http://www.niehs.nih.gov), and the Nuclear Regulatory Commission (http://www.nrc.gov). Also, one might look to links by various nonprofit and advocacy organizations.

2.3. Assessing Causality in the Individual

The methodology for the determination of cancer causality is described below. It is important to assess different types of scientific data, relying on the best studies. Sometimes, a researcher might postulate causality (i.e., as might be done through a publication of a case report, or a case series), but this is different from concluding a causal relationship of exposure to outcome. Among the types of data that might be useful, human epidemiological data are substantially more helpful than nonhuman data. If there is sufficient reason to consider that the chemical has a potential to cause the type of cancer identified for the individual (target organ specificity is important), then an assessment is made to determine the doses reported in the literature that may be associated with an increased cancer risk, and in what settings. A mechanistic understanding of the carcinogenic process (known or hypothesized) is considered in the context of the alleged exposure and disease in the patient. Animal and in vitro studies can be helpful in these mechanistic assessments. A concurrent step for assessing causality in an individual is to confirm the diagnosis, as sometimes incorrect diagnoses are made, and so would not be appropriately related to the alleged exposure in the individual. Assuming that there is sufficient reason to believe that the chemical might increase cancer risk, then one would consider the individual's
potential exposure or risk factor compared to those from the literature. For example, exposure level, route of exposure, other exposures or risk factors, or the type of population would be considered.

It is helpful to consider the Bradford–Hill guidelines (19) mentioned above and described in Table 2. While not all are criteria are required to be met, there are some criteria that if violated would exclude the likelihood of causation; while fulfilling some may not lead to a definitive conclusion of causation. Among the most important criteria is consistency in the literature, that is, doing several well-designed and well-conducted epidemiology studies leading to similar findings in different populations, using different study designs. It should be noted that no single epidemiological study is definitive. A determination of a biological gradient also is important, i.e., if there is a dose–response relationship identified in scientific studies, and if those doses occur in the human exposure scenario of interest. Another is the strength of association, which allows one to consider if the reported association in an epidemiological study is believable (i.e., not too high or too low). An evaluation of temporality considers if the exposure sufficiently preceded the cancer effect to allow for latency. Specificity considers if the cancer has other reported causes and if the effect occurs in the identified target organ. Coherence refers to an evaluation and agreement of different types of scientific data (epidemiological, laboratory animal studies, cell culture models, etc.) and they do provide similar findings that lead to a mechanistic understanding of how the chemical would cause cancer in humans. Analogy looks to see if similar chemicals are known to behave similarly and what is the available scientific data for those chemicals.

2.4. Assessing the Patient

A careful history and physical examination are critical to any medical assessment, and that is true for cancer risk assessment too. The history, detailed in Table 3, needs to be thorough. What is critical is to document all potential exposures. Parenthetically, medical records are often used in litigation over potential exposures, and so the health care provider needs to document potential exposures accurately and clearly. This is true for known cancer risk factors as well.

If a known or suspected carcinogen is identified for a patient, then an evaluation of the actual exposure can be undertaken. If there are validated biomarkers for such, then these can be relied upon. Some might reflect only recent exposure, however, and do not indicate what has possibly occurred over many years or a lifetime. There is considerable research into the development and validation of biomarkers. The validation has to include the reliability of the test itself as it reflects what it is supposed to be measuring, but also its validity as a risk factor. The latter can be more complicated, and the health care provider should use caution when considering the use of a
test that is still experimental. A major limitation is that recommendations based on results cannot be given in an informed manner.

Environmental monitoring might be taken, and although some of these are relatively inexpensive (i.e., radon), the cost of some monitoring and testing can be prohibitive. The use of biomarkers or environmental testing must be carefully considered, including their validity. The choice of laboratory, and its competency and experience also must be considered. Resources for environmental testing might include local industrial hygienists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Examples of questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medical</td>
<td>History of present illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>History of medical disorders associated with secondary malignancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recent and distant medication use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>History of radiation exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>History of virus exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family</td>
<td>History of cancer in different generations, including immediate and next-to-immediate members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assess passive smoke exposure (parents, current occupants)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Occupational history of current and past household members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hereditary disorders associated with secondary malignancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social</td>
<td>Tobacco consumption (cigarettes and smokeless products)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alcohol use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Risk factors for viral exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Substance abuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All recreations and hobbies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diet and nutrition, including vitamin use, health fads, home gardens and locally grown food products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational</td>
<td>All occupations, including summer and childhood work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parental occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any jobs with known hazards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any jobs where protective equipment was used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any jobs with cancer clusters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any jobs with bad odors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any jobs with chemicals, fumes, gases, or dusts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental</td>
<td>All residences and types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Residential proximity to industry, waste sites, agriculture, or other areas with potential exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Source of water—well, community, and bottled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancer clusters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use of pesticides, herbicides, and termiticides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>House building materials and renovations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
at the company where an exposure might be alleged, or a consulting firm. Public health departments might also be helpful.

3. SUMMARY

The assessment of cancer risk in an individual can be complex. It requires an understanding of carcinogenesis, and the resources and abilities to obtain and interpret the scientific literature. It also includes a careful history and physical of the patient. Importantly, the best available means to assess considered risk factors, such as a biomarker, should be utilized. However, caution is needed for the choice of biomarker, or environmental testing, in that it must be predictive of risk. The occurrence of cancer in a patient is frequently a life-transforming event, and the health care provider needs to give the patient accurate information.

REFERENCES

1. INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW
1.1. The Epidemiologic Method

Last (1) defines epidemiology as “the study of the distribution and determinants of health-related states or events in specified populations, and the application of this study to control of health problems.” In the context of cancer, a more simplistic definition is that epidemiology attempts to answer the question of who develops cancer and why. If cancer is not random, at least at the population level, then there must be determinants of the observed patterns of cancer. This chapter will introduce the reader to the basic methods of epidemiology used to describe patterns of cancer and to test hypotheses about the causes of cancer.

Epidemiology is often divided into descriptive and analytical branches. Descriptive epidemiology describes the occurrence of disease and other health-related characteristics in human populations. These descriptive patterns are based on aggregate characteristics of disease frequency, person (age, sex, race, occupation, etc.), place (generally geographical region), and calendar time. Analytical epidemiology, in contrast, uses specific study designs (e.g., a cohort or case–control study) to test hypotheses about exposure and disease relationships, frequently incorporating biomarkers and analyzing disease mechanisms. Of note, it is descriptive epidemiology that has provided the most compelling evidence that a large proportion of human cancer should be preventable, and it is analytical epidemiology that
has helped identify specific agents or risk factors for cancer (e.g., smoking, certain occupations, and so forth) that have informed preventive actions.

Epidemiology was originally developed to study infectious disease, and during the later half of the 20th century evolved to address chronic diseases such as cancer. There are several characteristics of cancer that impact epidemiologic approaches (2). Cancer is not a single disease, but a group of diseases that share several key biological and pathological characteristics. Diagnosis, treatment, and survival from cancer vary by organ site, and thus are usually discussed by site of cancer origin, and this is also true for the epidemiology of cancer. In addition, not all cancers arising from the same organ have the same characteristics or epidemiology. For example, basal cell carcinoma of the skin rarely metastasizes and causes death. In contrast, melanoma of the skin often metastasizes and causes death. Thus, both cancer site and cancer histology (i.e., both the cell or tissue of origin and the cellular/tissue appearance at diagnosis) are important to understanding cancer.

A second important concept in cancer epidemiology is the theory of multistep carcinogenesis (3,4). Experimental animal models identify several steps. Initiation is the first step in tumor induction, and occurs when a cell’s growth and regulatory capacity are altered through genetic or epigenetic changes, such that the potential for unregulated growth is established. Promotion, the second stage, occurs when a promoting agent induces proliferation and, presumably, the growth advantage of the initiated cell. The third and final stage, progression, is a process by which the neoplastic growth begins to invade surrounding tissues or metastasize to other tissues; the cells of the primary tumor can also change as they acquire more genetic alterations. These genetic alterations commonly occur in both tumor suppressor genes (e.g., Rb1 or p53) and oncogenes (e.g., c-myc).

In the multistep carcinogenic model, the probability of developing cancer is the combined probability of individual rare events that lead to neoplastic growth and eventually clinically evident disease. These events can be mutagenic (chemical alteration of DNA) as well mitogenic (drive proliferation). In addition, these events must either affect or overwhelm intrinsic repair and/or elimination (apoptotic) mechanisms (5). However, it seems highly likely that the carcinogenic process is more complex than simply cells acquiring multiple genetic alterations; there are likely to be determinants at the extracellular matrix and tissue levels that also influence the carcinogenic process (6). Finally, stochastic processes (i.e., some element of randomness) must also be integrated into the conceptual framework of carcinogenesis.

Epidemiologists attempt to link exposures to cancer risk. Exposure is broadly defined by epidemiologists, and classically includes direct contact with an infectious (e.g., the hepatitis B virus, schistosomiasis), chemical (e.g., arsenic, radon), or physical (e.g., heat, ultraviolet radiation) agent in
the environment. However, exposures can also include “exposure” to higher levels of circulating estrogens (e.g., during pregnancy or with obesity), an adverse genotype (e.g., BRCA1 carrier), greater educational level, less physical activity, and so forth. Along with exposure, we often think of dose, which is the amount of the agent to which the host is exposed. Dose is an important concept in cancer epidemiology because for many (but not all) exposures, the greater the dose the greater the biological effect (i.e., a dose–response relation). Evaluation of exposure (exposure assessment) is a complex task and is discussed extensively elsewhere (7).

The induction period is defined as “the interval from the causal action of a factor to the initiation of the disease” while the latent period is defined as “period from disease initiation to disease detection” (1,8). However, the terms are often combined and used synonymously as the “period required for a specific cause to produce disease” (1), in part, because it is generally not possible to know when a disease was actually initiated. The latent period for most exposure–cancer associations is unknown. The cancer experience of persons exposed to short but intensive ionizing radiation (e.g., treatment with radiotherapy or a survivor of the atomic bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki) shows that incidence of leukemia peaks about five years after exposure, while the incidence of solid tumors rises for 15–20 years, and then shows a variable course by tumor site (9). Based on current knowledge, the latent period for most solid tumors is thought to be several decades, while the latent period for leukemias and lymphomas is probably more variable, but not likely less than five years (9).

Observation and experimentation are fundamental components of the scientific method (10). Epidemiology engages in both. The experimental arm of epidemiology includes the randomized clinical trial (individual level) and community intervention trial (group level). In observational epidemiology, researchers collect data on persons (or groups) without any actual manipulations of the exposure. The main observational study designs used in epidemiology are ecological, cross-sectional, case-control, and cohort, and they are briefly introduced in the next section. There are many branches of science that are based on mainly observational approaches, and this approach is often (mistakenly) considered an inferior form of evidence (10). There are many reasons why epidemiology cannot be a purely experimental science. For example, randomized trials are expensive, are not absolutely guaranteed to be free of chance or bias, and are often conducted on persons not representative of the general population. Most importantly, however, is that ethical and practical concerns limit the use of experimental approaches in the study of cancer etiology.

While some authors suggest that epidemiological observation may one day be displaced by laboratory investigation, this seems unlikely for several reasons (9). First, moving the study of cancer in human beings from a free-living population into the laboratory requires a level of scientific
reductionism that is not likely to ever fully or adequately replicate the complexity of cancer in the human body or in human populations. Second, many hypotheses of cancer causation have been generated by the observation of the behavioral repertoire of humans, and would not likely have been suggested by a purely laboratory-based approach. Conversely, many agents that cause cancer in in vitro and in vivo experiments in the laboratory do not appear to be important determinants of risk in individuals or populations. While epidemiology is not precise enough to rule out associations of small magnitude, it does provide reliable evidence that a large effect is extremely unlikely. Epidemiological approaches are also not likely to miss the main determinants of cancer rates and trends. Thus, epidemiology provides quantitative data relating directly to humans, in whom we want to prevent disease.

1.2. Descriptive Epidemiology

Some of the earliest descriptive cancer epidemiology came from observations of exposures (11,12). In 1713, Ramazzini noted that breast cancer was unusually common among nuns, which he attributed to their celibacy and childlessness. A later observation by Rigoni-Stern in 1842 showed that over the period 1760–1839 in Verona, Italy, the ratio of uterine to breast cancer mortality for married women was 2:1, for single women other than nuns it was 1:3, and for nuns it was 1:9. In contrast, cervical cancer was a rare cause of death for nuns. The London physician, Percivall Pott, noted in 1775 that scrotal cancer was common in men who worked as chimney sweeps as boys. He hypothesized that this was due to repeated contact of the skin with combustion products of coal, and these observations became one of the foundations of the field of chemical carcinogenesis. Interestingly, rates of scrotal cancer in German chimney sweeps did not seem to be unusually high, which was attributed to the fact that German sweeps bathed frequently in contrast to English sweeps. Skin cancer among radiographers, lung cancer among miners, and bladder cancer in aniline dye workers are some of the many additional observations that accumulated and helped develop the field of descriptive cancer epidemiology.

The task of cancer surveillance is to estimate the amount of cancer in a population, and describe basic patterns of the disease (e.g., what cancer sites are most common? what is the age distribution of patients? and so forth). One approach to answer these questions is to conduct a survey of a defined population and find out who has cancer (i.e., a prevalence survey). The number of persons living with cancer in the survey divided by the number of persons in the survey is the cancer prevalence, giving a “snapshot” of the cancer burden in a population at a single point in time (13).

Another way to study cancer is to count the number of persons dying of cancer during a period of time, generally as identified by death certificates.
The number of cancer deaths in a given year divided by the number of persons in the population is the cancer mortality rate. From a public health perspective, this is probably the most important statistic to assess the success of a cancer program (15). A third approach to estimating the cancer burden in a population is to continuously monitor a population and count the number of newly diagnosed cases that occur (14). The number of newly diagnosed cancer cases within a defined period of time (usually 1 year) divided by the number of persons in the population is the cancer incidence rate.

A key to the conduct of both descriptive and analytical epidemiological studies is the availability of systematically collected data on cancer patients in a registry. Hospital-based registries collect cancer cases seen in a hospital without an underlying knowledge of the population that generated the cases. These registries are mainly kept for hospital-related needs including planning of cancer services, patient care, and clinical research (e.g., clinical trials and outcome studies). These tumor registries are most commonly found in larger, referral hospitals and therefore cancer cases are usually not representative of all cancers seen in the community, since they tend to overrepresent rarer or more unusual cases. This problem greatly limits the usefulness of hospital-based registries in understanding cancer in the general population.

In contrast, population-based registries collect all cancers occurring in a geographically defined area, which requires case finding in multiple places, including hospitals, pathology laboratories, physician offices, radiation treatment facilities, and so forth, as well as using death certificate data (16). Data on cancer cases are then related to the underlying population to derive incidence rates (below). Population data are generally derived from census data. Population-based cancer registries are much more powerful than hospital-based registries because they are linked to a defined population. Important uses of population-based registries include description of cancer patterns in space (i.e., between geographical regions) and time (trends); evaluation of the effectiveness of cancer prevention programs as well as cancer treatments; formulation and testing of etiological hypotheses using descriptive and analytical study designs; evaluation of cancer clusters; and health planning (16). In the United States, the two major sources for cancer data are the National Center for Health Statistics, which provides mortality data on all U.S. residents, and population-based cancer registries, which provide cancer incidence data. Population-based registries include many state-supported registries (17) and the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) Program coordinated by the National Cancer Institute (http://seer.cancer.gov) (18).

At the international level, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) and the International Association of Cancer Registers published Cancer Incidence in Five Continents that includes data on 183 populations in 50 countries on 5 continents, although data from Africa
and South America are limited (19). An electronic version of the database entitled *CI5VII: Electronic Database of Cancer Incidence in Five Continents Vol. VII* is also available (20). In conjunction with the World Health Organization, IARC also makes available an electronic database of cancer incidence and mortality for 25 cancer sites for all countries, entitled *GLOBOCAN 1: Cancer Incidence and Mortality Worldwide* (21); these data are summarized by Parkin et al. (22) and Pisani et al. (23).

It is important for health planners to know the number of cases in a defined population since these numbers determine the need for medical and other services used by cancer patients. To compare populations, we need to use rates, which require both numerators (i.e., number of cases or deaths during a specified time period) and denominators (e.g., population size during the same time period that generated the cases). Prevalence, incidence, or mortality rates (see Table 1 for definitions) are used to compare populations.

Cancer rates are often termed “crude” rates when they measure frequency of cancer without taking into account the composition of the population. A better way to compare populations is to use age-specific rates. However, presenting age-specific rates is rather cumbersome, and so an alternative approach is to use a method called age standardization. Age standardized rates are the weighted average of the age-specific rates, where a common age structure or standard population is used. The choice of the standard population is arbitrary, and the SEER Program uses the 2000 U.S. population, while IARC uses the World Standard Population for *Cancer Incidence in Five Continents*.

A third cancer statistic that is commonly used is the cumulative rate, which is the sum over each year of age of the age-specific incidence rates. This method does not require the use of a standard population, which makes it a bit more intuitive. For cancer, it has been shown that the cumulative rate approximates the cumulative risk (24), which is defined as “the risk that an individual would have of developing or dying from a given cancer during a certain age span if no other causes of death were operative.” The cumulative risk is presented as a percentage for a given age span (e.g., 0–64 years), and can be estimated from the cumulative rate using a conversion formula (Table 1).

Cancer incidence and mortality rates each have strengths and weaknesses when assessing the cancer burden in a population (14). Cancer incidence data almost always need to be collected using a registry set up for this purpose, while mortality data generally come from routinely collected data. Thus, incidence data are usually associated with greater quality controls than mortality data, but with a much greater investment of resources. Both incidence and mortality data, however, rely on the accuracy of clinical and pathological diagnosis by practicing physicians, which varies by place and through time. Cancer mortality data often lack histological
confirmation, and the site of the cancer is often misspecified, particularly if the primary site is an internal organ or the cancer was metastatic. Clearly, cancer mortality data will underestimate the cancer burden in the community, as not all cancers will kill the patient and multiple cancers in the same person will be missed. Incidence data are clearly preferred for most etiological studies of cancer because mortality data cannot distinguish between

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate</th>
<th>Definition (source)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prevalence rate</td>
<td>The number of cancers (new and pre-existing) of a specific site/type in a specified population during a specified time period, expressed as the number of cancers per 100,000 people. Cancer cases, regardless of whether they are cured, are typically considered prevalent until death (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incidence rate</td>
<td>The number of new cancers of a specific site/type occurring in a specified population during a year, expressed as the number of cancers per 100,000 people (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortality rate</td>
<td>The number of deaths with cancer as the underlying cause of death occurring in a specified population during a year, expressed as the number of cancers per 100,000 people (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age-specific rate</td>
<td>A rate for a defined age group (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age-adjusted rate or age-standardized rate</td>
<td>Weighted average of the age-specific cancer incidence (or mortality) rates, where the weights are the proportions of persons in the corresponding age groups of a standard population (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumulative rate</td>
<td>Sum of age-specific rates, giving equal weight to all age groups (24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumulative risk</td>
<td>The cumulative rate is the probability that an individual will develop cancer during a certain specified age period (e.g., 0–64 years), in the absence of any competing cause of death. The cumulative risk, expressed as a percentage, can be estimated as $\left(1 - e^{-\text{Cumulative rate}}\right) \times 100$ (24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Observed survival rate</td>
<td>The proportion of cancer patients surviving for a specified length of time after diagnosis; obtained using standard life table procedures (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative survival rate</td>
<td>The likelihood that a cancer patient will not die from causes associated specifically with their cancer at some specified time after diagnosis; it is essentially the observed survival rate adjusted for expected mortality; the relative survival rate will always be greater than the observed survival rate for the same group of patients (18)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
effects on disease development (incidence) and disease outcome (survival). However, mortality data are more widely available globally and for a much longer period of time (i.e., much more historical data), and are thought to be the best basis for judging progress against cancer by the Extramural Committee to Assess Measures of Progress Against Cancer (15).

Figure 1 indicates the age standardization rates for the most common cancers. Cancer risk is not equally distributed across age, and the association of age with the risk of developing a site-specific cancer can provide etiological clues. The most typical age–incidence pattern is a logarithmic increase in the incidence such that cancer is extremely rare in childhood and very common in old age. This pattern, shown in Fig. 2 for selected cancer sites, is characteristic of carcinomas of the lung, colon, rectum, urinary tract, pancreas, and stomach and multiple myeloma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Whether cancer rates continue to rise in the oldest age groups is not clear, as many cancer rates appear to drop off after age 75 but are also unstable. The drop-off in rates among the oldest old may be a real phenomenon or an artifact due to underascertainment (i.e., missed cases) of cancer in this age group, since many elderly persons have extensive comorbidities and may not receive extensive work-ups. This age–incidence pattern suggests that life-long, cumulative exposures are likely to play an important role in these cancers, and that the latent period is likely to be decades.

![Figure 1](image-url)  
Figure 1  Age-standardized (World Standard) incidence and mortality rates for the most common cancers in the United States, 1990. Source: From Ref. 21.
While the pattern described above is the most commonly observed, there are many other age–incidence patterns. As shown in Figure 3, some cancers occur almost exclusively in childhood, such as retinoblastoma and nephroblastoma, while some cancers have two peaks in their age–incidence pattern—one in childhood and one in later life—such as Hodgkin’s disease and acute lymphocytic leukemia. There are many other patterns, and these patterns suggest that there are likely to be etiological differences in quantity, timing, or quality of carcinogenic exposures as well as in the latent period for specific cancers. Evaluation of age-specific rates for breast cancer provides an interesting example. Unlike colon and many other cancers strongly related to aging, the rate of increase for breast cancer slows in women around age 50 (Fig. 4), the time of menopause when estrogen production by the ovaries ceases, suggesting (but by no means proving) a role for ovarian hormones in the etiology of breast cancer.

Cancer rarely occurs in childhood. In the United States, cancer in persons under age 15 years accounts for less than 1% of all cancers (25), while cancer in persons over age 55 accounts for 80% of cancers even though only 20% of the U.S. population is over the age of 55. One of the interesting distinctions between adult and childhood cancer is that epithelial tumors are relatively rare in children but dominate in adults (26). In contrast, tumors of
Figure 3  Age-specific incidence rates for selected cancers, females, United States (SEER Program), 1988–1992. Source: From Ref. 20.

Figure 4  Age-specific incidence rates for colon, breast, and all (except skin) cancers, females, United States (SEER Program), 1988–1992. Source: From Ref. 20.
embryonal cells are very common in children and rare in adults. These observations also suggest broad etiologic distinctions between cancer in these age groups: childhood cancer is likely to be informed by understanding the developmental process, while cancer in adults is likely to be informed by understanding aging, repair, and senescence.

There are also notable sex differences in cancer incidence and mortality; the patterns for the top 15 cancers are shown for the United States in Figure 5. Cancer sites strongly associated with smoking (lung, bladder, kidney, oral cavity) are much more common in men, presumably due to higher smoking rates in men. Cancers thought to have a hormonal etiology—prostate in men and breast and uterine cancer in women—show a similar magnitude of incidence and mortality rates in each sex, and are in total the most common cancers seen in the United States. Colorectal cancer incidence and mortality is slightly more common in males than in females.

Time trends in mortality are generally based on death certificate data collected by governments. Thus, for long-term trends to be interpretable, there must be widespread certification of deaths for the vast majority of the population. Such data are reliably available from the late 1800s for England and Wales, and from the 1930s and 1940s for the United States and

![Figure 5](image)

**Figure 5** Age-adjusted rates (World Standard) and number of cancers for the top 10 cancer sites in children aged 0–14 years by sex, United States (SEER Program), 1988–1992. Source: From Ref. 20.
Scandinavian countries. Trends in cancer mortality in the United States are presented in Figure 6. Since 1930, there have been striking changes in the age-adjusted mortality rates for several cancer sites (note that crude rates are not used because the population structure of the United States has changed over this time frame). Rates for lung cancer show the most dramatic increase, from a relatively rare cause of death in 1930 to the leading cause of death after 1965. In contrast, stomach, uterine, and liver cancers have shown dramatic declines since 1930. Other cancers have shown more stable patterns in mortality over this time frame.

Long-term trends in cancer incidence rates are less available globally, since population-based cancer registration systems are a relatively new phenomenon. In the United States, Connecticut has had continuous cancer registration since 1935, and the SEER Program has conducted continuous surveillance on approximately 10% of the U.S. population since 1973. Table 2 shows the percent change in the incidence (SEER Program) and mortality (United States) rates for selected cancer sites from 1973 to 1996. Since 1973, cancer incidence for all sites (excluding nonmelanoma skin) has increased 20% and mortality has increased 3.3%. Data from the SEER Program from 1975 to 1995 suggest that for the major pediatric tumors there has been no substantial change in incidence and a dramatic decline in mortality, the latter related to treatment-related improvements in survival (27).

Some time trends are easier to explain than others, and trend data are often correlated with other data at the population level to suggest or evaluate etiological hypotheses (see ecological studies, below). For example, the trends in lung cancer incidence and mortality are thought to be almost entirely due to cigarette smoking. The reason for the decline in stomach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Decreasing mortality</th>
<th>Increasing mortality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral cavity and pharynx</td>
<td>28.4</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>34.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon and rectum</td>
<td>22.6</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreas</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larynx</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>16.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervix uteri</td>
<td>47.3</td>
<td>44.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus and uterus, NOS</td>
<td>26.7</td>
<td>27.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovary</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hodgkin’s disease</td>
<td>64.3</td>
<td>17.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukemias</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
<th>Incidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>-7.5</td>
<td>25.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testis</td>
<td>-70.0</td>
<td>41.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary bladder</td>
<td>-24.0</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid</td>
<td>-21.6</td>
<td>42.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Mortality</th>
<th>Incidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All sites</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophagus</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver and intrahep</td>
<td>50.8</td>
<td>77.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung and bronchus</td>
<td>38.6</td>
<td>27.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanomas of skin</td>
<td>35.8</td>
<td>134.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>111.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney and renal pelvis</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>44.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain and other nervous</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>15.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Hodgkin lymphomas</td>
<td>44.5</td>
<td>81.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple myeloma</td>
<td>36.0</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Percent changes for sex-specific sites are only for the appropriate sex; breast data are for females only.

Source: Ref. 18. Data obtained from SEER Program—incidence National Center for Health Statistics—mortality.
cancer incidence is less clear, but is thought to be due to improvements in food preservation by the wide-scale adoption of domestic refrigeration. The rapid increase in skin melanoma is thought to be due to intermittent sun exposure occurring during recreational activities that became more prevalent starting in the 1950s. Declines in cervical cancer mortality are thought to be attributed to the introduction of effective screening using the pap smear. Evaluation of time trends can also suggest surprising trends, such as the rapid increase in the incidence of non-Hodgkin lymphoma in the United States since 1973, which is largely without explanation (28).

While time trend data provide powerful information, it must be kept in mind that changes over time may be partially or totally artifacts due to the effects of a variety of other factors (29). Changes in diagnostic practice, particularly from new medical technologies including imaging technologies, will impact incidence rates, particularly for brain and other internal tumors. There can also be changes in diagnostic criteria, and for cancer, the histopathologic classification of tumors. At the population level, changes in the availability of and/or access to medical care (e.g., the implementation of the Medicare program in the United States in the 1960s) or introduction of screening programs will also impact rates and thus time trends. Finally, declines in other diseases, particularly infectious and heart disease will impact cancer rates through effects on competing mortality.

An epidemic occurs when a disease has much higher rates than expected based on the usual (background) rates for a given population. For cancer, data on time trends presented for the United States, as well as data from elsewhere in the world (29), give no evidence that there has been an overall epidemic of cancer in the last 50 years. Total cancer rates, however, hide often dramatic changes occurring for individual cancers, and of all the changes in the 20th century, the most striking observation is the clear epidemic of lung cancer caused by cigarette smoking.

In migrant studies, the cancer rates of immigrants in a new country are compared with the cancer rates in their home country, generally using descriptive statistics (30,31). For example, in Figure 7, the incidence rates for stomach, colorectal, and breast cancer are compared for Chinese women in selected geographical locations. Rates for stomach cancer were highest in China, intermediate in Hong Kong and Singapore, and lowest in the United States; in contrast, breast cancer rates show the opposite pattern, and colorectal rates are intermediate. Migrant studies represent natural experiments in that genetic factors are essentially held constant while environmental factors, both physical (e.g., air, water, ultraviolet radiation, trace elements) and sociocultural (e.g., diet, alcohol and tobacco use, childbearing patterns, sexual habits, use of medical services), are allowed to vary. Classic studies include Japanese migration to Hawaii and the western United States, Central Europeans to the United States, Europeans to Australia, and Jews of various locations (United States, Eastern Europe, North Africa) to Israel.
Besides the relative contribution of genetics vs. environment in the etiology of cancer, migrant studies can also give insight into the timing of exposure of environmental agents in the carcinogenic process. A rapid change in cancer rates among adults migrating to a new country strongly suggests a role for agents that act in the later stages of the carcinogenic process (e.g., colon and prostate cancer rates in Japanese) or the effectiveness of the introduction of preventive strategies (e.g., cervical cancer rates in migrants to Israel) (30). In contrast, cancer rates that take several generations to approach those of the host country suggest that exposure in early life (including in utero) may be important, although the role of persistent cultural patterns must also be evaluated. It is important to be aware of the limitations of migrant studies (30,31). First, migrants are self-selected, and often vary by ethnicity, religion, socioeconomical status, and occupation from the population from which they are emigrating. These factors are risk factors for many cancers, and can confound the results. Migrants also often go from poorer, less developed areas to more industrialized areas. For valid conclusions, the data quality of the groups being compared should be comparable. Finally, if mortality rates are being compared, there is concern that migrants (particularly first-generation migrants) might return home to die.
1.3. Analytical Epidemiology

The goal of observational study designs is to make valid comparisons between individuals (or populations) with and without cancer or between those “naturally” exposed or unexposed to a factor of interest. The important strengths and limitations of the major observational study designs are summarized in Table 3.

1.3.1. Cross-Sectional Studies

In a cross-sectional study, a survey is conducted in a population during a defined time period. Both the predictor (exposure) and the outcome (in this context, having a cancer) variables are measured at the same time (note that there is no structural distinction between predictor and outcome variables; rather it is the investigator who makes the distinction). One common name for this study design is a prevalence survey. For example, the National Health and Nutrition Examination II (NHANES-II) was a cross-sectional survey of a national sample of adults who were selected to be representative of the U.S. population (32). The study provided data on the prevalence of average daily fat intake, physical activity, and many other health-related exposures. The survey also inquired about current and past disease history, and could be used to estimate the prevalence of cancer. However, as discussed earlier, the prevalence rate is of limited usefulness because it includes persons at all stages of the natural history of cancer (i.e., from recently diagnosed to long-term survivors), but underrepresents persons with rapidly fatal disease. Another major limitation of the cross-sectional study design is that it cannot easily distinguish the temporal sequence of events and whether the predictor event occurred before or after the outcome. Finally, incidence rates cannot be calculated, and as discussed previously, this is one of the most useful cancer statistics.

1.3.2. Prospective and Retrospective Cohort Studies

In a cohort study, a group of people who are at risk of developing cancer are characterized as exposed or not exposed, and then they are followed through time in order to compare the rate of later cancers that develop in each group. The cohort can be a sample from the general population, workers in an industry, alumni or professional group, and so forth; a cohort is often chosen based on the ability to efficiently follow it over a long period of time. The cohort design can take place in real time (prospective) or can be historical (retrospective). The characterization of exposure can be through a questionnaire, medical records, biological testing, work records, and so forth. Methods of follow-up can include passive linkage to population-based cancer registries, mortality data, health claims databases, or active follow-up (recontact) of the cohort. The key to a valid cohort study is the nearly complete follow-up of the cohort, although as long as follow-up mechanisms do
Table 3  Comparison of Strengths and Limitations of the Major Study Designs Used in Cancer Epidemiology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Strengths</th>
<th>Limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ecological</td>
<td>Usually based on large populations (stable rates); capitalizes on existing and routinely collected data (mainly mortality); obtains populations markedly divergent in exposure levels; very useful to rapidly generate hypotheses for further study or to evaluate associations at the national/international level identified in other analytical studies</td>
<td>Ecological fallacy; no control over subject selection; no control over measurement of exposures or evaluation/classification of cancer; difficult to control for confounding; does not establish the sequence of events (temporality); can only be conducted once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-sectional</td>
<td>Can potentially study multiple exposures and cancer endpoints simultaneously; control over subject selection; control over exposure measurement and evaluation/classification of cancer; can often be conducted relatively quickly; can calculate prevalence; useful to generate hypotheses; often used to initiate a cohort study</td>
<td>Measurement of exposure could be biased in persons with cancer; likely to miss persons with severe or rapidly fatal cancer (survivor bias); does not yield incidence; not feasible to study most cancers (due to rarity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cohort</td>
<td>Clearly establishes sequence of events; no potential for recall bias based on subsequent cancer outcome; can study several cancers simultaneously; good for studying rapidly fatal cancers (avoids survivor bias); number of cancers accumulates over time; can calculate incidence, relative risk, and excess risk</td>
<td>Needs large sample sizes to study site-specific cancers; not feasible for rare cancers; often can only collect a limited amount of exposure data due to feasibility and cost issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prospective</td>
<td>More control over exposure measurements and evaluation/classification of cancer; more control over subject selection</td>
<td>More expensive; long-term time commitment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrospective</td>
<td>Less costly and time consuming than prospective studies</td>
<td>Less control over selection of subjects; less control over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
not favor a particular exposure group, the comparison of disease experience between groups should be unbiased. The male British doctors study is one of the earliest and most famous prospective cohort studies in cancer epidemiology. The 40-year follow-up was recently published for cigarette smoking and cancer mortality (33). One of the conclusions of these data is that earlier studies appeared to underestimate the hazard of long-term smoking, and that approximately 50% of regular smokers will eventually be killed by a tobacco-related disease. There are many advantages of the cohort study design (Table 3), including the ability to clearly establish a temporal sequence, the lack of recall bias by disease status, and the ability to calculate true incidence rates and relative risks. In addition, as seen in the example of the British doctors, multiple outcomes from a single exposure can be evaluated.

A double-cohort study or standard mortality ratio (SMR), compares the rates of two separate cohorts, one highly exposed to an agent of interest and the other having low or no exposure. The most common application of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Strengths</th>
<th>Limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMR</td>
<td>May be the only feasible approach to study very rare exposures</td>
<td>Potential for bias in studying two populations with data often collected in very different ways; often no data on important confounders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case-control</td>
<td>Efficient for studying rarer cancers where a cohort study would not be feasible; can study multiple etiological factors simultaneously; can evaluate different latency periods for a given exposure; relatively few subjects needed; relatively short duration and inexpensive (compared to cohort studies); yields the odds ratio, generally good approximation of the relative risk</td>
<td>Potential for selection bias in sampling for cases and controls; limited to the study of one cancer; potential for differential recall bias in measuring exposure; does not necessarily establish sequence of events (temporality); potential for survivor bias; cannot calculate prevalence, incidence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
this design is in occupational or environmental studies where the exposure of interest is rare in the general population. In practice, the comparison cohort is often the general population in the area where the exposed group was obtained.

There is great interest in whether radon causes lung cancer. This hypothesis was originally evaluated in underground uranium miners, but many of these men also smoked cigarettes and this was often not documented in any records, so there was a concern that any association between radon and lung cancer might be due to confounding by smoking. One approach to evaluate this possibility was to study nonsmoking uranium miners, since there would be no possibility of confounding by smoking. An example is the study of 516 nonsmoking uranium miners followed from 1950 to 1984 for lung cancer mortality (34). Lung cancer mortality rates for these men were compared to age-specific mortality rates for nonsmokers from a study of U.S. veterans. The latter group was chosen as the comparison group over the general population, since the general population rates would reflect the experience of a population with a large number of smokers, and thus would weaken the ability of the study to detect an association with lung cancer. Fourteen lung cancer deaths were observed in these 516 men through 1984, but only 1.1 deaths were expected, yielding an SMR of 13, suggesting a very strong association between radon and lung cancer mortality in nonsmokers, at least at the levels of radon exposure in these miners.

This SMR study design retains many of the advantages of the cohort study, but the use of an external comparison group, in contrast to internal comparisons in the classic cohort study, leads to the potential for bias that can occur when comparing two different populations. In the context of occupational cohort studies, where the comparison cohort is the general population, the concern is that employed persons are on average healthier and have better access to medical care than the general population. However, it should be noted that such a bias would be expected to move the SMR toward the null (i.e., make it harder to detect an association). The other major limitation of this study design is that data on confounding factors often are not available. Nevertheless, this study design is extremely useful for studying rare exposures in the population.

1.3.3. Case–Control Studies

In a case–control study, the exposure histories of cancer cases are compared with a group of individuals who are free of the cancer (controls) using the exposure odds ratio.

The advantages of the case–control study design include the ability to study multiple etiological factors, the ability to study exposures over a broad period of time (to better identify latency periods), and the efficiency in studying rare diseases. The two most common concerns in the conduct of a case–control study are selection bias and recall bias. Selection bias occurs
when the case or control group is not representative of cases or controls in the underlying study base. Recall bias occurs when cases or controls differentially recall past exposures, leading to biased associations. A recent example of concern about differential recall bias is in the evaluation of induced abortion and breast cancer risk. There is evidence that while cases fairly accurately report induced abortions, healthy controls are likely to systematically underreport this procedure leading to a bias that suggests that there is an association (35). While case–control studies are susceptible to these types of biases, there are clear approaches to minimize their effect (36–38).

Case–control studies are also conducted from within cohort studies. This is a nested case–control study. Cases that occur during follow-up of the cohort are matched to controls who were disease free at the time the case developed their cancer. The exposure histories of cases and controls are then compared. The most useful situation for this design is when the predictor variables are expensive to evaluate and can be validly measured at a later time (e.g., DNA studies, certain serological assays). This study design is particularly useful in cancer epidemiology to evaluate the association of biomarkers with cancer risk in the context where the biomarker could potentially be affected by a cancer and thus the traditional case–control design (where cases already have a cancer when their biomarker is measured) may not be valid. The major limitation of the study design is that the time and expense of collecting and properly storing biological specimens for all cohort members must have been done at baseline, and thus there are relatively few cohorts available for such studies.

1.4. Integration of Laboratory Methodology

Epidemiologists have a long history of working closely with laboratory colleagues, dating back to the roots of infectious disease epidemiology. The explosive growth in molecular biology and other biomedical sciences has led to the rapidly evolving field called molecular epidemiology. Laboratory methods help in at least three critical areas in cancer epidemiology: exposure assessment, preclinical biological effects, and individual susceptibility (39, Fig. 8). Some of the more commonly utilized laboratory techniques in epidemiological studies of cancer etiology are listed in Table 4.

Exposure assessment is a long-standing problem in epidemiology, since questionnaire-based approaches often have great difficulty estimating average past exposure or cumulative exposure to an agent, and random measurement error is often large enough to overwhelm the ability to detect even large associations (7). Questionnaires are also subject to nonrandom error, in that cases or controls may differentially recall past exposures, and the direction of this type of bias is not always easy to predict. Biological markers of internal dose (e.g., measurement of a parent compound or metabolite in serum) or biologically effective dose (e.g., measurement of DNA or
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Biomarker to be measured in specimens</th>
<th>Technique</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Histopathology</strong></td>
<td>Grading of malignant traits in tumor tissue</td>
<td>Staining and blind scoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sister chromatid exchange</td>
<td>Staining and blind scoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Micronuclei</td>
<td>Staining and blind scoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DNA aneuploidy/hyperploidy</td>
<td>Flow cytometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mutagen sensitivity/DNA repair capability</td>
<td>Bleomycin sensitivity assay, other G₂ assays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cytogenetics</strong></td>
<td>Localization of antigenic epitopes in tissue</td>
<td>Immunohistochemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Localization of mutated forms of gene products in cells</td>
<td>Immunohistochemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Circulating antibodies or tumor antigens</td>
<td>Enzyme/radioimmunoassays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Biochemistry</strong></td>
<td>Carcinogen–DNA adducts</td>
<td>Enzyme immunoassays, ³²P-postlabeling assays, fluorescent spectroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carcinogen–protein adducts</td>
<td>Enzyme immunoassays, gas chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nicotine metabolites</td>
<td>Enzyme immunoassays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>β-Carotene, retinol</td>
<td>High-performance liquid chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Molecular biology</strong></td>
<td>Specific DNA sequences (host or viral)</td>
<td>Southern blot hybridization, dot-blot hybridization, in situ hybridization, polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Localization of specific DNA sequences in cells</td>
<td>In situ hybridization, polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specific RNA sequences or gene expression</td>
<td>Northern blot hybridization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allele losses or mutated forms of specific genes</td>
<td>Restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis, polymerase chain reaction, DNA sequencing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oncogene amplification</td>
<td>Southern blot amplification, dot-blot hybridization, polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

protein adducts) of exposure to a carcinogen ("biomarkers of exposure") should allow for a much more precise and valid exposure assessment. However, much development in this field is required since issues of tissue sampling, use of surrogates for target tissues, biomarker validation, and approaches to estimating cumulative exposure are still being developed (5,40).

Preclinical biological effects (e.g., cytogenetic damage, gene mutation) and altered structure/function (e.g., premalignant alterations such as hyperproliferation or abnormal gene products) are the intermediate events between exposure and disease (39). These events can be used as specific "fingerprints" of prior exposure (e.g., mutational spectra of the \( p53 \) tumor suppressor gene due to different environmental exposures) or as a surrogate endpoint for use in studies of chemoprevention. However, this is the least developed component of the model in Fig. 8, and the relationship of these events to preclinical and clinical cancer is still being elucidated. In addition, "fingerprints" at this point in the pathway are not necessarily specific to an exposure, since there are often multiple ways to induce the same pathological changes, and thus confounding can be introduced into the study.

Host susceptibility in this model is hypothesized to influence events at multiple points along the continuum from exposure to clinical disease (Fig. 8). Susceptibility is broadly defined, and includes effects of age and nutrition, as well as genetic effects. Genetic effects include inherited variability in the ability to activate/inactivate carcinogens (e.g., polymorphisms in cytochromes P-450 enzymes), repair DNA, and maintain genomic stability,

![Figure 8](source: Adapted from Schulte PA, Perera FP, ed. Molecular Epidemiology: Principles and Practices. New York: Academic Press, 1993.)
as well as genetic and epigenetic alterations in oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes.

The rapid inclusion of laboratory-based components to epidemiologic studies of cancer should provide better risk estimates by more accurately defining exposure, disease, and the interaction of exposure and genetic susceptibility; better accounting for individual level variability and effect modification; enhancing risk assessment; and better identifying potential points for screening and/or early intervention in the carcinogenic pathway (5,40–42). Integration of these methods into epidemiological studies also allows insight into the mechanisms of carcinogenesis, in part helping to fill in the “black box” between environmental exposure and cancer. However, many of these laboratory methods are cumbersome or expensive, and these studies require the collection of biological specimens, which often strains traditional approaches to conducting epidemiologic research. Nevertheless, the basic concepts in study design apply to studies incorporating biological data, and must be considered carefully in designing studies to prevent the introduction of bias (43,44).

1.5. Framework for Interpretation of Analytical Epidemiological Studies

1.5.1. Evaluation of Causality

Ultimately, we are interested in knowing what causes cancer. At the most basic level, a cause is something that brings about any condition or produces any effect. Unfortunately causation is in general not directly observable, and it is not possible to provide absolute proof of causation in any empirical science (8). However, the goal at hand is not absolute proof, but might be better viewed as the accumulation of sufficient evidence to convince most skeptics beyond a reasonable doubt. The two most well-known approaches to the evaluation of causation are the Henle–Koch postulates and Hill’s criteria of causality (45).

The Henle–Koch postulates (1890) were developed to evaluate whether an infectious agent caused a particular disease, and they have had a major influence on how we think about causality. The postulates, listed in Table 5, while clearly useful in many situations, are limited even in infectious disease epidemiology (e.g., they do not apply to many viral, parasitic, spirochetal, and fungal diseases), and have severe limitations as useful guidelines in chronic disease (46). This is in part because they do not account for the concepts of multiple causation, biological spectrum of disease, and host response.

The most commonly used framework for evaluation of causality in cancer (and other chronic diseases) came from the Surgeon General’s first report on smoking and health (47), published by Hill (45). The general approach to evaluating causality is to first rule out the likelihood of
noncausal explanations (i.e., bias, confounding, and chance), and then to evaluate each of the points in Table 5. Not all of the criteria are considered equally useful (8), and in literature reviews the first six criteria in Table 5 are the most commonly used (48). Further critiques of the evaluation of causality and the role of Hill’s criteria can be found elsewhere (8,49).

1.5.2. Population Attributable Risk

While there are many causes of cancer, not all causes are equally important in the primary prevention of cancer at the population level. While the magnitude of the association (i.e., size of the relative risk or odds ratio) is an important criterion in the evaluation of causality, it takes somewhat of a secondary role in evaluating the importance of an exposure at the population level. That is because the population attributable risk (PAR), which is defined as the “reduction in incidence that would be achieved if the population had been entirely unexposed, compared with its current (actual)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causal criterion</th>
<th>Nature of inquiry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Henle-Koch’s postulates (1890)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single cause</td>
<td>The parasite occurs in every case of the disease in question and under circumstances which can account for the pathological changes and clinical course of the disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virulence</td>
<td>The parasite occurs in no other disease as a fortuitous and nonpathogenic parasite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culturability</td>
<td>After being fully isolated from the body and repeatedly grown in pure culture, the parasite can induce the disease anew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill’s criteria (45)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength of association</td>
<td>What is the relative risk?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consistency of association</td>
<td>Is there an agreement among repeated observations in different places, at different times, using different methodologies, by different researchers, under different circumstances?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporality</td>
<td>Does exposure precede the outcome variable?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biological gradient</td>
<td>Is there evidence of a dose–response relationship?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plausibility</td>
<td>Does the causal association make biological sense?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specificity of association</td>
<td>Is the outcome unique to the association?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coherence</td>
<td>Is the causal association compatible with present knowledge of the disease?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimentation</td>
<td>Does controlled manipulation of the exposure change the outcome?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogy</td>
<td>Does the causal relationship conform to a previously described relationship?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
exposure pattern” (8), is a function of the risk ratio and the prevalence of exposure in the population. This relationship is summarized in Fig. 9. For example, a risk factor with a modest relative risk (e.g., 1.75) but a high prevalence in the population (e.g., 60%) has a PAR of 31%, while a risk factor with a high relative risk (e.g., 16) but rare (e.g., 0.1%) has a PAR of 1.5%; the former risk factor, then, explains much more of the cancer burden in the population.

A couple of caveats about using the PAR (8,50) deserve mention. First, for the PAR to be valid, the risk factor must be considered to be a causal factor of the disease, and the risk ratio is assumed to be estimated without significant bias. Second, the interpretation assumes that removal of the exposure does not affect the size of the at-risk population; however, this assumption needs to be scrutinized on a case-by-case basis as removal of an exposure may have multiple effects on the at-risk population through effects on competing mortality.

2. THE CAUSES OF CANCER

Cancer patients want to know what caused their cancer. Pragmatically, the causes of cancer in an individual can be broadly classified into
environmental (cumulative exposure over a lifetime to a variety of carcinogenic and protective factors), genetic, and spontaneous (51).

1. **Spontaneous.** Often overlooked are the spontaneous causes of cancer. By spontaneous, what is meant is that a certain amount of cancer is due to “spontaneous” or “background” mutation rates (51). These mutations generally show a different pattern of DNA lesions compared to those induced by carcinogens. The exact causes of these mutations are not known, but are likely due to things such as background cosmic radiation and body temperature, and reflect the instability of DNA as a result of oxidative damage and other cellular processes. These factors would be expected to show little or no variability in terms of geographical distribution, and thus there will always be a certain background level of cancer in any population. Doll and Peto (9) have also termed this “chance,” or more simply good or bad luck. At the level of the individual, spontaneous causes of cancer may play an important explanatory role. Knudson (51) has estimated that approximately 15% of cancer may be explained by spontaneous factors.

2. **Genetic.** Cancer has long been known to aggregate in families, strongly supporting a hereditary component for a certain portion of cancer. Familial cancers are generally characterized by early age at onset, bilateral tumors in paired organs, multiple primary foci within an organ, distinctive pathology, and often prominent physical findings. They may also be a part of a syndrome that includes multiple cancer sites and/or other diseases (e.g., Von Hippel–Lindau disease and renal cell carcinoma), and are caused by germline (i.e., changes in the constitutional DNA) alterations in single genes that often follow Mendelian patterns of inheritance (i.e. “major genes”). However, it must be kept in mind that cancer is a relatively common disease, and thus many persons will have a positive family history of cancer, and some cancer will cluster in families by chance alone. In addition, families often share similar environmental exposures (including residence, diet, and so forth) and this may explain some clustering of cancer within families. Thus, “familial” is not synonymous with “genetic.” Geneticists and genetic epidemiologists use family studies to evaluate the relative contribution of genes vs. environment, and to identify new cancer genes.

In contrast to cancer caused by major genes, a second class of genes, often termed “susceptibility” genes (52) are also likely to be important in cancer causation. Susceptibility genes are common variants (polymorphisms) of genes generally involved in the metabolic activation and detoxification of carcinogens, but they can be involved in other pathways relevant to carcinogenesis including DNA repair. This concept is highly influenced by the field of pharmacogenetics, and examples of this approach include studies of lung cancer and debrisoquine metabolism and GST-mu deficient phenotype and bladder cancer.

An important distinction between these two types of genetic causes of cancer are that while major genes carry a high absolute and relative risk,
they are uncommon in the population and thus have a low population attributable risk. In contrast, susceptibility genes are associated with a low absolute and relative risk of cancer, but because many of these variants are common in the population, they may have a high population attributable risk. Another important distinction is that the major genes are expected to be less influenced by environmental exposures relative to the susceptibility genes, which primarily influence host response to the environment. Understanding hereditary cancer is expected to give mechanistic insight into the causes of sporadic (i.e., nonhereditary) cancer. However, in the population, only about 5% of cancer is thought to be due to purely genetic (major gene) causes (51).

3. Environmental, lifestyle, and behavioral factors. A conclusion from the descriptive and analytical epidemiology of cancer is that cancer should be largely, although not completely, preventable and that environmental and behavioral factors should account for a large percentage of the total cases, often estimated at up to 80% of cancer (51). Doll and Peto (9,53) originally published their estimates of cancer deaths attributable to various environmental and behavioral factors in western populations in 1981, and recently updated this in 1996. As shown in Table 6, tobacco and diet are

### Table 6  Estimates of the Proportion of Cancer Deaths Attributable to Environmental and Lifestyle Factors in Western Countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor(s)</th>
<th>Best estimate of proportion (%)</th>
<th>Range of acceptable estimates (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>25–40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diet</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>20–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormones</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ionizing radiation</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Background</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medical procedures</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Industry</td>
<td>&lt;0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupation</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>&lt;2</td>
<td>&lt;1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atmospheric</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Water</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultraviolet light</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.5–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial products</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>&lt;1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical drugs</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>&lt;1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food additives</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>−2–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other and unknown</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

thought to be the most important causes of cancer, although clearly the ultimate role of diet in the etiology of cancer is still being unraveled. The next most important group of factors are infection, hormones, background ionizing radiation, occupation, and alcohol. Of relatively less importance are ultraviolet radiation, industrial products, water and air pollution, and food additives, exposures that tend to receive a disproportionate amount of media attention.

One limitation in interpreting Table 6 is that it does not take into account interactions between exposures. For example, smoking increases the risk of lung cancer, as does exposure to asbestos; however, the risk of lung cancer in smokers exposed to asbestos is much greater than expected based on each risk factor considered individually. Other well-established interactions include smoking and radon for lung cancer, smoking and alcohol for esophageal cancer, and hepatitis B infection and exposure to aflatoxin for liver cancer. Other interactions are likely.

4. Gene–environment interaction. While carcinogen exposure triggers the onset of cancer, a person’s genetic makeup determines how they respond to the exposure. Thus, genes may increase or decrease risk from the exposure and so this is considered a gene–environment interaction. There is currently great interest in identifying interactions between genetic and environmental causes of cancer. As alluded to above, most (but by no means all) of the interest is focused on the interaction of susceptibility genes with environmental exposures. Although unknown at this time, much of the 80% of cancer thought to be due to environmental causes may be due to gene–environment interactions (39). The study of gene–environment interactions will consume much of epidemiological research over the next decade.

3. CONCLUSIONS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

An initial task of epidemiology is to describe the variability in cancer risk. It is clear that risk of cancer is highly variable at the population level based on observations of geographic, time trend, and migrant data, and these results strongly suggest that a large proportion of cancer is not random and there must be an explanation. Analytic epidemiology has identified many causal factors for cancer risk, and removal of the exposure has led to changes in cancer incidence. Two conclusions from these observations are that much of cancer is likely due to environmental factors and much of the cancer burden in the population should be preventable. Due to the explosion in our understanding of the molecular basis of carcinogenesis, including the quantification of genetic susceptibility and the interaction of susceptibility with environmental exposures (gene–environment interaction) these have become evolving research areas that should better define the causes and primary prevention of cancer in the population.
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Dr. Cerhan was supported in part by a Preventive Oncology Academic Award from the National Cancer Institute (K07 CA64220). Technical assistance was provided by Sara Butler Osborn, Robert Vierkant, and Mary Jo Janisch.

REFERENCES


Most cancers result from an interaction between genetic and environmental factors and these factors can determine an individual’s cancer risk. Approximately 1% of all cancers arise in individuals with a clear hereditary cancer syndrome following Mendelian inheritance where environmental factors are thought to play a minor role (Fig. 1). Further, it is estimated that 10–15% of all cancers are due to inherited components, resulting in the so-called familial clustering of cancer. However, in most other cancers, a substantial genetic predisposition may also be present without obvious familial clustering. These genetic components include dominant mutations with a reduced penetrance, as well as more common genetic polymorphisms that influence an individual’s response to environmental exposure. Most cancers however occur in the genetically low-risk population group, referred to as sporadic cases. The influence of genetic factors decreases and the impact of environmental factors increases with aging (Fig. 1). Knowledge of the spectrum of both genetic and environmental risk factors for developing cancer and how they interact, will be instrumental in future risk assessment and in prevention programs.
Figure 1 Environmental and genetic factors influence cancer risk. Up to 5% of all cancers are hereditary cases, 10–15% are estimated to account for familial clustering of cancer, and the rest are sporadic cases. The influence of environmental factors is low in hereditary cancer diseases and high in individuals at population risk level. The risk of cancer increases with age. The hereditary cases are generally younger than the sporadic cases with the same tumor type. The frequency of the “risk allele” is low for those genes predisposing to hereditary cancer, implying the low incidence of these diseases, whereas the cancer risk is very high, often obligatory, in the individuals carrying the mutated gene. *For allele variants associated with cancer risk, see Table 2.
1. HEREDITARY CANCER SYNDROMES

An inherited cancer syndrome is defined by Mendelian inheritance of susceptibility in a dominant, recessive, or X-linked manner. Many of the known cancer diseases follow a dominant mode of inheritance and have cancer as the main phenotype (Table 1a). Among other hereditary syndromes, both dominant and recessive, cancer can be one of several phenotypic traits (Table 1b and c). A hereditary cancer syndrome should be considered if several family members develop cancer at a young age, if both of paired organs are affected, or if affected individuals develop multiple primary cancers, including common cancers. Finally, family members with cancer who also manifest other rare conditions, particularly congenital abnormalities are suggestive of a cancer syndrome.

Many of the genes involved in these cancer syndromes have been identified (Table 1a–c) and they are referred to as “inherited cancer genes” or “susceptibility genes.” Germline mutations in some of these genes approach a 100% risk of cancer during a lifetime. If a gene has incomplete penetrance, some mutation carriers will not develop the expected cancer. Environmental factors and/or other modifying genes (see below) may cause this reduced penetrance. In addition, non-carriers within a hereditary cancer family may develop sporadic cancer of the same type as the mutation carriers. These are termed phenocopies. Thus, accumulation of rare cancers in a family is more likely to be caused by an inherited predisposition than is the case for accumulation of common cancers.

2. IDENTIFICATION OF INHERITED CANCER GENES

The first step in identifying high penetrance genes is usually to do linkage analyses. These analyses are done within cancer families, to identify the chromosomal location of the predisposing gene. These studies may be difficult due to incomplete variable penetrance and different possible phenotypes. Nevertheless, by use of strict selection criteria for the families submitted to such analyses, the target genes for diseases such as hereditary breast cancer, hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer, multiple endocrine neoplasia, have been localized. The chromosomal map position of the potential gene is the initial step of the positional cloning strategy, followed by cloning of the gene, identification of possible germline mutations, and finally description of the protein function. The BRCA1 and the BRCA2 breast cancer genes were identified through this method, for example. The cellular locations of the proteins encoded by hereditary cancer genes are shown in Fig. 2 and the protein functions are listed in Table 1.

Cytogenetical studies have also been useful in pinpointing the chromosomal location of cancer genes. Studies of constitutional (normal) cells from patients with retinoblastoma and Wilms’ tumor revealed deletions of 13q14.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Associated tumors</th>
<th>Gene name</th>
<th>Year (Ref.)</th>
<th>Chromosome location</th>
<th>Protein function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Dominant hereditary cancer diseases/syndromes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast and ovarian cancers</td>
<td>Breast and ovarian cancers</td>
<td>BRCA1</td>
<td>1994 (1)</td>
<td>17q21</td>
<td>Repair of double strand breaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast cancer 2</td>
<td>Breast cancer (male), pancreas and ovarian cancers</td>
<td>BRCA2</td>
<td>1995 (2)</td>
<td>13q12</td>
<td>Interacts with RAD51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)</td>
<td>Colorectal cancer, duodenal, gastric, and desmoid tumors</td>
<td>APC</td>
<td>1991 (3,4)</td>
<td>5q21</td>
<td>Complexes with ( \beta )-catenin; microtubule binding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial melanoma</td>
<td>Malignant melanoma, pancreatic cancer, and dysplastic nevi</td>
<td>CDKN2A</td>
<td>1994 (5,6)</td>
<td>9p21</td>
<td>Inhibitor of cyclin dependent kinases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC)</td>
<td>Colorectal cancer, endometrial, ovarian, gastric, and other cancers</td>
<td>MSH2</td>
<td>1993 (8,9)</td>
<td>2p16</td>
<td>Components of the mismatch repair system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MLH1</td>
<td>1994 (10,11)</td>
<td>3p21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PMS1&amp;2</td>
<td>1994 (12)</td>
<td>2q32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSH6</td>
<td>1995 (13)</td>
<td>7p22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary papillary renal cancer (HPRC)</td>
<td>Papillary renal cancer</td>
<td>MSH6</td>
<td>1995 (13)</td>
<td>7p22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MET</td>
<td>1997 (14)</td>
<td>7q31</td>
<td>Transmembrane receptor for hepatocyte growth factor (HGF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndrome/Neoplasia</td>
<td>Associated Cancers</td>
<td>Gene</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Chromosome</td>
<td>Function/Role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li–Fraumeni syndrome (LFS)</td>
<td>Sarcoma, breast and brain cancers, leukemia</td>
<td>TP53</td>
<td>1984 (15)</td>
<td>17p13.1</td>
<td>Transcriptional regulation; responses to DNA damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN1)</td>
<td>Pancreatic islet cell, parathyroid and pituitary tumors carcinoid</td>
<td>CHK2</td>
<td>1999 (16)</td>
<td>22q</td>
<td>Cell cycle G2 control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple endocrine neoplasia types 2A and 2B (MEN2); familial medullary thyroid cancer</td>
<td>Medullary thyroid cancer, pheochromocytoma; Medullary thyroid cancer</td>
<td>MEN1</td>
<td>1997 (17)</td>
<td>11q13</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retinoblastoma</td>
<td>Retinoblastoma, osteosarcoma</td>
<td>RET</td>
<td>1993 (18)</td>
<td>10q11.2</td>
<td>Transmembrane receptor tyrosine kinase for glial-derived neutrophic factor (GDNF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilms’ tumor 1</td>
<td>Wilms, tumor</td>
<td>WTI</td>
<td>1990 (20,21)</td>
<td>11p13</td>
<td>Transcriptional regulation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Dominant hereditary syndromes with cancer as a phenotypic trait

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Associated Cancers</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Chromosome</th>
<th>Function/Role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cowden syndrome</td>
<td>Hamartoma, breast cancer, follicular thyroid cancer, glioblastoma</td>
<td>PTEN</td>
<td>1997 (22)</td>
<td>10q23</td>
<td>Tyrosine phosphatase activity; homology to tensin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorlin/nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome</td>
<td>Basal cell skin cancer, medulloblastoma, ovarian fibroma</td>
<td>PTCH</td>
<td>1996 (23)</td>
<td>9q22.3</td>
<td>Transmembrane receptor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Associated tumors</th>
<th>Gene name</th>
<th>Year (Ref.)</th>
<th>Chromosome location</th>
<th>Protein function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multiple exostoses</td>
<td>Exostoses, chondrosarcoma</td>
<td>EXT1</td>
<td>1995 (24)</td>
<td>8q24.1</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EXT2</td>
<td>1996 (25)</td>
<td>11p12</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurofibromatosis type 1</td>
<td>Neurofibroma, malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumour, glioma</td>
<td>NF1</td>
<td>1990 (26–28)</td>
<td>17q11</td>
<td>GTP-ase activating protein for p21-ras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurofibromatosis type 2</td>
<td>Acoustic neuromas, meningioma, glioma, ependymoma</td>
<td>NF2</td>
<td>1993 (29,30)</td>
<td>22q12.2</td>
<td>Links cytoskeleton and plasma membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peutz–Jegher syndrome</td>
<td>Intestinal hamartoma, breast cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, thyroid cancer, testicular cancer</td>
<td>LKB1 = STK</td>
<td>1997 (31)</td>
<td>19p13.3</td>
<td>Serine–threonine kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuberous sclerosis</td>
<td>Hamartoma, angiomylipoma and fibroma</td>
<td>TSC1</td>
<td>1997 (32)</td>
<td>9q34</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TSC2</td>
<td>1993 (33)</td>
<td>16p3.3</td>
<td>GTP-ase activating protein for rap1 and 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Von Hippel–Lindau (VHL)</td>
<td>Renal cancer, hemangioblastoma, pheo-chromocytoma</td>
<td>VHL</td>
<td>1993 (34)</td>
<td>3p25</td>
<td>Transcriptional elongation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### (c) Recessive hereditary syndromes with cancer as a phenotypic trait

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Cancer Susceptibility</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Chromosome Location</th>
<th>Year(s)</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia telangiectasia</td>
<td>Lymphoma, breast cancer, leukemia</td>
<td><strong>ATM</strong></td>
<td>11q22</td>
<td>1995 (35)</td>
<td>Induction of TP53; DNA repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blooms syndrome</td>
<td>Solid tumors</td>
<td><strong>BLM</strong></td>
<td>15q26.1</td>
<td>1996 (36,37)</td>
<td>DNA and RNA helicase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fanconis anemia</td>
<td>Acute myelogenous leukemia</td>
<td><strong>FAA</strong></td>
<td>16q24.3</td>
<td>1996 (38)</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FAC</strong></td>
<td>9q22.3</td>
<td>1996 (39)</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FAG</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>1998 (40)</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xeroderma pigmentosum</td>
<td>Skin cancer</td>
<td><strong>XPA</strong></td>
<td>9q22.3</td>
<td>1989 (41)</td>
<td>Zn finger-DNA damage recognition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XPB (ERCC3)</strong></td>
<td>2q21</td>
<td>1990 (42)</td>
<td>DNA helicase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XPC</strong></td>
<td>3p25</td>
<td>1992 (43)</td>
<td>SsDNA binding protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XPD (ERCC2)</strong></td>
<td>19q13</td>
<td>1992 (44)</td>
<td>DNA helicase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XPE1 (DDB1)</strong></td>
<td>11q13–q21</td>
<td>1995 (45)</td>
<td>Damage specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XPE2 (DDB2)</strong></td>
<td>11p1–p12</td>
<td>1995 (45)</td>
<td>DNA binding proteins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XPF (ERCC4)</strong></td>
<td>16p13</td>
<td>1996 (46)</td>
<td>Endonuclease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XPG (ERCC5)</strong></td>
<td>13q33</td>
<td>1993 (47)</td>
<td>Endonuclease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and 11p13, respectively (48,49). These two chromosome bands were later shown to harbor the predisposing genes \textit{RB1} at 13q14.2 and \textit{WT1} at 11p13 (19–21). Similar studies of individuals with von Recklinghausen neurofibromatosis identified two cases with balanced translocations, both

**Figure 2** Cellular localization of proteins encoded by inherited cancer genes. Proteins encoded by hereditary cancer genes are shown in red and include APC, adenomatous polyposis coli; ATM, ataxia telangiectasia protein—mutated; BRCA 1 and 2, proteins encoded by breast cancer (and ovarian cancer) susceptibility genes; CDK4: cyclin dependent kinase 4; LKB1=STK11: serine threonine kinase 11; MEN: multiple endocrine neoplasia 1; MET: transmembrane receptor encoded by a susceptibility gene for hereditary papillary renal cancer; MLH1: mut L homolog 1; MSH2 and 6: mut S homologs 2 and 6; NF1 and 2: neurofibromatosis types 1 and 2; p16: cyclin dependent kinase inhibitor = CDKN2A; PMS1 and 2: mut L homologs that, if inactivated in yeast, cause a high frequency of postmeiotic segregation; PTCH: patched; PTEN: phosphatase and tensin homolog deleted on chromosome 10; RB1: retinoblastoma 1; RET: transmembrane receptor tyrosine kinase encoded by the susceptibility gene for multiple endocrine neoplasia; TSC2: tuberous sclerosis protein 2; TP53: tumor protein 53; VHL: von Hippel Lindau protein; WT1: Wilms’tumor protein 1. Other abbreviations: $\beta$-cat: $\beta$-catenin; CYC D1; cyclin D1; E2F: transcription factor that binds to the adenovirus E2 promoter; ELG-B and C: elongin B and C; GDNF: glial-derived neutrophic factor, HGF: hepatocyte growth factor; MCC: mutated in colorectal cancer; MDM2: mouse double minutes protein 2; SMO: smoothened; Tcf4: T-cell factor 4.
involving 17q11, and these samples were then used in the cloning process of the NF1 gene (50,51). The map position of the APC gene predisposing to familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) was found at 5q21 due to an interstitial deletion in the germline of a mentally retarded patient with FAP (52). The chromosomal locations for susceptibility genes for 17 hereditary cancer diseases and 15 other syndromes with cancer as a phenotypic trait are listed in Table 1.

Individuals who are predisposed to cancer through an inherited or acquired mutation in the germline usually develop cancer at an early age, but are rarely born with cancer. For a cancer to develop in these individuals additional somatic changes are needed to initiate and establish a tumor. One hallmark of an inherited cancer gene is that they are often more frequently altered in somatic cells than in the germline. In accordance with the two-hit theory for inactivation of a tumor suppressor gene (53), deletion of the remaining allele is often found in the tumor from patients with an inherited mutated gene copy. In a sporadic case of the same type both events have to occur in the same cell line. The deletions are often identified by use of polymorphic markers within or flanking the gene in question. By comparing the heterozygous constitutional genotype with the tumor genotype, a possible loss of one allele will be detected. Cavenee et al. initially described this type of study applied on retinoblastomas in 1983 (54). Loss of heterozygosity (LOH) studies have aided in identifying the location of several hereditary cancer genes exemplified by multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1, neurofibromatosis 2, and basal cell carcinoma syndrome (17,55,56).

3. FUNCTION OF INHERITED CANCER GENES*

Genes predisposing to hereditary cancer diseases can be subdivided into three major groups: the oncogenes that are activated through a mutated protooncogene creating a gain-of-function mutant, as opposed to an inactivated tumor suppressor gene resulting in a loss-of-function mutant. The third category is defect repair genes that indirectly cause alterations in other genes due to lack of repair. Such changes may give selective growth advantage if they affect oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. (For a complete review, see Ref. 57.) The proteins encoded by the inherited cancer genes are involved in a wide range of cellular processes (Fig. 2, Table 1). In the dominant inherited diseases, inactivating germline mutations are found in the tumor suppressor genes and activating mutations are found in the oncogenes. In accordance with the two-hit theory of Knudson, many of the cases with a germline mutation in a tumor suppressor gene exhibit a somatic alteration in the

---

* For review, see Ref. 57.
remaining gene copy in the tumor. Although a mutated protooncogene acts dominantly at the cellular level, additional somatic changes are necessary for development of tumors. Among the known susceptibility genes for cancer, three are classified as oncogenes, CDK4, MET, and RET (Table 1). Germline mutations in alternative components of the mismatch repair (MMR) system predispose to hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC). Often the second allele is inactivated either by DNA sequence change or hypermethylation, and thus these genes resemble the tumor suppressor model of homozygous gene inactivation at the cellular level. Even though the tumor suppressor gene acts recessively at the cellular level, the disease follows a dominant mode of inheritance. This is due to the high probability of mutating the second allele in one cell resulting in a selective growth advantage.

The recessive cancer syndromes are similar in that they typically have defects in genes encoding proteins involved in DNA maintenance and DNA-damage repair. In these recessive conditions, homozygous gene mutation carriers have an increased cancer risk except for heterozygous ATM mutation carriers that have increased risk of breast cancer.

Hereditary cancer genes are often altered in sporadic tumors although the mutation frequency as well as the mutation spectrum might differ. The APC germline mutations cause the familial adenomatous polyposis disease with an incidence of approximately 1% among the population. However, the APC gene is found altered in 70% of sporadic colorectal adenomas and carcinomas. The APC protein functions in the Wingless (WNT) signaling pathway as part of the cytoplasmic protein complex that regulates the level of the β-catenin. Interestingly, where APC is normal in colorectal carcinomas, it tends to exhibit β-catenin mutations. Mutated APC or β-catenin will deregulate cell growth via T-cell factor (TCF 4) transcriptional activation. This example shows mutual exclusive mutations in different components resulting in dysfunction of the same pathway, and illustrates the intersection between important pathways in colorectal carcinogenesis. Further, TCF4 containing a poly(A) 9 tract (58) is a downstream target for MMR dysfunction. Short nucleotide repeat sequences are prone to replication errors, and defect in the (MMR) system will thus indirectly cause such changes to accumulate. Germline mutations in components of the MMR system are responsible for the HNPCC syndrome that accounts for 2–4% of the colorectal cancer cases.

The disruption of essential pathways through alternative components has been described as a somatic alteration pattern in several tumor types. Although to a lesser extent in the germline, some examples are known. In addition to the above-mentioned MMR system, defects in CDKN2A or CDK4 cause familial melanoma, and CDKN2A is an inhibitor of CDK4 in the cell cycle. Other examples are the proteins encoded by BRCA1 and BRCA2 both of which work in complex with RAD51 (and other proteins).
to repair damaged DNA (59). Mutations in \textit{BRCA1} or \textit{BRCA2} will lead to accumulation of DNA damage and checkpoint activation, including activation of \textit{TP53}. However, if \textit{TP53} is damaged, cell cycle checkpoints cannot be activated and the cells will proliferate uncontrolled. Still we do not fully understand why \textit{BRCA1} and \textit{BRCA2} germline mutations specifically predispose to breast and ovarian cancer. The Li–Fraumeni syndrome commonly is due to an inherited, altered \textit{TP53} gene. p53 Mutations have not been found in all families clinically characterized as Li–Fraumeni-like. Germline mutations in the \textit{CKH2} gene, encoding another cell cycle checkpoint protein, were responsible for predisposition in a subgroup of these families (16).

4. CANCER RISK IN CARRIERS

Carriers of germline mutations in genes described in Table 1a are known to be at high risk of developing cancer. However, there is a substantial inter-individual variation in the age of onset and the risk of developing a cancer. For example, when population screening for carriers of germline mutations in \textit{BRCA1} or \textit{BRCA2} have been performed, mutation carriers without family history have been identified, and the penetrance estimates have varied between 28\% and 80\% (60). Carriers of the same mutation may show a great phenotypic variability, also within the same family. These observations imply that germline mutations in these genes are necessary to explain the Mendelian pattern of cancer in some families, but are not sufficient to completely describe the variability seen between individuals. Risk modulating factors like modifier genes or environmental exposures are therefore likely to contribute. Examples of allelic variation in genes where such modifying effects have been observed are different VNTR alleles within the \textit{HRAS1} oncogene (61) and CAG repeats in the androgen receptor gene (62). A protective effect of cigarette smoking on mutation carriers has also been observed, and it has been speculated that cigarette smoke lowers the estrogen level (63). The Min (multiple intestinal neoplasia) mouse model provides a clear-cut example of a modifying locus. In mice, Min mutation causes premature truncation of the \textit{APC} protein, as for \textit{APC} mutations in familial adenomatous polyposis in humans. Mice heterozygous for Min develop multiple polyps in the intestine, but with a significant variation in the number of tumors due to the Mom (modifier of Min) locus that encodes a phospholipase A2 (64). The human homolog, \textit{PLA2A}, does not seem to modify colorectal cancer risk (65). The \textit{PLA2A} and several other potential target genes map to 1p36, which is frequently deleted in colorectal adenomas and carcinomas (66,67). However, the target gene in this region with potential impact on colorectal tumor development remains to be identified.

It is likely that in the future we will be able to identify a number of allelic variants that can modify the risk in mutation carriers. The ability to apply risk prediction or cancer prevention strategies in carriers with
germline mutations will depend on our knowledge of risk-modulating factors and mutation carrier status.

5. FAMILIAL CLUSTERING OF CANCER

Almost all types of cancer have been reported in familial clusters, but the sites most commonly involved are the breast, ovary, endometrium, colon, lymphoid and hematopoetic tissue, and brain. The strength of familial clustering varies; it may be caused by dominant inherited predisposition as seen in the HNPCC or BRCA1 families, by common environmental factors, or by a combined influence of environmental and genetic factors. It is often difficult to distinguish between a dominant hereditary cancer syndrome with reduced penetrance and familial clustering caused by several genetic susceptibility alleles segregating in the family acting in combination with environmental factors. Breast cancer, for example, fits best a dominant gene model in which the predisposition leads to cancer at a young age. But, familial clustering of cancer cases occurring at an older age also can be seen. In these families, a dominant model is not obvious and polygenic inheritance is more likely.

Cancer is a complex disease and can be caused by a combination of multiple gene variants, each with a weak to moderate effect, interacting with each other and with the environment. Identification of the gene and gene variants involved in familial clustering of cancer is challenging. Analyses of siblings and twins, association studies using case–control or cohort analyses, are methods that have been applied. Candidate genes, in which there is biological evidence to suggest association to a specific phenotype, are screened for variations. Identified alterations are then compared to control individuals from the same population cohort.

6. COMMON GENE VARIANTS PREDISPOSING TO INCREASED CANCER RISK*

So far, familial clustering has been the main indicator of inherited cancer risk. However, a substantial predisposition may also be present without obvious familial clustering. Some genes with relatively common disease-associated variant allele frequencies may confer a small to moderate individual cancer risk. Since these variants are carried by a large number of individuals, the population attributable risk is high. Genes with allele variants reported to be associated with increased cancer risk (low to moderate) are listed in Table 2. (For review see Ref. 68.)

In analogy with strain differences in susceptibility to experimental carcinogenesis in mice, genetic variation in the metabolic activation or

* For review, see Ref. 68.
detoxification of carcinogenic chemicals can be important determinants of population risk. The current candidates include the genes of the cytochrome P450 (CYP) system, which has a central role in the oxidative metabolism of many classes of exogenous and endogenous compounds, including steroid
Table 2  Genes with Genetical Polymorphisms Associated with Increased Cancer Risk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genes involved*</th>
<th>Type of cancer</th>
<th>Mechanism</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>Hormone metabolism</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP1A1</td>
<td>Breast, lung</td>
<td>Hormone/carcinogen metabolism (in smokers)</td>
<td>70–74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP1B1</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Hormone metabolism</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP2D6</td>
<td>Lung, cervical, vulva</td>
<td>Tobacco-specific carcinogen</td>
<td>76–78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP2E1</td>
<td>Breast, lung</td>
<td>Hormone/carcinogen metabolism</td>
<td>76,79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP17</td>
<td>Breast, prostate</td>
<td>Estrogen metabolism</td>
<td>72,80–82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP19</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Estrogen metabolism</td>
<td>83,84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMT</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Catechol estrogen metabolism</td>
<td>72,85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPHX</td>
<td>Colorectal</td>
<td>Oxidative defense</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GST</td>
<td>Lung, bladder, breast, colorectal</td>
<td>Decreased detoxification</td>
<td>74,87–89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRAS1</td>
<td>Lung, breast, testis</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>90,91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>HPV immune response?</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTHFR</td>
<td>Colorectal, ALL</td>
<td>Folate inadequacy</td>
<td>93,94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT1</td>
<td>Colorectal</td>
<td>Decreased detoxification</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT2</td>
<td>Bladder, breast</td>
<td>Decreased detoxification</td>
<td>74,96–98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNFA</td>
<td>Lymphoma, breast</td>
<td>Increased cytokine level</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDR</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Steroid metabolism</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*AR, androgen receptor; CYP, cytochrome P450; CYP17, 17alpha-hydroxylase; CYP19, aromatase; COMT, catechol-O-methyltransferase; EPHX, epoxide hydroxylase; GSTs, glutathione-S-transferases theta, mu, and pi; HRAS, Hras oncogene; HLA, human leucocyte antigen; MTHFR, methylen-tetrahydrofolate-reductase; NAT, N-acetyltransferase; TNFA, tumor necrosis factor alpha; VDR, vitamin D receptor.
hormones. During the oxidative process, electrophilic and carcinogenic intermediates can be created. Many of these genes are highly polymorphic. One of the first genes studied was *CYP1A1*, whose product metabolizes polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzo-a-pyrene. About 10% of the Caucasian population have a highly inducible form of *CYP1A1*. A number of studies involving different ethnic populations have been performed, and although not conclusive, certain alleles seem to be associated with increased lung cancer risk in smokers. Other *CYP* genes have been analyzed in different case control studies, and common genetic variants have been associated with increased cancer risk. In breast cancer, genes involved in the metabolism of steroid hormones like *CYP17, CYP19, CYP3A4*, and catechol-O-methyltransferase (*COMT*) have been associated with increased risk. It has also been speculated whether any of these gene variants may modify breast cancer risk in gene carriers of *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* mutations by modulating the bioavailable steroid hormone levels. Polymorphisms in androgen and estrogen receptors are also interesting candidates in this respect.

Detoxifying enzymes, such as epoxide hydrolase, glutathione-S-transferases (*GSTs*) and *N*-acetyl-transferases (*NATs*) are highly polymorphic, and a number of studies have investigated their role in cancer risk of a variety of different cancers (Table 2). The *GSTM1* deletion allele has been associated with increased risk of bladder cancer, lung cancer, and possibly breast and colorectal cancers. The null genotype had little risk of bladder cancer in the absence of exposure to tobacco smoke, while the opposite was the case for lung cancer, demonstrating the importance of gene–environment interactions. Individuals with the *NAT2* slow acetylator genotype have a higher risk of bladder cancer if they are exposed to carcinogens metabolized by this enzyme. Among postmenopausal women, smoking increased breast cancer risk only in those with the *NAT2* slow acetylator genotype.

Much of this research suggests that genetic variation in both metabolic activity and detoxifying enzymes plays a role in modulating cancer risk of exogenous and endogenous compounds. It is, however, difficult to estimate the exact risk of these genetic variants since, in addition to the gene–environment interaction, there also seem to be gene–gene interactions that can result in a greater-than-additive effect on risk. Many of the studies have so far suffered from small or poorly designed sample sets, and additional research using carefully defined, large samples with known exposures is needed to elucidate the role of these genes in cancer etiology.

Several other candidate genes with cancer associated alleles have been suggested. These include genes encoding proteins involved in cell cycle regulation and development, DNA repair and repair capacity, immune response, and angiogenesis and other correlates of metastasis. An example of a polymorphism in a tumor suppressor gene associated with increased risk of colon cancer is the population-specific I1307K polymorphism in the *APC* gene in Ashkenazi Jews. A T-to-A transversion creates an
eight-base mononucleotide tract and indirectly causes cancer predisposition in these individuals. The mutation results in an amino acid exchange that does not alter the protein, but the mononucleotide repeat sequence is hypermutable, which may lead to truncation of the APC protein. This polymorphism is characteristic to Ashkenazims (101,102).

Several approaches to identify common alleles in cancer-associated genes are emerging. Direct gene analysis of large cohorts of patients and controls is feasible with new technologies. The type of variation that most likely is responsible for a disease association is single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) in the coding region of the gene. A huge international effort is taken to identify SNPs in cancer related genes, and since linkage disequilibrium normally does not extend over large distances, analyses of SNPs in candidate genes seem very promising. Results from such analyses will hopefully provide a much clearer pictured of what role the genetic background contributes to by either raising or lowering the cancer risk (103).

7. HOW TO IDENTIFY CANCER PATIENTS WHO ARE GENETICALLY PREDISPOSED

7.1. High Risk

The identification of cancer predisposing genes over the past few years have led to important changes in the clinical practice for cancer risk assessments. Although evaluation of risk assessment based exclusively on the family history is still most important, gene tests for a number of cancer genes are offered and used in this process (Fig. 3). There are many challenges at the individual level, within the family, and in the society, as well as in the gene tests themselves. “Gene testing” often includes a variety of modalities like linkage analyses, analysis of one or more founder mutations, analysis of a known private family mutation, screening for unknown mutation, and/or indirect tests as immunohistochemical analyses of relevant proteins or microsatellite instability test in the patient’s tumor. It often is necessary to use several techniques in order to perform the “optimal gene test,” based on a stepwise analysis process requiring skilled laboratory personnel. The evaluation of the consequences of the genetic test results is best obtained by close communication between molecular biologists responsible for the laboratory work and the health professionals responsible for the genetic counseling service.

7.2. Low Risk

Low to moderate risk may be assessed for relatives to cancer patients. Moderate risk assessment can also be performed for patients without family history of cancer but with bilateral disease or multiple cancers. However, the influence the common gene variants may have on an individual’s cancer
risk cannot currently be determined. The microarray technology ensures the analyses of thousands of genes, providing a tool to obtain the genetic portrait of a tumor as well the individual constitutional variation. The interpretation of the computer assisted analysis is a challenge in itself, but as better software continuously is developed, our focus now also turn to the low to moderate cancer risk associated DNA now sequence alterations.

REFERENCES


Chemical Causes of Cancer

Gary M. Williams and Alan M. Jeffrey

Department of Pathology, New York Medical College, Valhalla, New York, U.S.A.

1. CHEMICAL CARCINOGENESIS

The development of neoplasms mediated by chemicals in both experimental animals and humans is a complex, multistep process (1–3), as illustrated in (Fig. 1), involving a series of genetic and epigenetic alterations (4–7). Chemicals operate in a variety of ways to either facilitate or inhibit the process of oncogenesis (8–10). As far as is currently known, the process is generally the same in humans and in animals, although many strains of rodents have much higher incidences of neoplasms (11) than occur in humans, in the absence of specific genetic susceptibility. Rodents are often much more susceptible to chemical induction of neoplasms (12) and exhibit certain responses (see section 3.2 Epigenetic Organic Carcinogens) to chemicals not observed in humans (11,13,14).

Ultimately, the outcome of exposure to a chemical carcinogen is a function of the internal or effective dose and duration of exposure to the chemical and cancer-modifying agents and intrinsic susceptibility of the exposed animal or human. The understanding of some of the differences in response between animals and humans is discussed.

1.1. Neoplastic Transformation

The first sequence of events in oncogenesis or carcinogenesis, termed initiation by Berenblum (2), consists of the transformation or conversion of a normal cell into an initiated or transformed neoplastic cell. Transformation
is almost certainly the consequence of changes in gene expression in these cells which are either inherited, spontaneous or induced by chemicals or radiation. Mutations, and likely permanent epigenetic changes, require DNA replication, and hence the critical target cells for carcinogens are principally the renewing stem cells in tissues.

Spontaneous mutations can arise from DNA hydrolysis, errors in DNA synthesis, (6) or errors of repair process acting on intact DNA (15). Induced mutations result from chemical modification of DNA that escapes DNA damage repair and, during DNA replication, gives rise to DNA or chromosomal alterations (see Section 4.4 Mutations). Epigenetic changes in DNA expression can also be produced by one or more alterations. One is alteration of the normal pattern of cytosine methylation carried out by DNA methyltransferases, which are encoded by the cytosine DNA-methyltransferase (DNMT) gene family (16). Another is alteration in histone acetylation, which is mediated by histone acetyltransferase (HAT), and reduced by histone deacetylase (HDAC) (17).

Both foreign chemicals (xenobiotics) and endogenous chemicals (endobiotics) may interact with DNA either directly or indirectly to produce transformation. Endogenous agents, such as hormones, reactive oxygen species, nitric oxide, and lipid peroxidation products, as discussed later, may contribute to some sporadic or “spontaneous” cancers.

**Sequences of Oncogenesis**

![Diagram](image-url)

**Figure 1** Sequences of oncogenesis. Outlines the events in neoplastic transformation and development.

- **Neoplastic Transformation**
  - **normal cell**
    - Initiation
      - genetic alteration
    - Promotion
      - clonal expansion
  - **preneoplastic cell or population**
    - cell replication
    - reduced apoptosis
    - DNA repair deficiency
    - oncogene activation
    - suppressor gene inactivation
  - **neoplastic cell or population**
    - DNA adducts
    - epigenetic effects
    - cell replication
  - **Neoplastic Development**
    - neoplastic cell or population
      - Promotion
        - clonal expansion
        - growth
      - benign neoplasm
        - cell replication
        - reduced apoptosis
      - Progression
        - genetic alteration
        - heterogeneity
      - malignant neoplasm
        - cell replication
        - reduced apoptosis
        - neoangiogenesis
In the evolution of a neoplastic cell, focal preneoplastic populations usually precede the appearance of neoplasms and are considered to be the progenitors of the neoplastic cells that constitute tumors (1,2,18–20). Preneoplastic cells, which are not necessarily committed to progress to neoplasms, presumably lack all the requisite genetic changes that characterize neoplastic cells. In contrast, fully transformed cells are neoplastic and will form neoplasms under permissive conditions (Fig. 1). Preneoplastic lesions in both rodents and humans often express phenotypic abnormalities found in neoplastic cells; these include changes in enzyme activities and functional properties (21), alterations in expression of regulatory molecules such as erbB-2 (22), β-catenin (23,24), and fibronectin (25) and increases in inducible cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) (26) and nitric oxide synthase (26,27). These alterations probably are a consequence of gene mutations and, indeed, certain preneoplastic lesions are demonstrated to carry gene mutations found in the tumors that develop in association with the precursor lesions (28–30), including aberrant methylation (31). Also, preneoplastic lesions have been reported to have reduced DNA repair capacity (32). Hypermethylation of the promoter region of the DNA repair genes human Mut L homolog (hMLH1) and O6-alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase (AGAT), associated with gene silencing (33), is present in a variety of neoplasms (34). Whether this could occur earlier in preneoplastic cells, thereby enhancing their susceptibility to DNA-reactive carcinogens, remains to be investigated.

Thus, preneoplastic populations represent pathological hyperplasia of altered cells resulting from dysregulation of growth control. Even at the stage of preneoplasia, impairment of growth control may result from diminished gap junctional intercellular communication (35–37), discussed further below. Promoting agents enhance the development of preneoplastic lesions, for some agents through inhibition of cell–cell communication. Increased cell proliferation and impaired DNA repair capability may be involved in rendering preneoplastic cells more susceptible to transformation with continued exposure to DNA-reactive carcinogens.

Mutations that underlie transformation are primarily those in the growth control genes, the proto-oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes, or genes that regulate expression of oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes (38,39), some of which are listed in Table 1. In addition to the mutations in growth control genes, there are numerous interactions between their gene products. Proto-oncogenes function as positive regulators of cell proliferation. They become activated oncogenes (Table 1a) by point mutation, partial deletion, amplification, or translocation. Tumor suppressor genes (Table 1b) are negative regulators of proliferation. They are inactivated mainly by deletions and point mutations. Deletions are often manifested as loss of heterozygosity (LOH). Other epigenetic mechanisms of gene silencing are under or over methylation of DNA (40) and alterations in histone
Table 1 Mutations in Growth Control Genes in Some Human Cancers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Mutation</th>
<th>Tumor site (type)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Oncogenes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>PDGF</em> (platelet derived</td>
<td>Distal deletion</td>
<td>Brain (meningioma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>FGF-4</em> (fibroblast growth</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Head and neck (squamous cell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>EGF</em> (Epidermal growth factor)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>EGFR1</em> (epidermal growth</td>
<td>Overexpression</td>
<td>Breast, lung, head and neck, esophagus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factor receptor 1; HER-1;</td>
<td></td>
<td>pancreas (ductal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>human epidermal growth factor-receptor-1; ERB B-1 avian erythroblastosis)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ERBB-2</em> (HER-2/neu; EGFR2)</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Breast, lung, prostate, esophagus, gall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Point mutation</td>
<td>bladder, stomach, colon, thyroid,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transactivation</td>
<td>pancreas (ductal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>FGFR-1</em> (fibroblast growth</td>
<td></td>
<td>Astrocytoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factor receptor-1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>FGFR-3</em> (fibroblast growth</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple myeloma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factor receptor-3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *HGFR* (Hepatocyte growth     | Rearrangement  | Breast, thyroid, colon, pancreas, ovary,
| factor receptor; MET, N-methyl-N'-nitro-N'-nitrosoguanidine-treated) | | stomach, brain, prostate, endometrium, kidney, bone, liver |
| *MET* (mediate chemically      | Point mutation | Thyroid, colon, pancreas, ovary, stomach,
| induced transformation)       |                | kidney, head and neck                   |
| *RET* (Rearranged during      | Rearrangement  | Thyroid, multiple endocrine neoplasia   |
| transfection)                 |                | type 2                                  |
| *SCFR* (Stem cell growth      | Deletion,      | Blood (myeloid leukemia), gastrointestinal tract (stromal tumors), lung (small cell), testes (seminoma), colon |
| factor receptor; KIT, kitten) | insertion      |                                         |
| *Signal transduction element* |                |                                         |
| *HRAS* (Harvey Rasheed rat    | Guanine point in codons | Bladder, lung, thyroid, head and neck |
| sarcoma virus)                |                |                                         |

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Mutation</th>
<th>Tumor site (type)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KRAS (Kirsten sarcoma virus)</td>
<td>12, 13, 59, 61</td>
<td>Colon, esophagus, lung, pancreas, thyroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRAS (neuroblastoma)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Leukemia, breast, thyroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF (rapid fibrosarcoma) B</td>
<td>Point mutation</td>
<td>Melanocyte (melanoma) colon, ovary, thyroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRAF (RAFI) (rapid fibrosarcoma) C</td>
<td>Point mutation, LOH</td>
<td>Lung, breast, stomach, brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRC (Rous sarcoma virus)</td>
<td>Deletion, Q531 stop</td>
<td>Breast, colon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL (Abelson leukemia virus)</td>
<td>Translocation 9→22 (Philadelphia Chr)</td>
<td>Blood (chronic myelogenous leukemia) Brain (meningioma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fos (FBJ murine osteosarcoma virus)</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Cervix, ovary, colon, bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jun (avian sarcoma virus 17: ju-nana in Japanese means 17)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lung (non-small cell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P13K (phosphatidylinositol 3'-kinase)</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Cervix, ovary, colon, bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RhoA (RAS homolog gene family, member A)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lung (non-small cell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3 (signal transducer and activator of transcription)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Leukocytes (leukemia), leukocytes (lymphoma), leukocytes (multiple myeloma), head and neck, breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcriptional activation factor CTNNB1 (β-catenin)</td>
<td>Missense, deletion, exon 3 mutation</td>
<td>Liver, colon, uterus (endometrium), skin, kidney, esophagus, ovary, melanoma, stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYB (myeloblast)</td>
<td>Partial deletion</td>
<td>Colon, breast, blood (leukemia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYC (avian myelocytomatosis)</td>
<td>Translocation, amplification</td>
<td>Lymphoma, lung, neuroblastoma, brain (meningioma), breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYCN (avian myelocytomatosis, neuroblastoma derived)</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Neuroblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rel (reticuloendotheliosis virus)</td>
<td>Chr 2p14–15 Rearrangement, amplification</td>
<td>Lymphoma, lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCND1 (cyclin D1)</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Breast, colon, lung, head and neck, bladder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Mutation</th>
<th>Tumor site (type)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antiapoptotic factor</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCL-2 (B-cell lymphoma)</td>
<td>Translocation</td>
<td>Lymphoma, leukemia, colon, prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chr. 18—14</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCL-XL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDM2 (human double minute 2; MDM2, mouse DM2)</td>
<td>Amplification, Overexpression</td>
<td>Soft-tissue sarcoma, osteosarcoma, esophagus, breast, bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFI,2 (neurofibromatosis type 1,2)</td>
<td>Aberrant splicing</td>
<td>Peripheral nervous system, brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(b) Tumor Suppressor Genes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA repair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSH2 (Mut s homolog)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Colon (hereditary nonpolyposis and sporadic), ovary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLH1 (Mut L homolog)</td>
<td>Deletion, promoter methylation, LOH</td>
<td>Breast/ovary (familial), breast (sporadic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCA 1 (breast cancer)</td>
<td>Missense mutations, in frame deletions</td>
<td>Stomach, colon, rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCA 2 (breast cancer)</td>
<td>Deletion, LOH</td>
<td>Breast/ovary (familial), breast (sporadic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cell cycle arrest/apoptosis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP53 (53 kD protein)</td>
<td>Point mutations, LOH</td>
<td>Colon, lung, skin, bladder, pancreas, thyroid, esophagus, adrenal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATM (ataxia telangiectasia mutated)</td>
<td>Missense mutations, in frame deletions</td>
<td>Lymphocyte (lymphoma, leukemia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAK (Bcl-2 homologous antagonist/killer)</td>
<td>Missense mutations, promoter methylation</td>
<td>Stomach, colon, rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAPK1 (death associated protein kinase 1)</td>
<td>Downregulation, Chr 13q33–34 LOH</td>
<td>Lymphocyte (lymphoma), lung, colon, breast (ductal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ING (inhibitor of growth)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mouth, esophagus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGFB (transforming growth factor receptor-β) 1,2</td>
<td>Mutation, downregulation</td>
<td>Stomach, colon, breast, thyroid, prostate, pancreatic (ductal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNFRSF6 (tumor necrosis factor receptor superfamily, member 6; APO1; APT1; CD95; FAS)</td>
<td>Splice variation, point mutation</td>
<td>Head and neck, lymphocyte (lymphoma)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
### Table 1  Mutations in Growth Control Genes in Some Human Cancers (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Mutation</th>
<th>Tumor site (type)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cell cycle inhibitors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INK4a/ARF</strong> (alternative reading frame)</td>
<td>p16 deletion mutation, Chr. 9p21 LOH, promoter methylation</td>
<td>Esophagus, skin (familial melanoma), colorectum, lung, breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RBI (retinoblastoma)</strong></td>
<td>LOH, promoter methylation, microdeletion</td>
<td>Eye (retinoblastoma), bladder, kidney, prostate, pancreatic (ductal), breast, lung (small cell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cell cycle control</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CDKN1A (p21WAF1/CIP1)</strong> (cyclin dependent kinase inhibitor)</td>
<td>Chr. 9p21 LOH, Promoter methylation</td>
<td>Breast, colon, lung, ovary, skin (melanoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CDKN2A (p16ink4/MTS1)</strong> (cyclin dependent kinase inhibitor)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CDC4</strong></td>
<td>Mutation, LOH</td>
<td>Uterus (endometrium), breast, ovary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PHB (prohibitin)</strong></td>
<td>Chr. 10q 23.3 deletions, Promoter methylation</td>
<td>Breast, colon, lung, ovary, skin (melanoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PTEN (MMAC/TEP1)</strong> (phosphatase and tensin homolog)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cell signaling</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RASSF1A (RAS association domain family protein 1A)</strong></td>
<td>Promoter hypermethylation, LOH</td>
<td>Breast, lung (small cell) kidney, prostate, adrenal medulla (medulloblastoma), nervous system (neuroblastoma), striated muscle (rhabdomyosarcoma), retina (retinoblastoma), melanocyte (melanoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SHP-1 (Src homology region 2 (SH2) domain-containing phosphatase)</strong></td>
<td>Promoter methylation</td>
<td>Leukocyte (leukemia/lymphoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cell differentiation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RAR-β (retinoic acid receptor)</strong></td>
<td>Promoter methylation</td>
<td>Breast, lung, mouth, colon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Mutation</th>
<th>Tumor site (type)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DMBT1</td>
<td>Chr 10q 25.3-q 26.1</td>
<td>Brain, lung, esophagus, stomach, colon-rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDH1</td>
<td>LOH Promoter methylation</td>
<td>Breast (lobular) Stomach, breast, lung, head, and neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAX (Bcl-2 associated protein X)</td>
<td>Frameshift</td>
<td>Colon, uterus (endometrium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APC (adenomatous polyposis coli)</td>
<td>Frameshift, nonsense, promoter methylation</td>
<td>Colorectal, esophagus, pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNX (connexin)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stomach, liver, breast, prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC (deleted in colon cancer)</td>
<td>Deletion</td>
<td>Colon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBC2 (deleted in breast cancer 2)</td>
<td>Deletion, mutation</td>
<td>Breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC (deleted in liver cancer)</td>
<td>Chr 8 p21.3–22 LOH</td>
<td>Liver, colorectum, lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPC4 (deleted in pancreatic cancer locus 4)</td>
<td>Biallelic inactivation</td>
<td>Pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHIT (fragile histidine triad)</td>
<td>FRA3B deletions</td>
<td>Lung, kidney, breast, cervix, esophagus, stomach, liver, estes germ cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCC (mutated in colon cancer)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Colon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEN1 (multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Parathyroid, pancreas, anterior pituitary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSC-1.2 (tuberous sclerosis complex)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSLC1 (tumor suppressor in lung cancer 1, BL2, IGSF4)</td>
<td>Chr 11 11q 23.2 LOH Promoter methylation</td>
<td>Lung (nonsmall cell), liver, pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VHL (Von Hippel Lindau)</td>
<td>Chr. 3p LOH Promoter methylation</td>
<td>Kidney (clear cell), hemangioblastoma, pheochromacytoma, lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WT (Wilms tumor)</td>
<td>Chr. 11p13 LOH</td>
<td>Kidney (Wilms)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
acetylation (17). Methylation of CpG islands not normally methylated has been implicated in the inactivation of tumor suppressor genes (41,42). Some of these genetic changes may occur in the genesis of the neoplastic cell, as discussed above, while others emerge during further neoplastic development (38). Various lines of evidence implicate at least four to seven critical mutations in growth control genes in the evolution of human cancer cells (43,44), whereas fewer may be sufficient in rodent cells. Nevertheless, it is important to recognize that over time both normal and neoplastic cells accumulate very large numbers of mutations, in the range of $10^4$–$10^6$, as a consequence of spontaneous mutations during cell replication (45,46), although the majority of these are noninformative. Also, gene expression profiling of tumors reveals changes in expression of a large number of genes.

Tumor promoters, which are discussed later, facilitate the growth of both preneoplastic cells and neoplastic cells through a variety of mechanisms (Table 2). Promoters include both endogenous agents, such as hormones, and exogenous agents (Table 3), all of which show specificity in the species and organs affected. Their main action in transformation is to facilitate clonal expansion of responsive preneoplastic cells.

Eventually, the preneoplastic cells with the requisite genetic alterations for selective growth emerge as preneoplastic populations in which transformation to neoplastic cells occurs.

### 1.2. Neoplastic Development

In the second sequence of oncogenesis (Fig. 1), the neoplastic cell or population proliferates disproportionately to the surrounding tissue thereby achieving clonal expansion to eventually form a neoplasm (2,47). The clonal expansion can result from either enhancement of proliferation or reduction in programmed cell death referred to as apoptosis.

Neoplasms may be well differentiated, i.e., they express morphological and functional features of their progenitor tissue, and are benign in their biologic behavior. Qualitative changes in the biologic behavior of a neoplasm toward the malignant phenotype are known as progression (1) and is due to accumulation of changes in gene expression. As originally

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Mutation</th>
<th>Tumor site (type)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>WWOX (WW= two tryptophans in sequence motif; domain-containing oxidoreductase; FORII)</strong></td>
<td>Chr 16q <em>(FRA16D)</em> deletion, Chromosomal fragility</td>
<td>Breast, prostate, ovary, esophagus, lung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chr, chromosome; LOH, loss of heterozygosity; FRA, chromosomal fragile site.
proposed by Loeb (48), progression may be the consequence of a mutator phenotype which introduces mutations in replicating neoplastic cells (6), adding to those occurring spontaneously and induced by carcinogen exposure. The basis for the mutator phenotype includes reduced fidelity of DNA replication and diminished DNA repair processes (33,49). The high incidence of mutations in neoplastic cells can be readily identified in short tandem repeats in DNA (microsatellites) (50,51), a phenomenon known as microsatellite instability (MSI). One basis for the mutator phenotype is mutations in mismatch repair genes whose gene products edit errors in newly replicated DNA. Mutation or transcriptional silencing of either of two of these, the \textit{MHL1} or \textit{MSH2} genes, leads to high levels of MSI (52,53). Transcriptional silencing can be a consequence of promoter region hypermethylation, which has been estimated to occur in about 400 genes in cancer cells (54). Another type of mutation frequently present in neoplasms is hemizygous chromosomal deletions, detected as LOH. Chromosomal fragile site loci (FRA) (55) may have a role in chromosomal instability in regions associated with tumor suppressor genes (56–58). The two most frequently expressed of the 80 fragile sites are FRA 16D and FRA 3B (56). Ultimately, most, if not all, neoplasms develop chromosome aberrations (59).

An essential alteration in neoplastic cells is dysregulation of growth control (60–62). This stems either from overexpression of the gene products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2  Mechanisms of Interactions in Chemical Carcinogenesis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cocarcinogenesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased carcinogen delivery to target cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitization of target cells to effects of carcinogen, e.g., enhanced cell proliferation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Promotion</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of cell–cell communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of immune effector cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induction of tumor necrosis factor-α</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induction of cyclooxygenase-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of apoptosis in preneoplastic or neoplastic cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syncarcinogenesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summation of genotoxic effects of two carcinogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Photochemical skin carcinogenesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased distribution of carcinogen to skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photoactivation of carcinogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photochemical generation of reactive oxygen species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitization of target cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anticarcinogenesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of carcinogen formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blocking of interaction of carcinogen with target cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppression of expression of transformation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3  Classification of Chemicals with Carcinogenic Activity

A. DNA-reactive
1. Activation-independent alkylating agents
   - Activation-independent alkylating agents: N-nitrosomethylurea, N'-methyl-N'-nitro-N'-nitrosoguanidine
   - Epoxides: ethylene oxide, styrene oxide
   - Azoxy methane, methylazoxymethanol
2. Activation-dependent
   - Metabolic
     - Aliphatic halides: vinyl chloride
     - Aromatic amines: monocyclic-o-toludine; polycyclic-4-aminobiphenyl, benzidine
     - Nitroaromatic compounds: 1-nitropyrene, 3-nitrofluoranthenes
     - Heterocyclic amines: 2-amino-3-methylimidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (PhIP)
     - Aminoazo dyes: dimethylaminazo benzene
     - Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons: benzo[a]pyrene; substituted polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons: 3-methylcholanthrene
     - N-nitroso compounds: dialkyl-dimethyl nitrosamine, diethyl nitrosamine, cyclic-N-nitrosornornicotine (NNK), nitrosomorpholine
     - Triazines, hydrazines
     - Benzene
     - Mycotoxins: aflatoxin B₁, aflatoxin G₁
     - Plant products: pyrrolizidine alkaloids, aristolochic acid, cycasin
     - Pharmaceuticals: cyclophosphamide, phenacetin, tamoxifen
   - Photochemical
     - Psoralens
B. Epigenetic
1. Promoter
   - Liver enzyme-inducer type hepatocarcinogens: chlordane, DDT, pentachlorophenol, phenobarbital, polychlorinated biphenyls, polychlorinated biphenyls
   - Bladder: sodium saccharin
   - Forestomach: butylated hydroxyanisole
2. Endocrine-modifier
   - Hormones: estrogens-17β-estradiol; catechol estrogens-4-hydroxy-estradiol, 2-hydroxyestradiol
   - Estrogen agonists: 17α-ethinyl estradiol, diethylstilbestrol (DES)
   - Prolactin inducers: chloro-s-triazines-atrazine
   - Antiandrogens: finasteride, vinclozolin
   - Antithyroid enhancers of thyroid tumors: thyroperoxidase inhibitors-aminotrole, sulfamethazine; thyroid hormone conjugation enhancers-phenobarbital, spironolactone
   - Gastrin-elevating inducers of gastric neuroendocrine tumors: lansoprazole, omeprazole

(Continued)
of activated oncogenes, which regulate cell survival and proliferation, or from functional loss of the gene products of tumor suppressor genes which inhibit cell proliferation (the full names of these genes are given in Table 1a and b). A dynamic review of this dysfunction is available through the Cancer Genome Anatomy Project (63). Thus, the progressive growth of neoplasms is due to an imbalance of a higher percentage of dysregulated neoplastic cells traversing the cell cycle (i.e., a high growth fraction), exceeding the percentage leaving the cell cycle to the resting state ($G_0$), differentiation, or apoptosis. Cell cycle progression is controlled by the reversible phosphorylation and ubiquitin-mediated proteosomal degradation of key regulatory proteins (61,64). Phosphorylation is carried out by a family of cyclin-dependent kinases (cdks) which are regulated positively by certain cyclins, such as cyclin D, and negatively by cdk inhibitors such as p16. In addition, the gene products of growth control genes regulate cdks. Cyclin E, which is involved in the initiation of DNA replication, is dysregulated in many types of tumors (65), apparently as a consequence of mutation in the gene $CDC4$ that codes for a protein involved in targeting phosphorylated cyclin E for ubiquitination and proteasome degradation (66).

The progressive growth of a neoplasm is a function of acquired abnormalities either in growth control or in the response to host permissive factors or promoters. The normal growth control genes that are mutated in neoplasms, are proto-oncogenes (or dominant oncogenes) and tumor suppressor genes (or recessive oncogenes).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3</th>
<th>Classification of Chemicals with Carcinogenic Activity (Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Immunosuppressor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purine analogs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Cytotoxin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse forestomach toxicants: propionic acid, diallyl phthalate, ethyl acrylate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat nasal toxicants: chloracetanilide herbicides-alcohol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat renal toxicants: potassium bromate, nitrilotriacetic acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male rat $\alpha_{2u}$-globulin nephropathy inducers: d-limonene, $p$-dichlorobenzene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor $\alpha$ (PPAR $\alpha$) agonists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypolipidemic fibrates: ciprofibrate, clofibrate, gemfibrozil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phthalates: di(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate (DEHP), di(isononyl)phthalate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbicides: lactofen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Inorganics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibers: Asbestos, silica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic, beryllium, cadmium, chromium (IV), nickel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Unclassified</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acrylamide, acrylonitrile, dioxane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Approximately 150 mutated oncogenes have been identified (67). The proto-oncogenes which are activated by mutation include genes whose oncoproteins function as growth factors (e.g., PDGF), growth factor receptors (e.g., EGFR1), signal transduction elements (e.g., H-RAS), transcriptional activation factors (e.g., β-catenin), and antiapoptotic factors (e.g., BCL-2). Most are activated in a variety of cancers, but a few have been found to be mutated only in some specific cancers, as shown in Table 1a. Additionally, oncogene expression can be upregulated by signaling cascades.

The most frequently activated oncogenes in tumors are those of the RAS superfamily of genes, which consists of at least six families, including RAS, Rho, and Arf, of over 90 genes. Activation of K-RAS, H-RAS, or N-RAS proto-oncogenes occurs in about 15% of many different types of human cancer (68,69). Oncogenic forms of RAS p21 protein, a guanine nucleotide binding protein, with guanosine triphosphatase activity, drive cell proliferation through several downstream effectors. In one pathway, RAS activates the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling cascade (70). MAPKs are serine/threonine kinases which phosphorylate transcriptional factors (71), including nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB), a member of the Rel/NF-κB transcription factor family (72), which is a central regulator of stress response (73,74).

The protein kinase activity altered with RAS mutation is one of many such alterations that are produced by oncogene mutations (75). Another family of oncogenes encodes growth factor receptors (Table 1a). These receptors, for example members of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) family, are transmembrane receptor protein-tyrosine kinases (RPTK), which regulate tyrosine phosphorylation and mediate intracellular signal-transduction pathways, including the MAPK cascade (76). RPTK activity is negatively controlled by cytoplasmic or transmembrane protein tyrosine phosphatases (PTP) (77) and inhibition of PTP produces ligand-independent RPTK activation. Another growth factor receptor, peroxisome proliferation activated receptor (PPAR)-γ, which is a member of the membrane hormone receptor superfamily, is widely expressed in many tumors (78).

Cellular responses to growth factors or cytokines are also mediated by proteins known as signal transducers and activators of transcription (STAT) (79). STATs are activated through tyrosine phosphorylation, which can be produced by nonreceptor tyrosine kinases such as scr and abl oncoproteins. STATs are constitutively activated in various types of tumors (80) (Table 1a), which can result in overexpression of cyclin D1 (81).

CTNNB1 encodes β-catenin, a multifunctional protein which operates in cell adhesion by binding to E-cadherin and, in cell proliferation, through the Wnt signaling pathway (82). β-Catenin is degraded by ubiquination following phosphorylation by glycogen synthase kinase (GSK3)β as part of a
multiprotein complex including the APC and axin proteins. Mutations in CTNNB1, APC, or AXIN genes lead to stabilized β-catenin which complexes with members of the T-cell transcription factor (TCF)/lymphoid enhancer factor (LEF) family of DNA binding proteins and acts as a transcription factor for target genes, possibly including MYC (83), whose gene product is involved in proliferation, apoptosis, and cell differentiation (84) and also is an inducer of telomerase (see below).

Myb has been identified as an activator of transcription of the cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) gene (85), also referred to as prostaglandin endoperoxide synthase, an inducible enzyme which is implicated in carcinogen metabolism (86) and cancer progression through induction of neoangiogenesis (see below).

Thus, activated oncogenes are involved in cancer development in a variety of ways. In some cancers sustained overexpression of the encoded oncoprotein is required to maintain the neoplastic phenotype.

The other type of gene involved in neoplastic transformation is the tumor suppressor gene of which over 170 are known (67). These encode proteins that restrain cell proliferation either by inhibiting cell cycle progression (e.g., p53), exerting cell cycle control (e.g., pRB), mediating cell differentiation (e.g., RAR-β) or serving as receptors for growth inhibition factors (e.g., transforming growth factor-β receptor, TGFBR). Also, a few tumor suppressor genes are involved in response to genetic damage. Some tumor suppressor genes have multiple functions. Examples are given in Table 1b. The function of tumor suppressor genes is lost by inactivation of both alleles. This occurs through point mutation or deletion, partial or complete (class I) or downregulation (class II) resulting from promoter methylation. Most tumor suppressor genes have been found to be mutated in a variety of tumors, but some are mutated only in specific tumors.

Abnormalities of TP53 are the most frequent tumor suppressor gene alterations in human cancers (87) (Table 1b); the gene is mutated in 10–70% of common cancers (88), with a high fraction of missense mutations, which result in full-length mutant proteins. TP53 codes for a gene product, p53, that is a 53 kD transcription factor which controls cell cycle arrest and apoptosis (89). The p53 protein transactivates other genes by interacting with the p53 responsive element (RE) present in their promoter regions (90). Among these genes, p53 regulates the expression of BAX, and APAF-1 (apoptosis activating factor), which direct apoptosis, and CDKN1A, which encodes p21WAF1/CIP1, an inhibitor of cyclin E- and A-dependent kinases, and GADD45, thereby producing cell cycle arrest. Alterations of TP53-type function may be even more frequent than evidenced by TP53 mutations since TP53 is one of a gene family including TP63 and TP73, which have some similar functions (91). TP53 function is regulated by several proteins whose genes may be altered in neoplastic cells. The product of the oncogene HDM2 (MDM2 in mice named for double minute centromeric
extrachromosomal nuclear bodies), HDM2 protein, is involved in the degradation of p53 protein through a proteosome mechanism (92), and hence HDM2 overexpression abrogates p53 function. Mutations in TP53 and HDM2 do not commonly occur in the same tumor (93). Conversely, several proteins enhance p53 activity. The tumor suppressor gene product of INK can attenuate the interaction between p53 and MDM2 (94) and the product of the oncogene ARF inactivates HDM2. Two isoforms of the ING tumor suppressor gene bind to p53 and enhance its activity (95).

The second most frequently inactivated tumor suppressor locus is INK4a/ARF (96). One of the gene products, p14ARF, activates TP53 in response to activated oncogenes by neutralizing the effects of HDM2, thereby preventing transformation. The other product p16INK4a is an inhibitor of cyclin D-dependent kinase, maintaining Rb protein in the unphosphorylated state, thereby inhibiting cell cycle progression (97).

Also, a key alteration in many types of neoplasm is loss of function of the RB1 tumor suppressor gene (Table 1). Its protein product, pRB, in its hypophosphorylated form binds several transcription factors, especially E2 factors (E2F), required for cell cycle progression from G1 to S phase in which DNA is replicated (98). When pRB is phosphorylated by the cyclin/CDK complexes in late G1, its function is blocked, allowing E2F to activate expression of genes whose products facilitate cell cycle transition (99). Loss of function of RB1 occurs through mutation of the gene, by mutations in the INK4a/ARF gene, amplification of cyclin D1/CDK4 activity or by hypermethylation in its promoter region (100). Subsequent to identification of silencing of Rb by promoter methylation, at least eight other tumor suppressor genes have been shown to be silenced by this alteration (Table 1b), which maybe a consequence of the overall increase in DNA methyltransferase activity found in tumors (101). Other members of the RB gene family, which include p107 and Rb2/p130, encode proteins with similar functions as pRB (102) and may play a role in neoplasia.

The receptor for growth inhibition factors, transforming growth factor receptor β (TGFBR), contains a protein kinase with serine/threonine specificity (RSK), which phosphorylates Smads [merger of Small gene in C. elegans and Mad (mothers against decapentaplegic) gene in Drosophila], which are signal mediation proteins which act as transcriptional regulators.

In individual cancers, various oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes are abnormal. Some of those identified in human cancers are given in Table 1. No oncogene is activated in all types of cancer and likewise, no tumor suppressor gene is deleted in all types. Among the genes mutated in cancers, K-RAS and TP53 are the only two consistently mutated in a high proportion of cancers of different types. Cancers can exhibit a variety of genetic alterations, depending upon the extent of progression. For example, the sequential development of gene changes in colon cancer has been described by Fearon and Vogelstein (103). Recently, Hahn et al. (44) have
provided evidence that changes in at least four distinct signaling pathways may be required for transformation of human cells. Certainly, the more mutations in the regulatory pathways that a tumor incurs, the more aggressive its behavior can become. Interestingly, pediatric tumors exhibit relatively few mutations (104), but high frequencies of promoter methylation, especially in RASSF1A (105) (Table 1b).

Tumor cells can also acquire resistance to apoptosis or programmed cell death, which results from a variety of factors. For one, loss of matrix attachment leads to death of epithelial cells, a phenomenon termed anoikis (106). Also, a rapid process of apoptosis (2–8 hr) is evoked by various factors including extracellular factors such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF) family members, including TNF-\(\alpha\), Fas ligand (Fas L; also known as TNFSF6, tumor necrosis factor super family, member 6; APT1 APO1 or CD95) and TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) (107), whereas a slower intrinsic process (8–48 hr) is mediated by intracellular factors such as proapoptotic products of the BCL-2 gene family (108). This slower form of apoptosis is initiated by mitochondrial release of proapoptotic factors and cytochrome C, which can result from translocation of BAX to mitochondria (109). Apoptosis is effected by caspases, which comprise three families of cysteine aspartate proteases (hence caspase) residing in the cytosol as inactive zymogens (110). Specific caspases are involved in either the initiation or execution phases of cell death. Members of one family, caspases 8 and 10, associate through a death effector domain with the cell membrane death receptors of TNF-\(\alpha\), Fas L or TRAIL. Another family of caspases, 1, 2, 4, 5, and 9, have a caspase recruiting domain. The downstream effector caspases are 3, 6, and 7, which are activated by members of the other two families. Deregulation of the death receptor pathway to apoptosis is frequent in many types of pediatric tumors due to methylation and gene silencing of CASP8 (111). Apoptosis can be inhibited by prevention of increased mitochondrial permeability transition and/or stabilization of the barrier function of the outer mitochondrial membrane (112) or through interaction with Apaf (apoptosis activation factor)-1 to inhibit activation of caspases (113). Antiapoptotic members of the BCL-2 gene family include BCL-2, BCL-\(X_L\), and MCL-1 which encode proteins that prevent release of proapoptotic factors, thereby conferring resistance to apoptosis. Because elevated expression of BCL-2 and BCL-\(X_L\) results in enhanced cell survival, they are considered to be proto-oncogenes (Table 1a), although in some circumstances BCL-2 inhibits tumorigenesis (114). Inactivating mutations in the proapoptotic BAX and BAK genes are found in some cancers (115), and hence these are considered to be tumor suppressor genes (Table 1b). Another proapoptotic protein is death-associated protein (DAP) which is localized to the cytoskeleton and mediates interferon-\(\gamma\)-induced cell death (116). The gene for DAP kinase (DAPKI) is considered to be a tumor suppressor gene (Table 1b). Activation of RPTKs, including EGFR, ILGF-1R
and Met, can alleviate anoikis (117). Overexpression of COX-2 can also inhibit apoptosis (118). Thus, tumor cells can acquire resistance to apoptosis through alteration of a number of signaling pathways, several of which are regulated by p53 (90).

The transforming growth factor (TGF) gene family proteins are involved in various cell functions including growth, differentiation, apoptosis, and migration (119). TGF-β1 is growth inhibitory to certain cancers, but they can lose their responsiveness through mutations of the receptor (TβR). The alterations, however, are complex; in some tumors TGF-β1 is overexpressed and TGF-β1 and RAS can counteract one another collaborate (120).

Enhanced cell proliferation is facilitated by reduced intercellular gap junction communication (35–37). The gap junction is a membrane channel between adjacent cells that is composed of junctional hemichannels, connexons, in the cell membranes of communicating cells. Connexons are made up of subunit proteins, connexins, of about 15 different types, which are expressed differently in connexons formed in various tissues. The gap junctions allow transport of hydrophylic molecules of low molecular weight (up to 1 kD). A decrease or loss of connexin expression and gap junction formation occurs often in tumors, particularly connexin 43 (121). Thus, the connexin gene family (CNX) may be considered tumor suppressor genes (122). Also, expression of oncogene-coded kinases that produce connexin phosphorylation downregulates gap-junctional communication.

In addition to alterations that drive cell proliferation, neoplastic cells acquire a variety of phenotypic alterations that support growth. Important among these is an increased glycolysis for generation of ATP, known as the Warburg effect, which facilitates growth in a hypoxic micro environment. An inducible isozyme of 6-phosphofructo-2 kinase has been implicated in this phenomenon (123). Also, upregulation of glutamine synthetase (124), which catalyzes synthesis of glutamine, and downregulation of 10-formyltetrahydrofolate dehydrogenase (125), which regulates purine biosynthesis through controlling the levels of 10-formyltetrahydrofolate, contribute to tumor cell growth. Additionally, some tumors have diminished biotransformation activities, although not all Phase I and II enzymes are equally affected (126–130) and some enzymes may be increased (126). The basis for most such differences is not known, but it is established that glutathione S-transferase P1 gene, GSTP1, can be silenced by promoter methylation (131).

For tumor cells to continue to proliferate, an important element is the maintenance of the length of their telomeres, the terminal portion of the chromosome consisting of TTAGGG repeats. Due to the inability of DNA polymerase to replicate the extreme ends of the lagging strand of DNA, telomeres are shortened by approximately 50–200 bp with each cell division in normal cells, eventually leading to senescence. Telomere length is maintained by a ribonucleoprotein complex, telomerase, consisting of
the enzyme telomerase reverse transcriptase (TERT) and a 451 nucleotide RNA template for the hexanucleotide repeats that are added to the ends of replicating chromosomes. Telomerase is active in cells of many tumors due to increased expression of TERT (132). The oncoprotein myc binds to the TERT promoter and induces telomerase activity (133,134).

In addition to these intrinsic alterations in neoplastic cells, the development of a tumor can be facilitated by host factors. Among these, hormones, such as estrogen and insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), are implicated in the development of several types of cancer, including colon, breast, prostate, and lung (135–137). Also, enhanced expression of hormone receptors, such as estrogen receptor (ER) or insulin-like growth factor-binding protein (IGFBP) 2 (138), increases tumor response to trophic hormones, although IGFBPs are both positive and negative regulators of insulin-like growth factor signaling (139). Cytokines, such as interleukin-6 (IL-6), have been implicated in the pathogenesis of several types of tumors through activation of STATs (140,141).

As the neoplastic population expands, establishment of a new blood supply is necessary to sustain the increased number of cells (142). Tumor vascularization is stimulated by a number of factors including vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) (142,143), and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) produced from arachidonic acid by COX-2, which is elevated in tumor cells including those of the colon, lung, stomach, pancreas, and breast (144,145), as well as in their neovasculature (146). COX-2 is upregulated by Myb and TNF-α. Angiogenic factors may be elaborated by the tumor cells or by other cells, such as mast cells stimulated by stem cell factor produced by tumor cells (147). The angiogenesis inhibitor endostatin, which is a cleavage product of collagen XVIII, has produced antitumor effects (148).

Neoplasms also must evade the host immune system and overcome other host factors that restrain growth. Some tumors express factors inhibitory to immune effector cells such as TGF-β, interleukin-10, and Fas-L (149). Also, tumor cells can develop defects in proteosome function that results in impairment of presentation of antigenic peptides and lack of recognition by cytotoxic T lymphocytes.

The malignant phenotype in neoplasms is defined by the ability to invade adjacent tissue and to metastasize to remote sites. Invasiveness requires altered expression of specific cellular properties leading to decreased cell adhesion or degradation of the adjacent extracellular matrix (ECM) (19,150). Cell adhesion molecules include the tight junctions, the connexins, which couple cells by formation of gap junctions (35), cadherins, which are cell surface glycoproteins that bridge the extracellular space (151) and integrins, which are signaling receptors which connect the ECM to the actin fiber cytoskeleton, thereby regulating the cytoskeleton (152). E-cadherin is the major epithelial cell–cell adhesion molecule which is connected to the cytoskeleton by association with the cytoplasmic proteins, catenins. E-cadherin is downregulated in a variety of carcinomas and its gene
CDH1 displays LOH in some carcinomas (153). A variety of alterations of the ECM occur in tumors. Fibronectin is reported to be decreased, even in preneoplastic lesions (25). Recently, DMBT1 (deleted in malignant brain tumor-1), a mucin-like molecule, which is the product of the putative tumor suppressor gene DMBT1 (Table 1b) was found to be reduced in digestive tract cancers (154). Proteases that degrade the extracellular matrix include the zinc-dependent matrix metalloproteases (MMP), of which gelatinase A (MMP-2) is the most abundant and plasmin/urokinase urokinase plasminogen activator (uPA) (150), an activator of MMP9 which is involved in basement membrane transgression. MMP activities are inhibited by homologous tissue inhibitors of MMP (TIMPs) (155). In some tumors, MMP activities are directed by overexpression of members of the protein kinase C family, which consists of 11 serine–threonine kinases, or the mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinases. Also, NF-κB, which is increased in malignancies, is a transcriptional activator of MMP9 and uPA (156).

Each type of malignancy has a specific pattern of metastasis which is determined both by lymphatic and blood drainage from the tumor, and also by factors produced by disseminated cells allowing them to establish metastases (157,158). Genes regulating metastasis of tumor cells have been categorized as either metastasis-promoting (CDH2, CXCR4, MT4) or metastasis-suppressing (CD9, CD44, Nm 23, KiSS1, Ka11/CD82, CDH1, MAP2K4, MKK4, TIMP, and BRMS1) (159). Several of these (CD9, CD44, and CD82) code for transmembrane proteins. One possible mechanism for metastasis inhibition is the maintenance of gap junction intracellular communication (160).

In addition to the alterations in genes critical to neoplastic development and progression, neoplasms acquire a variety of alterations in other genes, a phenomenon referred to as aberrant gene expression. Such genes include those for hormones that would not normally be produced by the cell type of origin of the neoplasm, such as secretion of vasopressin by small cell lung carcinomas and those for proteins such as bone morphogenetic protein (BMP) which can produce osseous differentiation in nonosteogenic tumors.

In summary, neoplastic development, in which the neoplastic cell arising from transformation evolves into a malignant neoplasm, comprises the phenomena of clonal expansion of the neoplastic population, which is facilitated by promotion, and the progression of genetic abnormalities in the evolving neoplasm.

2. INTERACTIVE CARCINOGENESIS

Interaction between a carcinogen and other chemicals, including a second carcinogen, can enhance or reduce carcinogenesis through different
mechanisms listed in Table 2. As described above, replicating cells are susceptible to neoplastic transformation by carcinogens and, because of that, factors that increase cell replication can enhance the response of a tissue to a carcinogen, while those that suppress replication can diminish susceptibility.

Chemicals that are not themselves carcinogenic, but that enhance carcinogenicity are referred to as cocarcinogens (8,9). These generally operate in concert with carcinogens either by increasing the exposure of target cells to the carcinogen or by enhancing the effect of the carcinogen on the target cell, such as by increasing cell proliferation. An example of human cocarcinogenesis is the enhancement of tobacco-induced oral cancer by heavy alcohol consumption (161).

Agents that operate after carcinogen exposure to facilitate manifestation of carcinogenicity are referred to as promoters (8). As described above, these operate in the sequence of neoplastic development, often by increasing cell proliferation whereby a selective growth advantage is achieved by neoplastic cells. A wide variety of experimental agents with promoting activity is known (Table 3). Various possible mechanisms of tumor promotion are listed in Table 2. One that characterizes a wide spectrum of promoters is inhibition of cell–cell communication (36,122,162), which results in liberation of tumor cells from the growth regulatory signals of surrounding normal cells, as discussed above. Promoters also modulate gene expression, including in critical genes such as $COX-2$ (163).

Under the influence of promoting agents, which include endogenous substances such as hormones and growth factors, as well as xenobiotics, the growth of initiated or transformed neoplastic cells is facilitated to form a neoplastic population with progressive growth capability (2). The promoting action of chemicals is generally characterized by increased cell proliferation in both the affected tissue and the preneoplastic or neoplastic cells present in it. In response to promoters, preneoplastic populations, in some tissues, exhibit reduced apoptosis (164).

Unlike cocarcinogens, promoters are often weakly carcinogenic in the target tissue (Table 3), probably through promotion of cryptogenically transformed cells. A likely example of human tumor promotion is increased risk of breast cancer with hormone replacement therapy (165).

Both cocarcinogenesis and promotion are highly species and tissue specific.

Syncarcinogenesis refers to the additive or synergistic effect of two carcinogens applied simultaneously or sequentially (8). Syncarcinogenesis is well recognized for DNA-reactive carcinogens with the same target organ (166), but apparently occurs infrequently among pairs of carcinogens (167). Typically, syncarcinogenesis results from summation of the genetic effects produced by each carcinogen in the target tissue (168), which could possibly be a consequence of the accumulation of different DNA adducts,
The saturation of DNA repair, or the interference of one type of adduct with the repair of another. A possible example in human carcinogenesis is cigarette smoking in which there is exposure to several carcinogens, formed during tobacco consumption.

Table 4  Classification of Chemicals and Mixtures Judged to Be Carcinogenic to Humans by the International Agency Research Cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DNA-Reactive</th>
<th>Epigenetic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxins</td>
<td>Azathioprine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-Aminobiphenyl</td>
<td>2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Aminonaphthalene</td>
<td>Oral contraceptives, combined and sequential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Azacytidine</td>
<td>Unclassified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzidine</td>
<td>Alcoholics beverages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betel quid with tobacco</td>
<td>Arsenic and arsenic compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bis(chloromethyl)ether</td>
<td>Asbestos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorambucil</td>
<td>Benzene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloraminazine [N,N-bis(2-chloroethyl)-2-naphthylamine] [triethylenethiophosphoramide]</td>
<td>Cadmium compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium compounds, hexavalent</td>
<td>Chromium compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coal-tars</td>
<td>Ethylene oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclophosphamide</td>
<td>Treosulphan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melphalan</td>
<td>Vinyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl CCNU [1-(2-chloroethyl)-3-(4-methylcyclclohexyl)-1-nitrosourea]</td>
<td>Coal-tars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene oxide</td>
<td>Cyclophosphamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postmenopausal estrogen therapy</td>
<td>Melphalan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporin A</td>
<td>Methyl CCNU [1-(2-chloroethyl)-3-(4-methylcyclclohexyl)-1-nitrosourea]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unclassified</td>
<td>Oral contraceptives, combined and sequential</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aWWW.IARC.fr  
*bBased on relevant mechanism
A type of interaction of potential importance in skin carcinogenesis is photochemical carcinogenicity, which results from the combined action of a chemical carcinogen and ultraviolet radiation. The interaction can be of various types. An example of one type is the photoactivation of psoralens to DNA binding species (169) that induce skin cancer (170). In humans, skin cancer has occurred with 8-methoxypsoralen-UVA (PUVA) treatment of skin conditions (171). Another type of interaction is the photodegradation of chemicals, such as the fluoroquinolone antibiotics, resulting in formation of reactive oxygen species, which may be implicated in the mouse skin photochemical carcinogenicity of some of these chemicals (172). UVA is the predominant UV radiation reaching the earth’s surface and could contribute to human skin through such a mechanism, involving either endogenous photosensitizers, such as riboflavin, or exogenous ones.

Mechanisms of anticarcinogenesis are of several types (10,173,174). Examples of experimental inhibition of the formation of an ultimate carcinogen include inhibition by vitamin C of N-nitrosation of amines to form carcinogens (175) and inhibition of formation of sulfate esters of aromatic amines by acetaminophen (176). Other anticarcinogens that increase detoxification of carcinogens include oltipraz (177), the phenolic antioxidants, butylated hydroxyanisole and butylated hydroxytoluene (178) and the isothiocyanates, sulforaphane (179). Agents that block the effects of carcinogens, possibly by free radical scavenging, include phenolic antioxidants (178). Among agents that suppress tumor development, the most generally effective experimentally is caloric restriction (180). Other suppressing agents include antiestrogens, such as tamoxifen (181) and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (182). Several of these agents are now in clinical development, as discussed below in Section 6, Cancer Prophylaxis.

These types of interactive carcinogenesis contribute to the multifactorial nature of cancer in humans, as discussed below.

3. TYPES OF CHEMICAL CARCINOGENS

A wide variety of chemicals, both natural and synthetic, have carcinogenic activity in rodents (183–185). The diversity of carcinogens reflects the fact that the multistep process of oncogenesis can be influenced by chemicals in various ways, mainly involving either DNA reactivity of the chemical, leading to genetic alteration, or epigenetic modulation of cell growth or function, as discussed above. Accordingly, carcinogens have been broadly characterized as either DNA-reactive or epigenetic (9,186). Examples of the types of chemicals that can be assigned to these two categories and those for which data are insufficient for classification are given in Table 3. These are described further below.
3.1. DNA- Reactive Organic Carcinogens

DNA-reactive carcinogens are defined by their ability to bind covalently to DNA (186). This reactivity is a consequence of their molecular structure which gives rise to an electrophilic reactant, either directly or after bioactivation, capable of reacting covalently with cellular nucleophiles, particularly DNA (187). These aspects are discussed further in Section 4.2, *Types of Interactions with DNA*. As a consequence of their DNA-reactivity, carcinogens of this type produce mutations in the target tissue and this is the most rigorous basis for their categorization. They also are generally positive in genotoxicity assays, although activity in certain tests such as those for chromosomal effects are not necessarily indicative of DNA reactivity. DNA-reactive carcinogens operate primarily in the first steps of oncogenesis by binding to the DNA of target cells to effect initiation and neoplastic transformation. DNA-reactive agents can also enhance tumor development by producing cytotoxicity leading to compensatory cell proliferation, thereby causing further progression in neoplastic cells through additional DNA modification in these highly susceptible proliferating cells.

In experimental systems, most DNA-reactive carcinogens produce neoplasms, usually malignant, in several species, in several organs, and often in high incidence with short latencies. They can be carcinogenic with no other observable toxic effect and with a single exposure. A number of DNA-reactive carcinogens are active transplacentally in rodents (188). Several DNA-reactive carcinogens have been active in nonhuman primates (189), including transplacentally (190).

Owing to their mechanism of action, DNA-reactive carcinogens are presumptive human carcinogens with sufficient exposure (191) and, indeed, most human carcinogens are DNA reactive (Table 4).

The category of DNA-reactive carcinogens comprises mainly the classic organic carcinogens that operate as alkylating agents, e.g., epoxides, aliphatic nitrosamines, or arylating agents, e.g., polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH) and aromatic amines (Table 3). DNA-reactive carcinogens with intrinsic reactivity occur mainly as products of the chemical and pharmaceutical industries or as products of pyrolysis in which very reactive chemicals are formed.

3.2. Epigenetic Organic Carcinogens

Epigenetic carcinogens have structures that do not give rise to reactive electrophiles and thus they lack the ability to bind covalently to DNA and are generally negative in genotoxicity assays, particularly in those that directly measure DNA damage.

Some epigenetic carcinogens may be indirectly genotoxic and produce neoplastic transformation by generating reactive chemical compounds intracellularly, such as reactive oxygen species (192,193) or other reactive
compounds such as nitric oxide (194,195) \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated aldehydes (enals) (196,197), and dialdehydes from lipid peroxidation (198). Also, epigenetic agents may enhance spontaneous transformation rates by increasing cell proliferation. Many operate in the sequence of neoplastic development as promoters by facilitating tumor development from cryptogenically transformed cells.

Epigenetic carcinogens often are active in only one species and have limited sites of activity, for example tissues that are hormonally responsive. To be effective, they usually require prolonged exposure at levels sufficient to produce the cellular effect that underlies their carcinogenic activity. While only a few have been tested in primates, none has been active (189).

A few epigenetic carcinogens have been tumorigenic in humans (Table 4) under conditions in which they produce the cellular effect that underlies their carcinogenicity in rodents, i.e., hormonal perturbation and immunosuppression. Thus, epigenetic carcinogens in animal models do not necessarily represent human cancer hazards except under specific exposure conditions (191).

Epigenetic carcinogens are extremely diverse in their structures, with varied modes of action (Table 3). Some require bioactivation, for example the chloracetanilide herbicides are bioactivated to cytotoxic products, but many elicit their critical cellular effect in their parent form and are metabolically detoxified.

3.3. Inorganics

Inorganic carcinogens include fibers, such as asbestos, and metals and their salts, including arsenic, chromium, and nickel (Table 3). The mode of action of these is not well defined. For the metals, it has been suggested that inhibition of DNA repair processes (199,200), in the case of arsenic leading to cocarcinogenesis (201), or disruption of normal oxidation/reduction balance affecting signaling molecules (202), are involved in their carcinogenicity. Such mechanisms would require substantial exposure to effect carcinogenicity and these proposed mechanisms have not been demonstrated with exposures comparable to implicated environmental exposures.

4. CARCINOGEN BIOTRANSFORMATION AND CELLULAR EFFECTS

4.1. Bioactivation and Reactivity

Many DNA-reactive carcinogens require bioactivation to form reactive electrophiles, the ultimate carcinogen, and hence are activation-dependent (Table 3). In target cells, bioconversion generally takes place in the cytoplasmic smooth endoplasmic reticulum catalyzed by the cytochrome P450 (CYP) oxidases. Initial oxidation reactions, referred to as Phase I
bioconversion, function to convert xenobiotics to more water soluble forms which are either excretable directly or may be conjugated in Phase II reactions to excretable products (Fig. 2). Epoxide hydrolase, another Phase I microsomal enzyme, adds functional groups (hydroxyl) to substrates (cyclic ethers) which are often chemically quite reactive but otherwise unsuited for conjugation reactions, apart from reaction with glutathione. Subsequent to oxidation or at already available suitable molecular sites, bioconversion is further carried out by Phase II conjugation reactions, catalyzed principally by cytosolic enzymes glutathione S-transferases (GST), glucuronyl transferases (GT), sulfotransferases (ST), and N-acetyltransferases (NAT). Other conjugates are potentially formed which are often species specific. The Phase I and II enzyme systems exhibit polymorphisms, as discussed below.

The main role of the biotransformation systems is in excretion of endogenous substrates such as steroid hormones. In the biotransformation of xenobiotics, most products are less toxic than the parent compound and are readily excreted, mainly in urine or bile. However, oxidation of DNA-reactive carcinogens occurs at molecular sites that lead to formation of an electrophile, an ultimate carcinogenic species. Thus, although both Phase I and Phase II reactions generally lead to detoxification, some chemicals such as PAHs (Phase I) or dibromoethane, tamoxifen and many carcinogenic aromatic amines are activated by Phase I and Phase II bioconversion leading to reactive species. Hence, most Phase I and II enzymes can either activate or detoxify depending upon the substrate.

Besides tissue biotransformation capabilities, the gastrointestinal tract contains organisms capable of a wide variety of chemical biotransformations (203,204). A classical example is the activation by bacteria of cycasin,

![Figure 2](image)

**Figure 2** Relationship between drug metabolism and DNA adduct formation.
the β-glycoside of methylazoxymethanol, which occurs in the cycad nut. Cycasin is only carcinogenic when hydrolyzed to the aglycone by bacterial gut flora. More recent studies have shown that bacterial gut flora are involved in the specific activation of several nitroarenes and more generally by causing enterohepatic circulation of conjugates excreted in the bile. In addition to their role in the overall biotransformation of potential carcinogens, bacteria also produce mutagens such as the fecapentaenes, which may act as promoters (205).

The CYPs, which are involved in Phase I biotransformation, are a super family currently subdivided into 76 different families in animals with genes coding for more than 1000 enzymes with broad versatility in oxidative, peroxidative, and reductive activities for both endogenous and exogenous substrates (206) and are inducible by a variety of xenobiotics (207). The CYPs that are most important in carcinoan activation are 1A1 (PAH), 1A2 (arylamines), 1B1 (arylamines, PAH), 2A6 (aflatoxin, nitrosamines), and 2E1 (benzene, nitrosamines, vinyl chloride). CYPs involved in hormone metabolism include 1A2, 4, 5, and 17. Another Phase I enzyme, epoxide hydrolase catalyzes the inactivation of chemically reactive epoxides to dihydrodiols, but dihydrodiol products are intermediates in the activation of many carcinogenic PAH to bay region diol epoxides.

The Phase II GSTs are a supergene family with several classes including five cytosolic classes, GSTA, GSTK, GSTM, GSTP, and GSTT and one microsomal class, MGST (208,209). Each GST enzyme has substrate specificity for conjugation with glutathione, although considerable overlaps exist.

NATs are the products of two active genes NAT1 and NAT2 (210). They acetylate xenobiotics at accessible nitrogen and oxygen sites. In the case of aromatic amines, acetylation results in either detoxification or activation (211); certain aromatic amines are acetylated by NAT2 in the liver to less reactive forms (211), while alternatively they can be N-hydroxylated by CYP1A2 and reach the bladder where they undergo O-acetylation by NAT1 resulting in the formation of highly reactive metabolites (212).

Likewise, GTs are a family of enzymes (213). An important GT substrate which undergoes glucuronidation and urinary excretion is the metabolite 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanal (NNAL) of the tobacco specific nitrosamine 4-(methylamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNN) (214). GTs, but not NATs, are inducible by xenobiotics. Genes for these, and other enzymes, exhibit polymorphisms (215,216), often due to single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs). The polymorphic enzymes exhibit different catalytic activities which influence the disposition of carcinogens.

The liver has the greatest capacity for biotransformation, reflecting its situation as the first pass organ for absorbed chemicals from the gastrointestinal tract. Other organs, notably the intestinal tract, lung, and kidney express in lesser levels the Phase I and Phase II enzymes. The content and composition of biotransformation enzymes within an organ is a major
determinant of susceptibility to chemical carcinogens (217). However, the variability of phenotypic expression of biotransformation enzymes in tissues is high (218), possibly due in part to hormonal or xenobiotic influences on activity levels (219).

Biotransformation processes are generally qualitatively similar between animal species and humans (206), although quantitative differences, sometimes major, exist. For example, the selective estrogen receptor modulator, tamoxifen, is readily bioactivated in rat liver by hydroxylation and sulfate conjugation leading to DNA reactivity (220,221) and is a potent hepatocarcinogen (222), whereas in mice and humans these reactions appear to take place only to a limited extent (220). Consequently, significant carcinogenicity has been observed in humans only in the endometrium (223) and it is unresolved whether this involves DNA reactivity, since the evidence for adduct formation is contradictory (224–226). Also, species may differ in the organ expression of Phase I and II enzymes; for example, CYP1A1 which is involved in biotransformation of PAH is highly expressed in rodent liver, whereas in humans the lung is the principal organ of expression, which appears to be a determinant for the risk of lung cancer from cigarette smoking.

Humans and some animals exhibit variations in genes encoding biotransformation enzymes that influence toxicity and carcinogenicity (227–231). Most of these allelic variations are due to single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) which affect the catalytic activity of the encoded protein. Among the Phase I reactions, CYP1A1 SNP has been linked to lung cancer risk in cigarette smokers (232). In a population exposed to PAH environmentally and through cigarette smoking, PAH adducts in lung tissue were greater in individuals with a combined CYP1A1 polymorphism and GST M1 (null) phenotype (233). CYP1B1 polymorphisms, which are numerous (234), include an SNP which is a susceptibility factor for head and neck cancers in cigarette smokers (235). Among male Japanese cigarette smokers, the normal genotype of CYP2A6 gene was associated with greater risk for lung cancer than a polymorphism which results in a lack of CYP2A6 activity (236). A polymorphism in CYP2E1, which catalyzes the activation of many nitrosamines (237), has been associated with increased risk of rectal cancer (238).

Polymorphisms in the CYPs involved in steroid metabolism have been linked to cancer risk in hormone-dependent tissues. CYP1B1 polymorphisms result in differences in estrogen hydroxylation which may relate to individual susceptibility to breast cancer (239). Also a polymorphism in CYP17 (A2/A2 genotype), which encodes the enzyme responsible for testosterone biosynthesis, has been associated with elevated risk of prostate cancer in white men with a family history of cancer (240).

A polymorphism in EPHX1 that encodes microsomal epoxide hydrolase has been associated with increased risk of oral, pharynx, and larynx cancers (241), although this has not been confirmed (242). A mutant allele ALDH2*2, prevalent in East Asians, which results in a loss of aldehyde
dehydrogenase activity and accumulation of acetaldehyde in alcoholic patients, has been associated with increases in esophageal and oropharyngo-laryngeal squamous cell carcinomas (243).

The most widely expressed polymorphism is in the Phase II NAT conjugating enzymes, rendering individuals either rapid or slow acetylators (244). There are over 25 alleles for the NAT2 gene, of which NAT2*4 is associated with the rapid acetylator phenotype (245). Slow acetylation is due to lack of expression of the NAT2 gene or an SNP (246). With reduced or absent NAT2 activity, acetylation is carried out by NAT1, resulting in slow acetylation. Slow acetylation activity has been associated with elevated risk for bladder cancer in workers exposed to aromatic amines in some studies but the results are inconsistent (247,248). Also, slow acetylation status increases the risk of bladder cancer risk in cigarette smokers (249). Slow acetylation status has been associated with risk of sporadic colorectal cancer (250), risk of breast cancer in postmenopausal women who are cigarette smokers (251). Likewise, GSTs display polymorphisms (209); about half of Caucasians are homozygous for deletion of GSTM1 and lack any functional enzyme. A positive association has been identified between the null phenotype of GSTM1 and cancers of the lung (252), bladder (229,253), and breast (254). The null phenotype is also associated with a high rate of TP53 transversion mutations in lung and bladder cancer.

The association of these various polymorphisms in biotransformation enzymes with cancer risks clearly implicates an important role for their substrates in cancer etiology.

4.2. Types of Interactions with DNA

Intrinsically reactive or bioactivated carcinogens that form electrophiles (Fig. 3) react with all cellular nucleophiles and, since protein is the most abundant nucleophile and has very reactive sites, most adducts are formed on proteins. In addition, adducts are also formed at nucleophilic sites on DNA, most often guanine residues (Fig. 3), although the other bases and the phosphotriester backbone (255) are normally also modified. Modification of the guanine N7 position results in a protonated imidazole ring which is unstable and can easily result in depurination or opening of the imidazole ring to give relatively stable adducts as happens, for example with aflatoxin B1 (256). This unifying concept of DNA adduct formation for initiating carcinogens was proposed by James and Elizabeth Miller (187). In another type of interaction planar chemicals can intercalate between bases without DNA binding (257).

DNA is also continuously modified by endogenous processes (258), including methylation of cytosine at position 5 by DNMT (16). The base–sugar bonds in DNA are susceptible to hydrolysis resulting in loss of bases at a rate of about $10^4$ per cell per day creating apurinic/apyrimidinic sites
Deamination of 5-methylcytosine to thymine (Fig. 4) is a frequent reaction while deamination of cytosine to uracil is less frequent. Nitric oxide can deaminate 5-methylcytosine to produce thymine (260), which represents a greater challenge for DNA repair pathways (261). Keto-enol tautomerism may be responsible for some G→A point mutations (262).

Oxygen metabolism generates reactive oxygen species such as hydroxyl radicals and singlet oxygen that produce oxidation of dGTP and bases in DNA (263). The oxidation of deoxyguanine residues in DNA to 7,8-dihydro-8-oxodeoxyguanine (8-oxodG) (Fig. 5) has been reported to occur in

(Fig. 4) (259). Deamination of 5-methylcytosine to thymine (Fig. 4) is a frequent reaction while deamination of cytosine to uracil is less frequent. Nitric oxide can deaminate 5-methylcytosine to produce thymine (260), which represents a greater challenge for DNA repair pathways (261). Keto/enol tautomerism may be responsible for some G→A point mutations (262). Oxygen metabolism generates reactive oxygen species such as hydroxyl radicals and singlet oxygen that produce oxidation of dGTP and bases in DNA (263). The oxidation of deoxyguanine residues in DNA to 7,8-dihydro-8-oxodeoxyguanine (8-oxodG) (Fig. 5) has been reported to occur in

### Nucleophilic sites

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Site</th>
<th>% total alkylation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenine</td>
<td>N-1</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N-3</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N-7</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guanine</td>
<td>N-3</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O²</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N-7</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytosine</td>
<td>O¹</td>
<td>~0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N-3</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymine</td>
<td>O²</td>
<td>~0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N-3</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O⁴</td>
<td>~0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate</td>
<td>Triester</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 3** Structure of electrophiles and the nucleophilic sites in DNA with which they react. Electrophiles are the generalized structures of common electrophilic species which react with DNA. These electrophiles react with nucleophilic sites in DNA. Guanine residues are the most common target and the most frequently modified sites are indicated with arrows. Sometimes more than one site may be involved or the initial DNA adduct may undergo rearrangements (Fig. 6). *Source:* Data from Ref. 471.
up to 1 in $10^3$ residues (264), although there is considerable uncertainty about precise levels due to artifacts in DNA preparation. A variety of other oxidized bases have also been found (198). Peroxidation of unsaturated fatty acids leads to formation of $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated aldehydes which produce cyclic

Figure 4  DNA deductions and rearrangements. Deamination and depurination are significant events. The role of keto/enol tautomerism in guanine and thymine residues is less clear. Photochemical damage to DNA can result from effects such as rearrangements of thymine residues to form dimers, photochemical oxidations in the presence of endogenous (riboflavin) or exogenous (fluoroquinolones) to form a variety of modification including 8-oxo-2'-deoxyguanosine (Fig. 5).
adducts with a propano ring moiety in DNA (Fig. 5) (196,265). These are all premutagenic lesions as detailed below. Additionally, cytosine is methylated by DNMT using $\text{S}$-adenosylmethionine as the methyl donor (16). Methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR) plays a central role in converting folate to methyl donors and polymorphisms in $MTHFR$ reduce DNA

**Figure 5** Examples of structure of DNA adducts. DNA adducts found in vivo range from the addition of small molecules such as oxygen (top) to bulky adducts such as those derived from the reaction with $(7R,8S)$-dihydroxy-$(9R,10R)$-epoxy-7,8,9,10-tetrahydrobenzo[a]pyrene (BPDE) (bottom).
methylation (266). Chemicals, such as 5-azacytidine, can modify methylation patterns (266, 267).

Using the sensitive $^{32}$P-postlabeling assay for DNA adducts, nonpolar adducts of two types, referred to as I-compounds for indigenous compounds, have been found in tissues of rodents not exposed to exogenous carcinogens (268–270). In these animals, Type I I-compounds are affected by age, gender, diet, hormone, and chemicals. Type II compounds are oxidative adducts.

Two main types of interactions of chemical carcinogens with DNA have been recognized: noncovalent and covalent (271). Several types of noncovalent interaction occur. For example, bleomycin forms a complex with DNA and, together with chelated iron and oxygen, causes base loss. Planar molecules like actinomycin D intercalate between the base pairs of DNA, without covalent DNA binding (257). Covalent interactions of carcinogens with DNA may result from the intrinsic reactivity of a particular chemical with DNA. This occurs with antineoplastic alkylating agents which are designed for this property, or with reactive industrial chemicals. Such carcinogens have been designated as ultimate carcinogens or activation-independent DNA-reactive carcinogens (Table 3). Other compounds, of both natural and synthetic origins, which lack this intrinsic reactivity, need metabolic activation by one or more Phase I enzymes, as discussed above, to form DNA-reactive products. Such carcinogens are known as precarcinogens or activation-dependent DNA-reactive carcinogens (Table 3).

4.2.1. Chemistry and Conformation of DNA Adducts

Once the ultimate reactive carcinogens are formed, there are numerous factors that can influence their reactivity with DNA, including the reaction mechanism ($S_{N1}$ or $S_{N2}$), the hardness of the nucleophilic center in the nucleoside or nucleotide (oxygen generally being hard and poorly reactive in contrast to nitrogen which is intermediate and sulfur, which is soft and reactive) and the presence of adjacent groups which can influence the reactivity of a compound either electronically or sterically. Most alkylating reagents modify the purine (guanine and adenine) ring nitrogens, especially at the N-7 position, and both purine and pyrimidine (thymine and cytosine) oxygens. Alkylation can also occur on the phosphate backbone of DNA (255), but the biological significance of this is uncertain. Their repair has been better studied in *E. coli* than mammalian systems. Arylhydroxylamines, formed by reduction of nitroarenes or oxidation of arylamines, react at the C-8 and N-7 position of purines, possibly by rearrangement of transient N-7 adducts (Fig. 6). PAH diol epoxides react mainly with the exocyclic amino groups (Fig. 5). DNA is chiral and therefore any reactive carcinogen containing one or more chiral centers may show preferential isomeric reactivity.

The biotransformation enzymes described above, while often having broad substrate specificity, can show remarkable specificity in the chirality
of products formed; for example, in biotransformation of B[a]P, the dihydriodols are always trans, whereas one of the four possible isomers of B[a]P diolepoxide (BPDE), the \( R,S \)-dihydrodiol \( S,R \)-epoxide, is formed predominately and also reacts with DNA preferentially (272). No proteins have been described which specifically assist in the binding of the ultimate carcinogens to DNA, although the structure of chromatin is important (273) and numerous enzyme systems are involved in repair of such damage (see below). Consequently, shortly after exposure to DNA-reactive carcinogens, patterns of DNA adducts formed in vivo and in vitro are generally similar.

The reactivity of PAH diol epoxides with DNA, compared to hydrolysis by water to tetraols, varies considerably. For example, binding of BPDE in contrast to the sterically hindered fjord diol epoxide of benzo[c]phenanthrene, ranges from about 10\% to 75\% of the diol epoxide added, respectively. The binding pattern of adducts also changes from only minor quantities of adenine adducts formed from BPDE compared to large amounts for benzo[c]phenanthrene. Not surprisingly, for a given PAH, the various isomeric diol epoxides differ markedly in their DNA binding and ratios of guanine and adenine adducts. Examples of the various types of interaction with DNA are illustrated in Fig. 5.

In addition to the chemical structure of DNA adducts, their conformation is important in determining their potential to escape repair and induce mutations during replication. Studies of two examples, DNA adducts formed from the reaction of BPDE or \( N \)-acetoxy-2-acetylaminofluorene (274), show quite different conformations. The former causes little disruption of the DNA helix as the pyrene moiety lies in the minor groove of the DNA helix, while the latter displaces the normal base to become intercalated into and opens the DNA helix. Some PAH diolepoxide adducts that bind to adenine residues also intercalate into DNA (275,276). Alkylation at the N-7 guanines is initially in the major groove while N3 adenine adducts are in the minor groove. Cross-linking agents such as cisplatin cause major disruptions of the DNA helix by binding in the minor groove, displacing the opposite cytosines, causing bending and considerable unwinding of the helix (277).
There are few studies of the binding of carcinogens to specific genes. Among these, B[a]P has been shown to bind preferentially to mutational hotspots in TP53 (278).

Measurement of DNA adducts is an important tool in biomonitoring or molecular epidemiology of exposure to DNA-reactive carcinogens (279–283) to provide information on the summation of the effects of exposure, absorption, bioactivation of the genotoxin to the final DNA adduct, and rate of repair (279). Tobacco smokers have been the primary source of DNA since their exposure to known carcinogens is much higher than any other population. Industrial exposures and the effects of food contaminants, such as aflatoxin B1, have also been monitored. These measurements have been used primarily to monitor cohort exposure, but, as improvement takes place in the ability to measure adduct levels more accurately and understand their significance, information on individual risk should be possible. Since DNA adduct levels are extremely low, highly sensitive techniques are needed. These include primarily immunological approaches such as the ELISA assay (280), or radiochemical techniques, particularly 32P-postlabeling (284). Other techniques such as fluorescence or electrochemical analysis may be used depending upon the type of adduct being detected. The level of adduct formation resulting from exogenous exposures is of the order of one adduct per $10^7$–$10^9$ normal DNA bases (285). Protein adduct detection is a valuable surrogate for DNA adduct formation since many carcinogens form adducts with both hemoglobin and serum albumin, which are readily accessible (286).

The presence of DNA adducts in both animal and human tissues has been applied to risk assessment of specific chemicals. Quantification of adducts in animals exposed to a specific, often single, dose of the $^{14}$C-labeled chemical carcinogen, has been used to establish a chemical binding index (CBI) for the ratio of adducts formed per mole of DNA per kg body weight for the particular compound administered (287,288). In a few exceptional circumstances, it may be possible to extend these studies to humans (289). These values range over many orders of magnitude, but if above unity, i.e., significant levels of DNA adduct formation, the compounds are generally known to be DNA-reactive carcinogens.

Determination of adduct profiles after short-term administration may be misleading since many chemical carcinogens produce multiple DNA adducts which may show marked differences in repair rates. For example, N-7 and O6-alkyl guanine lesions are better repaired than O4-alkyl thymine (290) and C-8 adducts of $N^2$-acetylaminofluorene (AAF) are better repaired than N-7 adducts (291,292). Hence, with continued administration of carcinogen, the pattern of adducts can change as more slowly repaired ones accumulate.

It is important to keep in mind that formation of DNA adducts may not be sufficient to induce tumors. One line of evidence for this is the fact that DNA adducts are often formed in nontarget tissues for carcinogens.
4.2.2. Isolation and Structure Determination of DNA Adducts

Major challenges still exist in the structural elucidation of many adducts of DNA-reactive carcinogens formed in vivo. Their presence is often known, but, since the levels of modification of DNA are typically less than one adduct in $10^6$ normal nucleotides and often three or four orders of magnitude less, the quantities of these adducts that can be isolated are, consequently, extremely small. In general, clues as to possible structures of an adduct have been inferred from the structure of the chemical producing the adduct, its metabolism, and the possible structure of the ultimate carcinogenic metabolite. The latter can then be prepared synthetically or biosynthetically, at least in a transient state, and reacted directly with DNA or homopolymers in vitro. Digestion of the DNA to the modified nucleotides will often provide sufficient material for comparison with adducts formed in vivo and subsequent structural elucidation. Only a few adducts have been prepared by direct chemical synthesis. Structure identification is normally by nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) and mass spectrometry (MS) analysis. However, if isolated at the deoxyribonucleotide level, adducts with chiral centers will frequently separate as diastereomeric pairs with often approximately mirror image circular dichroism spectra. Such pairing of spectra simplifies the identification of multiple adducts, and can provide information on their absolute stereochemistry.

Formation of some DNA adducts results in unstable products; for example, aflatoxin forms several DNA adducts including those at N-7 position of guanine residues (256). This charged product is released from DNA either by depurination to yield 2,3-dihydro-2-(N-7-guanyl)-3-hydroxyaflatoxin B$_1$ which can be found in the urine of exposed animals or, by opening of the imidazole ring of the guanine, forms chemically stable adducts. Anthramycin reacts with DNA to produce adducts which are unstable during DNA digestion but whose structure can be determined in oligonucleotides (293).

As an approach to the identification of unknown DNA adducts, we, in collaboration with Dr. Esmans’s group at the University of Antwerp, have used nanoliter HPLC coupled to ms/ms following the loss of the deoxyribose moiety to identify “unknown” DNA adducts. Digests of DNA isolated from the liver of rats treated with AAF and having adduct levels of about 3 in $10^7$ were initially separated on OASIS HLB columns. Both acetylated and deacetylated adducts were detected as the specific adducts present when scanning for the constant neutral loss (CNL) of 116 M/e (unpublished results). Once identified by the CNL spectra, much stronger spectra could be obtained by scanning for these specific ions and, in conjunction with high resolution mass analysis, provides valuable initial clues as to adduct structure when reference materials are not available.
The most structural information regarding the conformation of DNA adducts comes from NMR data involving nuclear Overhauser effect spectroscopy (NOESY) and correlation spectroscopy (COSY) analysis, which have provided very detailed three-dimensional information regarding the solution conformation of the DNA adducts. Such analyses complement and provide proof for molecular modeling studies (294). It is, however, often difficult to prepare sufficient material for this type of analysis and the sequences of oligonucleotides into which the adduct can be incorporated may also be limited if the reactive ultimate carcinogen is used to modify the oligonucleotides.

4.3. DNA Damage Responses and Repair

Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells possess a variety of enzymes capable of repairing DNA alterations in order to maintain its integrity (295,296). In resting mammalian cells, these operate with high efficiency and fidelity thereby restoring damaged DNA to its original molecular state. However, in cycling cells, complete repair may not be achieved in DNA that is being replicated and consequently, misincorporation can occur opposite unrepaired sites. Also, DNA damage and evoked repair processes may lead to apoptosis.

In addition to the proteins directly involved in DNA repair, the repair process is assisted by other DNA damage-responsive proteins including some encoded by tumor suppressor genes (297) (Table 1b). Of particular importance is p53, which, with DNA damage, is phosphorylated by DNA-dependent protein kinases (DNA-PK) leading to decreased interaction with dm2 protein, which targets p53 for proteolytic degradation (298,299). The resulting stabilization of p53 leads to increased activation of target genes including \( CDKN1A \), \( GADD45 \) (growth arrest and DNA damage 45) and \( HDM2 \). P21\(^{WAF1/CIP1} \) inhibits activation of cyclin E/cdk 2 complexes thereby preventing phosphorylation of pRB and blocking progression from G\(_1\) to S phase (300). Gadd45 protein interacts with the replication factor, proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA) to arrest DNA synthesis (301). Dm2 protein maintains p53 under negative control, which is subject to an autoregulatory feedback loop (298). Thus, with increased functional p53, cell cycle progression is arrested, allowing a greater opportunity for DNA repair. Likewise, ATM, a pleiotropic kinase, is activated by double-strand DNA breaks and activates several factors that arrest cell cycling (302). The enzyme poly (ADP-ribosyl) polymerase (PARP), which catalyzes post-translational modification of proteins, also is activated by DNA strand breaks and appears to be involved in DNA repair by interacting with effectors of repair (303). PARP occupies DNA break sites to prevent recombination between homologous ends of DNA (304). The double-stranded RNA-activated protein kinase (RPK), which is a component of the cellular reaction to stress (21), has been shown to function in
regulation of DNA damage response, possibly by modulation of DNA repair processes (305).

The DNA repair capacity of eukaryotic cells is maintained by six main eukaryotic repair processes as follows: (a) nucleotide excision repair (NER) in which a region of DNA including the damaged nucleotide is removed; (b) base excision repair (BER) in which the damaged base and a few adjacent bases are removed by DNA glycosylases such as the alkylpurine-DNA-\(N\)-glycosylase (APNG); (c) alkylguanine-DNA alkyl transferase (AGAT) repair in which alkylation products on the \(O^6\) position of guanine are removed by a repair protein without excision of the base; (d) mismatch repair (MMR) in which an incorrect base misincorporated during DNA replication is edited by an exonuclease; (e) postreplication repair in which gaps in newly replicated DNA created by polymerase bypass are closed; and (f) nonhomologous end-joining (NHEJ) of double-strand breaks or homologous recombination repair (HRR) of double-strand breaks. These processes are mediated by numerous proteins.

The first step in repair is lesion recognition. In NER, the xeroderma pigmentosum group C (XPC) protein complex 3 is the initiator (306). For some types of lesions, p53 is involved (307). Lesion recognition is followed by removal of the damaged DNA, which in NER involves about 20 proteins, including the excision repair cross-complementation (ERCC) group proteins (308). In NER, in which lesion-containing segments of approximately 30 nucleotides in length are removed, there are two subpathways, global genome repair (GNER) which occurs over the entire genome and transcription-coupled repair (TCNER) which is directed preferentially to the template strand of actively transcribed DNA and thereby serves to prevent interruption of RNA transcription. Following removal of bases or nucleotides, polymerases (most likely pol-\(\delta\) and \(\varepsilon\) in the case of NER and \(\beta\) in the case of BER, although polymerases can participate) positioned by the replication factor PCNA gap fill the eliminated bases or nucleotides and finally, ligases rejoin the strands, restoring the DNA to its original structure, if no mutations have been introduced.

Nucleotide excision repair is elicited by a variety of DNA lesions, notably bulky adducts from arylating agents (309) and photoproducts (310). BER and AGAT processes are elicited by smaller alkylating agents (311), with NER serving as backup. Oxidative DNA damage is repaired by a BER glycosylase encoded by the \textit{OGG1} (8-oxoguanine glycosylase 1) gene (312) and possibly NER (313). BER also repairs strand breaks through the protein XRCC1 (x-ray repair cross-complementing group 1) (314). If repair processes are complete before the cell replicates, its DNA, the DNA damage will not have a biological consequence, unless it is sufficient to affect gene transcription or cell viability (i.e., trigger apoptosis). When unrepaired DNA serves as the template for synthesis of new DNA, mutations can occur, as detailed below.
Some adducts are repaired better than others, as noted above. For example, N-7 and O⁶-alkylation of guanine are better repaired than O⁴-alkyl thymine, which is therefore more persistent (290). The basis for the efficient repair of O⁶-alkylation is that it is a substrate for the AGAT repair process. The dealkylation by AGAT is stoichiometric and the repair molecule is inactivated by transferring the alkyl group to one of its cysteine residues (315). AGAT is also inactivated by reaction with nitric oxide (316).

The types and amounts of DNA damage can also initiate toxicity or apoptosis. DNA alkylation can elicit MMR leading to apoptosis (317) through the reduction of the antiapoptotic protein Bcl-2 (318) or inhibition of transcription by the MLH1 MMR protein (319). Also, if DNA damage is so extensive that repair fails, damaged cells are eliminated by apoptosis (320), involving both p53-dependent and -independent pathways. Among the latter, poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase activity depletes cellular energy pools leading to cell death (321).

The factors that regulate the many DNA repair genes are poorly understood. Some, such as AGAT, may be regulated by methylation of promoter regions (322). Transcripts of repair genes such as those for MMR are at the highest level during maximal DNA synthesis (323), which would, of course, serve to make available high levels of repair enzymes to protect the integrity of DNA in a critical state. Some DNA repair genes can be upregulated (324). The MAPK signaling pathway plays a role in upregulation of some genes through phosphorylation of transcription factors including members of the activator protein (AP) and specificity protein (SP) families, which have regulatory elements within the enhancer region of promoter sequences of many DNA repair genes (325).

DNA repair capacity varies between tissues and species, with human cells being generally the most proficient and about sixfold greater than rodent cells (326,327). As a specific example, adducts of 2-aminofluorene and AAF introduced into phage are largely repaired within 4 hr when the phage are transfected into human cells (328). In contrast, in the rat liver, some AAF adducts persist for weeks after exposure (292).

Despite the general proficiency of DNA repair in humans, variations in repair capacity exist among individuals, for example in AGAT (329). One basis for such variation is genetic polymorphisms in the DNA repair genes, several of which have been identified. These include an SNP in the polymerase β gene which has been identified in bladder cancer cells (330). Allelic variations in the XRCCI gene (331), whose gene product is involved in BER, have been associated with reduced DNA repair capacity (332), and higher risks of skin (333) and bladder (334) cancers. An SNP in the XRCC3 gene, which codes for homologous double-stranded repair, is associated with increased melanoma risk (335). An SNP in OGG-1, resulting in reduced repair of oxidative DNA damage, is associated with a two-fold increase in risk of lung cancer (336). Lastly, an SNP in the promoter region of the
DNMT gene is associated with increased risk of lung cancer, possibly related to reduced DNA repair (337).

A variety of DNA repair deficient conditions arise from germ line mutations, including the hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC) condition in which one of five mismatch repair genes *MLH1*, *PMS1*, *PMS2*, *MSH2*, and *MSH6* is mutated (338,339), xeroderma pigmentosum in which *XP* genes are mutated and NER is impaired (340) and ataxia telangiectasia in which the *ATM* gene is mutated resulting in deficient double-strand break recognition (341) and familial breast/ovarian cancer in which mutations are present, the *BRCA1* and *BRAC2* tumor suppressor genes whose encoded proteins are involved in postreplicational homologous recombination DNA repair (342).

As noted above, neoplastic cells display abnormalities in repair systems, including mismatch repair (33), AGAT (33), BRCA1 function in double-strand break repair (343), and DNA polymerase β (49). Recently, the *HR6B* (human homolog of yeast *Rad6*) DNA repair gene, which encodes ubiquitin-conjugating enzymes (E2), has been reported to be overexpressed in breast cancers, leading to genetic instability (344).

4.4. Mutations

At the molecular level, a mutation is a permanent change in the linear structure of DNA. Carcinogens can mutate critical genes either by producing DNA alteration such as point mutations, frameshifts, deletions and translocations or structural or numerical (aneuploidy) chromosomal alterations. DNA alterations occur only when damaged DNA is used as the template for DNA synthesis or when DNA polymerases introduce errors not corrected by mismatch repair. In either case, the proliferative status of the cell is critical.

As an example of point mutations, the non-Watson–Crick base pairing due to *O*\(^6\)-alkylation of guanine residues, a highly promutagenic lesion, is shown in Fig. 7. This mispairing with T (345) leads to the G→A transitions of one purine for another, which is found in genes mutated by many alkylating agents. The oxidation product 8-oxodG leads to G→T transversions in which a pyrimidine replaces the purine. Unrepaired apurinic sites lead to A→T and G→T base substitutions, while deamination of C to U can yield C→T mutations. A major form of DNA modification in mammalian cells is methylation of the C5 of cytosines in CpG dinucleotides (346). 5MeC can undergo spontaneous deamination to thymine resulting in 5MeC→T mutations (Fig. 4). A high frequency of mutations in the *TP53* gene in tumors occurs at presumably methylated CpG sites (88).

Point mutations are generally missense mutations that result in amino acid substitutions in the encoded proteins. Owing to the redundancy of the gene code, they may be silent or change to stop signals.
Individual adducts have different mutagenic potential. For example, the acetylated C-8 guanine adduct of AAF, dG-AAF, leads primarily to misincorporation of dTMP whereas the deacetylated adduct, dG-AF, mispairs with dAMP, dTMP, and dCMP approximately equally (347).

The critical mutations for cancer occur in growth control genes, proto-oncogenes, tumor suppressor genes, or genes regulating tumor suppressor genes, leading to dysregulation of these genes. The mutated growth control genes identified in the most common human cancers are given in Table 1, together with the type of mutation.

In oncogenes, specific point mutations lead to activation. For example, in the \textit{RAS} gene family, activating mutations occur at codons 12, 13, and 61 (348) and rarely in codons 22 (349) and 59 (350).

In tumor suppressor genes or their regulatory genes, mutations are usually deletions (LOH) or point mutations leading to functional loss of the gene product. As noted, promoter methylation also leads to silencing.

Signature mutations for specific carcinogens are uncommon. In liver cancers that arise in geographic regions where mycotoxin contamination of foods is prevalent, mutations in \textit{TP53} are mainly G→T transversion in the third base of codon 249 (87). Also, in nonsmall cell lung cancer, frequent \textit{TP53} mutations occur in codons 157, 158, 245, 248, and 273 at methylated CpG sites which preferentially bind PAHs (351). Interestingly, the pattern of mutations in \textit{TP53} in human bladder cancer were mostly G→A transitions in codons 175, 248, and 273 (352). In contrast, the proximate form of a rodent bladder carcinogen, 4-aminobiphenyl, produced predominantly mostly G→T transversion at five preferential adduction sites, raising the question as to the involvement of aromatic amines in human carcinogenesis (353). Measurement of mutated alleles in nontumorous tissue, like measurement

\textbf{Figure 7} DNA base pairing. Normal Watson–Crick G:C base paring (left). Mis-pairing of thymine with an O₆-alkylguanine base in DNA resulting from misincorporation during DNA synthesis (right). \textit{Source}: From Ref. 472.
of adducts, can suggest linkage of exposure to a carcinogen with cancer known to arise at the site (354).

Although some specific carcinogen-associated mutations have been identified, the cells of neoplasms harbor $10^4$–$10^6$ mutations from various sources, as noted above, and thus many remain to be characterized.

4.5. Spectrum of Chemicals with Carcinogenic Activity

A number of chemicals were found to cause cancer in humans before they were tested for carcinogenicity in animals, for example, bis(chloromethyl) ether, 2-naphthylamine, and vinyl chloride. The demonstration of the carcinogenic activity of chemicals in animals (2) began with the report in 1916 by Yamagiwa and Ichikawa of induction of skin cancer in rabbits by coal tar. Subsequent salient advances included induction of liver cancer in rats by o-aminooazotoluene described by Yoshida in 1934 and the induction of urinary bladder tumors in dogs by 2-naphthylamine reported by Hueper and coworkers in 1938. Hundreds of chemicals have now been identified to produce increases in neoplasia in rodent tests (9,183,184). A brief listing of some examples, including both naturally occurring, i.e., mycotoxins, as well as synthetic chemicals, notably industrial chemicals and pharmaceuticals, is provided in Table 4.

Relatively few of the many rodent carcinogens for which there is human exposure have been implicated in human cancer (Table 4). This may reflect lack of robust epidemiological data, but where good data are available, explanations lie in the fact that humans are not susceptible to some of the mechanisms operating in rodents or the exposures of humans are orders of magnitude less than in animal experiments. In particular, no food additive that elicits tumors in rodents, e.g., saccharin, has been associated with cancer in humans and likewise, no rodent carcinogenic organic pesticide, e.g., DDT, or other organochlorine compound, e.g., polychlorinated biphenyls, with the possible exception of TCDD (Table 4), has been found to cause human cancer (13). As noted, most identified human carcinogens are of the DNA-reactive type.

4.5.1. Industrial Chemicals

The first association of human cancer with a chemical exposure was the classic observation by Pott in 1775 of scrotal skin cancer in chimney sweeps, which is now known to be due to DNA-reactive PAH in chimney soot. Soot and related coal-tars are recognized as human carcinogens (Table 4) and are carcinogenic in rodents, particularly when applied to mouse skin. Subsequently, several other industrial chemicals were found to cause cancer in humans, i.e., 4-aminobiphenyl, benzene, bis(chloromethyl) ether, 2-naphthylamine, and vinyl chloride. All of these are of the DNA-reactive type. 2,3,7,8-Tetrachlorodibenzop-p-dioxin (TCDD) has been concluded by IARC
to cause cancer in humans (355), based on mechanistic considerations, although the data in humans were judged to be limited. In rodents, TCDD appears to act as an epigenetic agent (74). Similarly, polychlorinated biphenyls are rodent liver promoters (356) and have not been conclusively associated with cancer risk to humans (357–359). Several minerals with occupational exposure, including chromium and nickel salts, have also been associated with increases in cancer. Numerous other industrial chemicals are known to produce cancer in animals, for example acrylamide, acrylonitrile, phthalates, but have not been established to cause cancer even in the most highly exposed worker populations. Likewise, a number of pesticides that are carcinogenic in rodents have been suggested to be associated with increased cancer, for example 2,4-dichlorophenoxy acetic acid and soft-tissue sacromas (360,361), but the evidence is not conclusive (362,363). Studies of agricultural workers do reveal increases in rates of several cancers such as non-Hodgkins lymphoma (364,365).

4.5.2. Natural Substances

Endogenous hormones, such as estradiol and its catechol metabolites and thyroid stimulating hormone, are carcinogenic in animal models when administered at super physiologic doses or when persistently elevated by physiologic perturbations. Considerable evidence exists that the cumulative exposure to estrogen increases risk of breast cancer (366) and the catechol metabolites of estrogens also have been implicated, possibly as indirectly genotoxic (367). A class of mutagen and potential carcinogen formed in the body is the fecapentaenes, which are conjugated ether lipids produced by intestinal bacteria (368). Their role in human cancer remains unresolved.

Several substances found in nature have been associated with cancer in humans. The most important occur as lifestyle exposures. Tobacco, in various forms of voluntary use results in exposure to tobacco-specific nitrosamines, and PAH, both of which are DNA reactive (369). Also, alcohol, which as noted above, can act as a cocarcinogen, under conditions of excessive use leads to liver injury and cancer in humans, as well as increases in cancers of the oral cavity, pharynx, larynx, and esophagus (161). In addition, the human diet contains a number of carcinogens and anticarcinogens (370).

A variety of microbial and plant products are carcinogenic. The aflatoxins are products of the mold Aspergillus and contaminate certain crops such as peanuts and corn (371). Aflatoxin B1 is a potent hepatocarcinogen in rats and has been implicated as causing human liver cancer (371). Among the many plant products which are carcinogenic in animals, those that have produced toxicity in humans are the pyrrolizidine alkaloids and aristolochic acid. DNA adducts have been found in patients consuming herbs containing aristolochic acid (372).
High levels of inorganic arsenic in well water (i.e., $>50 \mu g/L$) in rural areas of Asia and South America have been associated with increased human cancer risks, notably skin cancer (373) and also lung, bladder, liver, and kidney (374). The mode of action of arsenic carcinogenesis is not understood, as discussed above, and no mechanistic data are available from individuals exposed to arsenic (375).

Carcinogens are also formed during processing of food. Urethane is formed during fermentation. The cooking of protein-containing food results in generation by pyrolysis of at least 14 distinct potent carcinogenic heterocyclic amines (376). Three of these, 2-amino-1-methyl-1H-6-phenyl-imidazo[4,5-b] pyridine (PhIP), 2-amino-3-methyl-3H-imidazo[4,5-f] quinoline (IQ), and 2-amino-3,4-dimethyl-3H-imidazo[4,5-f] quinoline (MeIQ) have been shown to induce mammary cancer in rodents. Colon cancer has been induced in rodents by IQ and MeIQ, as well as 2-amino-6-methyl-dipyrido[1,2-a:3',2'-d]imidazole (Glu-P-1). Recently, acrylamide has been found in fried starch-containing foods (377). Some of these are suspect human carcinogens, as discussed below.

4.5.3. Medicines

Iatrogenic cancer, mainly leukemia, was first observed with alkylating agents used to treat cancer. The carcinogenic chemotherapeutics include chlorambucil, cyclophosphamide, methyl-CCNU, myleran, MOPP, nitrogen mustards, and thiotepa (378), all of which are DNA reactive (Table 4). Other pharmaceuticals, which are DNA-reactive in rodents such as tamoxifen, induce cancer in treated patients (223). A few epigenetic carcinogens, mainly hormones and immunosuppressants (Table 4), have also been associated with increased cancer risk under conditions in which they produce the pharmacological effect that underlies their carcinogenicity in rodents. For example, use of combination oral contraceptives leads to increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma, but reduced risk for endometrial and ovarian cancer (379). Postmenopausal estrogen therapy conveys small increased risks for breast and endometrial cancers (379). Medical use of arsenic (Fowler’s solution) has been associated with bladder cancer (380). Otherwise, over 80 medicines known to increase tumors in rodents (381) by epigenetic mechanisms have been used extensively without indication of increased cancer risk.

4.5.4. Food Additives

Several agents used in food such as saccharin and butylated hydroxytoluene are tumorigenic in rodents under specific conditions. None of these has been linked to human cancer. Sodium nitrite, which is used in the preservation of cured meats, has been the subject of several studies, but has not been found to be carcinogenic (382).
5. CHEMICALS AND HUMAN CANCER

The environmental agents sunlight and chemicals, particularly those derived from smoking and diet, are believed to be the major causes of human cancers (383,384). Nevertheless, cancer is a multifactorial disease and individual genetic susceptibility is important (385), as well as interaction between carcinogens and enhancing or inhibitory factors.

Excess body weight appears to increase the risk of several types of cancer, notably kidney and endometrium. This may relate to hormonal abnormalities (386).

Age is also an important determinant. Certain cancers such as leukemia and bone cancer have their greatest incidence in childhood when these tissues are highly proliferative. Most other cancers peak later in life, which may reflect prolonged accumulation of DNA alterations and increased carcinogen sensitivity (387).

To date, 88 specific chemicals or mixtures have been established by the International Agency for Research on Cancer to cause cancer in humans (Table 4), some of which have been discussed above. Most of these are of the DNA-reactive type and virtually all of them, apart from cigarette smoke and mycotoxins, affect humans either through occupational or therapeutic exposures, which are substantial compared to general environmental exposures to chemicals. These industrial chemicals and pharmaceuticals, however, account for only a small fraction of human cancer (Table 5).

The few epigenetic carcinogens implicated in human cancer are mainly hormones or immunosuppressants, which are associated with increased risk of cancer only under conditions of exposure in which they produce the pharmacological effects that is the basis for their carcinogenicity in rodents. No food additive or pesticide that has produced increases in tumors in rodents through an epigenetic mechanism has been definitively identified to be a cause of human cancer (Table 4), although a number of associations have been reported for pesticides (364).

Inorganic carcinogens, mainly asbestos and arsenic, account for only a small proportion of cancers. In both cases, substantial chronic exposures were involved; for asbestos, occupational exposure is implicated (388), while for arsenic, both occupational exposure and consumption of highly contaminated well water is involved (375).

The calculated contribution of various agents to cancer incidence in the United States is given in Table 5. These numbers are based upon the numbers of new cancer cases estimated by the American Cancer Society to occur in 2005 (389) and the fraction of each type of cancer that can be attributed to implicated etiologic agents. The etiologic agents or risk factors include both carcinogens and enhancing or promoting factors.

The cancer with the highest incidence is skin cancer, including basal and squamous cell cancers, making sunlight the most effective human
Table 5  Estimated Causes of Cancer Incidence in the United States 2002

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Percent of total (excluding skin)(^a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lifestyle cancers</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diet related:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High fat, low fiber, low vegetables and fruits, high, broiled or fried foods?—large bowel, breast, pancreas, prostate, ovary, endometrium</td>
<td>25–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low vegetables and fruits—stomach(^b)</td>
<td>2–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco related: lung, larynx, oral cavity, bladder, pancreas, kidney, stomach, cervix</td>
<td>20–25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco and alcohol related: oral cavity, esophagus, lung</td>
<td>2–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol: liver, pharynx, larynx, esophagus, breast</td>
<td>3–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunlight: melanoma of the skin</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lifestyle and occupational exposures</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco and asbestos, tobacco and mining, tobacco and uranium/radium: respiratory tract, lung</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occupational cancers</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Various carcinogens, e.g., aromatic amines—bladder and other organs</td>
<td>≈1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asbestos—mesothelioma</td>
<td>&gt; 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bacteria-related cancers</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helicobacter pylori—stomach</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Virus-related cancers</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis B,C—liver; human papilloma—cervix, penis, anus; Epstein–Barr—B-cell lymphoma, Hodgkins lymphoma; HIV-1, Kaposi’s sarcoma, non-Hodgkins lymphoma</td>
<td>2–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genetically determined cancers</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor suppressor gene mutations: (APC, BRCA1, 2, CDKN2A, LKB1, MEN1, MEN2, WT1)</td>
<td>3–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other genetic predispositions: mismatch repair genes in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer, colorectal, endometrial, stomach; hemochromatosis, liver cancer; steroidogenesis ((HSD3B)), prostate; (ATM) dysfunction in processing of double-strand breaks in Ataxia telangiectasia, lymphoreticular; defects in (BLM) DNA helicase in Bloom’s syndrome, various; rare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
carcinogen. After this, the most frequent cancer incidence in women is breast and in men, prostate. Both of these are believed to be attributable in part to diet.

The main causative agents of human cancer are lifestyle factors, including damaging sunlight exposure, unhealthy diets, tobacco smoking, and excess alcohol consumption (384, 390, 391). In the United States, body weight and obesity contribute significantly to cancer mortality (392). Many types of human cancer result from specific carcinogens as the initiating agents and contributing enhancing or inhibiting elements. Table 6 gives the agents proven or suspected to influence the occurrence of the major cancers worldwide. In addition, a significant fraction of cancer is genetically determined and genetic predisposition influences susceptibility to exposures, as discussed below.

Specific carcinogens have been implicated in the etiology of several cancers. For lung cancer due to tobacco smoking, there is strong evidence for the involvement of DNA-reactive carcinogens, particularly polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, such as benzo[a]pyrene, and possibly tobacco-specific nitrosamines (369). For breast, large intestine and prostate cancers attributable to diet, certain of the carcinogenic heterocyclic amines formed during cooking of food have been implicated as carcinogens for the mammary gland and large intestine and possibly the prostate (376). Specifically, PhIP, IQ, and MeIQ, discussed above, are suspected human mammary carcinogens (393). The risk calculated for ingestion of heterocyclic amines, however, is small (394) and accordingly other factors appear to be involved in these diet-related cancers. For bladder cancer associated with cigarette smoking, the DNA-reactive carcinogens 4-aminobiphenyl and

Table 5  Estimated Causes of Cancer Incidence in the United States 2002 (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Percent of total (excluding skin)a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HRAS-VNTR alleles, sporadic ovary</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iatrogenic:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation—leukemia, thyroid, brain</td>
<td>(\approx 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicines—leukemia, endometrium</td>
<td>(\approx 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unknown</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukemia, lymphoma, brain</td>
<td>3–25c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(a\)1,284,900 total cases excluding basal cell and squamous cell cancers of the skin which account for about 1,000,000 cases

\(b\)Helicobactor pylori has an interactive role

\(c\)This large variation is a function of the broad range calculated for the main diet and tobacco associated cancers

Source: Ref. 389
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cancer</th>
<th>Carcinogen&lt;sup&gt;a,b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Enhancing or promoting factors</th>
<th>Protective factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Tobacco smoke, including second hand (polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons&lt;br&gt;?nitrosamines)&lt;br&gt;OCCupational exposures, PAHs</td>
<td>?High fat diet,&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; asbestos</td>
<td>Fruits and vegetables (vitamin A, cryptoxanthin), soy foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large intestine</td>
<td>?Heterocyclic amines</td>
<td>High fat diet,&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; alcohol low folate or methionine intake</td>
<td>Calcium, vitamin D, soy foods, tea, adequate fiber, estrogen replacement therapy, cyclo-oxygenase 2 inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Meat cooked at high temperatures&lt;br&gt;(?heterocyclic amines)</td>
<td>High fat diet,&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; high alcohol intake, combination oral contraceptives, postmenopausal estrogen</td>
<td>Pregnancy, breast feeding, vitamin A, olive oil consumption (?hydroxytyrosol), soy foods (?iso-flavones), calcium, vitamin D, ?Eicosapentaenoic acid, antiestrogens, ?cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>?Heterocyclic amines</td>
<td>High fat diet&lt;br&gt;IGF-1&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Soy foods (?iso-flavones), cooked tomato (lycopene), selenium, ?eicosapentaenoic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreas</td>
<td>Tobacco smoke&lt;br&gt;?heterocyclic amines</td>
<td>High fat,&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; meat diet</td>
<td>Soy foods, tea, vegetables, fruits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cancer</th>
<th>Carcinogen\textsuperscript{a,b}</th>
<th>Enhancing or promoting factors</th>
<th>Protective factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td>Reactive chloro or nitroso compounds ?tobacco smoke</td>
<td>High intake of salted and preserved foods, \textit{Helicobacter pylori}</td>
<td>Fruits and vegetables (vitamin C) soy foods, tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophagus</td>
<td>Tobacco smoke, ?nitrosamines</td>
<td>Alcohol (?acetaldehyde)</td>
<td>Vegetables, tea, ?soy foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervix</td>
<td>Human papilloma virus? tobacco smoke</td>
<td>Estrogen</td>
<td>Antioxidants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>Aflatoxins</td>
<td>Hepatitis B, C, alcohol, combination oral contraceptives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biliary tract</td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary sclerosing cholangitis, hepatolithiasis, liver fluke infestation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid</td>
<td>Radiation</td>
<td>?Low or high iodine intake</td>
<td>Obesity, (?17-?estradiol) Post-menopausal estrogen, tamoxifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometrium</td>
<td></td>
<td>?Tamoxifen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination oral contraceptives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney</td>
<td>Tobacco smoke</td>
<td>Obesity (?IGF-1), ?high animal protein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary bladder</td>
<td>Tobacco smoke (aromatic amines\textsuperscript{a}), aromatic amines, arsenic</td>
<td>Schistosomiasis</td>
<td>Vegetables, especially cruciferous (?isothiocynate sulforaphane), fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovary</td>
<td>Hormones</td>
<td>Nulliparity</td>
<td>Fruits, ?vegetables, vitamin A, ?β-carotene; combination oral contraceptives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gonadal abnormalities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>Radiation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukemia</td>
<td>Radiation, chemotherapy, benzene</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-cell adult</td>
<td>T-cell lymphotrophic virus 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>HIV-1</td>
<td>Psoriasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Hodgkins</td>
<td>Epstein–Barr virus</td>
<td>Psoriasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hodgkins</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>Sunlight, PUVA therapy</td>
<td>Arsenic</td>
<td>Sun screens, vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral cavity</td>
<td>Tobacco smoke, chewing tobacco, betel quid</td>
<td>Alcohol (?acetaldehyde)</td>
<td>Fruits and vegetables, vitamin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharynx, larynx</td>
<td>Tobacco smoke</td>
<td>Alcohol (?acetaldehyde)</td>
<td>Vegetables, vitamin A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aPresumed agent.  
b?¼ implicated.  
cMonounsaturated oils, olive, peanut, or canola oils do not promote, n-3-polyunsaturated oils are protective.  
Source: Updated from Ref. 391.
2-naphthylamine have been implicated (395). The likely role of aromatic amines is supported by the observation of increased risk in slow acetylators (249), as discussed above. In the stomach, foods high in salt, nitrates, and nitrites, under certain conditions, may contribute to the formation of \( \text{N-nitroso} \) carcinogens, although the evidence for current cancer causation by these is not conclusive (396). Aflatoxins are fungal products that cause liver cancer in both experimental animals and in humans consuming contaminated foods (371).

In addition to specific carcinogens, enhancing agents (promoters), largely derived from diet, are involved in human cancers (384,397). The role of diet in the etiology of breast (398,399), colon (400), and prostate (401) cancers has been detailed. Diets associated with these cancers are characterized by being high in calories, high in fat, and low in starch and fiber, although the relationship of these dietary components to cancer risk remains unresolved (402–404). In animal models, high energy and fat intake have enhancing effects on breast and colon cancer (405). Accordingly, it has been postulated that the incidence of these cancers in humans may be influenced by the promoting stimulus of high fat diets, but this remains unproven. Nevertheless, in each tissue, specific effectors appear to be involved in human carcinogenesis, some related to diet. In postmenopausal breast cancer, estrogen is clearly involved, probably through stimulation of ductal epithelial cell proliferation (366) mediated by estrogen receptor \( \alpha \) (406). In the large intestine, high levels of excreted bile acids have been implicated in colon cancer as part of a complex set of interacting factors (407), including elevated blood levels of insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) (136), which is regulated by growth hormone and nutritional status. For prostate cancer also, the blood level of IGF-1 is a risk factor (408). In individuals with a genetic susceptibility to insulin resistance, excessive weight gain and/or a diet high in fat can trigger hyperinsulinemia which may contribute to breast and colon cancer risk (409). The specificity of the effects of fats is exemplified by the fact that they differ in their modulating effects on experimental cancer, with n-6 fatty acids enhancing cancer development and long chain n-3 fatty acids inhibiting (410,411). The mechanism of the anticancer effect of n-3 fatty acids may involve inhibition of translation initiation (412).

Microbial agents play a definite role in several human cancers, both as carcinogenic and enhancing agents (413). It is estimated that about 80% of liver cancer worldwide is attributable to infection with hepatitis B virus (HBV) and/or hepatitis C virus (HCV) (413). Hepatitis B plays a major role in liver cancer in sub-Saharan Africa, and parts of Asia, while rising rates in Japan (414), the United States (415), and parts of Europe (416) are attributed to increases in HCV infection. Stomach cancer often arises on a background of chronic gastritis and frequently involves \textit{Helicobacter pylori} (417,418). The human papilloma virus (HPV) (types 16 and 18) is involved in cervical cancer by producing oncoproteins that inactivate tumor
suppressor genes (419). The E6 protein promotes degradation of p53 through the ubiquitin–proteosome pathway (420), while the HPV 16 E7 oncoprotein binds to Rb (421). In persons infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) type 1, the incidences of Kaposi’s sarcoma and Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma are greatly increased (422). Human T-lymphotropic virus-I (HTLV-1) infection is prevalent in southwest Japan, the Caribbean, parts of South American and Central and West Africa and is associated with adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma (423). Other cancer-associated microbial agents include *Schistosoma hematobium*, whose chronic bladder infestation leads to increased risk of bladder cancer, and the flukes, *Clonorchis sinensis* and *Opisthorchis viverrini*, whose infestation of the biliary tract leads to increased occurrence of cholangiocarcinoma (424).

The carcinogenicity of these microbial agents, as well as that of some other forms of chronic tissue injury, may relate to oxidative damage. With chronic inflammation, high levels of nitric oxide are produced by the inducible nitric oxide synthetase (iNOS) which is highly expressed in activated macrophages (425). Nitric oxide may be an endogenous carcinogen (194) and it also inhibits the ogg1 protein repair enzyme involved in excision of 8-oxoguanine (426).

A factor contributing to an increasing fraction of human cancers is family cancer syndromes, which number about 35, resulting from both autosomal dominant and autosomal recessive patterns of inheritance (427,428). Polymorphisms in tumor suppressor genes, such as *TP53*, appear to elevate risks of some cancers (429). Germ line mutations in tumor suppressor genes, such as *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* in familial breast cancer and *APC* in colon cancer arising in the condition adenomatous polyposis coli, clearly predispose to cancer (Table 5). Also, germ line mutations in DNA repair genes, discussed above, increase cancer risks; examples include the hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer mutation which leads to increased colorectal, endometrial, stomach, and other cancers (339,430), the xeroderma pigmentosum mutation which increases risk of sunlight-induced skin cancer 2000-fold (431) and the ataxia telangiectasia mutation which conveys extreme predisposition to lymphoreticular malignancies (432) and is associated with an increased risk of breast cancer (433). In addition, it is likely that numerous tumor susceptibility alleles or quantitative trait loci exist (434). Finally, inheritance of predisposing factors can elevate cancer risk as in male germ cell tumors for which cryptorchidism, spermatogenic or testicular dysgenesis, Klinefelter’s syndrome, and a positive family history can elevate risk several fold (435).

For the cancers for which a specific initiating carcinogen has not been identified, a potential explanation gaining in support is that the accumulation of oxidative DNA damage leads to cancer (192,263). Oxidation of DNA is established to be mutagenic (436) and is clearly carcinogenic, as demonstrated by the example of ionizing radiation. A variety of rodent
carcinogens give rise to oxidative DNA damage (193,437), suggesting that similar effects could occur in humans. Levels of 8-oxodG in human tissues range from one adduct per $10^7$ nucleotides to one adduct per $10^3$ nucleotides (264). Although the exact levels of this promutagenic lesion may be uncertain, the existence of repair enzymes to remove it clearly indicates that DNA oxidation is an important biological problem. Further support for a role of oxidative damage in human cancer comes from the fact that diets high in fruits and vegetables protect against a variety of cancers (438), as listed in Table 6, and have been shown to reduce endogenous oxidation of DNA (439). Moreover, a novel “signature mutation” for oxidative DNA damage, discontinuous loss of heterozygosity, has been identified as an effect of $H_2O_2$ (440) and this mutation purportedly resembles a mutation pattern found in human cancers such as those of the head and neck, lung, prostate, breast, and colorectum (see Ref. 440 for references).

As noted, in addition to enhancing agents, a variety of inhibitors have been identified (Table 6). Among these, high consumption of fruits and vegetables, especially cruciferous vegetables, is associated with reduced risks for several cancers (438,441). Soy foods (442) and tea (443) consumption also appear to be protective. However, consumption of a high fiber diet has not been shown to reduce occurrence of colorectal adenomas (444,445).

6. CANCER PROPHYLAXIS

The most effective approach to prevention of cancer is designated as primordial prevention in which exposure to causative agents such as cigarette smoking, high risk diets, excessive alcohol consumption, and damaging sunlight exposure is abrogated. Since cancer is a disease which has a prolonged development time, and evidence exists for influences on some cancers of exogenous agents acting very early in life, primordial prevention really must begin in childhood through appropriate education and behavior modification (222). Next in the hierarchy of prophylaxis is primary prevention of cancer which is achieved with reduction or elimination of existing exposures to causative agents before the inception of cancer. Again, managerial preventive medicine is an important modality here. Secondary prevention involves the application of factors to reduce the effects of carcinogenic exposures. For example, prophylaxis for several types of cancer is furthered by consumption of a diet rich in protective components, as detailed in Table 6. Important among these are fruits and vegetables consumed at three or more servings per day (446–448), which reduce risks of colon, pancreas, bladder, lung, oral cavity, larynx, esophagus, and stomach cancer (449). The protective agents involved appear to be vitamin A and carotenoids, particularly cryptoxanthin. Also, high intake of fish, which contain n-3 fatty acids, particularly eicosapentaenoic acid and docosahexaenoic acid is associated with reduced risks of breast, prostate, and colorectal cancers (450).
These foods together with food sources of monounsaturated fats (olive oil) characterize Mediterranean-type diets, which convey reduced risks of several cancers (451). A diet devised to provide these components is the Fiber First Diet which implements adequate fiber content derived from vegetables, fruits, whole grain breads, and wheat bran cereals and reduces fat intake (391). Consumption of soy-containing foods is associated with reduced risk of prostate cancer (452) possibly due to iso-flavones. Several vitamins appear to reduce cancer risks (Table 6) and hence it is important that diets provide recommended intakes (453), or otherwise regular use of a multivitamin is indicated.

One component of secondary prevention is the use of anticancer or chemopreventive agents whose mechanisms were discussed earlier. A wide variety of experimental cancer preventive agents, both naturally occurring and synthetic, is known (177,391,454,455). Several of these have shown promise in humans (456), mostly as inhibitors of the growth of neoplastic cells. Among agents of this type, retinoids have been evaluated for suppression of oral cancer but high relapse rates and serious side effects occur (457). The selective estrogen receptor modulator tamoxifen reduces breast cancer risk (223,458). Also, breast (459) and colon (460) cancer risks are reduced by regular use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. Of particular interest is specific COX-2 inhibitors such as celecoxib, whose anticancer activity may result from a variety of effects (461), including reduction of enzyme-derived prostaglandins, particularly PGE2. Another strategy, the enhancement of carcinogen detoxification, is being pursued with agents such as oltipraz (177).

With potent pharmaceuticals, however, there are complexities to be recognized. For example, tamoxifen, although reducing breast cancer risk, also increases endometrial cancer risk (223). Thus, efforts in chemoprevention are being directed toward synthesis of analogs with greater specificity for specific molecular targets. An example is the rexinoids which bind selectively to retinoid X receptors (RXR) but not retinoic acid receptors (RAR) (462). Similarly, vitamin D analogs that do not produce hypercalcemia are under investigation (463).

The utility for cancer prevention of supplemental intake of specific components of foods that are associated with reduced cancer risks also merits further investigation. Although substantial observational epidemiologic data exist for a preventive role of diets high in carotenoids, intervention studies with β carotene at 20–50 mg daily either showed an increase in lung cancer or no reduction (464). In contrast, selenium supplementation was found to reduce the risk of prostate cancer (465,466), and lung cancer in individuals with low selenium levels (467).

For cancers related to infections, primordial protection can be achieved by good public health measures. Also, primary prevention can be afforded by therapy for parasites (424) and bacteria (418) and vaccines for viruses such as HBV (468) and HPV (469).
The opportunities and challenges to chemoprevention were formulated by the Chemoprevention Working Group several years ago (470). While further progress is to be expected, it remains that prevention offers the best prospect for reduction of cancer attributable to chemical and microbial agents.

7. CONCLUDING REMARKS

It is clear from the above review that many of the agents involved in human cancer have been identified and critical factors that influence their effects have been elucidated. Various appropriate intervention strategies are available and others are being developed. Accordingly, it can be anticipated that control or reductions in many cancers can be achieved in the near future.

REFERENCES


90. el Deiry WS. Regulation of p53 downstream genes. Semin Cancer Biol 1998; 8:345–357.


102. Paggi MG, Giordano A. Who is the boss in the retinoblastoma family? The point of view of Rb2/p130, the little brother. Cancer Res 2001; 61:4651–4654.


204. Chadwick RW, George SE, Claxton LD. Role of the gastrointestinal mucosa and microflora in the bioactivation of dietary and environmental mutagens or carcinogens. Drug Metab Rev 1992; 24:425–492.


244. Weber WW. The molecular basis of hereditary acetylation polymorphisms. Drug Metab Dispos 1986; 14:377–381.


the 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene affects genomic DNA
methylation through an interaction with folate status. Proc Natl Acad Sci
USA 2002; 99:5606–5611.

267. Villar-Garea A, Esteller M. DNA demethylating agents and chromatin-remo-

268. Bartsch H. DNA adducts in human carcinogenesis: etiological relevance and

269. Randerath K, Randerath E, Zhou GD, Li D. Bulky endogenous DNA mod-
ifications I-compounds—possible structural origins and functional implica-

270. Farmer PB, Shuker DE. What is the significance of increases in background
levels of carcinogen-derived protein and DNA adducts? Some considerations

271. Colvin ME, Hatch FT, Felton JS. Chemical and biological factors affecting
mutagen potency. Mutat Res 1998; 400:479–492.

272. Roche CJ, Jeffrey AM, Mao B, Alfano A, Kim SK, Ibanez V, Geacintov NE.
Dependence of conformations of benzo[a]pyrene diol epoxide-DNA adducts
derived from stereoisomers of different tumorigenicities on base sequence.

273. MacLeod MC. Interaction of bulky chemical carcinogens with DNA in chro-

274. Jeffrey AM, Kinoshita T, Santella RM, Grunberger D, Katz L, Weinstein IB.
The chemistry of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-DNA adducts. In: Pullman
P, Ts’o POP, Gelboin H, eds. Carcinogens Fundamental Mechanisms and
565–579.

275. Suri AK, Mao B, Amin S, Geacintov NE, Patel DJ. Solution conformation of
the (+)-trans-anti-benzo[g]chrysene-dA adduct opposite dT in a DNA duplex.

276. Li Z, Kim HY, Tamura PJ, Harris CM, Harris TM, Stone MP. Intercalation
of the (1S,2R,3S,4R)-N-[1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2,3,4-trihydroxybenz[a]anthra-
cenyl]-2′-deoxyadenosyl adduct in an oligodeoxynucleotide containing the

277. Malinge JM, Giraud-Panis MJ, Leng, M. Interstrand cross-links of cisplatin

278. Denissenko MF, Pao AP, Tang MS, Pfeifer GP. Preferential formation of ben-
274:430–432.

279. Hemminki K. DNA adducts and mutations in occupational and environmen-

280. Santella RM. Immunological methods for detection of carcinogen–DNA

281. Bartsch H. Studies on biomarkers in cancer etiology and prevention: a sum-
mary and challenge of 20 years of interdisciplinary research. Mutat Res

282. Vineis P, Perera F. DNA adducts as markers of exposure to carcinogens and


287. Lutz WK. In vivo chemical binding of organic chemicals to DNA as a quantitative indicator in the process of chemical carcinogenesis. Mutat Res 1979; 65:289–356.


1. INTRODUCTION

A viral etiology of cancer was first recognized in 1911 when a cell-free filtrate from a chicken sarcoma, later identified and named as Rous sarcoma virus, was demonstrated to induce a tumor in another chicken to which the filtrate was transmitted. A number of mammalian oncoviruses were identified subsequent to this observation. A cause of a disease may be an agent, event, condition, or characteristic that plays a vital role in the occurrence of the disease. Cause must be distinguished from pathogenesis, in that the implication of the former is not limited to what happens but also includes the mechanisms by which it happens. Cause must also be distinguished from mere association, as causation implies the temporal relationship where the causal event precedes the disease consequences by direct or indirect mechanism. A formal model of disease causation by an infectious agent was enunciated in 1840 by Jakob Henle and further developed by his successor Robert Koch. In this formulation, there are three basic conditions by which the association between the agent and the disease can be considered no longer accidental but causal.

1. The agent occurs in every case of the disease in question and under circumstances that can account for the pathological changes and clinical course of the disease.
2. The agent occurs in no other disease as a fortuitous and non-pathogenic parasite.
3. The agent can induce the disease anew, after being fully isolated from the body and repeatedly grown in pure culture.

While correctly identifying many human pathogens, the Henle–Koch criteria, if strictly applied, would exclude other presumed pathogens, particularly many viruses. To overcome some of these limitations, the classical Henle–Koch postulates were modified and expanded to nine criteria proposed by Sir Austin Bradford Hill (1):

1. Exposures strongly associated with disease are more likely to be a true cause (strength of association).
2. Relationships can be demonstrated in multiple studies in different populations and/or different study designs. Strength of association may differ, but direction should be the same (consistency).
3. One exposure is associated with one disease (specificity).
4. Exposure precedes disease (temporality).
6. The proposed causal mechanism—direct or indirect—is biologically plausible (plausibility).
7. The cause–effect interpretation does not seriously conflict with the generally known facts of the natural history and biology of the disease (coherence).
8. Experimental removal or blockage of the cause prevents the disease (experimental evidence).
9. Similarity to other disease–agent associations provides support for causation by another agent (analogy).

The concepts of sufficient and component causes—where a sufficient cause is a set of minimal conditions that inevitably produce disease whereas each of the contributing conditions to a sufficient cause is considered a component cause—provided further foundation for causal associations in epidemiological studies (2). In contrast, a condition invariably associated with all cases of a particular disease became known as a necessary cause.

Viral-associated cancers in humans became a major focus of cancer research when Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)—the first human oncovirus—was found in 1964 (3). Followed by this discovery, a series of human oncogenic viruses were found through the 1980s and 1990s, including hepatitis viruses (HBV and HCV), human retroviruses (HTLV-I and HIV), human herpesviruses, and human papillomaviruses. Evans and Mueller (4) noted common characteristics for the epidemiology of virus-associated cancers:

1. The long induction period between initial infection and the onset of cancer.
2. Most candidate viruses are ubiquitous but cancer incidence is rare.
3. The initial infection is often subclinical and the time of infection is rarely known.
4. Most viral-related cancers require cofactors.
5. The causes of cancer may vary by age and by geographic area.
6. Different viral strains may have different oncogenic potentials.
7. The host factors, especially age of infection, genetic characteristics, and immune status, play a critical role in susceptibility to cancer.
8. A virus may play a role at different points in a complex, multi-stage process of pathogenesis by altering the host’s immune system or by causing a variety of events at the molecular level.
9. Many human cancers cannot be reproduced in experimental animals with the putative virus.
10. A virus-induced cancer could have the same histologic features with cancers caused by a toxin, chemical, altered gene, or other causal factors.

To establish associations between a putative viral cause and a human cancer, the following guidelines were proposed:

1. The geographic distribution of virus infection is similar to that of the associated tumor when adjusted for the age of infection and the presence of cofactors.
2. Viral markers (antibody titers or antigenemia) are higher in cases than in matched controls in the same geographic setting, as shown in case–control studies.
3. The viral marker precedes the tumor and a significantly higher incidence of the tumor follows in persons with the marker than in those without it.
4. Prevention of the viral infection (e.g., by vaccination) or control of the host’s response to the virus (such as by delaying the time of infection) decreases the tumor incidence.
5. The virus transforms human cells in vitro.
6. The viral genome is present in tumor cells but not in normal cells.
7. The virus induces the tumor in a susceptible experimental animal, while neutralization of the virus prior to injection prevents tumor development.

As evident in these guidelines, mere detection of a virus in a tumor is not strong evidence for a causal association. In seroepidemiological studies, the following provide additional support in relating a virus to a cancer (5):
1. Specific antibody is present more frequently in cancer patients than in healthy controls in the same geographic area.
2. Antibody levels (i.e., geometric mean titer or prevalence of elevated titers) are higher in cancer patients than in seropositive controls.
3. Antibody profiles by epitope or immunoglobulin subclass suggest persistence or reactivation of the putative agent.
4. Antibody is specific for the virus being considered and other viral antibodies are not elevated.
5. Sera obtained prior to cancer show antibody to be absent (if the cancer is due to primary infection) or elevated (if cancer is a consequence of reactivation).
6. Variation in the virus–cancer association is explainable by differences in distribution of co-factors.

This chapter outlines the well-established associations of viruses with cancers in humans. We primarily focus on the epidemiology and mechanisms of these associations as well as on biomarkers of cancer risk in humans.

2. EPSTEIN–BARR VIRUS

Since its discovery in the 1960s, EBV and its oncogenesis have been extensively studied. The unique feature of this virus is its association with multiple types of cancer of different cellular origins. EBV infection is not associated with apparent immune suppression, but in some instances EBV-associated malignancies appear to develop in the presence of subclinical immune suppression (6).

2.1. Molecular Biology

EBV is a member of the herpes family of viruses. It has a linear, double-stranded DNA genome consisting of about 100 genes, surrounded by a viral capsid and a lipid envelope. The virus infects B-lymphocytes and can replicate via both lytic and latent pathways. EBV-infected cells express a variety of EBV-encoded products, including EBV-encoded RNA (EBERs), nuclear antigens (EBNA), and latent membrane proteins (LMP). Correspondingly, infected individuals produce antibodies to composites of these viral products, including viral capsid antigen (VCA), early antigen (EA), and EBNA.

2.2. Epidemiology of EBV Infection

EBV is primarily transmitted by the oral route. Infection leads to a life-long carrier state, characterized by latent infection of a subset of B-lymphocytes and persistent shedding of infectious virus in saliva. Infection is nearly
ubiquitous by adulthood in all populations worldwide, with age-specific seroprevalence of younger individuals varying by socioeconomic status, family size, and hygiene. In developing countries, 70%–95% of children are infected with EBV by the age of 5 years, whereas in industrialized countries infection is normally delayed until young adulthood. Primary infection in early childhood is usually asymptomatic, whereas infection later in life often results in a self-limiting lymphoproliferative syndrome, recognized clinically as infectious mononucleosis.

2.3. EBV-Associated Malignancies in Humans

Since the normal reservoir of latent infection is the B lymphocyte, EBV-infected lymphocytes in tumor tissue may be either incidental or an effect of the tumor rather than evidence for an etiological role of this virus in cancer development. Thus, the causality of association with a given tumor should be judged with consideration to other factors, such as the proportion of EBV-positive cases in a given tumor type, the proportion of tumor cells that carry the virus in any given case, the monoclonality of EBV in the tumor (indicating that the malignant clone expanded from a single EBV-infected cell), and evidence of active infection such as the expression of EBV proteins. Based on these and other criteria, four major tumor types have well-established associations with EBV: Burkitt’s lymphoma (BL), other non-Hodgkin’s lymphomas (NHL), Hodgkin’s lymphomas (HL), and nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC).

EBV infection of B-lymphocytes in vitro efficiently induces transformation into immortalized cell lines. In EBV-transformed B-cells, 13 viral genes are expressed: six nuclear antigens, three LMPs, two small nontranslated RNAs, and two other transcripts. The viral proteins regulate maintenance of episomal viral DNA and viral gene expression, drive cellular proliferation, and block apoptosis.

2.3.1. Burkitt’s Lymphoma

Patients with BL have high titers of antibodies to EBV VCA and EA, preceding the appearance of tumor by months to years (7). Viral DNA is present in tumor cells and is monoclonal. Viral protein expression is almost entirely restricted to a nuclear antigen, EBNA-1. Notably, the frequency of association between EBV and BL varies geographically. In most developed countries, 20% or fewer tumors contain EBV, while in equatorial Africa about 95% are positive. A characteristic chromosomal translocation between the \( c-myc \) protooncogene and an immunoglobulin gene is invariably present in BL, although the molecular features of these translocations vary geographically in parallel with differences in EBV prevalence in tumors. In equatorial Africa, infection with \( Plasmodium falciparum \), a malaria parasite, is an important cofactor for the incidence of BL, which
accounts for 30–70% of childhood cancers (8). Incidence outside of this region, with the exception of AIDS-related cases, is much less than 1 per 100,000 children per year (9).

2.3.2. Other Non-Hodgkin’s Lymphomas

EBV is particularly important in tumors occurring in immunosuppressed individuals, who are at elevated risk for these malignancies. In patients with congenital immunodeficiency or receiving immunosuppressive therapy, NHLs are nearly always EBV-positive. In HIV-positive subjects, EBV is uniformly found in NHL of the central nervous system and also in a fraction of systemic NHL. In the absence of immunosuppression, EBV is strongly associated with some uncommon types of NHL, particularly sinonasal angiocentric T-cell lymphoma and other peripheral T-cell tumors.

2.3.3. Hodgkin’s Lymphoma

Monoclonal EBV genome and latent viral protein expression may be found in the putative tumor cells (Reed–Sternberg cells) of one-third of HL cases. In particular, HL occurring in association with immunodeficiency, such as in HIV infection, is usually EBV-positive. HL patients also have altered antibody profiles to EBV prior to the disease onset (10).

2.3.4. Nasopharyngeal Carcinoma

Incidence rates are two to three times higher in males than females, and reach 25–40 per 100,000 in the highest incidence areas of southern China, but are <1 per 100,000 in most parts of the world (9). EBV DNA and viral products are regularly found in malignant cells but not in normal nasopharyngeal epithelium. Patients with this tumor have elevated levels of IgA antibodies to EBV VCA and EA. Consumption of Chinese-style salted fish appears to be an important cofactor in high-risk populations (11).

3. HUMAN T-LYMPHOTROPIC VIRUS TYPE I

In the early 1980s, HTLV-I was isolated by cell culture from a patient with T-cell lymphoma in the United States (12) and a patient with adult T-cell leukemia (ATL) in Japan (13). A number of other diseases in addition to ATL were subsequently associated with this infection, including HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP), HTLV-I associated uveitis (HU), and infective dermatitis (ID) in children (6). The infection causes subclinical immune suppression, which is evidenced by an increased frequency and severity of opportunistic infections in HTLV-I-positive individuals (14,15).
3.1. Molecular Biology

HTLV-I is an enveloped, type C retrovirus with an RNA dimer of two identical subunits (16). The viral genome contains three structural genes (gag, pol, and env) and two regulatory genes (tax and rex) flanked by two long terminal repeats (LTRs). The gag gene encodes core proteins p19 and p24, pol encodes RNA-dependent DNA polymerase (reverse transcriptase), and env encodes the small transmembrane (gp21) and large external envelope (gp46) glycoproteins. The tax and rex regulatory genes transactivate viral replication and control expression of viral proteins. The virus uses reverse transcriptase to synthesize DNA copies of its genome within the host cell that integrate into the host’s genome as a provirus.

3.2. Epidemiology and Biomarkers of HTLV-I Infection

HTLV-I infection can be detected by the presence of antibodies to core, envelope, and Tax proteins in serum, as measured by an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) or a particle agglutination assay (PAA). A recombinant western blot (WB) assay is used as a confirmatory test, in which reactivity to gag (p19 or p24) and env (gp21 or gp46) gene products is considered indicative of true positivity.

HTLV-I infection affects several million people worldwide (6). Endemic areas include southern Japan, the Caribbean, parts of West Africa, the Middle East, South America, and the Pacific Melanesian islands. Seroprevalence varies from <1% among populations in the United States and Europe to ~5% in the Caribbean islands (17,18) and ~30% in rural Kyushu, Japan (19,20). Seroprevalence increases with age and is twice as high in females than in males (6). The virus is usually acquired early in life by way of breast feeding (21). Early age of infection is considered to be a risk factor for ATL (22). Among adults, the virus may be transmitted via sexual contact (23) or transfusion of cellular components of blood products (24). Thus, effective prevention strategies against HTLV-I infection include screening of blood products to eliminate contaminated units, curtailment of breastfeeding by HTLV-I-positive mothers, and use of barrier contraceptives by HTLV-I-discordant sexual partners.

A high proviral load and high levels of antibody to the whole virus (anti-HTLV-I) and the Tax regulatory protein (anti-Tax) are the primary markers of increased infectivity (23,25). These biomarkers are also markers of HTLV-I pathogenesis, since both ATL and HAM/TSP patients generally have a high proviral load (26) and high anti-HTLV-I titer. A population-based prospective study of asymptomatic HTLV-I carriers found that carriers who later developed ATL had a higher anti-HTLV-I titer as compared to those who did not develop the disease, but the ATL patients lacked anti-Tax antibody prior to diagnosis (27). The lack of tax mRNA expression and anti-Tax antibody (28) are particularly useful markers for
distinguishing those at risk of ATL from those at risk of HAM/TSP, as the latter tend to express a high level of \textit{tax} mRNA (29,30). In addition, the level of soluble interleukin 2 receptor (sIL-2R), presence of circulating “flower cell”-like abnormal lymphocytes, and mono- or oligoclonal expansion of HTLV-I infected cells (31–33), may be used as intermediate markers of ATL risk.

Determinants of cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) response, such as the human leukocyte antigens (HLA), have also been hypothesized to play a role in HTLV-I disease pathogenesis (34). \textit{DRB1*1501} and \textit{DQB1*0602} appear to be associated with risk of ATL both in Japanese and Caribbean populations (35). However, the possible influence of linkage disequilibrium in these associations greatly complicates their proper interpretation.

3.3. HTLV-I Associated Malignancies in Humans

The oncogenicity of HTLV-I is not related to host cell protooncogenes. Instead, Tax regulatory protein, which promotes transcription of viral mRNA and of host cellular genes that modulate cell growth (36,37), is thought to play an important role (38–40). Multiple pathways appear to be involved in HTLV-I oncogenesis. Tax indirectly binds to the enhancer-binding transcription factors, resulting in the activation of these factors. Tax also binds to IκB protein resulting in repression of the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor, tumor suppressor, and apoptosis-associated proteins (41). Furthermore, Tax protein inactivates the p53 tumor suppressor protein by post-translational phosphorylation (42,43) and inhibits DNA repair mechanisms (44,45), which may explain, at least in part, the propensity for transformation of HTLV-I-infected T-cells.

Because Tax protein is a known target for CTL activity (46,47), ATL cells that do not express \textit{tax} are likely to escape CTL-mediated cell killing. Genetic events that alter immunogenicity of the tax protein, such as mutations in the \textit{tax} gene or changes in viral transcription and translation, may play an additional role (48,49). However, the lack of \textit{tax} mRNA and Tax protein expression in ATL cells (47,50) suggests that HTLV-I-induced oncogenesis becomes independent of \textit{tax} gene activity after a critical period of cellular transformation.

3.3.1. Adult T-Cell Leukemia/Lymphoma

ATL is a rapidly progressive malignancy of activated CD4-, CD25-positive T-lymphocytes (51). The integrated HTLV-I proviral genome is frequently defective in ATL cells, which may help them escape from immune surveillance (52). The disease is characterized by the presence of circulating “flower cells,” which are leukemic cells with cleaved, convoluted nuclei. The tumor cells express CD2, CD3, and CD5 as well as the activation markers IL-2R (CD25 Tac antigen) and HLA-DR, but may lack CD7. Based on the total
leukocyte count, level of flower cells, presence of clonal provirus integration, presence of immune suppression, and other biochemical data, the disease may be classified into different clinical subtypes (53). The incidence of ATL among HTLV-I carriers is estimated to be 2–4 per 100,000 person-years, with a lifetime risk of ~5% (54,55). Risk seems to be higher in men as compared to women in Japan, but no such difference is evident in the Caribbean. The average age of disease onset is much later in Japan than in the Caribbean (60 vs. 40 years), perhaps due in part to differences in life expectancy, as well as host and environmental factors.

The broad clinical spectrum of ATL sometimes overlaps with that of mycosis fungoides (MF) (56), a T-cell NHL with a propensity for skin involvement, or with the MF variant, Sezary syndrome (SS) (57). The tumor cells of MF and SS can be distinguished from ATL cells by their lack of expression of activation markers. The majority of MF patients do not have antibody to HTLV-I (58). A possible role of HTLV-I in the development of MF has been speculated because portions of its genome were found in skin lesions and peripheral lymphocytes of MF patients (59,60). However, these observations could not be confirmed by other investigators (61,62), and the association of HTLV-I with MF remains inconclusive.

4. HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUSES

HIV type 1 (HIV-1) was discovered in 1983 (63) and definitively associated with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) in 1984 (64). A related but distinct virus, HIV type 2 (HIV-2), was later discovered in AIDS patients from West Africa (65). HIV-2 infected persons can have the same immunological and clinical spectrum of disease as HIV-1, although there is some evidence that HIV-2 may be less pathogenic than HIV-1 (6).

4.1. Molecular Biology

Human immunodeficiency virus is also a type C retrovirus, with a single-stranded RNA genome (6). HIV targets CD4+ T-lymphocytes and macrophages and replicates via a DNA intermediate integrated into the host genome. HIV-2 is likely identical to the primate infection, simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV). The genome contains three structural genes (gag, pol, and env), two regulatory genes (tat and rev), and four accessory genes (nef, vif, vpr, and vpu/vpx).

4.2. Epidemiology and Biomarkers of Infection

The virus is transmitted sexually, parenterally through contaminated blood products and injection equipment, as well as vertically from mother-to-child in utero or via breast milk. Risk of transmission is associated with viral load in the infected person. Prevalence of infection varies by age, sex,
geographical area, risk behavior, and calendar year. In the United States and Europe, homosexual men, the earliest affected group, still account for the largest number of HIV-carriers, followed by injection drug users, as well as their sexual partners and children. In Africa, heterosexual contact is the predominant mode of transmission, with extensive incidence of mother-to-child transmission. In Asia, all modes of transmission are frequent.

The first biomarker for HIV infection was antibody to the virus detected by ELISA and Western blot. Western blot, which simultaneously assesses antibodies to multiple antigenic determinants, is a better tool to handle cross reactivity and detect HIV infection with higher specificity. Early studies of HIV seropositivity in the 1980s in several populations documented elevated prevalence of HIV antibodies in groups at higher risk of AIDS, including homosexual men, injection drug users, and transfusion recipients (66). These studies provided insight into the exposure–biomarker relationship and demonstrated that within groups at higher risk of HIV, HIV seropositivity was quantitatively associated with AIDS risk behaviors or exposures (67). Later, careful epidemiological studies revealed an association of HIV antibody with AIDS and AIDS-related complex (64,68).

Today, an improved laboratory assay for detecting HIV antibody is a useful, valid biomarker of widespread application in risk assessment to identify high-risk groups and in screening and early intervention (69). HIV testing also has stimulated enormous attention to the issues of confidentiality, insurability, employability, informed consent, and individual rights, as well as behavioral modification regarding sexual practice.

4.3. HIV-Associated Malignancies in Humans

The strongest associations of HIV infection with cancers are observed in Kaposi’s sarcoma (KS), NHL, and, to a lesser extent, HL. NHL and KS are also seen in other immunosuppressed groups, such as transplant recipients. Smooth muscle tumors (leiomyosarcoma and leiomyomas) in children and conjunctival squamous cell carcinoma in equatorial Africa also appear to be associated with HIV, despite prevailing lack of association in other populations. With rare exceptions, HIV is not present in the tumor cells, suggesting an indirect induction of tumor via immune alterations. In contrast, the angiogenic and spindle cell stimulatory effects of the HIV-1 tat gene product in vitro may indicate direct induction of KS, explaining the uniquely elevated risk of this condition in HIV infection.

4.3.1. Kaposi’s Sarcoma

HIV-infected individuals are at greatly increased risk of KS, an otherwise rare tumor associated with the cofactor human herpesvirus type 8 (HHV-8). Homosexual/bisexual men with HIV are at 5–10-fold greater risk than other HIV-infected groups (70), which may reflect differences in HHV-8
prevalence. Highly active antiretroviral therapy appears to strongly diminish the risk of KS. The nature of KS is uncertain, but a recent study has indicated that it is a disseminated monoclonal neoplasm.

4.3.2. Non-Hodgkin’s Lymphoma

NHL incidence is greatly increased in HIV infection and the risk increases with duration of infection. Unlike KS, NHL incidence has increased similarly (up to 100-fold) in all HIV transmission groups. In AIDS-related tumors, EBV coinfection is uniformly found in the primary lymphoma of the brain as well as in a fraction of systemic lymphomas; HHV-8 coinfection is found in a rare subtype, primary effusion lymphoma (PEL).

4.3.3. Hodgkin’s Lymphoma

The association of HIV with HL is weaker than that with KS or NHL (RR 5–10). HIV-associated HL is more likely to have mixed cellularity or lymphocyte-depleted histology and in most instances the tumors contain EBV, as discussed above.

4.3.4. Anogenital Dysplasia

Although invasive cervical cancer in an HIV-infected person is one of the AIDS-defining malignancies, there is little evidence that cervical cancer is specifically associated with HIV apart from shared risk factors with human papillomavirus (HPV). Nevertheless, dysplasia and in situ carcinoma of the cervix do appear to be increased with HIV infection and associated immune alteration. Similarly, the incidence of HPV-associated anal dysplasia appears accelerated in HIV infection. Anal cancer incidence, however, does not appear to be substantially increased.

4.3.5. Other Neoplasms

Smooth muscle tumors are the second most common neoplasm in HIV-infected children (71), yet no increase has been demonstrable in HIV-infected adults. These tumors uniformly contain EBV. Conjunctival squamous cell carcinoma, an HPV-associated tumor, has been noted to be increased with HIV in equatorial Africa, but is extremely rare in other locales. Testicular germ-cell tumors may be increased in HIV, although this association is not firmly established. Most other tumors, including those most common in the general population, do not appear increased in HIV infection.

5. HUMAN HERPESVIRUS TYPE 8

A condition invariably associated with all cases of a particular disease is considered to be a necessary cause. This concept is particularly relevant to the question of causation of a few malignancies by HHV-8, or
KS-associated herpesvirus, where the virus is found in 100% of the tumors. The HHV-8 genome is detectable in virtually all cases of KS, PEL and a subset of Castleman’s disease (9).

5.1. Molecular Biology

HHV-8 is a herpesvirus with a 165-kb genome, which encodes a number of homologs of cell growth regulatory proteins. One of these proteins, cyclin D, may play a role in virally induced cellular transformation. In vivo, HHV-8 infects B-cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells, with lytic replication occurring in subpopulations of infected cells. Specific patterns of latent gene expression characterize KS and PEL.

5.2. Epidemiology and Biomarkers of HHV-8 Infection

The prevalence of HHV-8 in populations without KS is controversial. Current serologic assays for HHV-8 antibody have uncertain sensitivity and specificity for detecting asymptomatic infection, and frequently disagree in individual samples. Thus, the HHV-8 antibody prevalence determined by these tests for a low risk population may either over- or underestimate the true prevalence of infection. Geographic variation in HHV-8 seroprevalence reflects variation in incidence of endemic KS. In contrast, geographical variation in AIDS-related cases is minimal. Male homosexual contact likely accounts for the high seroprevalence among gay men, whereas heterosexual contact does not appear to spread the infection. Other modes of transmission remain uncertain.

5.3. HHV8-Associated Malignancies in Humans

The universal presence of the HHV-8 genome in tumor tissue of both KS and PEL suggests direct oncogenic effects of HHV-8. The viral homolog of D-type cyclins, which can disrupt cell cycle control, is expressed in both these tumor types, as are other proteins of less-defined function. Lytic replication occurs in a subset of HHV-8-infected KS spindle cells, upregulating expression of several viral growth factors and a growth factor regulatory protein that may stimulate expansion of latently infected cells nearby. PEL similarly expresses virally encoded growth factors and their regulatory proteins and receptors. The large number of HHV-8 genes corresponding to human genes regulating cell growth may reflect a viral strategy for replication that as a corollary mediates HHV-8 oncogenesis.

5.3.1. Kaposi’s Sarcoma

KS was most common in eastern European and Mediterranean populations and in central and eastern Africa in endemic forms before the onset of the AIDS epidemic. It is also known to occur in excess in persons with
iatrogenic immune suppression. Today, KS is the most common tumor in persons with AIDS. In immunocompromised hosts, HHV-8 seropositivity and the presence of viremia are predictors for subsequent development of KS (72). The pathological features of the tumor are similar in both endemic and AIDS-associated cases, with proliferating “spindle cells” thought to be the primary abnormality, including thin-walled neovascular formations, extravasated red blood cells, and inflammatory lymphocytes.

5.3.2. Primary Effusion Lymphoma

This lymphoma is a rare, distinct subtype of NHL morphologically resembling immunoblastic and anaplastic large-cell lymphomas. A B-cell origin is suspected based on clonal immunoglobulin gene rearrangement. Although first recognized in association with AIDS, cases have also been reported in HIV-negative individuals. Like KS, these tumors always contain HHV-8.

6. HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUS

The malignant papillomatous tumors induced in cottontail rabbits by the Shope papillomavirus serve as a valuable model for papillomavirus-associated carcinogenesis (73). The presence of papillomaviruses in humans, or HPV, has been recognized in association with warts of various sites (74,75). Over 70 HPV types have been identified, each sharing less than 90% homology in the nucleotide sequence of specific regions of the genome (E6, E7, and L1 open reading frames) (76). Each type appears to be associated with specific clinical lesions, but not all types are associated with cancer. HPV types strongly associated with cancer are often referred as “high-risk” types (type 16, 18, 31, and 33 among others), while others are classified as “low-risk” types. The genomic DNA of high-risk HPVs can immortalize primary human genital keratinocytes, the normal host cells for the HPVs (77–79). Because of the virus’ tropism for squamous epithelial cells, most cancers associated with HPV are of epithelial origin.

6.1. Molecular Biology

HPVs are small, nonenveloped DNA viruses that have a circular double-stranded genome of approximately 8000 bp. Only one DNA strand is transcribed. The HPV genome consists of three distinct sections, the early, late, and long control regions (LCRs). The early region (E) encodes viral proteins involved in viral DNA replication, transcriptional regulation, and cellular transformation. Within this region, the E2 gene encodes a viral regulatory factor that represses the promoter for transcription of the E6 and E7 genes (80,81). The late region (L) encodes the two viral capsid proteins. The LCR, with no apparent open reading frame, contains cis elements of the viral
genome required for viral DNA replication and gene expression. The HPV genome is generally maintained as an episome in benign precancerous lesions, but integration into the host DNA frequently accompanies carcino- genic progression of these lesions. Viral integration occurs at multiple sites throughout the host genome, although it is unclear whether integration near protooncogenes such as c-myc is relevant for oncogenesis.

6.2. Epidemiology and Biomarkers of HPV Infection

HPV infection is common worldwide although seroprevalence varies, ranging from <5% in Europe to nearly 50% in Africa in asymptomatic women with normal Pap smears (82). While less data are available on men, HPV seroprevalence appears to be similar in both sexes. Seroprevalence is higher among younger than older individuals, indicating that the infection may resolve over time.

Although HPV infection in particular tissues (e.g., cervical scrapings) can be detected by the presence of DNA sequences with polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays, such methods are less suitable than serological assays for large population studies. However, different HPV types generally cannot be distinguished by available serologic assays because of cross reactivity between types, which presents a major challenge for epidemiological studies. A new ELISA assay utilizing HPV-16 virus-like particles (VLPs) is a promising specific approach for detecting HPV-16 infection serologically.

6.3. HPV-Associated Malignancies in Humans

HPVs are found in over 90% of all invasive cervical cancers, the leading cause of cancer death in women in developing countries. Other anogenital cancers (e.g., anal, vulvar, and penile) are also strongly associated with HPV infection. These cancers share similar anatomic features, pathology, and associations with sexual behavior. In addition, HPV is found in some rare types of skin cancer, including cases associated with immune suppression.

In cervical cancer, integration of the HPV genome precedes the clonal outgrowth of the tumor, indicating that the virus plays an essential role in the malignant progression to cancer. Disruption of the E1 or E2 regulatory genes of HPV-16 results in an increased immortalization capacity of the viral genome (81). Not surprisingly, expression of E1 and E2 is frequently absent in HPV-transformed cells, whereas the E6 and E7 genes are selectively retained and highly expressed.

The E6 and E7 protein products act together to immortalize primary human cells (82–84). E6 of high-risk HPV types complexes with the tumor suppressor protein p53 (85), and reduces the steady state levels of p53 (86,87). On the other hand, E7 protein of high-risk HPV interacts with the tumor suppressor protein pRB and related proteins, leading to their
destabilization and modulation of the E2F family of transcription factors. Thus, by disrupting a regulatory network, E7 causes overexpression of E2F, which results in cell cycle progression and induced morphological changes. E7 also interacts with the AP-1 family of transcription factors and the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors (CKIs) to further disrupt the cell cycle.

7. HEPATITIS B VIRUS AND HEPATITIS C VIRUS

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) was one of the first DNA viruses found to be associated with human cancer. HBV is associated with acute and chronic hepatitis, liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Chronic sequelae of HBV infection are highest in carriers who had been infected during childhood (88), while symptoms of acute infection are more likely to manifest in persons who are infected later in life.

The pathogenesis of HCV is distinct from that of HBV in that the former is associated with a variety of systemic autoimmune diseases, such as mixed cryoglobulinemia, in addition to liver disease. While HCV infection alone does not appear to suppress the host’s immune response, there is some evidence that HCV infection may compound preexisting cellular immune suppression among persons with HTLV-I infection (89), and may accelerate the progression of liver diseases.

7.1. Molecular Biology

HBV is a partially double-stranded DNA virus and replicates through an RNA intermediate by the use of a reverse transcriptase (90). The HBV genome is circular, 3200 kb in length, and consists of four partially overlapping reading frames. The virus predominantly infects hepatocytes and establishes persistent infection. The virus can integrate into the host DNA, which is an important step in viral oncogenesis, although it is uncertain whether integration occurs in acute infection.

HCV, on the other hand, is a positive-sense, single-stranded RNA virus, without reverse transcriptase. Unlike HBV, the virus does not integrate into the host genome (91). The large single open reading frame encodes a polypeptide precursor of roughly 3000 amino acids. Viral isolates from different geographical regions significantly differ. Multiple subtypes and quasispecies may exist in an individual at the same time.

7.2. Epidemiology and Biomarkers of HBV and HCV Infections

HBV infection can be detected by the presence of surface antigen (HBsAg), envelope antigen (HBeAg) and antibody (HBeAb), and core antibody (HBCAb). High titer (>212) of HBCAb is often reflective of perinatally acquired infection and usually chronic carriage of HBV. Antibody to
surface antigen (HBsAb), on the other hand, may result from immunization against HBV, and thus is not a suitable marker of natural infection. The prevalence of HBV varies geographically. The highest rates (>8%) are seen in China, Southeast Asia, and sub-Saharan Africa, while the lowest rates (<2%) are found in western Europe, North and South America, and Australia. Intermediate prevalences (2–8%) are found in eastern and southern Europe, the Middle East, Japan, and south Asia. Perinatal infection will result in chronic carriage of HBV in more than 90% of infected children, while acquisition later in life will result in chronic carriage in only about 10% of infected persons.

HCV infection can be detected by third-generation antibody assays as well as by more sensitive branched DNA- or PCR-based methods. Approximately 0.5–2% of the general population is seropositive for HCV worldwide. In addition, pockets of high prevalence have been reported in Japan, where up to 10–20% of the population is infected (92,93). The major route of transmission appears to be parenteral exposure to contaminated blood and needles (94), although sexual transmission also may play a role (92). It is thought that about 85% of those infected with HCV will develop a persistent infection, although most remain asymptomatic (95).

7.3. HBV- and HCV-Associated Malignancies in Humans

Random integration of HBV could function as a tumor initiator, promoter, and/or progressor in a given patient (96). HBV is thought to cause cancer indirectly through chronic inflammation. The virus may also affect growth-controlling genes at distant sites by transactivation, as is the case with HTLV-I. The protein product of a truncated sequence of the pre-S2/S region of HBV transactivates the \textit{c-myc} promoter in vitro (97). HBV X-protein, on the other hand, increases transcription of \textit{c-fos} and \textit{c-myc} (98) and activates the transcription factor AP-1 through which many oncogenes function (99). HBV X also binds to p53 and blocks p53-mediated apoptosis (100). Mutations of p53 have been found in over 60% of HCC cases, but such mutations are likely a late event that primarily affects cancer progression (101).

The mechanisms by which HCV causes HCC are less understood. This nonintegrating virus is less likely than HBV to serve as an initiator, but rather, indirectly through cirrhosis and inflammation, may function as a promoter in the development of HCC (102). Coinfection with both HCV and HBV may have a synergistic effect on hepatic carcinogenesis (103). In cases of HCV-associated HCC, p53 has been found to be overexpressed only in the less-differentiated area of the tumor, indicating that p53 contributes to dedifferentiation during tumor progression (104). Many HCC cases also have mutations of the \textit{RB} tumor suppressor gene.
7.3.1. Hepatocellular Carcinoma

The association of HBV with HCC was first recognized (105) through detection of HBsAg in sera from HCC patients, and confirmed by many others around the world (96,106,107). HCC cells have multiple integrated copies of the HBV genome, but no common integration site has been identified (108). Early age of infection is an important risk factor for the development of HCC among chronic HBV carriers (109–111). It is estimated that 60% of liver cancer worldwide may be attributable to chronic HBV infection, with the proportion much higher in developing countries than in industrialized nations (112).

It is not known whether cancer risk is age-dependent in the case of HCV-associated HCC. Overall, about one-fourth of liver cancer cases worldwide are estimated to be attributable to HCV (112). Over 70% of HBV-negative HCC cases have anti-HCV antibodies. Seventy to 95% of HCV-seropositive HCC patients also have a detectable level of serum HCV RNA by PCR (113). HCV RNA also is detectable in up to two-thirds of HCV-antibody negative HCC patients (114), indicating that a high proportion of HCC cases in endemic areas may be attributable to HCV. Interestingly, the incidence of HCC in Japan has doubled in the past 25 years, mostly due to HCV-associated cases (115). In endemic areas such as Japan, Greece, and Singapore, the estimated mortality from HCC is approximately 15–25 per 100,000 per year in men, but only 5–7 per 100,000 per year in women (116). The incidence of HCC is much higher in Japanese men (greater than 22 per 100,000) than in Caucasian men in the United States (less than 0.6 per 100,000), although the general population prevalence of HCV is similar (~1%) in the two countries. The reasons for this difference are uncertain, but environmental exposures, such as alcohol and smoking behavior and genetic factors, may each play a role.

8. CONCLUSIONS

Approximately 10–15% of newly diagnosed cancer cases worldwide are estimated to be attributable to infectious agents (112,117,118). The estimated proportion is twice as high in developing countries as compared to that in developed countries (112). These estimated proportions may be on the rise, as new infectious agents of uncertain pathogenesis continue to be identified every year. Furthermore, infectious causes have been speculated for some chronic diseases associated with malignancies, including ulcerative colitis, Crohn’s disease, rheumatoid arthritis, sarcoidosis, and multiple sclerosis. These observations raise the possibility that the proportion of cancer attributable to infectious agents may become even higher as the underlying etiologies of these diseases unfold. With the aging trends of the world’s population, infectious agents and viruses in particular are increasingly important causes of malignancy.
REFERENCES


71. Granovsky MO, Mueller BU, Nicholson HS, Rosenberg PS, Rabkin CS. Cancer in human immunodeficiency virus-infected children: a case series from the
95. Alter HJ. To C or not to C: these are the questions. Blood 1995; 85:1681–1685.


Uncertainty in the Estimation of Radiation-Related Cancer Risk

Charles E. Land

Radiation Epidemiology Branch, Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

1. OVERVIEW

Ionizing radiation is an established and well-quantified cancer risk factor, based on a large body of experimental and epidemiological studies. The application of quantitative estimates of radiation-related risk must take into account a number of differences between the exposures and populations on which the estimates are based and those exposures and populations of immediate interest. This problem is discussed in the context of quantitative uncertainty analysis, a method that is increasingly being applied to areas related to radiation risk protection, and relies on the recent work of several expert committees involved in issues of radiation protection. Particular issues discussed are uncertainties and biases associated with dose reconstruction error in studied populations, transfer of estimates between populations with different baseline cancer rates, low-dose extrapolation of risk estimates, and projection to different qualities of radiation. Depending on the application, taking account of these and other uncertainties can substantially change estimates of risk and their associated uncertainties.
2. INTRODUCTION

A history of exposure to ionizing radiation is an established human cancer risk factor in the sense that, for cancer sites making up the majority of the human cancer burden, there is solid scientific evidence of increased risk associated with high levels of exposure. Some level of exposure to ionizing radiation is unavoidable, e.g., from natural background, and there are undeniable benefits associated with many medical and industrial uses of radiation. The human evidence on risk is based on epidemiological studies of populations exposed for medical and occupational reasons and, especially, on follow-up studies of a large cohort of atomic bomb survivors from Hiroshima and Nagasaki, Japan. There is also a substantial body of research in experimental radiobiology. The experimental evidence is particularly informative about variation in effect as a function of the amount and quality of radiation energy deposited in tissue and its distribution in time and space, and as a function of time following exposure, for different animal models. Although radiation-related cancer risk is among the most comprehensively documented risks associated with a common environmental carcinogen, estimates are subject to considerable uncertainty, which must be taken into account in any activity where radiation-related risk is a consideration. Some of this uncertainty is observational in nature and can be quantified on the basis of statistical data analyses. However, the analyses are usually conditional upon assumptions that are themselves uncertain. Quantitative uncertainty analysis involves an assessment of all the uncertainties involved in risk estimation, many of which may require subjective input based on expert judgment, and the cumulative effect of all these uncertainties on estimated risk and its policy implications. A more detailed discussion of this methodology as applied to radiation-related risk can be found in reports of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) (1,2) the Environmental Protection Agency (3), the Colorado State Health Department (4), and the National Cancer Institute (NCI) and Centers for disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (5). The present paper illustrates some, but not all, of the uncertain factors that need to be taken into account when applying our knowledge of ionizing radiation effects to radiation protection and informed consent.

3. IONIZING RADIATION

The term “radiation” covers the electromagnetic spectrum, which includes static fields like the earth’s magnetic field, fields generated by 50- or 60-cycle alternating currents, radio waves, microwaves, infrared, visible, and ultra-violet (UV) light, and ionizing radiation, which has the highest frequencies and energies. It is well established that exposure to the more energetic wavelengths, like UV light and ionizing radiation, is associated with increased risk of cancer at certain sites. Ionizing radiation is sufficiently energetic to
remove electrons from atoms, creating ions that are highly reactive with other molecules, and thus may weaken or disrupt chemical bonds. If that disruption occurs in the genetical material of a somatic cell, and is not properly repaired, a possible outcome is a mutation that may contribute to the process of carcinogenesis. A more usual outcome is cell death, which is why ionizing radiation is used successfully to treat some kinds of cancer.

Radiation dose, corresponding to the amount of energy absorbed per unit volume of tissue, is expressed in units of gray (Gy). However, some types of radiation, such as neutrons and alpha particles, produce patterns of ionizing events that are more dense, and therefore more likely to cause lasting damage, than more sparsely ionizing forms of radiation such as x rays and gamma rays. The concept of “dose equivalent,” expressed in sieverts (Sv), was introduced to facilitate comparison of exposures involving different types of ionizing radiation, alone or mixed, in terms of likely biological effect.

Ionizing radiation is ubiquitous and cannot be avoided altogether, but exposure is to some extent controllable. All of us are exposed, all of the time, to cosmic rays from the sun and stars, terrestrial radiation from rocks, soil, and building materials, naturally occurring radioactive isotopes incorporated in our tissues (mainly potassium and carbon), and, by inhalation, radon and its decay products (Table 1). Radon itself results from the decay of radium in the soil and accumulates inside buildings and other closed spaces, especially if ventilation is poor. Levels of environmental radiation depend on altitude, geology, and how we construct our dwellings. For most organs, the average yearly environmental dose equivalent\(^{*}\) is about 1 mSv; for the lung it is about 15 times as high due to alpha radiation from inhaled radon and its decay products (6).

Ionizing radiation is used extensively in medicine, for imaging and therapy. On the average, annual doses from diagnostic x ray are comparable to natural background radiation (Table 2) (7) Chest x-ray doses are very low, and breast tissue dose from a two-view film-screen mammography is somewhat higher than annual background. Therapeutic radiation, on the other hand, can reach dose levels thousands to tens of thousands of times higher than those from natural background to affected tissues, and can pose substantial risks of treatment-related cancer occurring years afterward. The trade-off is a chance of survival from the current cancer or disease, in

\(^{*}\) “Dose” of ionizing radiation expresses the energy absorbed per unit volume of tissue. “Dose equivalent” is used when different types of ionizing radiation are quantified on a common scale in terms of biological effectiveness. Thus, in the present discussion, a dose of 100 mGy of neutrons is assumed to have the same carcinogenic effectiveness as 1000 mGy of gamma ray; both therefore correspond to a dose equivalent of 1000 mSv. In the present discussion, dose when expressed in millisieverts should be understood to mean dose equivalent.
exchange for the possibility that, if successful, the treatment may produce another cancer later. That trade-off is also associated with treatment modalities other than radiation. Collimation, shielding, fractionation of exposure, and other protective measures often can be used to reduce subsequent risk without compromising on the therapeutic benefit.

3.1. Evaluation of Risk

Ionizing radiation is a proven and well-quantified cancer risk factor, but there is variation by organ site and histological subtype. The primary basis for risk assessment is epidemiological data from exposed populations. These include patient populations exposed to therapeutic and diagnostic radiation, occupationally defined cohorts like radiologists, uranium miners, and nuclear industry workers, and (notably) survivors of the atomic bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki, Japan. The last group is particularly important because it is a representative Japanese urban population in 1945, unselected for disease, and exposed at the same instant to acute doses of mixed gamma

Table 1  Annual Average Exposure to Ionizing Radiation from the Environment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Average yearly dose equivalent (mSv)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cosmic rays</td>
<td>0.3–0.5, depending on altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocks and soil</td>
<td>0.15–1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naturally occurring radionuclides in the body</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhaled radionuclides (radon, thoron, and their decay products)</td>
<td>15, to the lung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2  Organ-Specific Radiation Dose (X-ray) from Common Radiological Examinations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Dose (mGy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cervical spine</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar spine</td>
<td>1.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper gastrointestinal</td>
<td>2.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdomen</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvis</td>
<td>0.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skull</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Film screen mammogram, two films, with grid (breast dose)</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and neutron radiation ranging from near zero to near lethal levels. Moreover, the population has been followed over time since 1950 for mortality at the level of death certificate diagnosis (8) and since 1958 for cancer morbidity as monitored by high-quality tumor registries in Hiroshima and Nagasaki (9,10). Evaluation of these data is influenced by a large body of experimental research in radiation biology.

The most informative data pertain to observations of cancer risk following exposure to radiation doses in the range 0.2–5 Gy (or neutron-weighted dose from mixed gamma–neutron radiation in the range 0.2–5 Sv), because at such levels the radiation-related excess risk can often (but not always) be distinguished statistically from the normal random variation in baseline cancer risk. Above 5 Gy (5 Sv), acute, whole-body exposures are usually lethal, whereas below 0.1 Sv, inferences may be severely constrained by lack of statistical power and by possible confounding from unknown or uncontrolled risk factors whose carcinogenic influences may be greater than those of low-dose radiation exposure. Moreover, radiation protection procedures already limit exposure [current International Commission on Radiation Protection (ICRP) recommendations (11) are no more than 20 mSv/year from occupational exposures and 2 mSv/year to the general public], and nontherapeutic exposures greater than 0.1 Sv are extremely rare in the general population. Thus, except for accidents and for medical procedures, the more controversial applications of risk estimates are to exposures that are considerably lower than those at which risk can be estimated directly.

Cancer risk can be expressed in absolute terms, as a rate or excess rate (e.g., cases per 10^5 persons per year), or in relative terms as a multiple of the baseline cancer rate. Figure 1 shows estimates of relative risk (RR) for solid cancer morbidity (all cancers except leukemia) during 1958–1987 among, members of the Life Span Study (LSS) population of atomic bomb survivors of both sexes and all ages combined, by interval of neutron-weighted whole-body dose (colon dose is assumed here to represent average dose to all tissues combined). Weighted dose is expressed in sieverts and reflects a 10-fold weight assigned to dose from neutrons compared to gamma rays, originally expressed in grays. Figure 1 also shows a fitted linear dose–response function with 90% confidence limits and a fitted quadratic function of dose which suggests a sub-linear dose–response at high dose levels (p < 0.07). The values in Figs. 1 and 2 were computed by the present author from LSS tumor registry data available from the Radiation Effects Research Foundation (RERF) website (12), using the AMFIT algorithm of the EPICURE statistical package (13).

Figure 2 illustrates the effect of fitting successive linear dose–responses based on data sets from which the higher-dose data have been progressively trimmed. Trimming observations at doses above 3 Sv increased the linear-model estimate, but there was no major change, except for a gradual widening of confidence bounds, until all the data above 0.2 Sv had been trimmed. The two estimates on the left, representing observations at 0–50 and
0–0.2 Sv, respectively, are substantially lower than the estimates based on higher-dose data, but the confidence limits of these estimates are very wide, and there is no lack of statistical consistency among the estimates. Excess risk clearly is proportional to dose over a wide dose range, and there is no clear epidemiological or statistical reason (although there may be other reasons) why the fitted, linear dose–response should not hold at lower as well as higher doses.

3.1.1. Statistical Evidence Concerning Radiation-Related Excess Risk

Cancer risk among atomic bomb survivors increases significantly with increasing radiation dose. This statement implies, and is implied by, the observation that the lower confidence bound for the fitted linear dose–response curve in Figure 1 increases with increasing dose. Another way of putting it is that it is unlikely that radiation exposure among atomic bomb survivors is not associated with increased cancer risk. The lower confidence bound on the dose–response in Figure 1 implies more than statistical significance. It also implies, for example, that a dose-related excess relative risk (ERR) less than 0.5 at 1 Sv is unlikely. Similarly, the upper confidence

Figure 1  Dose-specific relative risk estimates, with dose <5 mSv as the referent. Exposed members of the RERF Life-Span Study population, all solid cancers combined. Error bars correspond to 90% confidence limits. The solid lines represent a fitted linear dose–response with 90% confidence limits; the dashed line represents a fitted quadratic dose–response function that does not fit significantly better than the linear dose–response (p = 0.07).
bound implies that it is unlikely that the ERR at 1 Sv is greater than 0.7. If one should wish to argue that a certain radiation dose is “unsafe,” in the sense that the risk is greater than some agreed, “tolerable” limit, an argument based on the lower confidence bound (e.g., “the lifetime cancer risk associated with a 0.1 Sv exposure is unlikely to be less than 2 per 100 exposed persons”) would have more logical force than one based on the central estimate or on the upper bound. Conversely, an argument that another radiation dose is “safe,” in the sense that risk is less than a presumably tolerable limit, would have more force if based on the upper confidence bound (e.g., “the lifetime risk associated with a 5 mSv exposure is unlikely to be greater than 1 per 1000”).

3.1.2. Factors Affecting Radiation Dose–Response

The most thoroughly studied modifiers of radiation-related risk are factors that are almost always obtainable with information about exposure and disease incidence or mortality: sex, age at exposure, age at observation for risk, and time following exposure. Aside from cancers of gender-specific organs, age-specific baseline cancer rates of other organs often differ between men and women. Some of this may reflect differential exposure to cancer risk.
factors such as tobacco smoke, alcohol, and carcinogens in the workplace. Dose-specific ERR estimates for thyroid cancer and female breast cancer, among others, vary inversely with age at exposure, whereas age at observation appears to be a more important modifier of risk for cancers of the lung and colon (10). Leukemia risk [the combination of all types excluding chronic lymphoblastic leukemia (CLL)] clearly depends on both age at exposure and time following exposure (14).

Continuing with the data used to obtain Figures 1 and 2, excess relative risk of all solid cancers combined among atomic bomb survivors can be modeled as a linear function of neutron-weighted dose in sieverts times an exponential term that expresses modification by sex, exposure age, and attained age:

\[ ERR(D, s, e, a) = aD \exp(\beta s + \gamma e + \delta a) \]

where \( a, \beta, \gamma, \) and \( \delta \) are unknown parameters, \( D \) is the dose, \( s = -1 \) for males and +1 for females, \( e = \) age at exposure minus 40 for exposure age < 40 and zero for exposure age \( \geq 40 \), and \( a = \log(\text{age}/60) \) for age < 60 and zero for age \( \geq 60 \). [This model, according to which estimated risk for a population equally distributed by sex does not vary by exposure age over 40 or attained age over 60, was chosen for this presentation in part because it gives a particularly simple description of risk at older ages, but in fact it fits these particular data somewhat better than a more conventional (in the radiation literature) model in which radiation-related risk continues to decline exponentially with exposure age \( >40 \) and as a power function of attained age \( >60 \), according to calculations carried out by the author for this report.]

If we use \( E_1 \) to denote the estimated ERR per sievert for solid cancer risk at age 60 or older following an exposure at age 40 or older, in an exposed population with equal numbers of men and women, the statistical uncertainty of \( E_1 \) is obtained from the statistical likelihood function for the parameter \( a \) (Fig. 3, left-hand panel). That uncertainty distribution is approximately normal on the logarithmic scale and, therefore, on the arithmetic scale, approximately lognormal, with geometric mean (GM) 0.334 and geometric standard deviation (GSD) 1.167 (Fig. 3, right-hand panel). The arithmetic mean of this distribution is 0.34, and the 5th and 95th percentiles are 0.26 and 0.43, respectively.

3.1.3. Risk Estimate Based on Statistical Information Only

According to the 1973–1996 SEER Cancer Statistics Review (15), the likelihood of eventually being diagnosed with a solid cancer, given that this has not occurred by age 50, is about 44.3% for U.S. males and 35.3% for U.S. females, or about 39.8% for a population composed of equal numbers of 50-year-old males and females (to simplify, we will ignore the uncertainties of this and other SEER estimates, and treat the estimated values as
known quantities). The values for a comparable population at age 60 are 35.3% for males and 31.9% for females. Because the rate of survival from age 50 to age 60 differs between males and females (92% and 95%, respectively) (16) the lifetime solid cancer rate from 60 onward for a 50-year-old population evenly distributed by sex would be \((0.92/92 + 0.95/95) = 2^\text{¼} \approx 31.4\%\). Assuming a whole-body radiation exposure at age 50, and allowing for a 10 year minimum latent period for radiation-related cancer (and ignoring the uncertainty of that assumption), the cancer consequence, per unit dose in sieverts, would be estimated as an increment in lifetime risk of about 31.4 times 0.34 \text{¼} 11\% times dose in sieverts. For a dose of 0.01 Sv, that would be an excess lifetime risk of 0.11\% or a total lifetime risk of about 39.8\% + 0.11\% = 39.9\% (the likelihood that an early death from a radiation-related cancer would preclude later diagnosis of a non-radiation-related cancer is sufficiently small, at 0.01 Sv, to be ignored). According to the statistical uncertainty distribution in Fig. 3, an excess risk less than 31.4 times 0.26 times 0.01 \text{¼} 0.08\%, or greater than 31.4 times 0.43 times 0.01 = 0.13\%, is unlikely in the sense that such an excess is inconsistent with the statistical data.

### 3.1.4. Other Relevant Information

We know more about radiation-related cancer risk than is contained in the data used to obtain Figure 3. There is additional information on a number of other important factors that need to be taken into consideration when
estimating radiation-related cancer risk in different populations and exposure situations, information which affects both estimated risk and its uncertainty. The information is objective in nature and is a part of a broad scientific consensus among investigators in this field, yet (unlike the statistical information summarized in Figure 4) its quantitative expression, particularly with respect to uncertainty, is largely subjective and, therefore, may vary by investigator. The important thing, however, is that the process is transparent: alternative subjective uncertainty distributions may be proposed, justified, and substituted into the calculations, and the results compared with those presented here.

3.1.5. Dosimetric Factors

Figure 3 and the related risk estimates discussed above apply to survivors of the atomic bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. They depend on the data and algorithms used to estimate individual doses among A-bomb survivors, and possible biases and uncertainties in dose reconstruction for that population are sources of additional uncertainty for application of the estimates to other populations. The uncertain factors include source terms for the neutron and gamma-ray components of dose from the Hiroshima and Nagasaki bombs and information about the location of individual survivors and their shielding by buildings and terrain. An NCRP committee (2) evaluating this question judged that the effect of these factors might be to underestimate gamma-ray dose, and thus overestimate excess risk per unit dose by an uncertain amount. The committee developed a partly subjective, uncertain
correction factor determined by Monte Carlo simulation to be approximately normally distributed with mean 0.84 and standard deviation 0.11 (Fig. 4, left-hand panel). The right-hand panel of Figure 4 shows the results of a Monte Carlo simulation to describe the effect, on the uncertainty distribution in Figure 3, of applying the uncertain correction factor represented in the left-hand panel of the figure. Since estimated risk is a multiple of dose, the correction involves multiplying an uncertain risk estimate by an uncertain dose correction factor. If we use $E_2$ to denote $E_1$ adjusted for dose reconstruction error, the uncertainty distribution of $E_2$ is approximately log-normal with GM = 0.28 and GSD = 1.22. The mean of that uncertainty distribution is 0.29 and the 5th and 95th percentiles are 0.20 and 0.39, respectively; thus, the adjusted central risk estimate is $31.4\% \times 0.29 \times 0.01 = 0.09\%$, with 90% probability limits 0.06% and 0.12%.

3.1.6. Transfer of Risk Coefficients Between Populations

According to statistics for the combined SEER tumor registries in the United States and the Hiroshima and Nagasaki tumor registries in Japan (17), age-standardized (world) cancer rates for all solid cancers combined, excluding skin, are about 30% higher in the United States than in the (present day) populations of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. For female breast cancer, U.S. rates are threefold higher, while for stomach cancer U.S. rates are only one-tenth as high as those in Japan. These differences complicate the problem of transferring estimates of radiation-related risk from the A-bomb survivors to a U.S. population, because different transfer rules give different results. Suppose, for example, that a certain radiation exposure at age 10 (say) is thought to increase breast cancer rates by 50% at all subsequent ages among the A-bomb survivors. Then the total (baseline plus excess) lifetime breast cancer risk would be 1.5 times the baseline, or about 6 (as against 4 in the absence of exposure) per 100 exposed, female A-bomb survivors. Applying the same multiplicative factor to U.S. rates would yield about 18 lifetime cases per 100, compared to 12 in the absence of exposure. If we knew that radiation acts primarily as an early-stage carcinogen and that the higher breast cancer rates in the U.S. population reflect greater exposure to later-stage factors that cause or allow cells affected by early-stage carcinogens to progress to cancer, a multiplicative transfer of risk would be logical. If, on the other hand, the U.S. population is more heavily exposed to other early-stage carcinogens that act much the same as radiation, we might just as logically assume that the differences, rather than the ratios, between breast cancer rates in exposed and nonexposed women should be the same in the United States and Japan and that the ERR per sievert for Americans would be one-third the value for the A-bomb survivors. In that case, the estimated lifetime rate among exposed American women would be about 14 per 100.
As it happens, combined analyses of breast cancer risks in A-bomb survivors and medically irradiated populations (18) suggest that the additive transfer model is more nearly correct for radiation-related breast cancer, but for most cancers we have very little guidance on the risk transfer problem. There are a number of cancer sites, notably stomach, liver, and prostate gland, for which age-specific baseline rates differ by an order of magnitude or more between the United States and Japan. With the possible exceptions of stomach (20) and liver (21), we have almost no information about which one, if either, of the two simple transfer models is correct. A reasonable presumption is that the truth is somewhere between them. Expert committees (2,3,5) have considered the problem and come up with different approaches involving subjectively weighted mixtures of additive and multiplicative transfer. The NCI/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) committee (5) reasoned that, because of the almost total lack of information for the vast majority of cancer sites, on transfer of estimated radiation-related cancer risk between populations with different baseline cancer rates, equal allowance might be made for all linear combinations of additive and multiplicative transfer of the form, in this case multiplying estimated ERR_{Sv} by \( \frac{1}{1.3} = 0.769 \) for additive transfer: \( T = u + (1 - u)/1.3 \), for \( u \) between 0 and 1, with a very small weight given to \( u \) as low as \( \frac{-0.1}{1.3} \) or as high as \( 1.1 \) (Fig. 5). The right-hand panel of Figure 5 shows the simulated uncertainty distribution of ERR per sievert for solid cancer morbidity risk after correction for both dose reconstruction error and transfer from the A-bomb survivors to a general U.S. population (call it \( E_3 \), or \( E_2 \) adjusted for transfer). The simulated distribution in Fig. 5 is approximately lognormal with \( \text{GM} = 0.24 \) and \( \text{GSD} = 1.25 \), with mean 0.25, and 5th and 95th percentiles.

![Figure 5](image_url)

**Figure 5** Effect of adjustment for uncertainty in transferring ERR/Sv from a Japanese to a U.S. population, given that age-standardized (world) solid cancer rates are 30% higher in the United States than in Japan. The uncertain transfer model is ERR/Sv(U.S.) = ERR/Sv(Japan) × (1 - U + U/1.3), where the subjective uncertainty distribution of the random quantity \( U \) is given in the left-hand panel (5). The right-hand panel shows the simulated uncertainty distribution of ERR/Sv(U.S.) and its lognormal approximation.
0.17 and 0.35, respectively. The adjusted risk estimate is 0.08% with 90% probability limits 0.05% and 0.11%.

3.2. Extrapolation to Low Doses and Low Dose Rates

As mentioned earlier, one of the most difficult and controversial risk estimation problems is the extent to which estimates of ERR per unit dose based on high-dose data apply to low-dose exposures. Based on findings from experimental radiation biology, the ICRP (11) has recommended dividing linear-model risk estimates by a “dose and dose rate effectiveness factor” (DDREF) of 2 for sparsely ionizing radiation at acute doses under 200 mSv or chronic exposures at any dose level delivered at dose rates less than 6 mGy/h, and this recommendation was also accepted by the NCRP. In their most recent discussion of the application of DDREF, the United Nations Subcommittee on Effects of Atomic Radiation (22) recommended that the chosen DDREF be applied to chronic exposures (dose rates less than 6 mGy/h averaged over the first few hours) and to acute (high dose rate) exposures at total doses less than 0.2 Gy, a recommendation that was subsequently adopted by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA, 1999). More recently, however, in quantitative uncertainty analyses by expert committees (2–5) subjective uncertainty distributions for DDREF have been used that place substantial probability on DDREF values between 1 and 5 and, in two instances (4,5) some probability on values less than 1. These new uncertainty distributions reflect new information from epidemiological studies, like that in Figs. 1 and 2, suggesting the possibility of DDREF values near 1. Figure 6 shows the discrete subjective uncertainty distribution for DDREF used by the NCI/CDC committee (5), and the
right-hand panel shows the effect of the DDREF factor on the adjusted estimate (call it $E_4$) of ERR/Sv, and its uncertainty distribution, in Fig. 5. The new uncertainty distribution is roughly lognormal with $\text{GM} = 0.15$ and $\text{GSD} = 1.63$. The mean is 0.17 and the 5th and 95th percentiles are 0.07 and 0.34, corresponding to an adjusted risk estimate of 0.05%, with 90% probability limits 0.02%–0.11%.

3.2.1. Extrapolation from High-Energy to Lower-Energy Photons

It is well known, from experimental radiobiology, that different types of radiation vary in their effectiveness as agents for somatic damage to cellular DNA and therefore as contributors to carcinogenesis. Most uses of medical x-ray produce photons with energies in the 30–250 keV range. The biological effectiveness of such radiation per unit dose, at low doses and dose rates, is thought to be greater than that of higher-energy photons. The risk estimates, and their uncertainty distributions, discussed so far in the current example, pertain to fairly high-dose, acute exposures to sparsely ionizing radiation like that received from the atomic bombs, mainly photons at energy levels greater than 250 keV. In a report commissioned by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Kocher et al. (23) proposed an uncertainty distribution for the biological effectiveness of 30–250 keV photons, relative to higher-energy photons, that assigned 25% probability to 1 (identical effectiveness) and 75% to a lognormal distribution with 2.5% probability assigned to values less than 1 (i.e., less effective than higher-energy photons), 2.5% to values greater than 5, and the central 95% to values between 1 and 5 (GM = 2.236, GSD = 1.508; Fig. 7, left-hand panel). The resulting uncertainty distribution for $E_5$, denoting ERR per

![Figure 7](image_url)

**Figure 7** Effect of extrapolation from high-energy photon radiation to 30–250 keV photons (e.g., diagnostic X ray). Left-hand panel: subjective uncertainty distribution derived by Kocher et al. (23) for the relative effectiveness of this type of radiation compared to higher-energy photons, e.g., from the atomic bombings. The right-hand panel shows the simulated uncertainty distribution for ERR/Sv of 30–250 keV photons delivered at low doses and/or low dose rates.
4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Most of what we know about radiation-related cancer risk is based on follow-up studies of atomic bomb survivors who were exposed acutely, in 1945, predominantly to high-energy gamma-ray photons with an admixture of neutrons. The dosimetric basis for these studies is somewhat uncertain, and this uncertainty should be taken into account when applying risk estimates based on the A-bomb survivor studies to other populations; another source of uncertainty is how to adjust for differences in baseline cancer rates between the United States and Japan. The most informative data from the A-bomb survivor studies pertain to neutron-weighted whole-body doses in excess of 0.2 Sv. Annual background radiation from natural sources is on the order of 0.001 Sv to most tissues and 0.015 Sv to the lungs. Partial-body exposures from therapeutic radiation for cancer treatment can be tens of sieverts, but the vast majority of radiation exposures in excess of background are from diagnostic medical x-ray, at doses well under 0.1 Sv (24). Thus, additional uncertainty is attached to extrapolation of risk estimates to low doses and to types of radiation qualitatively different from that affecting A-bomb survivors. These (and other) additional sources of uncertainty can be factored into the risk estimation process through the use of largely subjective uncertainty distributions for correction factors and propagation of error through analytical or simulation methods. Thus, the validity of conclusions reached in this way can be evaluated in terms of the reasonableness of the algorithms and uncertainty distributions employed, and by comparison with plausible alternative formulations.

The results of the current exercise are summarized in Table 3. Beginning with the statistical dose–response coefficient estimate $E_1$, the amount of change and additional uncertainty introduced by adjustment for dose reconstruction error and (because baseline rates for all solid cancers combined are not very different between Japan and the United States) population transfer were relatively minor. More substantial changes were associated with low-dose extrapolation and, especially, extrapolation from high-energy photons to 30–250 keV photons from medical x-ray.

Low-dose extrapolation has long been considered one of the most important unresolved questions for radiation risk protection. Table 3
suggests that a problem of equal importance is the relative effectiveness of medical x-ray vs. high-energy photons. It should be kept in mind that the statistical risk estimates and the uncertain correction factors presented here are representative of information available at the time of writing, and can be expected to change as newer information is developed. The present document is an illustration of a particular approach, quantitative uncertainty analysis, as it is being increasingly applied to estimation of radiation-related risk, and is in no way a definitive presentation of radiation-related risk.

REFERENCES


Table 3  Uncertain Estimates of Lifetime Excess Risk of Solid Cancer Following a Whole-Body, 10 mSv (0.01 Sv) Exposure to Sparsely Ionizing Radiation at Age 50, for a Population Evenly Distributed Between Males and Females

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Estimate</th>
<th>Sources of uncertainty</th>
<th>Estimate, % (90% limits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>Statistical uncertainty from dose–response analysis</td>
<td>0.10 (0.08–0.13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>E1 and dose reconstruction error</td>
<td>0.09 (0.06–0.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3</td>
<td>E2 and population transfer algorithm</td>
<td>0.10 (0.07–0.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E4</td>
<td>E3 and extrapolation to low doses and dose rates</td>
<td>0.07 (0.03–0.13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E5</td>
<td>E4 and extrapolation to 30–250 keV photons</td>
<td>0.14 (0.03–0.36)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Results of a quantitative uncertainty analysis
request from Judi Patt (pattj@mail.nih.gov) or, in pdf format, from http://www.irep.nci.gov/.


1. INTRODUCTION

This chapter is designed to provide an overview of occupational cancer, its causes, risks, and prevention. The subject is vast and extends into clinical, epidemiological, legal, toxicological, and ethical areas, among others. As a result, a complete discussion of this topic is beyond the scope of this chapter. It is intended, however, to be a basic resource on the subject for researchers, physicians, nurses, and other health professionals with a particular emphasis on biomarkers. The chapter includes a brief history of early occupational cancer, contemporary issues related to occupational cancer risks, and methods for determining such risks through epidemiological, animal and in vitro investigations. Sections on assessing risks of occupational cancer and its prevention follow, along with a discussion on addressing casual associations.

An occupational carcinogen can be any chemical, physical, or biologic agent that increases the risk of cancer associated with work. Although figures vary, approximately 2–8% of all human cancers may be due to exposure to occupational carcinogens (1–4). The proportion of cancers associated with certain occupations can be significantly higher (3–5). According to the National Occupational Research Agenda (NORA), about 10% of lung
cancers, 21–27% of bladder cancers, and up to 80% of mesotheliomas in the United States are related to occupational exposure to carcinogens. In workers sufficiently exposed to specific carcinogens, such as vinyl chloride, the percentage of site-specific cancer (i.e., angiosarcoma of the liver) approaches 100%.

The assessment of risk associated with certain types of work and agents is not only challenging but also incomplete. As many as 6 million chemicals and approximately 4 million chemical mixtures are registered with the Chemical Abstracts Service and in commercial use. More than 50,000 chemicals are used regularly, but fewer than 1000 chemicals or work settings have been assessed in some way for their potential to cause cancer (3,6). An understanding of occupational cancer risk, however, has implications not only for the workplace but also for public and environmental health. In fact, public health policy is often based on occupational studies, despite limitations in extrapolations of the data. The workplace represents a unique environment in which a relatively large number of people may be exposed to relatively high concentrations of potential carcinogens. From these workplace exposures, adverse health effects can be assessed and extrapolated to larger populations.

Occupational cancers are theoretically completely preventable with appropriate engineering controls, personnel practices, and the use of protective equipment. In fact, exposure to potential carcinogens can be vigorously controlled and often eliminated in many work settings. Often, the efforts associated with reducing exposure to occupational carcinogens have resulted in efficient improvements in the process. Controls can be extraordinarily effective in preventing occupational cancer. Witness, for example, the vinyl chloride industry. As a result of measures taken to lower exposure levels below 1 ppm, no case of angiosarcoma has occurred in a worker hired in North America or Western Europe since 1974. Nonetheless, millions of workers may be exposed to potential carcinogens. Continued prevention of cancers that may result from certain jobs, however, will require refined assessments of risk. Clinicians, in particular, can make substantial contributions to assessing risk by keeping a keen awareness of potential links between work and illness and making note of them as appropriate.

2. HISTORY

A detailed history of occupational cancer is available in other sources (7,8). Although the association between work and ill health dates back to Ramazzini, an Italian physician in the early 18th century, the first clear link between cancer and a specific cause is attributed to Sir Percival Pott who in the late 18th century identified soot as responsible for scrotal cancer in young British chimney sweeps. It was not until the 1930s to the 1940s, however, that the probable causative agent was identified as benzo(a)pyrene (BAP), one of the many carcinogens found in soots, tars, and cigarette smoke (9,10). The work of Pott represents more than a historical highlight, because it illustrates that occupational cancers—then and now—were
initially detected by astute physicians. In fact, nearly all occupational carcinogens were initially recognized in this manner (7,11).

The discovery of specific occupational carcinogens continued after Pott. In 1875, clinicians noted excess rates of skin cancer secondary to exposure to coal tar products, including mineral oils used in the Scottish shale and the English cotton industries (7). For centuries, miners suffered a multitude of breathing disorders associated with work. In 1879, Haerting and Hesse identified excess lung cancer among German uranium miners, although the potential contributions of arsenic and radioactive materials were yet to be recognized, until decades later. When large-scale uranium mining began in the United States in the late 1940s, it was finally recognized that radon caused lung cancer (7,10). The hazards of ionizing radiation were first reported in 1902, shortly after the discovery of x-rays when radiation-induced skin cancer was observed. Excess rates of leukemia occurred among radiologists and technicians, whereas excess rates of bone cancer (sarcomas) of the lower jaw were found among radium dial painters.

In 1948, Machle and Gregorius described an excess of lung cancer among chromate workers, and Hill and Fanning observed excess lung and skin cancer in a British arsenic factory (7). In 1955, Doll and Peto (12,13) published an epidemiological study associating asbestos with increased cancer of the lung; later, synergism between cigarette smoke and asbestos was reported.

In 1974, a cluster of angiosarcoma led to a proportional mortality study, a retrospective cohort study, and animal evaluations that uncovered vinyl chloride as a cause of liver cancer (14–16). In a similar fashion, exposure to bischloromethylether (BCME) was noted to increase risk of lung cancer among workers in the plexiglass industry.

By 1950, many occupational cancer risks recognized today had been discovered (Table 1), including bladder cancer among German dystuff workers (due to aniline dyes) and leukemia among Italian shoe workers exposed to benzene. Asbestos-related lung cancer was first reported in 1934; in 1947, Britain’s Chief Factory Inspector reported lung cancer in 31 of 235 men with asbestosis who died between 1924 and 1946 (10). In 1932, the first reports associating arsenic with lung cancer and nickel with sinonasal carcinoma appeared.

Eventually, the recognition of occupational cancer underwent a transition from clinical case reporting to more formal quantitative epidemiological studies. Such studies included proportional mortality analyses of death certificates, retrospective follow-up studies among exposed workers, case–control evaluations, and prospective assessments. Their role in evaluating potential workplace carcinogens will be described later in this chapter.

In the 1970s, a variety of Federal legislation was enacted, related to the formation of agencies charged with responsibilities for occupational and environmental health. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), are major examples.
3. IDENTIFYING CARCINOGENS

Currently, the process of identifying substances and occupations associated with cancer is performed by a variety of state, national, and international organizations. The International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC), the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, the U.S. Public Health Services’ National Toxicology Program (NTP), the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH), and OSHA are noteworthy examples. These organizations establish lists of hazards and occupations with carcinogenic potential. Hazard identification tends to be based on assessments of epidemiological and clinical reports, as well as animal research and in vitro studies. Each agency classifies carcinogens differently, with criteria varying considerably. Some organizations simply identify a hazard, whereas others propose or require occupational exposure limits. Such variability underscores the complexity of occupational risk assessment. Case reports, epidemiology, and animal investigations form the basis of scientific information used to identify occupational carcinogens. Their scope, benefits, and limitations in the occupational setting are described below.

3.1. Case Reports and Series

Case reports and case series describe the experience of a single patient (case report) or group of patients (case series). Usually, the case (or cases) represents a previously unrecognized health effect from exposure to a certain hazard or work in a particular industry. These types of reports often provide the first clue about potentially unrecognized effects of exposure to hazard-
ous agents and may prompt the need for a formal epidemiological study. Once suspected exposures are identified by a case series, the potential causal link between the exposure and the disease outcome can be formally tested through cohort studies. Case reports, although inexpensive and straightforward to prepare, are limited in their usefulness for drawing causal inferences. One obvious shortcoming is that the risk of exposure identified by a case series lacks an appropriate comparison group (17). Nonetheless, case reports have played an important role in the identification of occupational carcinogens and will likely continue to be of value as early warning signals.

3.2. Cohort Studies

A cohort study refers to an epidemiologic assessment designed to evaluate a potential occupational cancer risk. In a classic cohort study, the investigator defines two or more groups of people (the cohorts) that are free of disease and which differ only according to the extent of their exposure to a potential agent (18). One group represents the exposed individuals; the other (the reference group) represents those unexposed. Workers from a common industry or plant process are identified as the exposure group, then compared to a nonexposed group, often workers from the same factory or members of the general population. The vital status (alive or deceased) or disease status (ill or not, depending on criteria) of each group is noted. Both groups can then be followed over time (prospectively) for the development of disease(s). In another approach, the exposed and unexposed cohorts are identified through historical records (a retrospective study) and then evaluated through a designated date in the past.

Retrospective cohort studies (in which defined records are used to characterize the exposure and disease status until a designated date) are most commonly found in the occupational literature (19). A useful type of retrospective study is the cohort mortality study, in which a group of exposed workers is identified and then followed to a designated date; the vital status of each cohort member is then determined from death certificates or disease registries. The rates of death, including specific types, among the work cohort are compared to national or local rates. Results are described in terms of the standardized mortality ratio (SMR), which is calculated by dividing the number of observed cases (deaths or new cancers) among the exposed population by the number (actual or expected based on standardized disease rates) in the unexposed (control) group. Calculated SMRs are usually adjusted for known confounders through stratification by age, sex, year of birth, and race (19). The major limitations of this type of study is the quality of available data used in both the health or mortality assessment of the cohort and the categorization of exposure. Inaccurate or missing information can limit the validity of certain results. Nonetheless, over the past 25 years, cohort mortality studies have identified many occu-
pational carcinogens and have had a major impact on IARC’s identification of carcinogens. From some studies, individual dose estimates have been calculated to enhance risk assessments and the establishment of effective control limits.

When death certificates are available, but the characterization of the exposure is incomplete, a proportionate mortality ratio (PMR) study may be valuable for an early assessment of potential occupational cancer risk. The PMR, which compares distributions of the causes of death among a group in comparison to the general population, can be used to test an hypothesis (7,19,20). The PMR is calculated by comparing the ratio of each type of cancer to the total number of cancer and noncancer deaths in the exposed population with similar ratios in the reference population (3). Although this method can provide valuable preliminary information, the method has distinct drawbacks. The PMR, for example, does not include information on years of exposure. Its critical flaw, however, is that an apparent excess of cancer may only be a reflection of a deficit in another cause of death (19).

The prospective cohort design is the ideal epidemiological study for occupational cancer risk assessment. This study design, however, is seldom used due to cost and long latency of most occupational cancers, which can be 5–30 years or longer. These studies have the major benefit in that exposure to suspected carcinogens can be accurately assessed, whereas in retrospective studies exposure may need to be approximated.

3.3. Case–Control Studies

In a case–control study, subjects are selected on the basis of whether they do (cases) or do not (controls) have a designated disease (17). They can be conducted de novo or following a retrospective or proportional mortality study in which an excess risk of disease is noted. In case–control studies, when a types of cancers are identified their occupational exposure histories are compared to matched control groups. Case–control studies are particularly suited for evaluating rare diseases, such as some types of occupational cancer. Diseases with long latency periods can be assessed, since the disease has already occurred at the time of the study. The proper definition of the disease under study and the selection of cases and controls is critical to the value of case–control studies. In any case–control study, the disease outcome of interest must be defined according to widely acknowledged diagnostic and histopathologic criteria. Cancer diagnoses affecting the same organ system often have different subtypes and separate etiologies and must be accounted for in the analysis.

Case–control studies are subject to a number of special issues that affect the interpretation of results. Since exposure information is obtained after the disease has occurred, the results can be affected by recall bias, which may occur if patients with a given disease report exposures differently
than controls. In fact, people who have been diagnosed with a rare or life threatening disease tend to think about the possible “causes” of their illness and thus are likely to remember their exposure histories differently from those unaffected by the disease (17). Recall bias may be particularly acute when the disease is cancer and the cause may be related to work.

Case–control studies may also suffer from selection bias in that both exposure and disease have occurred prior to the time subjects are selected into the study. These studies can also be prone to misclassification and in some situations, the temporal relationship between exposure and disease is unclear, which limits interpretations of causality.

A “nested” case–control study is usually conducted as part of a large cohort evaluation. Although all case–control studies can be thought of as “nested” within a source population of exposed and unexposed people, the term nested case–control study refers to a case–control study where the population is obtained from a well-defined cohort. Such studies are usually performed after completion of a retrospective cohort study, which identifies an expected excess in cancer or other disease. Personnel and exposure records, where available, are reviewed in an attempt to identify agents suspected to be responsible for the excess in cancer mortality noted in the cohort study.

Similarly, a disease can be identified and then evaluated to determine specific risk factors. Employment records of those with a disease are analyzed by job and/or exposure or both and then compared to records of workers without disease. This effort is designed to identify the particular exposure or work process responsible for increased disease risk; confounding factors are addressed by interviews of the worker or next of kin. The nested case–control study focuses on interviews and examinations of records only on people with the disease of interest rather than on the entire original cohort.

4. SPECIAL ISSUES IN OCCUPATIONAL EPIDEMIOLOGY

4.1. Exposure Assessment

Occupational epidemiology is fundamentally concerned with the often-difficult task of relating exposure to outcomes. As a result, accurate exposure assessment has been described as the Achilles heel of the discipline. Limited or inaccurate information of a worker’s exposure can lead to misclassification and weakening of the exposure–outcome assessment. This problem is exaggerated in evaluating diseases of long latency. Clearly, as time passes, accurate retrospective exposure assessments can become increasingly problematic. As discussed earlier, the ideal epidemiologic study for assessing exposure–outcome relationships is the prospective cohort study, in which exposure is well categorized and health effects are properly assessed and followed into the future. Such ideal circumstances, however, are rarely present.

Several techniques have been developed to improve retrospective exposure assessments, because of their importance in assessing dose–
response relationships, latency, and combined effects of several exposures. Exposure reconstruction is frequently based on interviews with workers and others knowledgeable about historical events and procedures. Another approach is based on expert assessments, which, despite their value, are at their core only refined estimates. To address challenges of exposure reconstruction, job–exposure matrices (JEMs) evolved in the early 1980s to help quantify exposures and improve epidemiological analyses. A JEM is usually a two-entry data matrix with job depicted on one axis (including occupation, position, or task) and risk factors such as hazards, level of exposure, and time on the other axis. Numerous JEMs have been established for specific occupations, industries, and industrial processes (21). These matrices are relatively cost- and time-efficient. Nonetheless, the validity of JEMs can be weakened because of misclassification (13). More recent methods for conducting exposure assessment include the use of computer generated questionnaires (22).

4.1.1. Biomarkers

Genetic and molecular epidemiology methods have advanced the use of biomarkers, as indicators of exposure, risk and effect (23–26). In fact, biomarkers can be a significant component of medical surveillance protocols for many occupational exposures (27). Examples include blood lead levels, Clara cell levels for silica, and urinary beta-2-microglobulin for cadmium, among numerous others. Genetic biomarkers offer particular promise for the detection of subtle preclinical effects of exposure to carcinogens.

Biomarkers are commonly divided into three categories: markers of exposure, markers of effect, and markers of susceptibility. Examples of biomarkers of exposure include DNA–protein adducts, which ideally can provide “an integrated measure of carcinogen exposure, uptake and absorption, and metabolism.” They offer considerable value in providing an objective and relevant measure of exposure in contrast to questionnaires and nonspecific biological testing. The interpretation of DNA-adduct measurements in human tissues and body fluids, however, requires an understanding of a number of factors, including the sensitivity and specificity of the measurement, the temporal relationship between the exposure and the corresponding adduct levels, and the mechanistic role of adducts in carcinogenesis (28). Their use in occupational medical practice today remains limited but they remain a research focus with great potential (29).

Markers of effect indicate that the carcinogen has reached a cellular site and altered genetic material. Sister chromatid exchanges, micronuclei, abnormal genes, and gene products are notable examples. The interpretation of cytogenetic abnormalities and of abnormal gene products in relation to exposure remains problematic, despite their role in research initiatives. Cytogenic abnormalities and abnormal gene products have been studied in a variety of occupational settings involving benzene, vinyl chloride, asbestos, and ethylene oxide and in firefighters and hazardous materials workers.
Their use in routine settings, however, remains limited because they are in an early stage of validation.

Markers of risk offer promise in the prevention of occupational cancer. Although epidemiological studies have identified various exposure-related associations with cancer, the determination of individual susceptibility remains a considerable challenge. Recent advances in molecular biology have led to novel approaches in defining the role of genetic susceptibility in cancer etiology. Ongoing studies of the associations of inheritable polymorphisms and metabolic genes with specific carcinogen exposures reflect the most recent research. Future efforts will likely include examination of inherited variation in DNA repair, among other factors associated with cancer. Methods are also being developed to allow for analysis of gene–environment interaction in the development of cancer. These approaches hold considerable promise for defining the nature of genetic susceptibility in exposure related cancers (23).

An example of markers of risk is the relationship of polymorphic variants of cytochrome P450 in the metabolic activation of precarcinogens. Many Phase I P450 enzymes bioactivate carcinogens, whereas Phase II enzymes participate in the deactivation process. Both the CYP1A1 and CYP2E1 variants of Phase I P450 enzymes are involved in the metabolism of many suspected and established carcinogens. Since genetic polymorphisms have been identified for both Phase I and Phase II enzymes, risk assessments could be enhanced if polymorphisms in both enzyme categories are considered as biomarkers for susceptibility to cancer (30). Genetic and molecular epidemiology research involving the use of biomarkers also raises ethical questions, related to the potential for such information to be used for discriminatory purposes (31–33).

4.2. Outcome Assessment

Health outcome assessment is usually less of a problem than exposure assessment in occupational cancer epidemiology. Nonetheless, accurate determination of health end points presents challenges for many studies due to both the accuracy of diagnoses and underreporting of illnesses. Although most industrialized countries maintain cancer, occupational injury, and disease registries, the accuracy of these registries is questionable because many occupational diseases tend to be underreported. The Scandinavian countries, which are noted for their superior occupational illness and injury data collection systems, also showed limitations, when between 1983 and 1987, only 34% of occupationally related cancers were reported (1). Other industrialized countries have found similar results.

4.3. Combined Effects of Several Exposures

The combined effect of several exposures raises a number of challenges in occupational epidemiology, including accounting for confounding, synergy,
interaction, and effect modification (9). In occupational epidemiological studies, age and smoking status are common confounders. Interaction has a number of connotations depending on the literature, whether statistical, epidemiological, chemical, biological, or public health. For risk assessment, the concept of “mechanical interaction” that can occur between chemicals and biological systems encompasses the notion of direct physical or chemical reactions among exposures, their metabolites, or their reaction products (34). Mechanical interaction occurs when the combined effect of two or more carcinogens is greater than what would have been anticipated based on individual exposures. The exposure effect may change depending on the presence, or level, of other chemicals involved. Synergistic interactions occur when the combined effects of certain hazards exceed their individual effects. In contrast, antagonism results when the combined effects are less than individual effects. Notable synergistic effects include those of asbestos and smoking, whose coexposure results in much higher risks of lung.

4.4. Healthy Worker Effect

When the mortality and disease patterns of a group of workers are compared to those of the general population, the working group is generally found to be healthier. This phenomenon—termed the healthy worker effect—has particular importance in the assessment of epidemiological studies. The basis of the healthy worker effect is multifactorial. First, working populations are generally more physically and emotionally fit than the general population, which includes persons unable to work due to a variety of restrictions. The healthy worker effect is also affected by healthy survival, in that those more physically and emotionally fit are less likely to need to leave work. Workers also tend to have improved access to healthcare services and a higher standard of living, other factors contributing to the healthy worker effect. Some studies have demonstrated that the healthy worker effect plays a role in some occupational epidemiology studies, whereas others urge caution in applying it to the assessment of cancer, since its development is not strongly associated to “fitness” for employment.

5. IN VITRO STUDIES

Occupational epidemiology studies assess exposure–disease associations in human populations under actual conditions. The long latency periods, however, between initial exposure and the onset of cancers, render the timely epidemiologic evaluation of potential carcinogens in the workplace pressingly difficult (19). Moreover, epidemiological studies tend to be inefficient in detecting low-level cancer risks since relatively large sample sizes are needed to uncover true increases of disease. In vivo and in vitro studies can be valuable supplements to epidemiology in assessing occupational cancer
risk. These studies, extensively used over the past 30 years, have also yielded advances in understanding mechanisms of cancer (4).

In vitro studies refer to short-term assays used to evaluate the mutagenicity of a substance as a surrogate for carcinogenicity. Historically, such assays screen potential carcinogens to set priorities for other methods of carcinogen risk assessment. More recently, several cell lines and animal strains have been developed to assess classes of carcinogens (35). Short-term assays can shed light on mechanisms and tend to be time-efficient and inexpensive to perform.

The most widely used in vitro study in cancer risk assessment is the mutagenicity assay, developed by Bruce Ames and colleagues in 1973 (36). The Ames test involves testing a substance’s ability to mutate a strain of Salmonella typhimurium. This strain is a mutant form that is deficient in DNA repair, and in its ability to synthesize the amino acid histidine. As a result, the bacteria cannot grow in culture media that lacks histidine. In the assay, S. typhimurium is treated with several doses of the compound of interest, plated on histidine deficient medium, and then examined later for growth. Growth represents a back mutation of the defective gene into revertants that synthesize histidine and multiply. In humans and mammals, many chemicals are only activated into mutagens and/or carcinogens after metabolism in the body. Furthermore, bacteria and mammals differ in the metabolic capabilities. Therefore, in the Ames test, a mixture of rat liver enzymes that includes multiple P-450s is used in conjunction with an NADPH regenerating system. Several lines of Salmonella have been created for the detection of point and frameshift mutations. Certain carcinogens cannot be detected by these bacterial assays such as metals, hormonal agents, and nongenotoxic hazards (35).

A variety of other in vitro tests is available for carcinogen identification, including: (1) gene mutation assays, (2) chromosome aberration, and (3) primary DNA damage assays. The scope of this chapter precludes a detailed discussion of the specific tests in each of these groups; however, some of the more common tests for each group are described. Gene mutation assays include the Ames test and the mammalian mouse lymphoma thymidine kinase assay. Chromosome aberration assays include assays of specific cell lines, mouse micronuclei, and rat bone marrow cytogenic studies. Primary DNA breakage assays include examination of animal cell lines for DNA adducts through $^{32}$P postlabelling, assays of DNA strand breakage, sister chromatid exchange assays, and assays assessing DNA repair.

The application of short-term assays in occupational risk assessment has limitations; as a result their use is regarded by some as controversial. Although most short-term assays for mutagenicity are considered a proxy for assessing carcinogenicity, a mutagenic substance, per se, is not necessarily carcinogenic. Although almost half of the known carcinogens are mutagenic, not all substances that test positive in 2-year in vivo animal
assays are mutagenic in short-term assays (21). The sensitivity, specificity, and positive predictive value of many in vitro tests are unclear in their implications to humans (37,38). Nonetheless, in vitro studies will likely continue to play a role in the investigation of occupational carcinogens as screening tests.

6. IN VIVO EXPERIMENTS

In vivo experiments refer to animal bioassays used to test the carcinogenicity of substances under controlled conditions. Animal bioassays, an essential component of occupational cancer risk assessment, are particularly effective in screening suspected carcinogens for which epidemiological studies are not practical or impossible.

The controlled nature of in vivo assays allows investigators to manipulate experimental conditions to evaluate many biological responses to chemical exposures. Standard cancer animal bioassays commonly involve testing two species of animals, typically rats and mice. Testing of both sexes, using 50 animals per dose group, and using near-lifetime exposures prior to assessing cancer endpoints are routine (37). Individual studies usually vary by the strains of rats and mice selected, and the number and concentration of doses of the suspected carcinogen administered. Most animal bioassays involve incidence studies with 2 years of follow-up. The National Cancer Institute and the National Toxicology Program have established guidelines for the conduction of animal bioassays for the purposes of evaluating carcinogens (35). Dose levels given to animals under study are most often percentages of the maximum tolerated dose (MTD). In addition to the carcinogen tested in the exposed group, there is frequently a solvent treated control group and an untreated control group. Exposed animals are subjected to 90, 50, and 10–25% of the MTD, and then sacrificed after 2 years to assess designated cancer endpoints (35).

Cancer endpoints in animal studies can vary, especially as to how cancer (or lack thereof) is defined histopathologically. Carcinogenicity in animal studies is confirmed by an increase in the number of tumors at a given site as compared to controls, the induction of atypical tumors, earlier induction of common tumors, and/or increases in the absolute number of tumors (37).

Most often, chemicals that consistently cause tumors in animals are presumed to be human carcinogens, since all known human carcinogens are carcinogenic when tested in animals (4,37). On the interpretation of animal carcinogens as applied to humans, IARC states: “in the absence of adequate data on humans, it is biologically plausible and prudent to regard agents and mixtures for which there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals as if they presented a carcinogenic risk to humans” (37,39). Ideally, the animal bioassays should simulate the exposure pathways that are applicable to humans.
The use of animal bioassays to determine human carcinogenicity has certain limitations, including the extrapolation of high exposures in animal studies to the lower exposures experienced by people at work (40). Tumors in animals are often only increased at the highest dose tested, which is often just below the dose that causes systemic toxicity (41). Furthermore, high doses of a potential carcinogen may produce entirely different effects than the lower doses human workers might encounter. High exposure concentrations in animal bioassays may saturate “detoxification” pathways and produce different effects than those at lower concentrations, when such pathways are not saturated. A notable example is the particle overload phenomenon associated with inorganic particles and lung cancer in rodents (42).

Interspecies extrapolation is complicated by factors such as the greater homogeneity of animal species as compared to humans, well-regulated living conditions including diet of lab animals, and genetic differences between animals and humans, among others. Rats and mice, for example, often demonstrate differences in animal bioassays of carcinogens. Similar results between rats and mice occur only 70% of the time and even when the results are similar, differences in dose–response relationships are usually noted between species. Despite the limitations of animal bioassays, they provide useful information in the assessment of occupational cancer risk. The vast majority of chemical exposures that are carcinogenic in animals have not been evaluated in humans. As a result, new methods are needed to strengthen the scientific basis for extrapolations of animal bioassays to human populations. Of increasing importance are methods that serve to validate risk in animals as predictive of risks in workers (4).

7. REGULATED CARCINOGENS

In the United States, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), under the U.S. Department of Labor, is the regulatory agency responsible for enacting standards regarding carcinogens. OSHA recognizes that in industry there are many potential exposures to carcinogens and that workplace exposures are generally higher than public settings. OSHA also maintains that carcinogen exposure at the workplace should be controlled primarily through the use of engineering and process controls and that personal protective equipment should only be used as an extension to these other measures. Specifically, OSHA in its Identification, Classification, and Regulation of Carcinogens standard establishes criteria and procedures for the identification, classification, and regulation of potential occupational carcinogens found in the U.S. workplace (OSHA;1990.101). According to OSHA, the term carcinogen applies to individual substances, groups of substances, or combinations or mixtures of substances. In establishing the criteria and procedures for which substances will be regulated, the agency relies on an extensive review of the scientific data and opinions of the National Toxicology Program, NIOSH, and IARC. Substances with OSHA
standards are classified into two groups as “carcinogens” or “potential carcinogens” as established by the National Toxicology Program. Such substances require medical surveillance and/or screening to protect human health.

OSHA Standard 1910.1003 (4-nitrobiphenyl, etc.) addresses the regulation of 13 carcinogens as listed in Table 2 with regard to their manufacturing, processing, repackaging, releasing, handling, and storage. Under OSHA standard 1910.1003, medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment in regulated areas of the workplace where such carcinogens are present. Before an employee can be assigned to a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided and include the personal history of the employee, and the family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors [1910.1003 (g) (1) (i)]. Authorized employees shall also be provided with periodic physical examinations, no less often than annually, following the preassignment examination [1910.1003 (g) (1) (ii)]. In all examinations, the examining physician is required to consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy, and cigarette smoking [1910.1003 (g) (1) (iii)].

The scope of this chapter prohibits a detailed discussion of the medical surveillance and/or screening of the other carcinogens or suspected carcinogens.

### 8. CLINICAL ISSUES

The foregoing sections have included a historical overview of occupational cancer and a discussion of the major methods used today to evaluate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carcinogen</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Related standard CFR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4-Nitrobiphenyl</td>
<td>92933</td>
<td>1910.1004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha-naphthylamine</td>
<td>134327</td>
<td>1910.1004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl chloromethyl ether</td>
<td>107302</td>
<td>1910.1006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,3’-Dichlorobenzidine</td>
<td>91941</td>
<td>1910.1007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bis-chloromethyl ether</td>
<td>542881</td>
<td>1910.1008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-naphthylamine</td>
<td>91598</td>
<td>1910.1009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzidine</td>
<td>92875</td>
<td>1910.1010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-Aminodiphenyl</td>
<td>92671</td>
<td>1910.1011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethyleneimine</td>
<td>151564</td>
<td>1910.1012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-propiolactone</td>
<td>57578</td>
<td>1910.1013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Acetylaminofluorene</td>
<td>53963</td>
<td>1910.1014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene</td>
<td>60117</td>
<td>1910.1015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-Nitrosodimethylamine</td>
<td>62759</td>
<td>1910.1016</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
substances and work processes regarding risk for causing cancer. This section is designed for the clinician asked to make recommendations for the prevention and diagnosis of cancers related to work. Guidance is also provided on determining whether a particular cancer may be related to work. Clinicians can participate in programs designed for the prevention of occupational cancer and in monitoring workers potentially exposed to carcinogenic substances and processes. Formulating a diagnosis and evaluating potential occupational causal connections may also be necessary.

Prevention of occupational cancer requires not only a firm understanding of agents that can cause malignancies but also an awareness of the critical importance of exposure control methods. Ideally, one should strive to reduce exposure to carcinogens as much as feasible. Carcinogens tend to follow a straightforward dose–response pattern, in that higher exposures (both in concentration and duration) tend to be associated with the highest risk. From a public policy perspective, however, control of occupational cancer has focused on eliminating exposure to agents that can cause cancer. Future preventive methods are likely to address genetic risk factors such as polymorphisms that predict people at higher risk of developing cancer (Table 3). Work resulting from the human genome project may prove beneficially for identifying people at particularly high risk of developing all sorts of illnesses, including cancer. In turn, considerations of privacy, discrimination, and other ethical challenges will surface. At the time of the preparation of this chapter, the use of genetic screening to predict those at risk of occupational cancer is not routinely used outside of research settings. At this time, the prevention of occupational cancer rests not only on the recognition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Metabolic pathway</th>
<th>Cancer sites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GSTM1</td>
<td>Conjugation of organic epoxides with reduced glutathione</td>
<td>Lung, bladder, colon, stomach, breast, liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP2S6</td>
<td>Hydroxylation of lipoophilic xenobiotics, possibly NNK</td>
<td>Lung, bladder, breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT2</td>
<td>(N)-acetylation of arylamines and (N)-hydroxylated heterocyclicaryl amines</td>
<td>Bladder, lung, colorectal, breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA1A1</td>
<td>Metabolism of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, TCDD, and estrogens</td>
<td>Lung, stomach, colon, breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP2E1</td>
<td>Oxidation of (N)-nitrosamines, alcohol</td>
<td>Lung, bladder, colon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

of potential hazards, but also and more importantly on their corresponding control.

Clinicians may also monitor people exposed to potential carcinogenic processes and agents in the course of their work. A variety of standards established by Occupational Safety Health Administration focus on carcinogens and specify monitoring protocols to ensure that work does not cause early effects of cancer (Table 2). Although valuable research has been performed on studies that have employed DNA adducts as early indicators of cancer, their use in clinical settings is not routine. Future efforts of monitoring workers exposed to carcinogens are likely to include assessments of early effects on DNA because of the role of genetic mutations in carcinogenesis.

The diagnosis of occupational cancer is conducted in a manner similar to the diagnosis of any other of cancer. Occupational illnesses, in general, are diagnosed and treated the same way as any other type of illness. In fact, cancer and other illnesses due to work have similar manifestations and prognoses, and differ primarily in their cause, not in their diagnosis. Through the occupational exposure assessment, a refined determination can be conducted regarding the contribution that work may have played in the development of the illness.

Determining the contribution that work or a specific agent may have played in the development of cancer is a complicated exercise. In some cases, such as an evaluating angiosarcoma in association with vinyl chloride monomer, the exercise can be straightforward. Similarly, determining the cause of mesothelioma in an asbestos worker is an uncomplicated challenge. On the other hand, determining the contribution that work played in the development of lung cancer in an individual who has a long history of cigarette smoking and work in chromate plating operations can be a daunting task. Fundamental principles related to evaluating dose–response effects, confounders, biological plausibility, latency, and the temporal relationship between exposure and disease must be considered.

An astute causality assessment considers both human and animal literature, with particular attention to the epidemiological studies described earlier in this chapter. Evaluations of animal studies regarding their applicability to humans must be undertaken with great care. Although all human carcinogens are animal carcinogens, not all animal carcinogens have been shown to cause cancer in humans. In some animal studies, exposure to the agent under study is often extraordinarily higher than can conceivable be anticipated to occur in humans.

In evaluating the contribution that work may have played in the development of any cancer, a firm review of major epidemiological studies, especially those that controlled for confounding factors, is essential. Limitations of the studies such as selection bias and dose–response assessments should also be addressed. Ultimately, judgment based on a review of the literature and the individual’s medical and occupational history is required.
9. FUTURE EFFORTS

The National Cancer Institute's Occupational Epidemiology (OE) Branch (43) is currently conducting extensive research in occupational cancer risk assessment and prevention. Specifically, the OE Branch conducts studies to identify groups at high risk of cancer. This goal is accomplished through the execution of case–control and cohort studies to identify occupational and environmental exposures that are carcinogenic as well as conducting interdisciplinary studies using biomarkers, environmental measurements, and genetic susceptibility. The epidemiology branch also performs methodological studies to evaluate the reliability and validity of occupational and environmental assessment methods and techniques.

Current work of the branch includes research in agriculture, pesticide applicators, and farming. New research examining chronic diseases such as cancer among migrant and seasonal farm workers is also underway. In women’s health, several studies are examining the role of occupational factors in the origin of breast cancer. The NCI is conducting a case–control study of breast cancer and benign breast disease in Michigan, in relation to exposure to polybrominated biphenyls. Case–control studies are in place to evaluate the hypothesized relationship between DDT and risk of breast cancer.

The NCI and NIOSH are currently conducting a number of studies examining cancer and the use of organic solvents and other industrial chemicals. A large retrospective cohort mortality and nested case–control study is underway investigating the risk of lung cancer in relation to quantitative measures of exposure to diesel exhaust among miners. In China, a cohort of approximately 75,000 benzene-exposed workers is being compared to 35,000 unexposed workers in order to obtain exposure–response and biological data. Studies are also underway examining the risk of lung cancer among workers employed in the production of acrylonitrile and among dry cleaners to evaluate the cancer risk of exposure to perchloroethylene and other petroleum solvents.

APPENDIX

International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)**

In 1969, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) began its program to formally evaluate carcinogenic risks of chemicals to humans and to produce monographs outlining the identification of individual hazards and work processes. Subsequently, the monograph program has expanded to consider human exposures to mixtures of chemicals, certain occupations,

**IARC web site; October 3, 2000.

The objective of the IARC Monograph Program is to provide national and international authorities and agencies with scientific and qualitative information on the evidence for or against carcinogenicity for the purposes of cancer risk assessments and in formulating decisions regarding cancer prevention. Regulations and exposure limits are delegated to individual governments, international organizations, or other agencies.

The monographs include biological and epidemiological data published in openly available scientific literature. IARC also considers government reports if they have been peer reviewed. In making cancer risk determinations, IARC working groups rely principally on cohort, case-control, and correlation studies (ecological) studies but they also consider randomized trial data when available and on rare occasion consider results from case series and case reports of cancer in humans. IARC pays particular attention to the quality of studies, taking into account the possibility of bias, chance, confounding, and inferences about mechanism of action.

IARC also examines studies of cancer in experimental animals. This task is based on the fact that all known human carcinogens that have been studied adequately in experimental animals have produced positive results in one or more animal species. (Wilbourn et al., 1986; Tomatis et al., 1989). IARC recognizes, however, that not all agents and mixtures that cause cancer in experimental animals cause cancer in humans. Nonetheless, in the absence of adequate data on humans, it is biologically plausible and prudent to consider agents and mixtures for which there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity and experimental animals as if they presented a carcinogenic risk to humans. IARC, in examining studies of cancer in experimental animals, considers numerous qualitative and quantitative aspects of such studies.

Once an overall valuation of the carcinogenicity to humans of the agent, mixture, or circumstance of exposure has been completed, IARC assigns the agent, mixture, and exposure circumstance to a designated group. The group designation “is a matter of scientific judgment, reflecting the strength of the evidence derived from studies in humans and experimental animals and from other relevant data.” IARC assigns an agent, mixture, or circumstance of exposure to Group 1, Group 2A, Group 2B, Group 3, or Group 4 under the criteria outlined below.

- **Group 1**: The agent (mixture) is carcinogenic to humans. The exposure circumstance entails exposures that are carcinogenic to humans. This category is used when there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in humans. Exceptionally, an agent (mixture) may be placed in this category when evidence of carcinogenicity in humans is less than sufficient but there
is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals and strong evidence in exposed humans that the agent (mixture) acts through a relevant mechanism of carcinogenicity.

- **Group 2:** This category includes agents, mixtures and exposure circumstances for which, at one extreme, the degree of evidence of carcinogenicity in humans is almost sufficient, as well as those for which, at the other extreme, there are no human data but for which there is evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals. Agents, mixtures and exposure circumstances are assigned to either group 2A (probably carcinogenic to humans) or group 2B (possibly carcinogenic to humans) on the basis of epidemiological and experimental evidence of carcinogenicity and other relevant data.

- **Group 2A:** The agent (mixture) is probably carcinogenic to humans. The exposure circumstance entails exposures that are probably carcinogenic to humans. This category is used when there is limited evidence of carcinogenicity in humans and sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals. In some cases, an agent (mixture) may be classified in this category when there is inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity in humans and sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals and strong evidence that the carcinogenesis is mediated by a mechanism that also operates in humans. Exceptionally, an agent, mixture or exposure circumstance may be classified in this category solely on the basis of limited evidence of carcinogenicity in humans.

- **Group 2B:** The agent (mixture) is possibly carcinogenic to humans. The exposure circumstance entails exposures that are possibly carcinogenic to humans. This category is used for agents, mixtures and exposure circumstances for which there is limited evidence of carcinogenicity in humans and less than sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals. It may also be used when there is inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity in humans but there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals. In some instances, an agent, mixture or exposure circumstance for which there is inadequate evidence of carcinogenicity in humans but limited evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals together with supporting evidence from other relevant data may be placed in this group.

- **Group 3:** The agent (mixture or exposure circumstance) is not classifiable as to its carcinogenicity to humans. This category is used most commonly for agents, mixtures and exposure circumstances for which the evidence of carcinogenicity is inadequate in humans and inadequate or limited in experimental animals. Exceptionally, agents (mixtures) for which the evidence of carcinogenicity is inadequate in humans but sufficient in experimental animals may be placed in this category when there is strong evidence that the mechanism of carcinogenicity in experimental animals does not operate in humans. Agents, mixtures and exposure circumstances that do not fall into any other group are also placed in this category.

- **Group 4:** The agent (mixture) is probably not carcinogenic to humans. This category is used for agents or mixtures for which there is evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity in humans and in experimental animals. In some instances, agents or mixtures for which there is inadequate evidence
of carcinogenicity in humans but evidence suggesting lack of carcinogenicity in experimental animals, consistently and—strongly supported by a broad range of other relevant data, may be classified in this group.

REFERENCES

Quantification of Occupational and Environmental Exposures in Epidemiological Studies

Mustafa Dosemeci
Occupational and Environmental Epidemiology Branch, Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetic, National Cancer Institute, Rockville, Maryland, U.S.A.

1. BACKGROUND

Accurate assessment of exposure to occupational and environmental risk factors is needed to ensure that epidemiological studies meet their objectives in investigating the exposure–disease relationship. The basic principle of exposure assessment for epidemiological studies is to identify the determinants of exposure variability within the study population and to classify study subjects accurately with respect to their level of exposure to the risk factor of interest. In the last 20 years or so, the quantification of exposure to occupational and environmental risk factors in the evaluation of dose–response relationships has been improved significantly in various epidemiological studies, including cohort follow-up, case–control and cross-sectional epidemiological studies. In this chapter, improvements in quantifying exposure to occupational and environmental risk factors, starting from very crude assessment by occupation or industries to detailed subject-specific biological effective dose, are presented. In addition, exposure related methodological issues, such as effects of misclassification of exposure on risk estimates, selection of appropriate exposure indices in the evaluation of exposure–disease relationship, and issues that need to be considered when
2. EXPOSURE ASSESSMENT METHODS USED IN EPIDEMIOLOGICAL STUDIES

2.1. Exposure Assessment by Occupation and Industry Title

In early occupational epidemiological studies on chronic diseases, job or industry titles have been used as surrogates of exposure to occupational risk factors, assuming that every study subject with the same job or industry title has the same level of exposure to all the risk factors in that occupation or industry. Epidemiological analyses usually have been carried out by evaluating the risk of disease in either a single or a group of occupations [e.g., leukemia among farmers (1,2) or bladder cancer among truck drivers (3,4)], or industries [e.g., liver cancer in the paint manufacturing industry (5,6), and in some cases occupation/industry combinations (7)]. This approach is still being used particularly in cross-sectional surveillance and case–control studies for hypothesis generating and screening purposes (8–12). For example, a death certificate-based mortality study from 24 states of the United States showed excess risk of prostate cancer among power plant operators and stationary engineers, brick masons, machinery maintenance workers, airplane pilots, longshoreman, and railroad industry workers (12). In this crude assessment approach, the variability of exposure among different work places, departments, and study subjects has been ignored and this omission caused a great deal of exposure misclassification in the evaluation of associations between exposures and diseases. Although these type of associations do not give us direct information on specific exposures and may suffer from potential exposure misclassification due to the neglected variability, they still provide us with some clues about potential risk factors. For example, based on associations between various occupations and prostate cancer risk observed in the above study (12), the authors suggested that polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) may play an etiological role in prostate cancer risk. Evaluation of cancer risk by occupation or industry may not be an appropriate approach to hypothesis testing studies, but they may be very useful for screening or hypothesis generating studies.

2.2. Exposure Assessment by Application of Job Exposure Matrices

Job exposure matrices (JEMs) are designed to assign a priori exposure levels for study subjects based on their job and industry titles obtained from their work histories in case–control and surveillance studies. In applications of JEMs to occupational epidemiological studies, job and industry titles are coded using one of the standard occupational and industrial coding schemes, such as Standardized Occupational Classification codes (SOC)
and Standardized Industrial Classification codes (SOC) or Census Occupational and Industrial Coding Schemes. Then, a priori exposure levels are merged with those job and industry titles using the same standardized coding scheme. In earlier applications of JEMs, exposure levels have been usually assigned directly on job title/industry combinations and they were limited to the specific study and were not applicable for other studies (13–16). However, in recent JEM applications (17,18), assignments of exposure levels have been carried out separately for job titles and industries and then integrated to specific occupation/industry combinations using an algorithm (19) to be applicable to any data set having work histories with the same coding scheme. The new JEMs are generic, can be applied to any occupational study, and have assignments of exposure levels (i.e., level of intensity), exposure probabilities (i.e., likelihood of occurrence of exposure), confidence in the assignments (i.e., accuracy of the estimates), and source indicators (i.e., whether the origin of exposure is based on the occupation or the industry). Some of these generic JEMs, such as the one for solvents and chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons, also have decade indicators that determine the existence of exposure by decades since 1920 (17). Although JEMs provide us with semiquantitative evaluations, assessing exposure by JEMs is a very practical approach in the evaluation of dose–response relationships. For example, JEMs for methylene chloride and other aliphatic chlorinated hydrocarbons have been applied in a case–control study of astrocytic brain cancer (20). Three new features (i.e., probability of exposure, more specific five-digit occupational and industrial codes, and changes in exposure status over decades) have been introduced to reduce the misclassification of exposure (17). Risk estimates with and without these features in the assessment of exposure to methylene chloride were compared. The introduction of each feature had a striking effect on the estimate of risk, from OR = 1.5 with intensity only and without any of these new features, to 2.5 with the high probability feature, to 4.2 with high probability and more specific occupational coding features, and to 6.1 with all three features, suggesting that the degree of exposure misclassification was significantly reduced by the introduction of these three features into these new job exposure matrices (21).

Another application of JEMs has been carried out recently in a renal cell cancer; case–control study in Minnesota (22). In earlier studies, organic solvents have been associated with renal cell cancer, however, the risk by gender and type of solvents was unclear (23–26). A priori JEMs for all organic solvents combined, all chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons combined, and nine individual chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons were developed to evaluate the risk of renal cell carcinoma among men and women in a population-based case–control study in Minnesota, USA. Work histories were collected for 438 renal cell cancer cases (273 men and 165 women) and 687 controls (462 men and 225 women) through a self-administered interview. Overall, 34% of male cases and 21% of female cases were
exposed to organic solvents in general. Both intensity level and probability of exposure to these chlorinated hydrocarbons were assigned using JEMs similar to those used in the earlier study (17,18). The risk of renal cell carcinoma was significantly elevated among women exposed to all organic solvents combined [odds ratio (OR) = 2.3; 95% CI = 1.3–4.2], to chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons combined (OR = 2.1; 95% CI = 1.1–3.9), and to trichloroethylene (TCE) (OR = 2.0; 95% CI = 1.0–4.0). In the case of men, no significant excess risk was observed among men exposed to any of these nine individual chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons, all chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons combined, or all organic solvents combined. These observed gender differences in the risk of renal cell carcinoma in relation to exposure to organic solvents may be explained by the differences in body fat contents (27), the metabolic activity (28,29), the rate of elimination of xenobiotics from the body (27), or the differences in the level of exposure between men and women, even though they have the same job title (30–32).

Job exposure matrices are very useful tools for investigations of an occupational or environmental agent and cancer risk. They provide us with an opportunity to group several occupations and industries by common exposures. However, they have some limitations compared to the workplace or subject-specific exposure evaluation. For example, even though JEMs consider the exposure variability for a given job title in various industrial classifications, they do not provide us with a variability of information among different workplaces. They still assume that the level of exposure for the same job title/industry combination is the same regardless of the variability among different workplaces in the same industry, which we know, from most of the previous studies, is not the case (33–36). Even though some JEMs have information on the time-dependent exposure variability (17), they are still not as accurate as the workplace-/calendar time-specific exposure assessment, which is usually used in cohort or nested case-control studies. Job exposure matrices also have a potential for exposure misclassification by ignoring the variability of exposure among study subjects who held the same job title/industry combination and assuming that every worker with the same job title/industry combination has the same level of exposure, whereas earlier studies show significant variability among subjects and even within subjects (37,38). If that level of quantification is needed, as in some risk assessment studies, then either workplace/department/job title/calendar year- or subject-specific exposure assessment approaches would be preferable.

2.3. Exposure Assessment by the Facility/Department/Job Title/Calendar Year Approach

In most occupational cohort studies, work histories and historical exposure information are collected from written records existing in the workplace. In contrast to case-control and cross-sectional surveillance studies, cohort
studies usually have facility-specific exposure information that allows the exposure assessor to consider the variability of exposure for the same job titles in different workplaces, and even in different departments within the same facility. In this approach, jobs in work histories are usually categorized in facility/department/job title combinations using the study-specific occupational coding schemes. Historical exposure information is collected for each standardized facility/department/job title combination, starting from the beginning of cohort enrollment. For example, a study has been conducted to develop an exposure assessment method to be used in a cohort follow-up study of workers exposed to benzene (34). Assessment of exposure to benzene was carried out in 672 factories in 12 Chinese cities. Historical exposure data were collected for 3179 unique facility/department/job title combinations over seven time periods between 1949 and 1987. A total of 18,435 exposure estimates was developed for 75,000 benzene exposed subjects, using all available historical information, including 8477 monitoring data, work activities, amount of benzene use, control measures in the departments, and personal protective equipment use. Levels of exposure for each combination are then merged with subject-specific work histories to calculate various exposure indices, such as cumulative exposure, life-time average exposure, or peak exposures. Overall, 38% of the estimates were based on benzene monitoring data. The highest time-weighted average exposures occurred in the rubber industry (30.7 ppm), particularly for rubber glue applicators (52.6 ppm) (34).

In the follow-up study, because of its recognized link with benzene exposure, the association between a clinical diagnosis of benzene poisoning (hematotoxicity) and benzene exposure was evaluated (412 cases and 614,509 person-years) to validate the exposure assessment method (39). Relative risks of benzene hematotoxicity increased very sharply with increasing estimated intensity of benzene exposure. Odds ratios were 1.0, 2.2, 4.7, and 7.2 for the intensity levels of <5, 5–19, 20–39, and 40+ ppm, respectively (Table 1). This sharp trend between benzene hematotoxicity and estimated exposure to benzene indicated that the consideration of variability of exposure among facilities and departments provides us with an important tool in reducing misclassification of exposure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure years</th>
<th>&lt; 5 years</th>
<th>5–9 years</th>
<th>10–19 years</th>
<th>20+ years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duration of exposure</td>
<td>1.0a (—)</td>
<td>1.3 (1.0–1.8)b</td>
<td>1.6 (1.2–2.1)</td>
<td>2.7 (1.9–3.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concentration</td>
<td>&lt;5 ppm</td>
<td>5–19 ppm</td>
<td>20–39 ppm</td>
<td>40+ ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensity of exposure</td>
<td>1.0a (—)</td>
<td>2.2 (1.7–2.9)b</td>
<td>4.7 (3.4–6.5)</td>
<td>7.2 (5.3–9.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Another facility-specific exposure assessment procedure has been carried out among workers exposed to acrylonitrile (40). The study comprised over 25,000 workers in eight monomer, fiber, and resin companies from 1952 to 1983. Multiple visits to the companies were made and over 100 interviews of workers with more than 10 years of employment were conducted at the companies. Historical records, including data on over 18,000 measurements taken by the companies since 1977 and over 400 measurements, were collected by the study investigators. Three thousand six hundred exposure groups were formed from 127,000 job entries noted in personnel records, based on similar tasks, locations, and other exposures, and a similar distribution of exposures to acrylonitrile. Special procedures were used to reduce the exposure misclassification that may occur with maintenance workers, engineers, and other workers who may perform specialized tasks that vary in time and are not adequately reflected by a job title. Names of workers in these jobs were sent to the companies and unions to quantify the time each worker spent in acrylonitrile areas. A software program developed specifically for this study (Job Exposure Profiles), was used to organize and retain all the information available by exposure group. Quantitative estimates of acrylonitrile exposure were developed using a second software program that documented the derivation of each estimate and facilitated data review. Four methods were used to estimate exposures in a hierarchical fashion: arithmetic means; a time-weighting method, which weighted acrylonitrile concentrations in different areas by the time spent in those areas; a deterministic method that estimated the impact of changes in the workplace on exposures; and professional judgment. Over 85% of the estimates based on professional judgment were for jobs in areas without acrylonitrile exposure. Only a qualitative assessment was performed for exposures other than acrylonitrile. To evaluate the ability of the time-weighting and deterministic methods to predict actual measurement data, estimates derived from these two methods were developed independently of the study and compared to actual measurement data. The estimates from the time-weighting method underestimated the measurements by 24% and had a standard deviation relative to the measurement mean of 166%. The estimates from the deterministic method had a positive bias of 1% and a relative standard deviation of 236%. The methodologies developed for this study have pragmatic and theoretical applications.

Although this approach provides us with a great deal of advancement in accuracy of assessing exposure to occupational risk factors compared to previous approaches such as JEMs or the occupational and industrial title approach, it still has potential misclassification of exposure due to the assumption that every subject in the same facility/department/job title/calendar year combination has the same exposure levels, which may not be a valid assumption based on our previous studies (35,41).
2.4. Subject-Specific Exposure Assessment

Because of the high exposure variability between workers within the same job title, subject-specific exposure information can play a significant role in reducing the potential exposure misclassification by considering the between-individual variability. One of the efficient ways of collecting subject-specific exposure information is the administration of the interview to study subjects. Questions related to the determinants of subject-specific exposures provide us with a great opportunity to calculate the overall exposure level for each study subject. For example, a quantitative method was developed to estimate pesticide exposures in a large cohort study of over 58,000 pesticide applicators in North Carolina and Iowa (42). An enrolment questionnaire was administered to applicators to collect basic time- and intensity-related information on pesticide exposure such as duration and frequency of application, specific chemicals used, mixing condition, application methods, and personal protective equipment used. In addition, a detailed take-home questionnaire was administered to collect further intensity-related exposure information such as maintenance or repair of mixing and application equipment, work practices, and personal hygiene.

Two algorithms were developed to estimate the intensity level of exposure for applicators, using the responses from the questionnaires and the information from the literature. The first algorithm was based on the enrollment questionnaire and included variables of the mixing status (Mix, with exposure scores ranging from 3 to 9), application method (Appl, with scores ranging from 1 to 9), status of repairing of mixing and/or application equipment (Repair, with score of 2), and personal protective equipment use (PPE, 0.1 to 1.0).

\[
\text{Intensity score(IS)} = (\text{Mix} + \text{Appl} + \text{Repair}) \times \text{PPE}
\]

The scores assigned to each of these exposure variables were derived from the published pesticide exposure literature, the Pesticide Handlers Exposure Database (PHED), and the Environmental protection Agency’s pilot monitoring survey conducted as part of the AHS.

The second algorithm was based on the take-home questionnaire, and included additional exposure variables, such as types of enclosed mixing system [Enclosed], having a tractor with an enclosed cab and/or charcoal filter (Cab), status of equipment washed after application (Wash), personal hygiene (Hyg) (e.g., changing into clean clothes and washing hands or taking a bath/shower), status of changing clothes after a spill (Spill), and
frequency of replacing old gloves (Gloves-life).

The algorithm based on the enrollment questionnaire

\[ IS = \{(Mix \times \text{Enclosed}) + (Appl \times \text{Cab}) + \text{Repair} + Wash\} \times \text{Hyg} \times \text{Spill} \times \text{Gloves-life} \]

The exposure levels associated with these variables were estimated using primarily measurement data from the published pesticide exposure literature and professional judgments. For each study subject, a pesticide-specific lifetime cumulative exposure level was estimated by merging the intensity scores calculated from algorithms and the duration and frequency of pesticide use identified in the questionnaire. Although this approach provides us with an opportunity to consider the variability among subjects with the same job titles, it takes into account only the level of external exposure and does not consider the variability in host factors for subjects with the same level of external exposure. Due to the differences in genetical susceptibility markers among study subjects, their biologically effective doses (i.e., the internal doses that may have an impact on disease development) may be totally different, even though they may have the same external exposure.

2.5. Exposure Assessment by Biologically Effective Dose

The main goal of the exposure assessment for epidemiological studies is to identify the variability of an exposure in the study population and then classify study subjects accurately with respect to their variability of exposure. In traditional exposure assessment approaches, we usually limit ourselves to dealing with the variability of external risk factors either in their concentrations in the ambient air or their intake into the body without considering the variability of host factors that determine the amount of the internal dose from the external exposure. Because our main goal is to reduce the exposure misclassification in the evaluation of dose–response relationships between occupational/environmental exposures and cancer risks, there is also a need to consider the variability of genetical susceptibility factors that eventually determine the internal dose, the biologically effective dose, or in the case of evaluating cancer risk, the cancer-causing dose of the external risk factors. The evaluation of gene–environment interactions has power limitations when the prevalence of environmental risk factors and/or genetical susceptibility markers is low in the study population and multiple genetical markers interact with the exposure of interest. Recently, a method for estimating the biologically effective dose has been developed by integrating levels of external occupational or environmental exposure with the protective ability of genetical susceptibility markers. In this process, the level of external occupational or environmental exposure may either be reduced or increased depending on the capacity of phase I (activation), phase II (detoxification), and DNA repair enzymes. In this approach, genetical susceptibility markers (e.g., CYP1A1, CYP2E1,
NAT1, NAT2, GSTM1, GSTT1, or DNA repair capacity) are used as if they were internal personal protective equipment. For example, low capacity of activation enzymes (e.g., CYP1A1), and high capacity of detoxification (e.g., NAT2) and DNA repair enzymes would have higher protective functions than high capacity of activation enzymes, and low capacity of detoxification and DNA repair enzymes, which may result in reducing cancer-causing doses of xenobiotics. This approach allows us to evaluate relationships between an unlimited number of genetic susceptibility markers and the exposure under investigation, without losing power. For example, in the application of this approach to the effects of interactions between NAT2, GSTM1, and CYP1A1 genetical polymorphisms and exposure to smoking on breast cancer risk (43), the smoking status of each study subject was reclassified based on the protective effects of a wild-type gene against its mutant type. Subjects with NAT2 wild-type gene had 60% protection from smoking in the development breast cancer compared to subjects with mutant NAT2 genotype. Similarly, subjects with wild-type CYP1A1 genotype showed 76% protection, while subjects with GSTM1 showed only 6% protection compared to subjects with mutant genotypes. Depending on the subject’s genotype status (i.e., wild type or mutant type), we either reduced or increased the amount of smoking based on the protection factor of each genotype. After recalculation of the smoking status, the odds ratios for the high smoking category increased from 1.3 to 2.2, indicating that the estimated biologically effective dose of cigarette smoking has less misclassification than the reported amount of cigarette smoking.

3. SELECTION OF THE OPTIMAL INDEX OF EXPOSURE IN OCCUPATIONAL EPIDEMIOLOGY

A wide variety of exposure indices, ranging from very simple ones (e.g., ever/never exposed or duration of exposure) to complex ones (e.g., time-weighted cumulative exposure or biologically effective dose), have been developed and are used in occupational epidemiological analyses. They can be classified into three major categories according to their associations with disease outcomes. The first group consists of the time-dependent exposure indices, such as duration of exposure, frequency of exposure, latency of exposure, and recency of exposure. The second category is the intensity-dependent exposure indices, such as average intensity, highest intensity, longest intensity, and peak exposure. The last category is the combination of the first and the second, the time-and-intensity-dependent indices, such as cumulative exposure, time-weighted cumulative exposure, intensity by duration, intensity by latency, intensity by recency, cumulative exposure by latency, cumulative exposure by recency, internal dose, or biologically effective dose. The selection of the optimum exposure index is
based on the mechanism of the exposure–disease relationship. An exposure index may be an optimum one for certain relationships, an acceptable one for others, or a totally inappropriate one for some other relationships. For example, duration of benzene exposure would be an acceptable index for the benzene–lymphoma relationship, but it is an inappropriate index for the benzene–leukemia relationship. The optimum benzene exposure index for lymphomas would be cumulative exposure, while for leukemia, it would be the intensity of benzene exposure. For silicosis, the optimum silica exposure index would be time-weighted respirable cumulative silica dust exposure, while the average intensity of respirable silica dust would be a poor exposure index. Before deciding which index would be optimal, it is important to know about the characteristics of the metabolism of the agent of interest, such as the level of metabolic saturation, half-life in the body, and activity of metabolic enzymes. The other important clue may come from the epidemiological observations. For example, a cross-tabulation of the risk of the disease by a time-dependent exposure, such as duration of exposure, and by an intensity-dependent exposure index, such as average intensity, could give us useful information for the selection of an optimum exposure index. If both the duration of exposure at various intensity levels and the intensity of exposure at various duration levels do not show associations with the disease risk, then it is unlikely that cumulative exposure would be an optimum index for that association. Because the role of exposure in the disease process is the key factor for the selection of the optimum exposure index, and because the biologically effective dose requires an understanding of the mechanism, it is recommended to consider the use of either of these indices as a potential optimal index of exposure in the evaluation of an exposure–disease relationship.

4. RECOMMENDATION TO EXPOSURE ASSESSORS TO MINIMIZE THE EFFECTS OF EXPOSURE MISCLASSIFICATION ON RISK ESTIMATES

Misclassification of exposure can severely affect estimates of disease risks, and even in some extreme situations, cause misleading interpretations about exposure–disease associations. Although several studies have evaluated the effects of misclassification on risk estimates (44–48), no recommendation to exposure assessors is available to reduce these adverse effects of misclassification of exposure. There are four major determinants of exposure misclassification which are usually observed in epidemiological studies. These determinants are: (1) the size of the true risk, (2) the amount of misclassification, (3) the exposure prevalence of the true distribution, and (4) the direction of misclassification. For cohort-type distributions, where the exposure prevalence is high, extreme distortions are observed when
misclassification occurred from the exposed categories to the unexposed category (49). Little effect is observed when the misclassification occurred from the unexposed to the exposed categories. For the type of distributions seen in case–control studies, where the exposure prevalence is low, greater effects are observed when misclassification occurred from the unexposed category to the exposed categories, while little effect was observed when the misclassification occurred from the unexposed category to the exposed ones or occurred between the exposed categories.

5. ISSUES TO BE CONSIDERED IN USING RETROSPECTIVE EPIDEMIOLOGICAL STUDIES FOR RISK ASSESSMENT

The majority of established occupational and environmental exposure limits (e.g., TLV, MAK, PEL, PDK, REL, or BEI) are based on available information from industrial or environmental experiences; from experimental human and animal studies; and, when possible, from a combination of the two. Although, the use of information from retrospective epidemiological studies for the development of exposure limits has been limited in the past, there has been a growing interest in the use of these studies among the institutions responsible for the occupational and environmental regulations. Exposure limits are defined as airborne concentrations of substances to which nearly all workers or general population may be exposed on a daily basis without adverse health effects. There are various issues that need to be taken into account when data from retrospective epidemiological studies are used by regulatory institutions to develop these exposure limits:

1. Selection of an appropriate exposure index: Almost all exposure limits represent an “intensity of exposure” (in ppm, mg/M³, or fiber/cc, etc.). However, epidemiological studies use a variety of exposure indices, such as duration of exposure, intensity of exposure, or cumulative exposure, in the evaluation of the exposure–disease relationship. The optimum index depends on the mechanism by which the exposure affects the disease. For some exposure–disease relationships, intensity of exposure is the best index, while for others, duration of exposure or lifetime cumulative exposure may be more appropriate. Use of an inappropriate exposure index may result in the development of unrealistic exposure limits.

2. Mechanistic considerations: The mechanisms underlying the exposure–disease relationships need to be taken into account when interpreting epidemiological studies. For example, if there are saturation effects at a certain concentration level, extrapolating risk estimates from high doses to low doses may lead to an underestimate of true risk at low-level exposures. Similarly, if there is a
threshold effect in the relationship, extrapolating risk from high to low doses may lead to an overestimate of risk at low levels. There has been some concern about the relevance of risk estimates obtained at very high exposure levels. For example, the validity of the linear extrapolation of risk from high to lower doses has been questioned, with the argument that at low exposure levels, risk might be overestimated if there is a threshold level in the dose–response relationship (50). However, it was also argued that, linear extrapolation from high to low doses might actually underestimate risk in some circumstances (51). Indeed, it has been showed that metabolic saturations exist for some chemicals, and calculated distortion from linearity for benzene, tetrachloroethylene, and trichloroethylene starts at levels of 63, 22, and 178 mg/m$^3$, respectively, indicating that the risks of solvent-related outcomes do not necessarily rise linearly with increasing dose above the saturation point (52). Because of metabolic saturation at high levels of exposure, the actual risk at such exposures would be below the dose–response line, and linear extrapolation of risk from high to low doses could underestimate the risk at low levels (53).

3. Estimating effective durations and doses: In most exposure–disease relationships, we do not know the exact time at which the exposure of interest induces the disease. Therefore, it may be quite difficult to estimate the effective duration of exposure and effective dose that has induced the disease in an epidemiological study. For example, a disease might be initiated in the early stage of exposure and the remaining duration of exposure may not be relevant for the disease development, or the disease might be initiated in the later stage of the exposure duration, and at that time, effective duration should be calculated from the beginning of the exposure.

4. Absoluteness of the quantitative estimates: In most retrospective occupational epidemiological studies, quantitative assessments of exposures are based on a few historical measurements for a few job titles. Because of this limitation, exposure assessors often extrapolate or interpolate from the available exposure information to estimate the quantitative level of exposure. Even though these estimates may be quite accurate on a relative scale, they may not be accurate on an absolute scale. This may not be an important issue for etiological studies, but it may be crucial when the studies are used as a basis for developing exposure limits. Carefully designed prospective epidemiological studies may solve most of the issues associated with retrospective epidemiological studies.
REFERENCES

35. Dosemeci M, McLaughlin JK, Chen JQ, Hearl FJ, Chen RG, McCawley MA, Wu Z, Peng KL, Chen AL, Rexing SH, Blot WJ. Historical total and respirable


Cancer Risk for Tobacco and Alcohol Use

Peter G. Shields

Cancer Genetics and Epidemiology Program, Department of Medicine and Oncology, Lombardi Comprehensive Cancer Center, Georgetown University, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

In the 1960s, the first Surgeon General’s Report (1) clearly demonstrated that lung cancer was caused by smoking. Since then, we have recognized that smoking contributes to many other cancers, such as leukemia, bladder, oral cavity, and cervical cancers. Tobacco smoke contains more than 100 carcinogens and mutagens, many of which are classified as carcinogens based on human and animal studies. The effect on people has been obvious. Before the widespread use of cigarettes in this century, lung cancer was a rare illness. Over the last 40 years, the type of cigarettes most frequently used has been changing, namely the increased use of low-tar and low-nicotine yield cigarettes. While initially thought to confer some decreased risk compared with higher-tar cigarettes, a benefit has not been realized. The use of low-tar and low-nicotine yield cigarettes has been paradoxically accompanied by an increased risk of lung cancer due to increased tobacco use and exposure to cigarette yields with higher mutagen and carcinogen content. This higher consumption has been due to a smoker’s need to maintain blood nicotine levels, which in turn causes the need for smoking more cigarettes per day and deeper inhalation. This phenomenon has led to the increasing rates of lung adenocarcinoma, compared to squamous cell carcinoma. It also probably explains, in part, the greater risk of lung cancer in women compared to men (in addition to some biological differences).
The study of tobacco-related cancer involves many types of biomarkers, including those that measure exposure, the biologically effective dose, and harm. Genetic susceptibilities for smoking behavior, carcinogen metabolism, DNA repair, and others likely also play a large role in cancer risk.

Alcoholic beverages clearly increase the risk of oral cavity, liver, esophageal, breast, and other cancers. However, the actual mechanisms that alcohol drinking contributes to carcinogenesis have not been well defined. It is clear that ethanol has mutagenic metabolites, that free radicals are generated during ethanol metabolism, that there is an interaction and underutilization with vitamins (e.g., folic acid), and that there is an effect on steroid hormones. Also, various alcoholic beverages contain contaminants that might contribute to cancer risk, such as urethane in wines and $n$-nitrosamines in beer. The increased risk from alcohol drinking must be weighed against the reduction in mortality and heart disease risk from lower levels of drinking. Thus, there are data to indicate that taking one drink per day confers some benefit, but taking more than that might be offset by increased cancer risks. How this risk changes by genetic susceptibilities is unknown. But, some people might get more benefits, and some might be more easily harmed, from alcohol use.

2. TOBACCO
2.1. Tobacco Mutagens and Carcinogens

The use of tobacco products, as they are intended to be used, results in the exposure to more than 100 mutagens and carcinogens (2,3). A partial list of these constituents is provided in Table 1. It is thought that tobacco-specific nitrosamines (TSNs) and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) are classes of compounds that most affect human cancer risk (4). Tobacco and tobacco products have changed over time, with resultant differences in predicted exposure using the Federal Trade Commission (FTC) method for the measurement of “tar” and “nicotine” (2). It is known that the FTC method for estimating tar exposure provides substantial underestimates of actual human exposure because it does not sufficiently mimic human smoking behavior (2).

Prior to the 1950s, most manufactured cigarettes did not have filters, but now, almost all cigarettes are filtered and fall into the category of low tar and nicotine (2,5). Tar yield actually has declined since the 1950s, from about 37 mg to less than 15 mg (2,5). Because of similar decreases in nicotine, and increased quitting among lighter smokers, the actual number of cigarettes smoked per person has increased (5). The introduction of low-tar and low-nicotine cigarettes was conceptualized to make cigarettes “safer,” but currently available scientific data suggest that potential benefits may not be realized for some or most persons, and in fact these products are probably more dangerous. Many persons who smoke low-tar and
**Table 1** List of Selected Tobacco Mutagens and Carcinogens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constituent class</th>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>IARC evaluation(^b)</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N-nitrosamines</td>
<td>Particulate</td>
<td>Sufficient in animals</td>
<td>Tobacco-specific nitrosamines (NNK, NNN), dimethylnitrosamine, diethylnitrosamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycyclic aromatic</td>
<td>Particulate</td>
<td>Probable in humans</td>
<td>Benzo((a))pyrene, benzo((a))anthracene, benzo((b))fluoranthene, 5-methylchrysene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrocarbons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aryl aromatic amines</td>
<td>Particulate</td>
<td>Sufficient in humans</td>
<td>4-Aminobiphenyl, 2-toluidine, 2-naphthylamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterocyclic amines</td>
<td>Particulate</td>
<td>Probable in humans</td>
<td>2-Amino-3-methylimidazo[4,5-b]quinolone(IQ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic solvents</td>
<td>Vapor</td>
<td>Sufficient in humans</td>
<td>Benzene, methanol, toluene, styrene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aldehydes</td>
<td>Vapor</td>
<td>Limited in humans</td>
<td>Acetaldehyde, formaldehyde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volatile organic compounds</td>
<td>Vapor</td>
<td>Probable in humans</td>
<td>1,3-Butadiene, isoprene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic compounds</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sufficient in humans</td>
<td>Arsenic, nickel, chromium, polonium-210</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)This list is intended to provide a conceptual overview of the complexity of tobacco product exposures. It is not all-inclusive, but is included to allow the reader to understand the number of considerations that must be made in assessing harm reduction strategies.

\(^b\)IARC classification is from the International Agency for Research on Cancer. The classifications here refer to evaluations of the compound from any exposure, and not just tobacco. Not all chemicals within the class have been considered to be carcinogenic in humans. There is no consideration given in this table to delivered dose or route of exposure.
low-nicotine cigarettes compensate for lower nicotine delivery by smoking more (6–10). But also, the tar from ‘‘light’’ cigarettes is more mutagenic and levels of TSNs and benzo(α)pyrene in tobacco smoke can be similar for low- and high-tar cigarettes when people oversmoke their cigarettes (11,12).

PAHs are formed from the incomplete pyrolysis of tobacco leaves, and many types of PAHs are present in tobacco smoke. Parent PAHs can be detected in human lung tissue (13,14). As a class, they are mutagenic and carcinogenic in experimental animals (including the lung) and human (2,15,16). PAHs are metabolically activated in humans through cytochrome P450 (CYP) 1A1, CYP1B1, and CYP3A4 (17,18). They are conjugated for excretion by glutathione-S-transferases, sulfuryl transferases, and glucu- ronyl transferases (19), and the lack of such activity increases mutagenic potential (20). PAH-related DNA adducts have been demonstrated in human lung (21), while the presence of hemoglobin and albumen adducts also show that these compounds circulate in human blood (22,23). In vitro studies indicate that PAHs can cause the same types of p53 mutations observed in human tumors (24,25).

*N*-nitrosamines (26–29) are among the most potent rodent carcinogens (30). There are some *N*-nitrosamines that are only found in tobacco smoke (TSNs). *N*-nitrosamines cause cancer in more than 40 animal species and there is target organ specificity, including for TSNs and lung tumors (30,31). Experimental animal studies show that higher doses of exposure cause tumors in less time, suggesting that intensity and duration are equally important (30,32). Mutations in K-*Ras* have been found in the lung tumors of experimentally exposed animals. TSNs can transform human bronchial epithelial cells (33). The same type of adducts that occur from TSNs in experimental animals also have been detected in humans, including in lung tissue (34). Different types of tobacco have different TSN yields (29). In humans, metabolites of TSNs are found in urine (35) and adducts are detected in blood, so TSNs circulate through the body, including in persons who are passively exposed (36–38). *N*-nitrosamines undergo metabolic activation by human CYPs located in the lung, buccal mucosa, and other tissues (e.g., CYP2E1 and CYP2A6) (39–41). The metabolic activation of TSNs and other tobacco *N*-nitrosamines leads to the formation of DNA adducts in target tissues associated with specific cancers (32,42–46). Different tobacco products contain widely differing amounts of TSNs (28), and changing smoking patterns can result in higher delivery of TSNs (47). For example, Swedish snuff products contain substantially less TSNs than snuff sold in the United States. Lower-tar and -nicotine cigarettes result in greater exposure to TSNs than high-tar and -nicotine cigarettes (2,29).

Both the gaseous and the particulate phases of cigarette smoke contain free radicals (such as nitric oxides in the gaseous phase) which induce oxidative damage (2,48). Many components of cigarette smoke can individually
cause oxidative damage (49). While free radicals cause DNA damage in experimental systems and are suspected to be involved in carcinogenesis (50), a direct relationship to human carcinogenesis has been suspected but not proven (51,52). It is difficult to measure free radicals and oxidative damage in humans from tobacco smoke or any other source (endogenous or exogenous), because it is impossible to distinguish sources of free radicals and biomarker methods can artifactualy induce oxidative damage (51,53). Nonetheless, levels are generally higher in leucocytes excreted in the urine of smokers than in nonsmokers (54,55).

2.2. Biomarkers for Assessing Risks in Humans

Different types of methods for assessing tobacco-related cancer risk in humans are available. External exposure markers attempt to predict exposure without regard to interindividual differences in smoking behavior and cellular processes. Biomarker assays can assess internal exposure, the biologically effective dose, and harm. Biomarkers of exposure represent an internal dose, of a tobacco smoke or tobacco product constituent that is either the parent compound or its metabolite (e.g., exhaled carbon monoxide, nicotine boosts, carboxyhemoglobin, urinary TSNs or PAH metabolites, and urine mutagenicity). These markers have been the most extensively studied of biomarkers, because they better estimate exposure to individual cigarettes, are technically feasible, and can provide information about short-term (e.g., from a single cigarette) and long-term exposure.

The biologically effective dose (56) is the amount of tobacco smoke or tobacco toxin that binds to a macromolecule in a cell. The biologically effective dose represents the net effect of toxic metabolic activation, lack of detoxification, lack of repair or control mechanisms, and lack of cell death. One measure of the biologically effective dose are the carcinogen–DNA adduct levels. In humans, tobacco smoking leads to increased adduct formation in target tissues such as the lung (57–59) and in surrogate tissues such as the blood (58,60,61). Evidence exists that carcinogen–DNA adduct levels in target and nontarget organs are modulated by genetics (21,62,63–67). In humans, a link between carcinogen–DNA adducts and tobacco-related cancer risk has been reported using different study designs (69,68–70).

Biomarkers of harm can range from isolated early changes with or without effects on function to events that clearly lead to carcinogenesis and can be observed in cancer cells. Several types of assays are available. Chromosomal damage can be measured using classical cytogenetic methods, micronuclei formation (71,82), COMET (73,74), fluorescent in situ hybridization, and PCR methods assessing loss of heterozygosity (using tandem repeats or comparative genomic hybridization). Mutations in reporter genes, such as HPRT (75,76) or GPA, have been used, but it is better to identify mutation rates in cancer susceptibility genes such as p53 (77,78) or K-Ras (77,79–81).
Biomarkers of harm that reflect later stages of carcinogenesis include morphological markers of preneoplastic lesions (e.g., dysplasia), altered phenotypic expression of normal cellular functions (e.g., overexpression of the proto-oncogene \textit{Erb-B2}), and mutations in cancer-related genes, such as the \textit{p53} tumor suppressor gene. It is possible to measure \textit{p53} mutation rates in normal tissues (82–84) of persons without cancer, and to measure mutations in sputum for persons with cancer (85). It also has been found that measuring loss of heterozygosity (86) or hypermethylation of genes involved in neoplasia (87) might be useful for assessing the effects of tobacco smoke.

2.3. Lung Cancer

In this country, there were about 171,000 newly diagnosed lung cancer cases in 1999; 92.6% of these are in curable (88). A dose–response relationship for cigarette smoking and lung cancer is consistently shown in cohort studies of both men and women (89–91).

Lung cancer consists of four major histological types, namely squamous cell cancer (SCC), small cell lung cancer (SCLC), adenocarcinoma (AD) and large cell carcinoma (LCC) (90). There has been a shift in the prevalence of histology types over time, where AD has been increasing relative to SCC (90–94). Associations between cigarette smoking and death from AD vs. SCC in Connecticut increased nearly 17-fold in women and nearly 10-fold in men from 1959 through 1991, while smoking-related lung cancer risk increased from 4.6 to 19 in men and from 1.5 to 8.1 in women (93). This is likely due to the use of lower-nicotine cigarettes, increased exposures to TSNs, and greater depths of inhalation.

Less women tend to smoke than men and consequently there are lower rates of lung cancer (95) and preneoplastic lesions (96) in women. Lung cancer rates have been decreasing for men but not for women (97). Women more commonly have AD than SCC, even after controlling for smoking status (98). In a study of 1108 males and 781 females with lung cancer, compared with 1122 male and 948 female controls, women were found to have a 1.2- to 1.7-fold higher risk, which was limited to AD and SCLC, rather than SCC (99). Other studies have provided similar findings (100–104), although some have not (91,105). While some might hypothesize that the differences in cancer risks between men and women are due to differing baseline non-smoking rates (106), this was found not to be the case using summary statistics from several large cohort studies (107). An increased risk in women is also evidenced by data showing that there is a higher risk for lung cancer in women at similar ages of initiation, and the risks are the same in women over the age of 25 years compared to men over the age of 20 years (108). There are several plausible explanations for the increased risk that relate to the fact that women tend to smoke “light” cigarettes and also that biological differences might also be a factor. Women more commonly have
estrogen or progesterone receptors in their lung cancers (109) [one study found such a high abundance in both males and females that a difference between the two could not be discerned (110)], or by estrogens that can induce metabolizing enzymes carcinogen activation. Women have higher levels of carcinogen–DNA adducts in lung tissues, even though they have the same or lower levels of smoking (111), which supports the latter hypothesis. Women might also be more susceptible if they have particular metabolic polymorphisms affecting carcinogen detoxification (63,112–115).

The risk of lung cancer in former smokers is less than in current smokers, as demonstrated by both case–control and prospective studies (91,105,115).

Heritable susceptibilities can affect tobacco-related cancer risks (116–118,119). Evidence for familial transmission of risk has been reported (120,121). Specific genes that have been studied include the glutathione-S-transferase M1 (GSTM1) (118,122–128), CYP1A1 (129,130), glutathione-S-transferase Pi72, and others (125,131,132). These genetic polymorphisms, and others, are believed to affect biomarker levels, such as DNA adducts (21,63,67,133). Also, several biomarker phenotypes representing carcinogen metabolism and DNA repair also have been shown to modify the effects of smoking-related risks (134–136).

Environmental tobacco smoke (ETS), also termed passive smoking or exposure to second-hand smoke, has been estimated to cause 2600–7400 lung cancer deaths per year among nonsmokers in the United States, according to a review of nine studies of lung cancer mortality (137). The conclusion that ETS is a cause of lung cancer has been opined by several reviewers and persons conducting meta-analysis (138–142). Until recently, it was not possible to show that ETS affects biomarkers of cancer risk (143). But, improved methodologies now show that ETS-exposed persons have elevated levels of TSN metabolites in their urine (4). Other studies have reported an increase in aryl aromatic amine-related adducts (144).

2.4. Oropharyngeal Cancers

Almost all oropharyngeal cancers are SCCs. Their annual incidence is about 40,000 cases, of whom about 12,000 will eventually die from their disease (145). The major risk factors for oropharyngeal cancers are tobacco (cigarettes and smokeless tobacco products) and alcohol use. There is a dose–response for both smoking and alcohol use; together the two agents act synergistically (146–159). Some studies suggest that tobacco consumption is more likely than alcohol consumption to give rise to precursor lesions (160,161) and to cancer (149,162). Talamini and coworkers (151) studied 60 nonsmoking drinkers and 32 nondrinking smokers and compared them to controls. Depending on the amount of drinks per week, the OR reached 5.3 (95% CI = 1.1–24.8) in the nonsmokers and 7.2 (95% CI = 1.1–46) in the
smokers. Three published studies indicate that there is an increased risk for women compared to men, especially at the highest levels of smoking (147,152,156).

Cessation of smoking decreases the risk of oropharyngeal cancers (159). In one study, cancer of the larynx was found to be markedly less likely among ex-smokers than among current cigarette smokers (1).

Smokeless tobacco is consumed in a variety of different ways in various cultures around the world. Examples of smokeless tobacco products include chewing tobacco, dry snuff (used in the nasal cavity), wet snuff (a moist wad of tobacco, usually placed between the lips and gums), and nass (a mixture of tobacco, lime, ash, and cotton oil), with many local variations in Asia and Africa. Large geographical differences in the prevalence of smokeless tobacco consumption are evident, with particularly high consumption in Scandinavia (where a popular form of snuff is known as snus), India, southeastern Asia, Sudan, and parts of the United States. Smokeless tobacco products from these different regions are produced differently and have different levels of carcinogens (163–165). Smokeless tobacco products are associated with cancers of the head and neck, depending on the type of tobacco used (166–172). In some of these studies it is difficult to separate the effects of chewing tobacco from alcohol drinking because of few nondrinkers. In the United States, Winn and coworkers (170) reported a 4.2-fold increased risk (95% CI = 2.6–6.7) in Southern white women who exclusively use snuff. In contrast, an analysis of the relationship between smokeless tobacco and cancer of the oral cavity in the National Mortality Followback Study did not detect increased risk (173). Evidence for an elevated risk of nasal cancer in association with the use of snuff was reported in a case–control study in North Carolina and Virginia (171).

Oropharyngeal tissues clearly have the capacity to metabolically activate tobacco smoke carcinogens and cause DNA damage (174,175). Several studies have indicated that there is increased risk of oropharyngeal cancers in those who have a heritable trait demonstrated by genetical polymorphisms, although which markers play the greatest role is not yet known (122,124,129,176,177), and there is some evidence for a greater effect in persons with lower levels of smoking (127). In one study, heritable traits in carcinogen metabolism increased the frequency of \( p53 \) mutations (178). When cultured lymphocytes are exposed to mutagens and the resultant chromosomal breaks are counted, there is a greater mutagen sensitivity in cases, especially in smokers (179–182). This trait also predicts the risk of secondary cancers in persons with oropharyngeal cancers (183).

### 2.5. Bladder Cancer

Over 53,000 cases of bladder cancer occurred in the United States in the year 2000, and approximately 12,000 will eventually die from their disease (145).
The male to female ratio is about 2.6:1. Many studies have shown a dose–response effect of smoking on bladder cancer risk, and a decreased risk with cessation (184–188). Doll and Peto (91) found that among male British physicians followed for 20 years since an initial survey on smoking habits the annual age-adjusted rate of bladder cancer deaths was 11 per 100,000 among men who had quit smoking, compared to 9 among nonsmokers and 19 among men who smoked cigarettes exclusively (189). There is a higher risk with black tobaccos compared with blond tobaccos (184,186,190).

Studies have shown that smoking-related bladder cancer risk increases with genetical susceptibilities for carcinogen metabolism and detoxification, mostly for \textit{GSTM1} and \textit{NAT2} (118,122,126,191–196). Persons with low activity of \textit{CYP3A} were associated with higher \textit{p53} overexpression (197). There is only one study that relates adduct levels to bladder cancer risk (70), but because this was a case–control study, conclusions are limited. However, in a small group of patients (\(n=45\)), adduct levels were not related to \textit{p53} mutations in the tumors, but this was not a prospective study (198).

2.6. Studies of Nicotine Mutagenicity and Carcinogenicity

Several studies have been conducted to determine if nicotine is genotoxic. Almost all studies that could be identified failed to find increased genotoxicity (199–204), although there are conflicting data about the potential for nicotine to have mutagenic activity (200,201). Urine from rats exposed to nicotine was not mutagenic (199). The effects of coculture of nicotine and known genotoxic substances indicated an increased rate of mutations for some compounds and a decrease for others (200). Experimental animal studies using nicotine alone have not found that nicotine is carcinogenic (205–207), or in offspring of animals treated with nicotine (207). However, in experimental animals, nicotine can increase the frequency of tumors induced by other agents such as 7,12-dimethylbenz(a) anthracene (208), \textit{N}-nitrosamines (209), and \textit{N}-[4-(5-nitro-2-furyl)-2-thiazolyl]formamide (210), although there was no effect for other \textit{N}-nitrosamines (211) and there was an antitumor effect in some cases (212). Nicotine also is reported to reduce apoptosis (213).

Long-term studies of persons treated with nicotine replacement therapy are not yet possible because of the short time that such products have been available. Even though it is possible that nicotine might be increasing tumor occurrence due to other agents (e.g., a promotional effect), the risk from cotreatment with nicotine replacement therapy in persons who continue to smoke is likely to be small compared to continued use of tobacco products at a higher rate. The amount of nicotine replaced is less than that available from cigarettes and it does not have the spectrum of carcinogens present in tobacco products. Human studies have shown that the use of
nicotine replacement products do not result in the formation of TSNs such as NNK (214).

3. ALCOHOL DRINKING

Alcohol beverages are known risk factors for several cancers. However, the etiological mechanism remains obscure. Given that all types of alcoholic beverages have been associated with cancers, it is reasonable to assume that ethanol is the carcinogenic agent. However, animal models have not demonstrated that ethanol causes cancer. Still, there are ways in which ethanol may cause cancer in humans that can be inferred from experimental animal studies. It is known that ethanol causes cell damage and inflammation, oxidative damage, mutations via acetaldehyde, perturbations in estrogen metabolism and response, and alterations in folic acid utilization. Also, there are contaminants that might have contribute to cancer risk, such as urethane in wine, and N-nitrosamines in beer.

Ethanol metabolism occurs in the liver, breast, and other tissues (215–221). Ethanol is initially oxidized to acetaldehyde, which is then converted to acetate. This first step is catalyzed mostly by alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH), and to a lesser extent by CYP2E1. ADH is constitutively expressed, while CYP2E1 is induced with chronic high-level exposure (222,223). There are seven ADH genes among five classes, although not all metabolize ethanol. In the last few years, the nomenclature for ADH has changed (224). Acetaldehyde is mostly catalyzed by aldehyde dehydrogenase to form acetate (225). This reaction also is catalyzed by oxoreductase and aldehyde oxidase.

Acetaldehyde is a highly reactive compound, binding protein and DNA (226–229), and causes DNA cross-linking (230,231), micronuclei (231), aneuploidy (232,233), and chromosomal aberrations (227,231,233–238). The interaction of acetaldehyde with DNA bases results in different types of adducts, especially N\(^2\)-ethyl-2'-deoxyguanosine. Acetaldehyde also induces hypoxanthine phosphoribosyl transferase mutations, including large deletions (239), and G → A transitions, also seen in esophageal cancer (240). The DNA damage caused by acetaldehyde is repaired through nucleotide excision repair pathways (241). Acetaldehyde toxicity occurs, in part, through the formation of protein adducts, which are measurable in both experimental animals and humans (222,242–246). Acetaldehyde is a weak carcinogen (237,238). DNA repair is inhibited by acetaldehyde in vitro and in vivo (235,236,247), including the repair of induced double-stranded breaks (248).

There are several ADH polymorphisms that affect functional activity (249). There is a polymorphism in ADH1B (ADH2, old nomenclature) that encodes a high-activity *3 isozyme subunit, which is present only in African
Americans (250,251). Another polymorphism exists in \textit{ADH1C} (\textit{ADH3}, old nomenclature), where the \textit{*2} allele increases ethanol oxidation two fold (252). For this polymorphism, we found that fast oxidizers have an increased risk of premenopausal breast and oral cavity cancers (253,254). While another study of breast cancer did not replicate our positive association, it was reported that the high-risk variant was associated with increased endogenous estrogen levels (255). \textit{ADH2} (\textit{ADH4}, old nomenclature) has a polymorphism at position $-75$ of the promoter region that has been shown to increase the activity two fold ($-75\text{A}$ is greater than $-75\text{C}$) (256). There is a second polymorphism in the \textit{ADH2} in exon 7 at position 925 (257). This results in an Ile to Val substitution at amino acid 308, which decreases protein stability. While there are several known polymorphisms that have been identified in \textit{CYP2E1}, such as in the promoter region, the functional significance has not been clearly elucidated (258). However, a common allele in African Americans, consisting of a 96 bp insertion in the regulatory region, has been identified that increases activity in drinkers (259,260).

The mitochondria respiratory chain is probably the most important source of superoxide anions (246), and is clearly affected by alcohol (261). Superoxide dismutase (SOD) catalyzes the dismutation of superoxide to hydrogen peroxide and oxygen. Thus, it both clears and creates free radicals (262,263). Importantly, SOD blocks the formation of free radicals by acetaldehyde (264). 17-\textit{b}-Estradiol-related increases of 8-OH-dG can be inhibited by SOD (265,268).

Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) is a target for ethanol-induced oxidative stress (261,267,268), which can affect functions such as apoptosis. mtDNA mutations are present in about 40\% of breast tumors (269–277). Chronic ethanol exposure in animal models shows a cumulative effect of oxidative damage and mtDNA strand breaks (261). The cycle of ROS formation and mtDNA damage can be synergistic and exponential (278). In the mitochondria, base excision, mismatch, recombination, and OGG1 repair occur (261). Ethanol decreases glutathione peroxidase activity, which increases mitochondrial structural and functional disturbances (246,261,279,280).

### 3.1. Liver Cancer

Almost all liver cancer (80\%) is associated with cirrhosis (281,282). Even in noncirrhotic liver cancers, the risk factors are typically the same. Ethanol induces chronic hepatitis, which in turn results in liver cell necrosis, inflammation, regeneration, and fibrosis. This results in a proliferative process prone to development of clonal evolution.

Ethanol causes liver cirrhosis in regular drinkers. The resulting alcohol-related damage includes liver cell necrosis, inflammation, regeneration, and fibrosis. The local inflammation results in excessive oxidative damage.
Alcohol is considered to be responsible for about 15% of liver cancers, but this can be much higher in regions of low hepatitis virus prevalence (283). There also are several reports that alcohol and hepatitis viruses interact to increase liver cancer risk (283), but this is due to an interaction for liver cirrhosis risk (281). There has been limited study on the role of alcohol metabolizing genetical polymorphisms in liver cancer risk (284), but null studies exist (285).

### 3.2. Gastrointestinal Cancers

Esophageal cancer is relatively rare in the United States. The most common risk factors are alcohol drinking and tobacco. The effects are considered multiplicative. Almost a 100-fold risk has been reported for heavy smokers and drinkers (229). The association is more commonly reported for SCC of the esophagus, compared with ADs. There is some evidence that genetical polymorphisms in alcohol metabolizing genes can affect risk (286), including in persons who develop a new esophageal primary after the diagnosis of oropharyngeal cancer (287).

Overall, alcohol does not appear to be a risk factor for stomach cancer, although several studies indicate that when examined by site, there is an association with ADs of the gastric cardia (288).

Alcohol drinking is a reported risk factor for colon cancer, even at low levels (289). There are changes in normal colon morphology in alcoholics (290). Acetaldehyde correlates with colon crypt cell production in animals (291). While only a few studies have been reported, there is no effect of ADH polymorphisms on colon cancer risk (292), although there are some reported interactions with polymorphisms in the methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase (293).

### 3.3. Oropharyngeal Cancer

About 75% of oropharyngeal cancers are attributable to smoking and drinking (147,229). Heavy drinkers can have up to a 15-fold risk of cancer (147, 294), and a multiplicative effect has been reported (295,296). More than 95% of persons with oropharyngeal cancer who smoke also consume alcohol (296). ADH polymorphisms have been investigated for effects on alcohol-related oral cavity cancer. There is evidence of effect modification on the dose–response curve (254,297), although there are some conflicting data (298–301).

### 3.4. Breast Cancer

Epidemiological evidence indicates that alcohol drinking is associated with a moderate increase in breast cancer risk (302–304). Singletary and Gapstur (305) summarized the relationship of alcohol to breast cancer in a recent
review. They cited more than 5 separate meta-analyses, 2 major reviews, 5 prospective studies, and 33 other reports. There is a dose–response relationship between drinking and risk (306). Although some studies only identify a statistical increase for the highest levels of drinking, there is evidence that one to two drinks per day also contribute to breast cancer risk (307–309), and threshold values between 5 and 60 g per day have been suggested (310,311). Overall, there is about a 9% incremental increase in risk for 10 g of alcohol consumed per day (equivalent to less than one drink per day) (302,303,312). While ethanol generally is not an animal carcinogen, there are supportive models for breast cancer (313,314). In animal models, ethanol initiates mammary tumors (315) and dimethylbenzathracene (DMBA) followed by ethanol caused SD rat tumors (305).

There are several lines of evidence showing that alcohol affects estrogen pathways. It is associated with decreased menstrual cycle variability and more frequent long cycles (316). In premenopausal women mostly, but also in postmenopausal women, drinking is associated with increased serum and urinary estrogen metabolites, and decreased sex-hormone binding globulin, follicle stimulating hormone, and luteinizing hormone levels (317–322). In drinkers, the half-life of transdermal estrogen replacement is longer (323,324), and some studies indicate an increased breast cancer risk in postmenopausal women who use HRT (59). [There are some studies that do not support the effect of alcohol on hormone replacement therapy related breast cancer risk (325)]. Alcohol use is associated with decreased bone loss and osteoporosis (326). Alcohol stimulates the transcriptional activity of ER-α, upregulates ER-α expression (327,328), and is associated with estrogen-negative tumors (329–331).

Increased breast density is associated with a 4–6 fold increased breast cancer risk (332–338). There are many epidemiological studies that have shown that alcohol drinking is associated with increased breast density (305). Other risk factors are nulliparity, late age at first birth, younger age, and low body mass (339). HRT also increases density (341), although there is some inconsistency (339,341–343). Animal studies with the DMBA rat model show that alcohol increases mammary terminal end bud density and reduces the density of differentiated lobules (344). Interestingly, urinary malondialdehyde is associated with increased breast density, suggesting a role for oxidative stress (342).

REFERENCES


73. Hussain SP, Harris CC. p53 mutation spectrum and load: the generation of hypotheses linking the exposure of endogenous or exogenous carcinogens to human cancer. Mutat Res 1999; 428:23–32.


146. Schlecht NF, Franco EL, Pintos J, Negassa A, Kowalski LP, Oliveira BV, Curado MP. Interaction between tobacco and alcohol consumption and the


163. Helbock HJ, Beckman KB, Shigenaga MK, Walter PB, Woodall AA, Yeo HC, Ames BN. DNA oxidation matters: the HPLC-electrochemical detection assay


Neoplasia of hormone-responsive tissues currently accounts for more than 35% of all newly diagnosed cancers in men, and more than 40% of all newly diagnosed cancers in women in the United States (1). Bittner (2) first proposed the idea that hormones may play a role in the formation of cancer in studies of estrogens and mammary tumors in mice. Since that time, that theory has been refined and expanded with substantial and convincing evidence from experimental, clinical, and epidemiological studies. It is now generally recognized that hormones play an etiological role in cancers of the breast, prostate, ovary, endometrium, testis, thyroid, and bone.

This chapter will focus primarily on endogenous and exogenous sources of steroid hormones and their role in carcinogenesis of hormone-responsive tissue. Further, the chapter will review multigenic models that are being used to understand the etiology of breast and prostate cancers and that may serve as examples to establish new models for other hormone-dependent cancers.

1. **MODEL OF CARCINOGENESIS**

How do hormones fit into the traditional model of carcinogenesis? The normal growth and function of hormone-responsive organs is controlled by one
or more steroid or polypeptide hormones. The underlying mechanism proposed for all of these cancers is that neoplasia is a consequence of prolonged hormonal stimulation of the particular target organ, which may occur from endogenous sources produced in the body, or through exogenous sources such as oral contraceptives or hormone replacement therapy (HRT).

The major carcinogenic consequence of hormonal exposure at the end organ is cellular proliferation. The emergence of a malignant phenotype depends on a series of somatic mutations that occur during cell division, but the specific genes involved in progression are unknown at this time. Candidate genes include those in the endocrine pathway (3,4), as well as DNA repair genes, tumor suppressor genes, and oncogenes (5–7). BRCA1 and BRCA2 are two such tumor suppressor genes that have been associated with susceptibility to breast, ovarian, and possibly other cancers in certain kindreds (8,9). Germline mutations in TP53 are also associated with an increased risk of breast cancer in certain families (10). However, mutations in these genes do not appear to be involved in the majority of sporadic breast cancer. The HER2 oncogene is overexpressed in advanced breast cancer and probably represents one critical event in the later part of breast cancer progression (11).

Although there is evidence that hormonal secretion and metabolism can be environmentally influenced, for example, through diet and physical activity, the control of hormonal patterns is largely genetically regulated. We must begin to characterize the complex genetic arrays that contribute to carcinogenesis in hormone-responsive tissue and identify alleles responsible for interindividual differences in steroid hormone levels. High-risk alleles will likely be variants in genes involved in steroid hormone metabolism and transport. These allelic variants may alter the encoded protein structure, function, interaction with other proteins, or half-life and stability within the cell. Research toward identifying alleles using the candidate gene approach will be discussed later in this chapter in relation to breast and prostate cancer.

2. ENDOGENOUS HORMONES
2.1. Steroid Hormone Synthesis

The primary sex steroid hormones are estrogens and progestins for women and androgens for men. Steroid hormones, including estrogens, androgens, progestins, mineralocorticoids, and glucocorticoids, are synthesized in a tightly controlled system involving cytochrome P450 enzymes and dehydrogenases (12) (Fig. 1). The process begins with the conversion of acetate into cholesterol, which may occur in the liver, skin, adrenal, ovaries, testes, brain, or intestine (13). Over 25 enzymes are involved in this initial step. Cholesterol is then converted into pregnenolone by the p450 side chain clea-
The rate-limiting step of steroid biosynthesis is the diffusion of cholesterol across the mitochondrial membrane (14,15). At this point of steroidogenesis, pregnenolone may be converted into 17OH-pregnenolone by the p450c17 (CYP17) enzyme or into progesterone by hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase-3-beta-1 (HSD3B1); both products may then be converted into estrogens or androgens.

The production of estrogen is accomplished through the conversion of progesterone or 17OH-pregnenolone into androstenedione in the adrenals or ovaries. CYP17 is required for both reactions, while HSD3B1 must additionally be present for the conversion of 17OH-pregnenolone. The reaction proceeds with the aromatization of androstenedione into estrone (E1) through CYP19, which occurs primarily in the ovaries of premenopausal women and in the adipose tissue of postmenopausal women. E1 is then converted to a more biologically active form, 17-beta-estradiol (E2), through the mediation of 17-beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenases (HSD17B1). The reverse reaction (conversion of E2 back to E1) is catalyzed by HSD17B2.

There are two androgen synthesis pathways that occur in the adrenals and the testes. The 5-delta pathway is most common in humans, whereas the 4-delta pathway is common in rodents. Both pathways begin with the rate-limiting conversion of cholesterol to pregnenolone through the action of CYP11A1, as previously described. The 5-delta pathway consists of the conversion of pregnenolone to 17-alpha hydroxy-pregnenolone and subsequently dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) through the action of CYP17 in either the testes or the adrenals. Dehydroepiandrosterone is then

![Steroid hormone biosynthesis pathway showing the genes involved in biosynthesis.](image)
converted to androstenediol in the testes by HSD17B3. The final step of the 5-delta pathway, also limited to the testes, is the metabolism of androstenediol to testosterone by the enzyme HSD3B2.

To exert an effect, steroids must find their way from the cytoplasmic organelles in the ovarian or testes cells into the cells of the hormone-responsive tissues where they can bind with steroid receptors in the nucleus. Roughly 95% of total circulating hormones reach the appropriate cells bound to “carrier” proteins such as sex-hormone binding globulin (SHBG) and albumin. Steroids enter the cell by diffusion or by interaction between serum proteins and recognition sites on the cell surface (16). Once the steroid reaches the appropriate cells, the steroid may bind to its associated receptor, resulting in a conformational change in the receptor that enhances its affinity for specific hormone response elements (HRE) in the DNA. The steroid receptor complex, made of a hormone, a receptor dimer, and various nonreceptor proteins, interacts with specific sights in the preinitiation complex and proximal promoter (TATA) box to signal the activation of transcription of target genes. The precise mechanism of how steroid receptors regulate gene expression, however, remains elusive.

3. EXOGENOUS HORMONES

External sources of steroid hormones also influence cell proliferation and, therefore, risk of hormone-dependent cancers. Hormone replacement therapy and oral contraceptives are two forms of exogenous hormones that have been studied extensively. One or both of these agents play a role in the risk of breast, ovary, cervical, endometrial, and colorectal cancers. More recently, environmental estrogens and dietary phytoestrogens, plant substances that are structurally or functionally similar to estrogen, have been suggested to be important in the etiology of hormone related cancers.

3.1. Oral Contraceptives

Combination oral contraceptives (COC), which include an estrogen and high-dose progesterone, reduce the risk of ovarian and endometrial cancers. The relationship of OC use to breast cancer has been the topic of many review articles (17). A recent meta-analysis of 54 studies, including over 150,000 women, provided important information about the risk of breast cancer among COC users (18). Results from the meta-analysis indicate that a modest increase in relative risk (RR) of breast cancer was associated with current (RR = 1.24; \( p < 0.00001 \)) and recent (RR = 1.16; \( p < 0.00001 \)) COC use. There is no evidence that this excess in risk continues to persist 10 or more years after cessation of COC use. However, the degree of the association was modified by age at first use of COCs. For recent users, risk was greatest for those who began COCs before the age of 20, and tended to
decline with increasing age at diagnosis. Total duration of COC use was not associated with increased risk of breast cancer once recency of use was taken into account. Although the scope of this meta-analysis was broad, there is little information about cancer risk 10 years after cessation of COC use. Moreover, most women who stopped use 10 or more years ago had used COCs for only short periods of time. In the next decade, women who began use as teenagers will reach their late 40s and early 50s. At that time, it will be important to reexamine the effects of long-term and early use of COCs.

3.2. Hormone Replacement Therapy

Hormone replacement therapy use is associated with endometrial, breast, colorectal, and possibly ovarian cancers. When the use of HRT to provide short-term relief of menopausal symptoms was introduced, prescriptions were for estrogen-only replacement therapy (ERT). What resulted was an epidemic of endometrial cancers in the 1960s and 1970s that was related to both dose and duration of therapy (19). Subsequently, progestogens were added to the estrogen in various doses and schedules and the incidence of endometrial cancer once again declined. Combination hormone replacement therapy (CHRT), in which a progestin is given sequentially or continuously with estrogen during a monthly cycle, has grown rapidly in popularity in the past three decades.

Until recently, the vast majority of epidemiological studies of HRT and breast cancer had sufficient data to examine ERT use only. The accumulated evidence suggested that postmenopausal hormone use imparts a relatively small increased risk of breast cancer. In a meta-analysis including over 160,000 women, current or recent use of postmenopausal hormones increased the risk of breast cancer in relation to increasing duration of use (20). For women whose last use of HRT was less than 5 years before diagnosis, risk increased by 2.3% ($p = 0.0002$) for each year of use. However, women who stopped using HRT 5 or more years before diagnosis had no increased risk, regardless of duration of use. After taking these timing factors into account, no other index of timing was important, including age at first use or time between menopause and first use. Although this meta-analysis suggested that risk of breast cancer associated with CHRT might be greater than for ERT, there were few long-term users of CHRT available for analysis so the risk estimates are statistically imprecise (20).

The first observational studies specifically examining the breast cancer risk associated with CHRT use appeared in 2000. Ross et al. (21) reported that for every 5 years of use, risk was four times greater for CHRT users than for ERT users; specifically, the odd ratio (OR) per 5 years of use for CHRT was 1.24 [95% confidence interval (CI): 1.07–1.45] and the OR per 5 years of use for ERT was 1.06 (95% CI: 0.97–1.15). Schairer et al. (22) observed similar risks among a cohort of 46,355 women in the Breast Cancer Detection
Demonstration Project (BCDDP). The relative risk increased by 1% per year of estrogen-only use and by 8% per year of CHRT use.

In May 2002 the Women’s Health Initiative (WHI), a set of randomized clinical trials designed to determine the efficacy of several strategies to reduce the incidence of breast cancer, heart disease, colorectal cancer, and fractures in postmenopausal women, stopped the study arm that was testing the use of CHRT vs. placebo among 16,600 women (23). The trial was stopped after a mean of 5.2 years of follow-up when the test statistic for invasive breast cancer exceeded the stopping boundary. The estimated hazard ratio (HR) for breast cancer was 1.29 (95% CI: 1.00–1.59) among women who had taken CHRT vs. placebo. The trial also found that women in the CHRT group were at increased risk of heart disease and stroke, and decreased risk of colorectal cancer, endometrial cancer, and hip fractures. The HR for colorectal cancer was 0.63 (95% CI: 0.43–0.92), and 0.83 (95% CI: 0.48–1.47) for endometrial cancer. Although randomized trials are considered the gold standard of epidemiological research, controversy around the use of CHRT remains. A similar trial under way in the United Kingdom, called the WISDOM study, will continue to study the long-term health effects of CHRT (24).

Emerging evidence suggests that ERT may also increase the risk of ovarian cancer (25). In a large prospective study including over 900 cases of ovarian cancer, Rodriguez et al. found that ERT users had higher ovarian cancer death rates than nonusers (RR = 1.51, 95% CI: 1.16–1.96). Risk was also slightly increased among former ERT users, and more than doubled among women who had used ERT for 10 or more years (RR = 2.20, 95% CI: 1.53–3.17). Although lifetime risk of ovarian cancer is low (1.7%) (26), these data add to concerns about the safety of long-term HRT use. Further studies are needed to confirm these findings and to examine whether effects are similar for CHRT use.

3.3. Xenobiotic Pesticides and Phytoestrogens

Both natural and man-made environmental estrogens have been shown to mimic the estrogenic activity of steroid hormones. Dietary phytoestrogens, plant substances that are structurally or functionally similar to estrogen, have been proposed to act as estrogen antagonists in breast, prostate, and endometrial cells, potentially protecting these tissues from cancer formation. In contrast, xenobiotics, environmental estrogens such as pesticides, have been proposed to act as estrogen agonists, possibly increasing the risk of cancer formation. Although we would expect that a weak estrogen, whether from natural or synthetic sources, would act in a similar manner when applied to the same system, the effect is difficult to predict due to variable characteristics of the estrogen-like substances and the test systems. The size, structure, and concentration of the chemicals, the presence of other natural
or synthetic estrogens, the type of cell or animal model being tested, and the concentration of estrogen receptors (ER) will all influence the effect of the estrogen-like substance. Further, interpretation of findings may be influenced by prior beliefs that natural chemicals are beneficial, while synthetic agents are harmful.

There are several proposed mechanisms by which environmental estrogens may act. They may competitively bind with the ER to prevent the more potent mammalian form of estrogen (17β-estradiol, E2) from binding to the ER, or act synergistically by increasing the total concentration of estrogen and estrogen-like substances. Alternatively, environmental estrogens may interfere with the release of gonadotropins and, therefore, disrupt the feedback loop of the hypothalamic–pituitary gonadal axis. It also has been proposed that environmental estrogens may decrease free estrogen concentrations via stimulation of SHBG synthesis in the liver, which is one of the primary estrogen transport proteins in humans. In cell studies, it was shown that low concentrations (1–10 μM) of the phytoestrogen enterolactone increased SHBG synthesis by HepG2 cells (27). However, higher production of SHBG has not been shown among humans consuming phytoestrogen-rich diets (28). Several nonhormonal actions of environmental estrogens also have been proposed. Phytoestrogens have been shown to suppress angiogenesis (29) and inhibit protein tyrosine kinases involved in tumor cell signal transduction and proliferation (30). Finally, it has been suggested that phytoestrogens may act as antioxidants, have inhibitory effects on apoptosis (31), and inhibit the activity of topoisomerases (32).

3.4. Phytoestrogens and Breast Cancer

Epidemiological studies of dietary phytoestrogens and breast cancer indicate that soy intake may reduce a woman’s risk of premenopausal breast cancer (33–35), however at least one study found no association between dietary soy and breast cancer (36). Soy is the most significant source of dietary phytoestrogen (37–39), but phytoestrogens also are found in fruits, vegetables, whole grains, clover, and alfalfa sprouts (28). Of the studies that reported an association between premenopausal breast cancer and soy intake, one reported a decrease in risk of postmenopausal breast cancer (35). However, the postmenopausal finding was restricted largely to non-U.S. born Asians, suggesting that some other correlate of traditional Asian lifestyle may explain the association. Ingram et al. (40), re-examined the association between phytoestrogens and breast cancer by measuring urinary excretion rates of two classes of phytochemicals (lignans and isoflavonoids). An inverse relation was found between the risk of both premenopausal and postmenopausal breast cancer and urinary excretion of daidzein, equol, and enterolactone (40) and in a subsequent study, of daidzein, glycinein, and total isoflavonoids (41). It remains untested whether the measured
phytochemicals actually serve as markers of other correlated dietary components such as fiber, which also has been postulated to reduce breast cancer risk (42).

While epidemiological data indicate that dietary phytoestrogens may decrease a woman’s risk of breast cancer, the results of dietary intervention studies are less clear. The reported associations between dietary soy and circulating estrogens are inconsistent (43–45). Dietary studies did find that premenopausal women on soy-rich diets had lower levels of leutinizing hormone, follicular stimulating hormone, and progesterone, with longer menstrual cycles (43,44). Of potential concern are two reports that found that women on soy-rich diets had elevated numbers of hyperplastic epithelial cells in their breast fluid (46) and significantly increased rates of breast lobular epithelial proliferation (47).

Experimental studies show that phytoestrogens can exhibit both an estrogenic and an antiestrogenic effect, depending on the study conditions. For example, several types of phytoestrogens were shown to stimulate DNA synthesis and growth of human estrogen-dependent MCF-7 breast cancer cells at low concentrations (1–10 μM) (48–51), while inhibiting DNA synthesis at higher concentrations (20–90 μM) (50). Phytoestrogens also have been shown to inhibit the growth of estrogen receptor-negative human breast cancer cell lines (52). Animal studies indicate that soy administered by injection can reduce the incidence (53–55) or multiplicity (54–57) of chemically induced rat mammary tumors (58) and that they can be inhibited by soy-based diets as well (59). It is hypothesized that short-term feedings of dietary phytoestrogens to young rats may decrease carcinogen-induced breast cancer by increasing the proportion of differentiated cells in the mammary gland (55).

3.5. Xenobiotic Pesticides and Breast Cancer

Concern over environmental contaminants with estrogenic potential became an issue in the 1990s when an unusual number of wild animals, including fish (60–62), reptiles (63,64), and birds, were discovered with developmental abnormalities. Furthermore, there was concern that if environmental contaminants were responsible, humans also would be at increased risk. Fueling these concerns, a number of studies reported associations between environmental estrogens and increased risks of human breast cancer (65–67) and a decrease in sperm quality (67,68). Although, the activity level of most environmental pesticides is at least 1000 times less than that of the endogenous E2, there was uncertainty whether combinations of pesticides found in the environment could act in concert to produce stronger effects. This was supported by findings that a panel of chemical pesticides acted synergistically in competitive estrogen receptor binding and estrogen-responsive yeast assays. Specifically, a mixture of the insecticides dieldrin
and endosulfan produced a 1000-fold higher combined activity level than either chemical alone (69). However, the findings were not supported by subsequent studies using over 10 different estrogen-responsive assays (70,71). More recent studies of turtles showed that endogenous steroid hormones with differing activity levels (estradiol, estrone, estriol) act synergistically, suggesting that weak environmental estrogens also may synergize with endogenous steroidal estrogens (72).

Rigorous, systematic study is needed to determine if a relationship exists between weak environmental estrogens and cancer risk. If the mechanism of action of environmental estrogens on cancer risk is strictly hormonal, it is unlikely that estrogenic pesticides and dietary phytoestrogens would exclusively produce opposite effects. Evaluation of in vitro and in vivo work for both phytoestrogens and xenobiotics as a whole may lead to a more objective interpretation of the current data and assessment of what questions remain unanswered.

4. EPIDEMIOLOGICAL REVIEW OF HORMONE-DEPENDENT CANCERS

4.1. Breast Cancer

A large and compelling body of epidemiological and experimental data implicate estrogens in the etiology of human breast cancer (73). Animal studies repeatedly demonstrated that estrogens can induce and promote mammary tumors in rodents and that removing the animals’ ovaries or administering an antiestrogenic drug had the opposite effect (74).

4.1.1. Risk Factors

The most widely accepted risk factors for breast cancer, shown in Table 1, can be thought of as measures of the cumulative “dose” of estrogen that breast epithelium is exposed to over time. Early menarche and late

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>Summary of Established Risk and Protective Factors for Breast Cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Risk factors (increased hormone exposure)</td>
<td>Early menarche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Late menopause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alcohol consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Postmenopausal obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hormone replacement therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protective factors (decreased hormone exposure)</td>
<td>Young age at first full-term pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prolonged lactation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
menopause maximize the number of ovulatory cycles experienced over time, during which a woman is exposed to high levels of estrogen and progesterone. Prolonged lactation, and more importantly, physical activity can reduce the number of ovulatory cycles. Both occupational and recreational types of physical activity have been shown to reduce risk (75–77). Exercise may decrease the risk of breast cancer by delaying the age of onset of regular ovulatory cycles, decreasing the frequency of those cycles, and reducing circulating levels of endogenous steroid hormones and insulin-like growth factors (IGFs) (78–81). Alcohol appears to increase breast cancer risk by increasing plasma estrogen and IGF levels (82). In a recent study, alcohol consumption was associated with a linear increase in breast cancer incidence for women who drank up to 60 g of alcohol per day (two to five drinks) (83).

The primary source of estrogen in postmenopausal women is from the conversion of androstenedione to E1 in adipose tissue; thus, postmenopausal obesity increases the risk of breast cancer through increased production of estrogen. Obesity also is associated with decreased SHBG production and increased proportions of free and albumin-bound estrogens. The protective effect of early age at first birth is complex. During the first trimester of pregnancy, the level of free E2 rises rapidly. However, as the pregnancy progresses, prolactin and free E2 levels lower and SHBG levels rise yielding a net overall benefit with respect to the endogenous estrogen profile. Perhaps more importantly, the effect of a first pregnancy may be to cause some premalignant cells to terminally differentiate, thereby losing their malignant potential.

4.1.2. Endogenous Hormones

The most carefully conducted international studies comparing estrogen levels in populations at differing risk of breast cancer support the role of estrogens, especially E2, in the pathogenesis of breast cancer. Most studies have focused on women from China and Japan, because Asian women have experienced lower breast cancer rates than women from North America. In the early 1970s, MacMahon et al. (84) conducted a series of studies on teenagers and young women in Asia and North America. They found that in overnight urine samples collected on the morning of day 21 of the menstrual cycle, total urinary estrogen was 36% higher in the North American teenagers than in Asian teenagers. Similar differences were found among women aged 20–39. In two more recent studies, the relationship between serum estradiol and breast cancer risk was re-examined in Asian and North American populations (85,86). In one study, E2 levels were 20% higher in Los Angeles compared to premenopausal controls from Shanghai (85). In a comparison of postmenopausal women, E2 was 36% higher in Los Angeles than in age-matched Japanese women (86). The reasons for these differences remain poorly defined, but part of the explanation may be that there are genetic differences that affect steroid hormone biosynthesis.
A recent reanalysis of nine prospective studies of endogenous hormones and postmenopausal breast cancer has clearly demonstrated the strong association between elevated sex hormones and breast cancer risk (87). The risk of breast cancer increased statistically significantly with increasing concentrations of all the hormones examined: total E2, free E2, non-SHBG bound E2, E1, estrone sulfate, androstenedione, DHEA, DHEA-S, and testosterone. Women in the highest quintile of E2 were at twofold increased risk of breast cancer compared to those in the lowest quintile (RR = 2.0, 95% CI: 1.47–2.71, p for trend <0.001). High levels of free E2 (the form of estrogen that is most bioavailable) were even more strongly associated with risk (RR = 2.58, 95% CI: 1.76–3.78, p for trend <0.001, highest compared to lowest quintile). Increasing SHBG was associated with decreasing breast cancer risk (p for trend = 0.04). This study did not measure progesterone, and the role of elevated progesterone levels in breast cancer etiology remains controversial (89). Recent experimental data suggest that progestins are breast mitogens and, as such, are likely to increase breast cancer risk (90).

4.1.3. Genetic Models of Breast Cancer Susceptibility

It has been hypothesized that a multigenic model of breast cancer predisposition can be developed that includes polymorphisms in genes involved in estrogen biosynthesis and intracellular binding (3). This model would include functionally relevant polymorphisms that would act together, and in combination with established risk factors, to define a high-risk profile for breast cancer. Although many candidate genes for such a model exist, the genes originally proposed included three genes of interest: the 17-beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 1 (HSD17B1) gene, the cytochrome P459c17α (CYP17) gene, and the estrogen receptor alpha (ESR1) gene. Data have been published supporting the joint effect of CYP17 and HSD17B1 on breast cancer risk (91). Huang et al. (92) have also published findings of a similar model with the estrogen metabolizing genes CYP17, CYP1A1, which participates in estrogen hydroxylation, and the catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT) gene, which encodes the enzyme responsible for O-methylation leading to inactivation of catechol estrogen (CE). Association studies of genes in the steroid hormone pathway are being published with increasing frequency, but little consistency. Several reviews appear elsewhere (92a,94b–d). As an example of one candidate gene, CYP17 is discussed below.

4.1.3.1. CYP17: At present, data suggest that variation in CYP17 may influence endocrine function. As summarized below, it has been shown to be associated with the risk of breast cancer, serum hormone levels in pre- and postmenopausal women, estrogen metabolites measured in urine, age at menarche, and use of HRT.
The CYP17 gene codes for the cytochrome P450c17α enzyme, which mediates both steroid 17α-hydroxylase and 17,20-lyase activities, and functions at key branch points in human steroidogenesis (93). The 5′ untranslated region (UTR) of CYP17 contains a single base-pair polymorphism 34 bp upstream from the initiation of translation, and 27 bp downstream from the transcription start site (T27C) (94) and has been used to designate two alleles, A1 (the published sequence) and A2.

An association between risk of breast cancer and this CYP17 polymorphism was first reported in 1997 (95). In a case–control study of incident breast cancer among Asian, African-American, and Latina women, a 2.5-fold increased risk of advanced breast cancer was observed among women who carried the CYP17 A2 allele. This study also presented preliminary evidence suggesting that CYP17 may be associated with age at menarche.

These results suggested that serum hormone levels may differ by CYP17 genotype. In a follow-up study, it was reported that CYP17 genotype was associated with E2 and progesterone levels among young nulliparous women (96). As shown in Fig. 2, serum E2 measured around day 11 of the menstrual cycle was 11% and 57% higher (p = 0.04), respectively, among women hetero- and homozygous for the CYP17 A2 allele compared to A1/A1 women. Similarly, around cycle day 22 (Fig. 3), E2 was 7% and 28% higher (p = 0.06) and progesterone was 24% and 30% higher (p = 0.04). These data provided direct evidence of genetic control of serum hormone levels.

![Estradiol – day 11](image)

**Figure 2** Geometric mean serum estradiol concentration (pg/ml) among young nulliparous women on day 11 of the menstrual cycle by CYP17 genotype.
Since this original study of CYP17 was published, at least 11 other studies have reported on CYP17 and breast cancer (97–103). The results of these studies are largely negative and suggest heterogeneity by ethnicity. Although the two of the largest studies conducted to date found no association (97,98), several of the smaller studies (99,100,102) found a modest, but nonsignificant, elevation in breast cancer risk with the CYP17 A2 allele in some subgroups. Others have shown an association between CYP17 and breast cancer only among specific age groups of women. Kristensen et al. (103) and Miyoshi et al. (104) suggest that the effect of CYP17 may be limited to older cases (i.e. over 55 years of age at diagnosis) while Bergman-Jungestrom et al. (102) and Spurdle et al. (105) found increased risk among premenopausal women.

More consistent data are accumulating to suggest that CYP17 is a modifier of other breast cancer risk factors, such as age at menarche and parity (106,92). At least three studies have shown that the protective effect of later onset of menarche was limited to women with the A1/A1 genotype (95,97,106). One study has shown that CYP17 genotype was associated with estrogen metabolites measured in urine (107). The ratio between 2-hydroxyestrone (2OHE) and 16\(\alpha\)-hydroxyestrone (16\(\alpha\)OHE) demonstrated a dose–response relationship by which women with the A1/A1 genotype had the highest urinary ratio of 2OHE to 16\(\alpha\)OHE (median = 1.47) and women with the A2/A2 genotype had the lowest ratio (median = 1.21, \(p = 0.01\). Lower 2OHE:16\(\alpha\)OHE ratios may be associated with increased risk of breast cancer (108,109). Thus, this observation is compatible with the hypothesis that the CYP17 A2 allele confers a higher risk of breast cancer.
4.1.3.2. Other Candidate Genes: Work is emerging on other candidate genes that may fit into this model. A polymorphism in the \textit{COMT} gene has been investigated in at least three studies (110–112). \textit{COMT} alleles can be designated as high activity (the wild-type allele) or low activity. It has been hypothesized that the low-activity alleles would lead to an increased risk of breast cancer, secondary to the accumulation of catechol estrogens. Published results on the association between \textit{COMT} and breast cancer have been inconsistent. In fact, two of the studies (110,112) reported opposite effects and the third found no association (111) and no evidence of effect modification with other risk factors.

Others have examined the possible role of \textit{CYP1A1}, which is among the major enzymes participating in estrogen hydroxylation, in breast cancer etiology (113–116). Several polymorphisms in \textit{CYP1A1} have been described and two of these polymorphisms have been associated with breast cancer risk in some (113,114,116) but not all (115) studies. The strongest associations for \textit{CYP1A1} and breast cancer are limited to women who smoke.

4.2. Prostate Cancer

The two most important risk factors for prostate cancer are age and ethnicity. Prostate cancer is rare before age 40, but the rate of increase with age is greater than for any other cancer (4). African–American men have the highest incidence in prostate cancer in the world. In the United States, prostate cancer rates among African–Americans are about 50–70% higher compared to whites (117). Unfortunately, adequate data does not exist on prostate cancer rates among blacks in Africa. Lowest rates of prostate cancer are seen among Asian populations (Native Japanese and Chinese men). Japanese- and Chinese-American men have rates higher than men in their respective homelands; however, their rates still remain much lower than U.S. whites (4). Years of epidemiological research has failed to uncover any environmental agents or lifestyle risk factors that can explain these pronounced differences found across different ethnic groups. Like breast cancer, risk of prostate cancer appears to be explained by endogenous hormone levels.

Among participants of the Physician’s Health Study, a strong trend of increasing prostate cancer risk was observed with increasing levels of plasma testosterone after simultaneous adjustment for SHBG and other endogenous hormones (118). In the highest quartile of testosterone, risk of prostate cancer was more than 2.5 times the risk in the lowest quartile \(p\) for trend = 0.004). Further, the study found an inverse trend with increasing levels of SHBG and with estradiol.

In a comparison of healthy young U.S. white and black men, testosterone levels were 19% higher on average among the African–Americans (119). This study was later extended to include young men from rural Japan (120).
Although the expectation was that these Asian men would have the lowest levels of testosterone, they, in fact, had levels that were intermediate between the black and white U.S. men and did not differ significantly from either group. However, circulating levels of androstanediol glucuronide, a reliable index of 5α-reductase activity, were 25–35% lower than in either African-American or U.S. white men. Chinese men have also been shown to have low androstanediol glucuronide levels (121a).

4.2.1. Genetic Models of Prostate Cancer Susceptibility

These studies suggest that differences in prostate cancer risk among ethnic groups are a result of differences in hormone biosynthesis and metabolism. Thus, a multigenic model (similar to the model for breast cancer) has been proposed to explain the occurrence of prostate cancer (4). In developing a model of prostate carcinogenesis, genes involved in androgen biosynthesis, activation, inactivation, and transport are all of interest. Four genes were initially specified: the androgen receptor gene (AR), steroid 5α-reductase type II (SRD5A2), CYP17, and 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (HSD3B2). AR is responsible for androgen binding and activation, SRD5A2 encodes the enzyme responsible for converting testosterone to the metabolically more active dihydrotestosterone (DHT), and CYP17 (as described above) encodes an enzyme that functions at key branch points in human steroidogenesis. HSD3B2 has a dual role: it encodes an enzyme that catalyzes a critical reaction in testosterone biosynthesis, and it is involved in the metabolism of dihydrotestosterone in the prostate (possibly different isozymes). As with genetic susceptibility to breast cancer, the search for genetic polymorphisms involved in prostate carcinogenesis is an area of great interest. The AR and SRD5A2 genes provide examples of work in this field.

4.2.1.1. Androgen Receptor (AR): Within exon 1 of AR, two polymorphic polyamino acid tracts (trinucleotide repeats) have been studied: a poly-glutamine (CAG), and a poly-glycine (GGC). Androgen receptor activity has been shown to be negatively correlated with the number of CAG repeats and the association been prostate cancer and this microsatellite polymorphism has been the focus of over 20 epidemiological publications and review articles, but a consistent and reproducible association has yet to be confirmed (Refs. 105–109) and (123b).

Other polymorphic markers at the AR locus have also been evaluated (4,123b). A StuI single-nucleotide polymorphism at codon 211, which designates two alleles, S1 and S2, is located roughly half-way between the two trinucleotide repeats. Among African–American men the S1 allele was associated with a statistically significant threefold increased risk of prostate cancer among men under the age of 65. An excess proportion of this allele was also found among prostate cancer cases with an affected brother. The StuI
polymorphism did not seem to simply reflect short CAG repeats as a function of linkage disequilibrium. These preliminary data suggested that among African-American men, non-CAG repeat variation at the AR locus might contribute to hereditary prostate cancer. However, a systematic evaluation and haplotype analysis of generic variation in AR in a multiethnic population failed to show evidence that common genetic variation in AR influences risk of prostate cancer (123b).

4.2.1.2. SRD5A2: Investigation of the SRD5A2 gene began with a polymorphic dinucleotide repeat (TA)$_n$ in the 3' untranslated region of the gene. Analysis of this marker suggested that a series of alleles with a relatively high number of repeats (17 or greater) was unique to African-Americans and somewhat more common in African-American men with prostate cancer compared to healthy African-American men (127). Subsequent sequencing of SRD5A2 in a sample of men with either high or low levels of circulating androstanediol glucuronide (AAG—the biochemical serological correlate of prostatic 5α-reductase activity in vivo) identified numerous sequence variants. Two of these variants, V89L (valine to leucine at codon 89) and A49T (alanine to threonine at codon 49), have been proven to be strong candidates for conferring risk of prostate cancer (128,129). The V89L substitution showed marked differences among ethnic groups. The VV genotype is most common in African-Americans, Latinos, and whites, but relatively rare among Chinese and Japanese. Among Asian men, V89L shows a strong correlation with AAG levels. Although the A49T mutation is uncommon in healthy men, it confers a very high risk, especially for advanced prostate cancer. In African-American men, the RR = 7.22 ($p = 0.001$) for advanced disease and in Latino men the OR = 3.60 ($p = 0.04$). These epidemiological findings are supported by in vitro data that show that the A49T mutation has a fivefold higher $V_{max}$ for testosterone conversion than the normal enzyme and the V89L has approximately 33% reduced activity compared to the wild type.

These molecular models that are being developed for prostate and breast cancer illustrate the importance of collaborative efforts between multiple specialties, such as molecular biology and epidemiology, in determining the etiology of cancer. We must begin thinking of these hormonally based cancers as being complex genetic traits and begin to both expand these models and develop similar multigenic models for the other hormone-related cancers. In Table 2, we provide a summary of likely candidate genes for such models.

4.3. Ovarian Cancer

Like other cancers of hormonal etiology, ovarian cancer is driven by stimulation of cell division. The ovulation hypothesis posits that each cycle of
ovulation, which includes follicle development and repair of ovarian surface epithelium, increases the risk of ovarian cancer (130). Actions that suppress ovulation, such as pregnancy or the use of oral contraceptives, permanently decrease the risk of ovarian cancer. An important paper appearing in 1983 (131) suggested that ovarian cancer risk resulted from excessive gonadotropin secretion. Under this model, excessive stimulation by gonadotropins (namely FSH or LH) would result in stimulation of the ovarian stroma from estrogen and estrogen precursors. This, in turn, would lead to proliferation (and malignant transformation) of the epithelium.

Progesterone may also play a role in ovarian cancer. Risch (132) suggests that the protective aspect of pregnancy is due not only to the suppression of ovulation, but also to the 8–9 months of elevated progesterone. Further, a previous finding that increased physical activity leads to an increased risk of ovarian cancer may be explained by endogenous progesterone levels. Physical activity may result in a shortened luteal phase and lower luteal progesterone levels in premenopausal women.

A multigenic model, like we have described for breast and prostate cancers, may be emerging to support this hypothesis. Recent evidence suggests that a common variation in the progesterone receptor may be associated with increased risk of ovarian cancer (123b). The development of such a model for ovarian cancer may be able to provide important genetical markers that could improve early detection and survival of ovarian cancer.

### 4.4. Endometrial Cancer

The established risk factors for endometrial cancer (Table 3) show that exposure to estrogens unopposed to progestins can predict the risk of endometrial cancer (133,135). During the premenopausal period, risk of endometrial cancer can be attributed to mitotic activity during the first half of the menstrual cycle when estrogen in unopposed by progesterone (135).
Use of sequential oral contraceptives doubled the risk of endometrial cancer among women who used them prior to their removal from the market in 1976 (136). In contrast, combination oral contraceptives, which deliver estrogen and a high-dose progesterone for 21 days of a 28 day cycle, decrease the risk of endometrial cancer (137–139). As discussed above, an alarming increase in endometrial cancer occurred in the 1960s and 1970s, resulting from widespread use of ERT for menopausal symptoms. The incidence of endometrial cancer once again declined after progestogens were added to the estrogen in various doses and schedules.

Obesity is also an important risk factor for endometrial cancer. In postmenopausal women, it is postulated that the conversion of androstenedione to estrone in adipose tissue results in the increased risk. In premenopausal women, obesity is thought to operate through increased anovulatory cycles and associated progesterone insufficiency (140).

The protective effect of parity can also be explained by the unopposed estrogen hypothesis (135). The highest risk of endometrial cancer occurs in nulliparous women and risk decreases with each pregnancy. This is explained by the fact that no mitotic activity occurs during pregnancy due to the persistently high progesterone levels.

### 4.5. Testicular Cancer

Experimental and epidemiological evidence indicates that hormonally influenced prenatal events are important risk factors for testicular cancer (141). Excess maternal nausea and vomiting in the prenatal period, prenatal exposure to diethylstilbestrol, and maternal obesity have been associated with testes cancer and with cryptorchidism, the most important risk factor for testes cancer (141–145). It has been hypothesized that in utero exposure to endogenous and exogenous estrogen could be the common denominator in these risk factors (141). Consistent with this hypothesis is the observation that a major determinant of the risk of excessive nausea and vomiting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3</th>
<th>Summary of Established Risk and Protective Factors for Endometrial Cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Risk factors (increased “unopposed” estrogen exposure)</td>
<td>Late menopause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sequential oral contraceptives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estrogen replacement therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protective factors (decreased unopposed estrogen exposure)</td>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Combined oral contraceptives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
during pregnancy is an early age at first pregnancy (146). Free estradiol levels are higher in the first pregnancy.

Several lines of evidence suggest that the risk of testicular cancer has strong genetical influence. Normal descent of the testes is under hormonal control (147). Interestingly, surgical correction of cryptorchidism does not appear to reduce this risk (148). Further, the contralateral testicle which is normally descended is also at increased risk for the development of cancer, although the risk is not as high as for the cryptorchid testis (149,150). Individuals with an affected first-degree relative are themselves at increased risk, with some studies suggesting the relative risk to be between 2 and 12 (151–154). The risk appears to be higher in brothers of cases than in fathers of cases. Westergaard et al. (154) found a twofold increased risk in fathers of cases and a 12.3 (95% CI: 3.3–31.5) times increased risk for brothers of cases. Swerdlow et al. (155) also reports increased risk for the twin of a testicular cancer case. Twins of cases were 37.5 times more likely to have testicular cancer than twins of noncases (OR = 37.5, 95% CI: 12.3–115.6). Finally, a recent segregation analysis suggested that testis cancer follows a recessive major gene model of inheritance (156). Although these data suggest a role for genetic factors in the etiology of testis cancer, they also are compatible with the hypothesis that the in utero hormonal environment is responsible for increased cancer risk.

Several candidate genes have been studied with regard to risk of testicular cancer. The Wilms’ tumor 1 suppressor gene (WT1) was evaluated because of the belief that this gene plays a role in urogenital fetal development (157). Although the researchers found no overall association between WT1 and testicular cancer, one allele was more frequently found in patients with either bilateral or metastatic disease. The ESR gene and several GST genes have also been studied with little success (158,159). Based on the existing epidemiological data, genes involved in determining the in utero hormonal environment, including CYP17 and HSD17B1, may be more promising candidates to study.

4.6. Thyroid Cancer

The principal hormone regulating the growth and function of the thyroid gland is the pituitary hormone thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). Excess TSH may be of etiological relevance in the development of thyroid cancer (160). This is supported by the fact that the growth of some thyroid cancers is TSH secretion dependent, so that suppression of TSH by administration of thyroxin is frequently an effective treatment for thyroid carcinomas (161). Experimental studies show that sustained elevation of TSH levels induces thyroid tumors in rodents (162,163), which has been achieved by a number of mechanisms including iodine-deficient diets, blocking thyroid hormone synthesis, direct administration of TSH, and chemical goitrogens (164).
A notable trend in thyroid cancer incidence is the dramatic increase in rates over the past three decades. Although the incidence of thyroid cancer in men appears to have stabilized by the early 1990s, the incidence in women has continued to increase, averaging 1.8% per year from 1991 to 1995. In general, incidence rates for women increase sharply from childhood to age 30 and then plateau; whereas in men, incidence rates increase gradually between the ages of 20 and 35, during which women have four to five times the risk of men. This ratio remains above 3 until menopause, when it begins to level off around 1.5. The differential change in rates by gender and the high rate of thyroid cancer in women overall compared to men (165), suggest a probable role of hormones in thyroid cancer etiology.

A number of epidemiological studies have shown a strong association between select reproductive factors and thyroid cancer risk. A history of pregnancy has been associated with elevated risk of thyroid cancer in several case–control studies and risk was especially elevated among women with pregnancies terminated by spontaneous or induced abortions (166–170). Diffuse enlargement of the thyroid gland occurs during pregnancy, as a compensatory response to the increased requirement for thyroid hormone production (171). This alteration in normal thyroid activity occurs primarily during the first trimester and seems to plateau by 20 weeks of gestation, suggesting that changes in thyroid cells may occur early in pregnancy (172). It is possible that some of these cellular changes during the first few weeks of a pregnancy may alter thyroid cancer risk and that these changes may be mitigated by full-term pregnancy, but persist following early termination of a pregnancy.

The normal level of thyroid binding globulin (TBG) in females is 10–20% higher than in males. During pregnancy, there is a 50% increase in the level of TBG due to increasing estrogen concentrations (173), which produces an increase in TSH of similar magnitude (174–176). It is likely that TSH levels of nonpregnant, normal females also may vary and be elevated above the level of males at some point during the menstrual cycle.

5. CONCLUSIONS

Our knowledge of the relationship between relevant circulating hormones and cancer is now contributing to the prevention and treatment of the disease. Hormonal chemoprevention trials for breast and prostate cancers are currently under way and hormonal chemoprevention of ovarian and endometrial cancers has been in process for years with the prescription of oral contraceptives and in the case of endometrial cancer, CHRT. Further work is needed to determine the individual risk and benefits from use of these products. The development of multigene models for hormone related cancers should help to better define individual susceptibility and determine who would benefit from specific prevention and treatment programs.
REFERENCES

47. McMichael-Phillips DE, Harding C, Morton M, Potten CS, Bundred NJ. Effects of soy-protein supplementation on epithelial proliferation in the histo-


103. Kristensen VN, Haraldsen EK, Anderson KB, Lonning PE, Erikstein B, Karesen R, Gabrielsen OS, Borresen-Dale A-L. CYP17 and breast cancer risk:


129. Makridakis N, Ross RK, Pike MC, Crocitto LE, Kolonel LN, Pearce CL, Henderson BE, Reichardt JKV. A missense substitution in the SRD5A2 gene


1. INTRODUCTION

Cancer, a disease of altered cellular growth, is the second most common cause of death in the United States. It is no respecter of persons and affects individuals of all ages, sexes, socioeconomic strata, and racial and ethnic populations. In 2002, the American Cancer Society estimated that approximately 1,284,900 new cancer cases will be diagnosed and 555,500 deaths will occur in the United States (1). Cancer increases with advancing age. In year 2000, over 60% of all new cancer cases occurred in men and women age 65 years and older. And, within the next three decades the cancer burden will increase as the absolute number of cancers in persons 65 years and older is expected to double (2). A large part of the increasing cancer burden will occur in multiracial and multiethnic subgroups of the United States who in year 2000 comprised nearly 30% of the U.S. population and are projected to increase to 42% by year 2030 (3).

The burden of cancer is not borne equally by all population subgroups in the United States. Marked variations in cancer incidence, mortality, and survival rates exits among multiracial and multiethnic populations, and cancer-related health disparities account for much of the excess morbidity and mortality observed. A complex spectrum of diseases constitutes what is defined as “cancer.” Subgroup variations in cancer incidence rates reflect the dynamics of culture on health, the diversity of host experiences, the
impact of environmental conditions on health, and the degree of genetic susceptibility of individuals to cancer. Etiologic or causative factors are associated with cancer risk, yet may differ in their biological effect and disease expression within subgroups of the American population. Inherited genetic susceptibility and environmental exposures to carcinogens that predispose an individual to cancer may also be different across these groups.

Scientific knowledge of the cellular and molecular basis of disease is advanced through the examination of diverse relationships and interactions. The study of molecular and genetic markers of cancer risk in multiracial and multiethnic populations provides opportunities to identify individuals at risk, to enhance screening and detection capabilities, to determine markers of cancer prognosis, and to potentially effect treatment outcomes. In this report, disparities in cancer incidence rates among multiracial and multiethnic populations of the United States are presented. Risk factors and biological markers that may be related to breast cancer risk or prognosis, and which may contribute to differential rates of disease expression, are discussed.

2. CANCER INCIDENCE

There is considerable variation in cancer incidence rates across racial and ethnic groups in the United States. The overall cancer incidence rate is higher in Blacks (444.6 per 100,000) and non-Hispanic Whites (402.1 per 100,000), intermediate in Asian/Pacific Islanders (279.3 per 100,000) and Hispanics [272.9 per 100,000], and lowest in American Indians (152.8 per 100,000) (Table 1). Rates for all cancers combined in women are 22–26% lower than in men of the same racial/ethnic group, except for African Americans where the rate in men is 44% higher than in women. African-Americans also are 1.6 times more likely than Hispanics or Asian/Pacific Islanders to develop cancer, and three times more likely to develop cancer than American Indians (Fig. 1) (4)

Between 1973 and 1997, the age-adjusted cancer incidence rate for all sites combined and all races increased 25.0% in men and 19.9% in women (5). During this quarter century, trend data of cancer incidence for all sites combined, both sexes, and all races show that rates increased from 1973 through 1982, accelerated from 1982 through 1992, and declined from 1992 through 1998 (Table 2) (6). Following several decades of rising incidence of prostate and lung cancer in men, the incidence rates leveled or declined between 1992 and 1998 with a decrease of 2.9% per year in white males and 3.1% per year in black males. Among females, the overall cancer incidence rate between 1992 and 1998 increased 0.3% per year compared to rate increases of 1.6% per year from 1980 to 1987. The current lower rate in females is related to a leveling off of the high breast cancer incidence rate
due to more screened–detected cancers during the 1980s, and some stabilization of lung rates in females since 1991(4,6). These changes in rates reflect a number of events: advancements in our understanding of tumor biology and the role of risk factors in cancer development, resulting in better strategies to modulate exposures and reduce risk; improved medical diagnostic capabilities and screening and early detection practices; and the impact of targeted prevention efforts and behavioral change strategies related to more effective public health educational campaigns.

Breast, prostate, lung, and colon and rectum are the most frequent sites of cancer in all American population subgroups and they account for approximately 56% of all new cases. Figures 2 and 3 show racial and ethnic differences in cancer incidence rates for each site (5). Population variations are most pronounced in breast and prostate cancer, two tumors also strongly influenced by the intrinsic hormonal environment. Within population subgroups (for example: Hispanics and Asian/Pacific Islanders), cancer-specific incidence rates may also vary according to ancestral origin of different cultural groups, geographic location, and the phase of epidemiologic transition of a particular population subgroup from its native country of origin to full acculturation in its adopted homeland. Rates also differ widely among indigenous Native American populations (Table 3) (1,4). While incidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>Cancer Incidence Ratesa by Site, Race, and Ethnicity (U.S., 1990–1997)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>All sites</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>402.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>476.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>352.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breast (females)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>114.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colon and rectum</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>43.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>52.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>36.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lung and bronchus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>55.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>71.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>43.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prostate</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>145.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aRates are per 100,000 and are age-adjusted to the 1970 standard population.
bHispanic is not mutually exclusive from white, black, Asian/Pacific Islander, or American Indian.

Source: Data from Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results Program, NCI, 2000. Ref. 4, Table 11, p. 33.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trend 1</th>
<th>Trend 2</th>
<th>Trend 3</th>
<th>Trend 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range of years</td>
<td>APC</td>
<td>Range of years</td>
<td>APC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>All sites</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prostate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breast (females)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black</td>
<td>1973–1979</td>
<td>−0.8</td>
<td>1979–1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lung</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colon-rectum</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source:* Surveillance, Epidemiology, & End Results Program, NCI. Ref. 6, Table 1, p. 828.
rates for prostate cancer are similar in American Indians and Alaska Natives, the rates for total cancers, breast, colon and rectum, and lung and bronchus cancers are greatly increased when aggregate data are presented for American Indians and Alaska Natives combined. Differential expressions of incidence rates among population subgroups suggest that different levels of etiological factors (for example, environmental exposures, diet, smoking), host experiences (for example, hormonal milieu, reproductive factors), and genetic susceptibility, as well as different rates of disease detection may contribute to variations in incidence rates observed.

There are limitations in the trend statistics for some racial and ethnic subgroups due to the lack of available cancer data for these groups. Difficulties in case ascertainment by race/ethnicity and the misreporting of race or ethnicity on basic records (medical records, census reports) from which information is collected are just a few of the issues that need to be resolved (2). In addition, the cancer incidence rates presented in this paper are taken from published articles and reports of data derived from the National Cancer Institute’s Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results Program (SEER) and the rates utilized are age-adjusted to the 1970 U.S. standard population. SEER has recently shifted from the 1970 U.S. standard population to the 2000 standard population, which will increase cancer incidence rates and death rates by 20–50% compared to the 1970 standard. This is

Table 3  Cancer Incidence Rates\textsuperscript{a} by Selected Sites in American Indians & Alaska Natives (United States, SEER, 1990–1997)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>American Indian 1990–1997\textsuperscript{b}</th>
<th>American Indian &amp; Alaska Native 1992–1998\textsuperscript{c}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>All Sites</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>152.8</td>
<td>202.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>175.9</td>
<td>227.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>137.3</td>
<td>186.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breast (females)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>28.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>33.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>24.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colon and Rectum</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>31.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>25.1</td>
<td>44.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>20.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prostate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45.8</td>
<td>47.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{a}Rates are per 100,000 and are age-adjusted to the 1970 standard population.
\textsuperscript{b}Ref. 1
\textsuperscript{c}Ref. 11
largely due to an increased representation of the older age group in the 2000 standard calculation (2). While rates age-adjusted to the 2000 standard population are not used in this report, caution must be taken in comparing and interpreting data using these two standard population reference sources.

3. BREAST CANCER

Breast cancer is the most frequent cancer in all subgroups of American women, except for Vietnamese American women who have higher rates of cervical cancer. A comprehensive review of SEER data from 1988 to 1992 shows that rates are highest in non-Hispanic white, Native Hawaiian, and African-American women; intermediate in Hispanic women; and lowest among Filipino American, Korean American, Japanese-American, Chinese American, and American Indian women (Table 4). Differences in cancer rates must be interpreted with some caution because of less precise rates in smaller population groups (7). Also aggregate subgroup rates may not reflect the condition of all populations included in a category. For example, breast cancer incidence rate for Asian/Pacific Islanders is approximately 30% lower than in whites. However, the Native Hawaiians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All races</td>
<td>111.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>115.5</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Hispanic</td>
<td>73.5</td>
<td>72.9</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Non-Hispanic</td>
<td>115.7</td>
<td>120.5</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black</td>
<td>95.4</td>
<td>101.5</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asian/Pacific Islander</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese American</td>
<td>55.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filipino American</td>
<td>73.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native Hawaiian</td>
<td>105.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese American</td>
<td>82.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean American</td>
<td>28.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese American</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amer. Indian/Alaska Native</td>
<td></td>
<td>50.5</td>
<td>−0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alaska Native</td>
<td>78.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amer. Indian (N.M.)</td>
<td>31.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hispanic</td>
<td>69.8</td>
<td>68.5</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Rates are age-adjusted per 100,000 to 1970 U.S. population.

<sup>b</sup>Ref. 7.

<sup>c</sup>From Cancer Statistics Review (2001).
have the second highest rate of any subgroup. The significance of this observation is obscured when data are combined into the broader category of Asian/Pacific Islander. Similar disparities in rates are also found among American Indians and Alaska Natives who live in different geographic regions and among the diverse groups within the Hispanic category. Such differences in rates reflect—in large part—the diversities of culture and environmental exposures, dietary habits, and behavioral characteristics of the population subgroups.

### 3.1. Risk Factors

A number of factors may increase the risk of breast cancer. They include factors that: (1) change the macro-environment by creating or augmenting conditions that contribute to the risk of disease (e.g., migration from low-risk to high-risk areas, acculturation within adopted country) (2) modulate or alter conditions of cellular growth (e.g., exposures to environmental carcinogens, smoking, diet, reproductive experiences and hormone replacement therapy), and (3) are intrinsic to the host (e.g., age, family history of breast cancer, and BRCA1/BRCA2 susceptibility genes). Racial and ethnic differences in risk factor profiles may provide clues to possible genetic and environmental changes in tumor biology.

The “migration effect” on cancer is well established. Descents of women of Japanese origin who migrated to Hawaii or mainland America develop within two to three generations a higher rate of breast cancer than that observed in native Japanese women. A similar pattern has been observed in women who migrated from Italy to Australia, Poland to the United States (8) and from Puerto Rico to Long Island, New York (9). Age at migration affects risks. Asian and Hispanic women who migrated to the United States at an early age had much higher incidence rates than those who migrated in adulthood, suggesting that either some exposure early in life or total years since migration is of etiologic importance (10). Diet and other environmental exposures have been implicated as major causative factors for generational changes in incidence rates. Also different rates of acculturation may explain the continued lower rise in breast cancer rates among descendents of Japanese, Chinese, and Mexican women who migrated to the United States (11).

The level of breast cancer risk attributable to a particular factor may differ in younger and older women (12). Overall, the breast cancer incidence rate in African-American women is lower than in whites. However, for African-American women under age 45 years the rate is higher than in whites, a paradox unexplained by present studies. Reproductive experiences and intrinsic and exogenous hormone exposures are known to influence breast cancer development and a number of epidemiological studies show the magnitude of risk in blacks and whites to be similar (13–15). Pathak et al.
reviewed the literature on the effects and distribution of reproductive and hormonal risk factors in black and white populations. They also examined whether the distribution of reproductive risk factors could explain, in part, this paradoxical phenomena. They postulated that the crossover in incidence rates between the races may be expected based on Pike’s “breast tissue age” model, and given the effects and distribution of early age at first full-term pregnancy and high parity (16). In a case–control study of black and white breast cancer patients, Brinton et al. observed that whites (age 40–54) had a higher population-attributable risk (62%) than blacks (54%) that appeared to account for the observed differences in incidence between the groups. A large part of the difference in population attributable risks between older whites and blacks was accounted for by whites having fewer births, later age at first birth, and slightly higher risks associated with reproductive and menstrual factors. Among younger women (ages 20–39) there was little association with the factors studied, but numbers were small. However, the data suggest that the difference in breast cancer incidence rate between younger blacks and whites was not due to established risk factors, but possibly to some other yet unidentified predictors (17).

Selected dietary factors (e.g., fat, specific fatty acids, heterocyclic amines, and alcohol) are hypothesized to increase the risk of breast cancer. Alternatively, a protective role on breast cancer risk of nutrients in fruits and vegetables and of phytoestrogens has been postulated. Multiracial/ethnic populations have a wide range of food intakes and great diversity in food sources of fat and fiber as well as caloric intake. Newell et al. observed that the mean caloric intake was highest for whites, followed by Mexican-Americans, and by African-Americans—a group which also had lower mean fiber than whites or Mexican-Americans. Hispanics had higher dietary fiber intake than other groups, and lower breast cancer rates (18).

Well-established differences between racial/ethnic groups in the intake of specific vegetables, fruits, legumes, and soy have been reported. Zang et al. studied dietary habits and observed that Hispanic and African-Americans have a greater consumption of vegetables, citrus fruit, and fish than whites. Hispanics also consume a greater intake of beans. Carotenoid-containing fruits and vegetables were substantially higher in African-Americans than in whites or Hispanics. No significant differences were seen in total fat or fiber intake in this study (19). Wu et al. examined the diets of multiethnic populations using data from the 1992 National Health Interview Survey. In this study, the intake of fiber, carotene, vitamin C, and folate were higher among African-Americans and Latino women compared to whites. Hawaiian-Americans had higher intakes of micronutrients whereas Japanese-American women showed comparable intakes of carotene and vitamin C but lower intakes of fiber and folate. The intake of legumes was twice as high among Latino women compared to white women and the intake of tofu (a main source of isoflavones) was at least four times higher among Japanese-
American women compared to white women (20). Isoflavonoids in soy, genistein, and diadzein have been shown to possess agonist and antagonist estrogenic activity similar to that of tamoxifen. They also mimic estrogens. Soy consumption in the form of tofu was more than twice as high among Asian-American women born in Asia than among Chinese women born in the United States (21). These reports strongly suggest that differences in dietary patterns among racial/ethnic groups may account, in part, for the variations in incidence rates of breast cancers observed in these subgroups. More definitive results are needed. The NIH Women’s Health Initiative clinical trial on dietary patterns in postmenopausal women may provide new and important information on breast cancer risk in multiethnic populations, when it is available.

Environmental exposures to pesticides, organochlorines, and other industrial products and carcinogens are postulated to contribute to cancer development. Epidemiological studies have implicated exposure to organochlorines such as, dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) and its metabolite, DDE, as possible risk factors for breast cancer. Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane was widely used in the United States for insect control in forestry, agriculture, and building protection between 1940s and 1960s until it was banned in 1972. A large proportion of the U.S. population, including large segments of African-American, Hispanic subgroups, were exposed as workers in the farming industry. Only a few studies of environmental exposures and breast cancer risk in multiethnic populations have been done and they are inconclusive. Krieger et al. found ethnic differences in both the prevalence of organochlorines and the associated breast cancer risk. However, the differences in levels among whites, African-American, and Asian women were not significant (22). Overall, the body of evidence does not support an association between these chemicals and breast cancer risk (23,24).

3.2. Biological Markers, Genetic Polymorphisms, and Breast Cancer Risk

Breast cancer in African-American women is a biologically more aggressive tumor than that observed in whites (25–30) or Hispanics (26,27). It is well established that African-American women with breast cancer have less estrogen receptor positive tumors than Caucasian women. This is especially true for premenopausal women. Chen et al. examined the histological features of breast cancer in 573 black and 492 white patients recruited in the population-based, National Cancer Institute Black/White Cancer Survival Study. African-American women had more poorly differentiated tumors, higher grade of nuclear atypia, less estrogen receptor positive tumors, and lesser tubular formation or marked fibrosis when compared to white women. These differences remained after controlling for socioeconomic
status, body mass index, use of alcohol or tobacco, reproductive experiences, and health care access and utilization (25). Elledge et al. examined breast cancer prognostic factors among 777 Hispanic, 1016 black, and 4885 white patients with breast cancer. Whites had a lower S-phase fraction than Hispanics or blacks. The estrogen receptor and progesterone receptor levels in Hispanics were intermediate to the level of the other two ethnic groups. There were no clinically significant differences in DNA ploidy, HER-2/neu, or p53 expression among the three groups (26). In another study of prognostic biomarkers among 43 Asian, 48 white, and 44 black patients with breast cancer, Kreiger et al. observed no differences in distributions of estrogen, progesterone, and epithelial growth factor receptors, in HER-2/neu and p53, in cytoplasmic proteins cathepsin D and pS2, and two indices of cell growth, Ki67 and DNA ploidy after adjusting for age at diagnosis, menopausal status, or place of birth (31). Weiss et al.’s study of risk and prognostic factors in multiethnic populations (172 white, 32 black, 49 Hispanic) did not reveal significant differences in molecular indices including estrogen and progesterone receptor, ploidy status, S-phase, Ki-67, Her-2/neu expression, tumor grade, and epidermal growth factor receptor. However, small sample size is a limitation in this study (29).

Mutations of the p53 tumor suppressor gene are common in breast cancer and are associated with poor prognosis and reduced survival (30). Elledge et al. observed no difference in the nuclear accumulation of p53 protein in tumors of black, white, or Hispanic patients (26). In a subset of 45 black and 47 white breast cancer patients with stage I and II disease from the New Orleans component of the NCI Black/White Cancer Survival Study, Shioa et al. observed that blacks with p53 alterations had a four- to five fold excess risk of dying from breast cancer than those without p53 alterations. An adjustment for stage, age, tumor histopathology, receptor status and adjuvant treatment did not change the excess risk. This observation was not seen in whites (32). In addition, further study showed that blacks more often had p53 mutations without protein accumulation and whites commonly had p53 protein accumulations without mutations (33).

Her-2 gene amplification and protein overexpression is an important predictor of disease progression and has been observed in 20–30% of breast cancers. A polymorphism at codon 655 (Val655Ile) in the transmembrane domain-coding region of the HER2 gene has been identified and may be associated with breast cancer risk in young women under age 45 years. Xie et al. examined the Val(655)Ile polymorphism in a population-based, case–control study of breast cancer in women of Shanghai, China. They observed that women with the Ile/Val or Val/Val genotype had an elevated risk of breast cancer [OR=1.4 (95% CI 1.0–2.0; \( p = 0.05 \)] after adjusting for age, education, study period, history of breast fibroadenoma, leisure physical activity, and age at first live birth. The risk was highest in younger women <45 years (\( OR = 14.1; 95\% CI = 1.8–113.4 \)) than in older
women (34). A few studies have examined this potential etiological marker and prognostic predictor of disease in racial/ethnic groups. Ameyaw et al. studied this polymorphism in a multiethnic population of 257 Caucasians, 90 African-American, and 200 African (Ghanaian) healthy blood donors. The Val allele was not detected in the African population. There was no difference in the HER2 allele frequency between African-Americans and Caucasians. The Val allele was detected in 20% of Caucasian alleles, 24% of African-American alleles, and 11% of Chinese alleles. The homozygous Val/Val genotype that is associated with an increased risk of breast cancer was observed in 5.4% Caucasians, 4.4% African-Americans, and 0.3% Chinese (35). In another study of postmenopausal breast cancer patients participating in the Hawaii and Los Angeles Multiethnic Cohort, McKean-Cowdin et al. observed that women with at least one copy of the Valine variant were approximately one-half as likely to have high-stage as low-stage breast cancer. This effect was present across racial/ethnic groups (36).

Cyclin D1 overexpression occurs in 60–80% of female breast cancers. In a study of 139 female breast cancer patients from multiethnic population, Joe et al. reported that 77% of non-Caucasians (African-American, \( N = 19 \); Hispanic, \( N = 24 \); Asian, \( N = 5 \)) vs. 59% of Caucasians (\( N = 86 \)) had cyclin D1 overexpression (\( p = 0.051 \)). Although sample sizes were small, when non-Caucasians were analyzed separately by ethnicity, there was no significant difference (37).

Overall, about 5–10% of women have an inherited predisposition to develop breast cancer. Genetic and molecular epidemiology studies indicate that carriers of the BRCA1 gene have a lifetime risk of developing breast cancer that is approximately 80%. For BRCA2 mutation carriers, the lifetime risk is approximately 50%. In the general Ashkenazi population, the carrier frequency of mutation is estimated to be \( \sim 0.9\% \) for 185delAG (Struwing et al. 1995a), \( \sim 0.9–1.5\% \) for 6174delT, and \( \sim 0.13\% \) for 5382ins (Benjamin, 1996; and Oddour, 1996) (38). Identifying women at risk for BRCA1 and BRCA2 may provide opportunities for earlier diagnosis and preventive intervention.

Most studies of BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations to date have been performed in white populations. Only a few studies of BRCA1 susceptibility genes have been reported in other racial/ethnic groups, and, samples have been small. In one of the first preliminary reports on familial aggregation of BRCA1 mutations in an African-American population, Gao et al. concluded that genetic susceptibility to breast cancer could be explained by the BRCA1 mutations in nearly half of the high-risk families ascertained through young African-American breast cancer patients (39). Panguluri et al. examined germline mutations in 45 African-American families at high risk for breast cancer. The entire coding region and flanking introns were analyzed by single-stranded conformation polymorphism analysis followed by sequencing of variant bands. Eleven different BRCA1 germline
mutations/variations in seven patients from the 45 high-risk families were observed: two pathogenic, protein-truncating mutations; four amino acid substitutions; one amino acid polymorphism; and four substitutions in noncoding regions (introns). These findings along with reports from other investigators suggest that a large number of distinct pathological mutations and variations exist among African-Americans that have not been reported in Caucasians (39–42). Two mutations (943ins10 and 1832del5) have been reported to be recurrent in African-American families (39–42). Meffort et al. also reported finding a 943ins10 mutation in five different families who may have a common distant African ancestry (43).

In another study, Whittemore et al. examined the prevalence and contribution of BRCA1 mutations in breast and ovarian cancer using data from three case–control studies of ovarian cancer. Ethnicity of the women were: white non-Hispanic, 823; black, 40; Hispanic, 35; and Asian or other ethnicity, 24. Although data were sparse for non-white and Hispanic women, there was no difference in familial aggregation by ethnicity of the probands. Among women <40 years at diagnosis, it was estimated that 11% of breast cancer and 18% of ovarian cancers are due to BRCA1. They observed that families with non-white and Hispanic probands had more cancer clustering at young ages and postulated that this may reflect higher mutation prevalence in these ethnic groups than in non-Hispanic white women (44). The Carolina Breast Cancer Study, a population-based, case–control study, evaluated BRCA1 mutations among women not selected on the basis of family history of breast cancer or age at diagnosis. A variant in the 3′ untranslated region was observed to be more common in black cases than in black controls. After adjusting for sampling probabilities, they found that the prevalence of BRCA1 mutations among breast cancer patients was 3.3% in whites and 0.0% in blacks (45).

A number of genetic polymorphisms that are involved in the metabolism of estrogen and carcinogens have been studied. Dunning et al. recently completed a comprehensive reviewed of genetic polymorphisms and breast cancer risk. Among 46 studies involving 18 genes, 12 studies reported statistically significant associations. Racial and ethnic groups were described in only 6 of the 21 American studies. Analyses revealed that genotype frequencies were statistically significant in case-control comparisons for three genes: the CYP19 (TTTA) n polymorphism, the GSTP1 Ile105Val polymorphism, and the TP53 Arg72Pro polymorphism. The GSTM1 gene deletion was significant in postmenopausal women only (46). Of the six studies that described racial and ethnic subgroups, only one reported statistically significant observations. Taioli et al. evaluated the role of estradiol metabolism and CYP1A1 polymorphisms in breast cancer risk of Caucasian and African-American women. They observed that African-American women with the wild type CYP1A1 gene showed a significant increase in the 2-OHE1/16-OHE ratio following a 5-day treatment with a 2-OHE inducer.
In a case–control study of 57 women with breast cancer and 312 female controls, the frequency of the homozygous Msp1 polymorphism was 4.2% in African-American controls and 16% in African-American breast cancer cases. The odds ratio of breast cancer with the Msp1 homozygous variant was 8.4 (95% CI: 1.7–41.7), and was not observed in Caucasian women (47,48).

Studies of other genetic polymorphisms have been less conclusive. CYP1B1 is a cytochrome P450 enzyme that is involved in the production of potentially carcinogenic estrogen metabolites and the activation of environmental carcinogens. Bailey et al. examined the role of CYP1B1 in normal breast tissue and breast cancer of 59 African-American and 164 Caucasian women. There was no association between the CYP1B1 genotype and breast cancer risk (49). In addition, a study of GSTM1 polymorphism revealed no association with breast cancer risk, even in environments low in antioxidants (50).

The UDP-glucuronosyltransferase (UGT) plays a major role in phase II drug metabolism and in detoxification of a wide range of molecules, including carcinogens and biologically active steroid hormones. The UDP-1A1 locus (UGT1A1) enzyme is a major UGT involved in estradiol glucuronidation. Genetic variation and breast cancer susceptibility at the UGT1A1 locus was examined in a population-based case–control study of 200 African-American women with breast cancer and 200 controls of African ancestry. The study revealed a 1.8-fold (95% CI, 1.0–3.1; \( p = 0.06 \)) elevated risk in premenopausal women and a 1.0-fold (95% CI, 0.5–1.7; \( p = 0.9 \)) risk in postmenopausal women. For premenopausal women, the association was strongest for ER negative (OR, 2.1; 95% CI, 1.0–4.2; \( p = 0.04 \)) than for ER positive (OR, 1.3; 95% CI, 0.6–3.0; \( p = 0.5 \)). These findings suggest a strong association between the UGT1A1 genotype and premenopausal breast cancer and estrogen negativity (51).

4. SUMMARY

There are marked variations in cancer incidence among multiracial and multiethnic population subgroups of the United States. Variations in health measures reflect host, environmental, and genetic attributes of the populations. The dynamics of cultural experiences and differences in risk factor profiles and behaviors modulate how biological disease is expressed among different races and ethnic groups. Alterations in cell growth, biological markers and genetic polymorphisms in racial and ethnic groups provide unique opportunities to examine the relationship of these changes to disease outcomes. Future advancements in knowledge and understanding of cancer biology, gene–environment interactions, and differential rates of disease expression will require adequate data on individuals from multiracial and multiethnic population groups.
REFERENCES


1. OVERVIEW

1.1. Lung Cancer Occurrence

Respiratory tract cancer was a rare disease at the beginning of the twentieth century with only a few hundred cases of lung cancer reported. In 1912, Adler was able to collect data on 374 lung cancer cases from the literature. In the beginning of his paper, he asked the following question, “Is it worthwhile to write a monograph on the subject of primary malignant tumors of the lung?” (1). A century later, lung cancer is a global problem. The cancer is now the most frequent and one of the deadliest in the world and is predicted to remain a major cause of world wide cancer death in the twenty first century (2). The global incidence of lung cancer is increasing 0.5% per year (3).

The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that there are presently about 1.1 billion smokers in the world and about one-third of the world population older than 15 years are smokers. Tobacco smoking caused about 3 million deaths in 1995 and it is estimated that in 2025 about 10 million deaths annually will be related to tobacco smoking (4). The tobacco industry has suffered some setbacks in more developed countries, but they now focus on developing countries to maintain their profits. China is now the world’s biggest producer and consumer of tobacco. Every fourth Chinese now smokes and there are about 750,000 deaths in China every year due to tobacco-related disease. This number will increase to 2 million in year 2025 if the trend continues (5).
Tobacco smoking has been identified not only as a cause of lung cancer but also cancers of oral cavity and pharynx, in addition to cancers at more remote sites. More than 100 years ago oral cancer was the most common cancer in many parts of the world. Oral cancer rates then transiently decreased, but presently oropharyngeal cancers are a significant health problem in various parts of the world; its prevalence ranges from 5% of malignancies in the United States to 50% in India and Southeast Asia (6). The incidence of oral cancers also varies throughout the European countries.

1.2. Lung Cancer Histology

Various respiratory epithelial cell types are exposed chronically to tobacco smoke. This is reflected in the many histological subtypes of lung cancer. There are four main histological subtypes: adenocarcinoma (AC), squamous cell carcinoma (SC), small cell lung carcinoma (SCLC), and large cell carcinoma (LC). Adenocarcinoma (including bronchiolo-alveolar carcinoma) and SC are the most frequent subtypes. These two cancers, plus LC are sometimes referred to as nonsmall cell lung cancer (NSCLC), and represents about 80% of lung cancers. Many lung tumors are heterogeneous and contain malignant cells of more than one subtype complicating pathological characterization.

Cigarette smoking can cause any type of lung cancer, while nonsmokers usually get AC. A dramatic change in the frequency of the various histological subtypes has taken place during the twentieth century. Squamous cell carcinoma was the most frequent histological type but now AC is more frequent (7). It has been suggested that a combination of changing diagnostic criteria and changes in cigarette components and smoking behavior may have caused the rise in the proportion of AC (8). Cigarettes were mainly high tar and nonfilter before the 1960s, resulting in deposition of tar particulates at the branches of central bronchi. The delivery from cigarettes of benzo(a)pyrene (B(a)P) and nicotine decreased in U.S. cigarettes by about 50% between 1965 and 1975 while 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butane (NNK) increased similarly between the late 1970s and the early 1990s (9). Due to the lower nicotine yield, the smokers inhale more deeply, resulting in higher exposure of the peripheral lung to nitrosamines and nitrogen oxides, which are thought to induce AC. Furthermore, the smoke produced by the low tar cigarettes are less irritating for the bronchial epithelium, permitting deeper inhalation bringing the compounds to deposit primarily in the lower respiratory tract epithelium and the alveoli, and to a lesser degree in the upper respiratory tract.

2. LUNG CANCER ETIOLOGY

2.1. Cigarettes

Smoke from cigarettes, both mainstream (inhaled directly by the smoker) and sidestream (smoke emitted from the burning cigarette), are composed of many toxic and carcinogenic compounds. A smoker inhales gas-phase
smoke as well as particulates (tar). At least 50 carcinogenic compounds have been identified in the tar and vapor phase thus far, namely polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), N-nitrosamines, aromatic amines, aza-arenes, aldehydes, various organic compounds, inorganic compounds such as hydrazine, metals, and free radical species (Fig. 1) (10). The highly carcinogenic compounds PAHs (mainly B(a)P) and tobacco-specific nitrosamines (mainly NNK) have been postulated to be of major importance in human lung carcinogenesis (see above).

Experimental studies suggest etiological differences between SC and AC. Mutations in the p53 tumor suppressor gene are frequently altered in human lung cancer, and are found twice as common in SC compared to AC along with a higher frequency of guanine to thymine transversions (11). Benzo(a)pyrene has been shown to form adducts at guanines in codon 157, 248, and 273, which are major hotspots, consistent with a mechanistic link between PAHs in tobacco smoke and guanine to thymine transversions (12). Separately, AC containing mutations in codon 12 in k-ras oncogene is induced when rodents are exposed to tobacco-specific nitrosamines. Such mutations are frequent in human lung AC (13).

Cigarette tar contains high concentration of free radicals (14). Alkenes, nitrosamines, aromatic hydrocarbons, amines, catechols and hydroquinone are well-known sources of reactive oxygen species.

Concerning oral cancers, alcohol consumption is an important risk factor in addition to cigarette smoking (15). The effect of these two risk factors may be synergistic. An association between tobacco chewing and oral cancer has also been found (16).

2.2. Air Pollution

Studies have shown that air pollution, such as industrial emissions and traffic exhaust, is a risk factor for lung cancer. These pollutants include PAHs, benzene, ethylene oxide, gasoline vapors, and metals. However, the
The etiological importance of air pollution as a contributory factor is still under debate. An association between lung cancer and air pollution have been reported in studies from cities with a high level of air pollution. Urban residents seem to have an increased risk of lung cancer of 1.5–2.0 times that of rural residents. The effect of air pollution on lung cancer may be identifiable only above a certain threshold level. However, the analysis is complicated due to the fact that air pollution is a complex mixture with numerous air pollutants that also varies over time (17).

2.3. Occupation

There is evidence of human lung cancer associated with industrial exposure. Lung is the major target concerning exposure at work to asbestos, radon, mustard gas, coal tar and soot, chloromethyl ethers, beryllium, chromium, nickel, and inorganic arsenic (18). The contribution of occupational exposure to diesel exhaust is still under debate. There is a strong evidence regarding the synergistic relation between smoking and asbestos exposure. Occupational risk factors for oral cancers are less well established. Nickel, chromium, and mustard gas have been reported as risk factors. In general, occupation appears to have little substantial effect on the development of oral cancers.

2.4. Environmental Tobacco Smoke

Cigarettes generate large amount of environmental tobacco smoke (ETS). ETS is a combination of sidestream smoke and smoke that is exhaled by the smoker. Environmental tobacco smoke contains essentially all the same carcinogens and toxic/irritating agents that have been identified in mainstream smoke inhaled by the smokers. Sidestream smoke is composed of approximately 4000 chemicals and has a higher concentration of many of the possible carcinogenic compounds such as benzene, formaldehyde, hydrazine, nitrosamines, 4-aminobiphenyl, B(a)P, benzo(a)anthracene, and others (19). Several studies have shown an increased risk of lung cancer among nonsmokers who live in the same household as smokers. A recent meta-analysis concluded that marriage to a smoker increased the risk of lung cancer by 26% (20). A recent large European study demonstrated that lung cancer risk after ETS exposure is relatively small (21). Many authors are skeptical to the observed association due to misclassification bias (smoker/nonsmoker and ETS exposure). However, there is evidence that prolonged ETS exposure during childhood can lead to an increased risk of lung cancer.

3. LUNG CARCINOGENESIS

3.1. Genetic Changes in Lung Cancer

The karyotype of lung cancer is very complex and many genetic changes have been identified including specific alterations of proto-oncogens
(c-myc, K-ras, cyclin D1, erb-B2 and bcl-2) and tumor suppressor genes (p53, Rb, FHIT, RASSF1A, SEMA3B, p16INK4) as well as chromosomal losses (22). Epigenetic inactivation, such as aberrant promoter hypermethylation, is a major mode of inactivation of expression of many genes, e.g., p16INK4, DAPK, RARβ, SEMA3B, MGMT, P14ARF, and GSTPI (23). Chromosomal regions including 1p, 3p, 4p, 4q, 5q, 8p, 9p, 9q, 10, 11p, 13q, 17p, 18q, 19p, and 22p are frequently deleted in lung cancer (22). NSCLC and SCLC have different regions of frequent loss of heterozygosity (LOH). Allelic losses on 3p have been reported as the most frequent event in lung cancer and many candidate genes have been identified in this region (24). As with lung cancer, multiple genetic alterations have been reported in oral tumors (25).

The evolutionary sequence of genetic alterations that take place during the stepwise progression of lung cancer is not known due to lack of macroscopic premalignant areas in lung epithelium. In SCC, there is a defined sequence of histological events, beginning with hyperplasia and advancing to metaplasia, dysplasia, carcinoma in situ (CIS), and then invasive cancer. The whole sequence takes about 20–30 years. In AC, precursor lesions are also possible, but preneoplastic changes have not been established to date (26).

Due to the continuous insult of cigarette smoke, the entire respiratory tract can be damaged. There is a very high incidence of allelic loss, identified though the LOH studies, which can be found in histologically normal and abnormal epithelium of both current and former smokers. These multifocal changes in the mucosa are referred to as field cancerization. In preinvasive lesions, allelic loss (deletions) occurs in chromosomal regions 3p, 9p21, and 17p13. Loss of heterozygosity of 3p is an early change found in dysplastic lesions, 90% of SCLC and about 50% of tumors from NSCLC. Allelic loss at several 3p regions (e.g., 3p12, 3p14 (FHIT), 3p21 and 3p24–25) occurs frequently in the tumor. The size of the 3p deletion in the early stages are small, but 3p is lost in CIS (27). p53 mutations also appear relatively early in lung carcinogenesis (bronchial dysplasia and CIS) (22). About 80% of the SCLC tumors and 50% of NSCLC have p53 mutations (28). p53 mutations are also observed in premalignant lesions associated with head and neck carcinomas (29). K-ras is frequently activated oncogene in NSCLC (13). Mutations in K-ras oncogene, predominantly in codon 12, have been shown to occur in approximately 30% of pulmonary AC. Results suggest that K-ras mutations may occur at a relatively early stage in the development of lung cancer and play a role in the conversion of dysplastic cells to preinvasive cancer cells. Apart from p53 and K-ras, Rb gene is frequently inactivated in lung cancer, especially in SCLC where 90% of the tumors have abnormalities in Rb. In contrast to Rb, loss of p16INK4 occur more frequently in NSCLC than in SCLC (30). Most of the RB-positive lung tumors are p16INK4 inactive indicating that loss of function of both pRb and p16INK4 does not contribute to increased selective cellular growth potential during the process of
tumor development. The literature clearly indicates that the cycline D1/p16/pRb pathway is frequently deregulated in lung cancer. Similarly, in oral cancer deregulated expression in some of these components have been demonstrated.

3.2. Metabolism of Lung Carcinogens

Metabolic activation of procarcinogens, such as PAHs and N-nitrosamines, and the covalent binding of the reactive metabolites to DNA forming DNA-adducts are considered key events in tumor initiation. Other forms of genetic damage including chromosomal aberrations also can occur. Lung carcinogens are metabolically activated via complex enzymatic mechanisms and detoxified by combinations of phase I and phase II enzymes. Enzyme families involved in these reactions are the cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes, epoxide hydrolases, glutathione S-transferases, uridine 5'-diphospho-glucorynyltransferases, and N-acetyltransferases. Phase I enzymes, which are mainly cytochrome P450s, insert one atom of oxygen into the substrate; and phase II enzymes which act on oxygenated substrates conjugate them with various endogenous moieties producing hydrophilic products which are excreted easily from the cells (31). The extent of DNA-adduct formation depends on the balance between the rates of oxidation of the compound and rates of detoxification of the reactive products via conjugation.

Cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes are expressed at significant levels in the lung so that reactive genotoxic metabolites from PAHs and N-nitrosamines can be formed directly in the lung epithelium. Reactive metabolites may also migrate to the lung from distal organs (i.e., the liver) through the bloodstream inducing DNA damage. Several forms of P450 have been identified as playing a role in lung carcinogenesis. CYP1A1 and CYP2E1 are of critical importance for the activation of PAH and nitrosamines (and other low molecular weight compounds), respectively (31). The gene product of CYP1A1 catalyzes the first step in the metabolism of PAH. Recent studies indicate that the pulmonary system expresses several CYP enzymes although at low levels (32). Results show that CYP3A4, CYP1B1, and CYP2C9 also catalyze the formation of mutagenic intermediates from PAH. In addition to CYP2E1, the nitrosamines are also metabolically activated by CYP1A2, CYP2A6, and CYP2D6. CYP1A2 is expressed in peripheral lung, CYP2A6 is expressed in both bronchial epithelium and peripheral tissue. There is no detectable CYP2D6 expression in bronchus and lungs.

Although a number of different mechanisms can detoxify PAH-diol epoxides, the most important mechanism in their detoxification is the glutathione S-transferase (GST)-catalyzed conjugation with reduced glutathione (GSH). These enzymes have an important role in protecting
DNA against damage and DNA-adduct formation through conjugation to electrophilic substances, particularly those with lipophilic groups. The GSTs comprise a supergene family of phase II enzymes that catalyze GSH-dependent reactions with many electrophiles. The products of the alpha, mu, theta, pi, and zeta gene families have been identified (31). The various enzymes have different but often overlapping substrate specificities. Epoxides are effective substrates for both mu and pi GST. The GSTP1 enzyme is abundantly expressed in the lung and is relatively more active than other classes of GSTs in the GSH conjugation of tobacco-derived B(a)P diol epoxide (33). GSTM1, GSTM2, and GSTM3 also have reactivity towards epoxides. GSTM1 is expressed at low level in the lung, and at high level in the liver (31). Many of the substrates of the GSTs also influence the expression of the GST genes indicating the presence of a adaptive response mechanisms to chemical stress.

Arylamines in tobacco smoke are carcinogenic and metabolized by N-acetyltransferases, NAT1 and NAT2 enzymes. These enzymes catalyze N- and O-acetylation of aromatic and heterocyclic amines. The arylamines have a higher affinity for NAT2 than for NAT1. N-acetyltransferases are found in a large number of tissues. Both NAT1 and NAT2 are expressed in the lung but NAT1 is the predominant form. NAT2 is predominantly expressed in the liver (31).

Microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEPHX) is one of the most important phase II detoxification enzymes. The role of mEPHX is to transform arene, alkene, and aliphatic epoxides to less reactive, less toxic, and more water soluble forms. It also activates some PAHs in tobacco smoke into a more carcinogenic form. Although mEPHX is considered a detoxifying enzyme, the dihydrodiols derived from PAHs may be further catalyzed by CYPs into still more reactive forms (32).

4. LUNG CANCER SUSCEPTIBILITY

4.1. Cytochrome P450s Polymorphisms

The interplay between genetic and environmental exposures is thought to be critical factor in lung carcinogenesis despite the fact that tobacco smoke is very deleterious to the lung; only 1 of 10 lifetime smokers contracts lung cancer and some degree of familial aggregation of lung cancer is evident in family studies. Lung cancer susceptibility may be modulated by host-specific factors including differences in xenobiotic metabolism, DNA repair, and alterations in oncogenes and tumor suppressor gene functions. The role of metabolic genes in individual susceptibility to the carcinogenic effects of tobacco smoke have been investigated in several studies in various populations. Polymorphisms exist in the several genes responsible for both activation and inactivation of tobacco carcinogens and may contribute to the observed susceptibility to lung carcinogens.
So far the polymorphic genes most studied in lung cancer include \textit{CYP1A1}, \textit{CYP2E1}, \textit{CYP2D6} (Table 1), and the phase II genes \textit{GSTM1}, \textit{GSTP1}, \textit{NAT2} and \textit{EPHX} (Table 2). At least four polymorphic variants of the \textit{CYP1A1} gene have been identified, two of which are thought to result in increased enzyme activity. Japanese studies have shown that high susceptibility to lung cancer is associated with \textit{CYP1A1} gene polymorphisms (homozygosity for the rare \textit{MspI} allele (m2 variant), and exon 7 substitution (\textit{Val} allele) (34). The association has not been confirmed in European and North American studies. The \textit{CYP1A1} genotype frequencies like many other genes show inter–ethnic differences. The frequency of the m2 and Val variant is much less in Caucasians and it will require about 500–1000 cases to study the association in this ethnic population. This lung cancer susceptibility is dependent on the cigarette dose, showing a high relative risk at low dose level of cigarette smoking for individuals with susceptible genotypes (35,36). However, further studies are required in this area since the \textit{MspI} and the exon 7 polymorphisms are not strictly linked and large differences in catalytic activities for these different alleles have not been shown.

Several studies have examined lung cancer risk and \textit{CYP2D6} phenotype but the results have been conflicting. Several mutant \textit{CYP2D6} have been identified (37). Individuals with two defective alleles have been shown to exhibit decreased \textit{CYP2D6} activity (poor metabolizers, PM) when compared to those having one or two wildtype alleles (extensive metabolizers, EM). The highest risk of lung cancer was observed among smokers having the highest levels of both tobacco smoking exposure and \textit{CYP2D6} activity (38). Since \textit{CYP2D6} is not expressed in the lung, but in the liver, this may reflect that the NNK-metabolites are transported to the lung during high exposures to tobacco carcinogens.

In Japanese studies, individuals homozygous for the rare \textit{Dra I} alleles of \textit{CYP2E1} were reported to have decreased lung cancer risk (39). However,

Table 1  Polymorphic \textit{CYP} Genes Associated with Lung Cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genes</th>
<th>Polymorphism alleles</th>
<th>Carcinogen</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{CYP1A1}</td>
<td>\begin{itemize} \item 2 MspI mutation \item 3 Ile-Val mutation \end{itemize}</td>
<td>PAHs</td>
<td>Increased risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{CYP2D6}</td>
<td>\begin{itemize} \item 2 Amplification/duplication \item 3 Frameshift \item 4 Frameshift \item 5 Deletion \end{itemize}</td>
<td>NNK</td>
<td>Poor metabolizers: decreased risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{CYP2E1}</td>
<td>\begin{itemize} \item Dra I, intron 2 \item Rsa I/Pst I \end{itemize}</td>
<td>\begin{itemize} \item NNK, butadiene \item Benzene, styrene \end{itemize}</td>
<td>\begin{itemize} \item Decreased risk (DraI) \item Increased risk (Rsa I) \end{itemize}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
among Caucasians no association has been found (40,41). Homozygosity for the Rsa I variant has been associated with increased risk of lung cancer in some studies, but no association was found in other studies.

4.2. Glutathione S-Transferase Polymorphisms

Several studies support the view that GST polymorphism influence the susceptibility to lung cancer. A deletion of both copies of the GSTM1 gene is present in 40–60% of the general population (with an ethnic variation ranging from 30% to 80%) producing a complete lack of GSTM1 enzyme (null genotype). The GSTM1 gene product is suggested to be particularly important for detoxifying BP diol epoxide. Individuals lacking GSTM1 activity can potentially be at an enhanced risk for smoking-related lung cancer. A meta-analysis suggests a statistically significant but modest increase in odds ratio for the GSTM1-null genotype among lung cancer patients compared to controls (42). It appears that the GSTM1 genotype is not associated with oral cancer risk (43). When the influence of the GSTM1 genotype on the level of PAH–DNA adduct was evaluated, a higher level in the lung was found in patients with the null genotype compared to patients with at least one allele intact. Furthermore, the different genotype distribution found in patients with transversion and transition mutations in the p53 and K-ras genes also supports these results (44). G to T transversion mutations at GC base pairs have been particularly associated with certain PAH compounds which are known to be metabolized by the GSTM1 enzyme. Other studies indicate that PAH–DNA adduct levels and CYP1A1 and/or GSTM1 genotypes to be independent lung cancer risk factors (45).

A major GST protein in human lung is GSTP1-1. The GSTP1 gene has been shown to be polymorphic in humans. A polymorphic site at codon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genes</th>
<th>Polymorphism alleles</th>
<th>Carcinogen</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GSTM1</td>
<td>*0 gene deletion B Ile-Val, exon 5</td>
<td>PAH epoxides</td>
<td>Higher risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSTP1</td>
<td>Ile-Val + Ala-Val exon 5</td>
<td>PAH epoxides</td>
<td>Higher risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT</td>
<td>*10 *11 *14 *15</td>
<td>Aromatic amines</td>
<td>Lower risk (*10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPHX</td>
<td>Tyr113 → His</td>
<td>PAH epoxides and aromatic amines</td>
<td>Higher risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>His 139 → Arg</td>
<td></td>
<td>(conflicting results)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
104 (Ile105Val substitution) in the PI gene is known to change the enzyme’s kinetic properties. A study from our laboratory indicates that individuals with the low activity alleles had a higher lung cancer risk (44). It appeared that the described difference was found in the group of SCC and not among patients with AC. The GSTP1 polymorphism also influences susceptibility to SCC at the upper aerodigestive tract (46). The impact of the different GSTP1 genotype on the formation of PAH–DNA adducts in the lung was also investigated and elevated levels were observed among the low activity alleles (44).

4.3. N-Acetyltransferase Polymorphisms

The NAT2 and NAT1 genes are known to be polymorphic in humans. Several genetic polymorphisms have been shown to be associated with decreased enzyme activity and/or variable stability for the NAT2 gene. Individuals with slow-acetylator NAT2 alleles have little or no enzyme activity. This slow acetylator genotype occurs at a frequency of about 50% in Caucasians, but the prevalence varies significantly among ethnic populations. Since aromatic amines are abundant in tobacco smoke, the NAT2 polymorphism is also of interest with respect to lung cancer susceptibility. However, most of the studies on lung cancer show no overall lung cancer risk related to the slow acetylator genotype (47). In a recent Swedish study, an increased odds ratio was associated with the slow acetylator genotype among never-smokers and an increased risk for rapid acetylators among smokers (48). For the slow acetylator genotype, a Japanese study reported a raised odds ratio for AC (49). The NAT1/C3 allele has been linked to increased risk of lung cancer and other cancer types. Several different NAT1 mutations have later been reported but with respect to lung cancer the results are conflicting.

4.4. EPHX Polymorphisms

Two variants of the human mEPHX alleles have been associated with altered enzyme activity; one in exon 3 (His or Tyr substitution at position 113 decreasing mEPHX activity), another in exon 4 (His or Arg substitution at position 139 enhancing enzyme activity). However, inconsistent relationships have been found with respect to lung cancer risk. London et al. found no association between mEPHX and lung cancer risk. The data indicated that genetically reduced EPHX may be protective (50). A recent study by Zhao et al. indicated that the two polymorphisms modulate lung cancer risk (51).

4.5. Alcohol Dehydrogenase

The association between alcohol and tobacco intake with oral and oropharyngeal carcinoma has been well documented. Ethanol is mainly converted
to acetaldehyde by ADH forming adducts with DNA. Acetaldehyde may also inhibit DNA repair processes. ADH3 is polymorphic (two common alleles, designated 1 and 2), and comparison of the enzymatic properties have shown that individuals homozygous for ADH3 allele 1 (ADH3-1,1) metabolize ethanol to acetaldehyde faster than individuals who carry at least one ADH3 allele 2 (AEH3-1,2 or ADH3-2,2) (52). Recent data show that the ADH3-1,1 genotype appear to increase the risk of ethanol-related oral cancers (53).

4.6. Combinations of Risk Genotypes on Lung Cancer Susceptibility

Individuals with particular combinations of at risk polymorphisms, i.e., in the P450, GST, NAT, EPHX enzyme systems, may have a higher risk of contracting lung cancer. Individual genotypes may have a relatively weak influence on susceptibility, but the effect of genotype combination should be more pronounced.

Hayashi et al. described a 5.8-fold relative risk for all lung cancer type and a 9.1-fold relative risk for SCC in Japanese individuals who were homozygous for both the CYP1A1 val and GSTM1 null risk alleles (54). Nakashi et al. found that among SCC patients individuals with the CYP1A1 Msp1 genotype combined with deficient GSTM1 were at remarkable high risk of developing SCC with an odds ratio of 16 (55). These results are consistent with the notion that some procarcinogens in cigarette smoke are activated by CYP1A1 and inactivated by GSTM1 enzymes. Case–control studies have also been combined with genotype analysis and DNA adduct and mutation measurements. In a study where combined GSTM1 and GSTP1 genotypes were examined, lung cancer patients with the combined null and AG/GG had significantly higher adduct levels than all other genotype combinations. The distribution of combined genotypes was also significantly different in cases and controls, mainly due to increased frequency of the combination GSTM1 null and GSTP1 AG or GG among patients (44). The NAT2 slow genotype, in particular when combined with the GSTM1 null genotype, may confer increased susceptibility to adduct formation, gene mutation in somatic cells (HPRT) and lung cancer when the smoking dose is low (45). In a recent study, the joint effects of genotype combinations (GSTP1, GG, GSTM1-null and GSTP1 GG, p53 variant) were found to be associated with lung cancer risk and the risk was greatest among individuals ≤55 years of age (46).

5. DNA REPAIR

Susceptibility to lung cancer may also be modulated by DNA repair but whether defects in DNA repair may be a common predisposing factor
for lung cancer has not yet been established. There is, however, some
evidence indicating that defects in DNA repair may be involved in the
development of lung cancer. Recent findings suggest that individuals with
reduced DNA repair capacity (DRC) are at an increased risk of lung
cancer: in vitro lymphocyte assays has been utilized to measure individual
variation in DRC. Sensitivity to mutagen damage, based on the quantifica-
tion of bleomycin-induced chromatid breaks in vitro, may be a significant
determinant of susceptibility. In case–control studies, lung cancer patients,
and head and neck cancer patients expressed increased sensitivity to muta-
gens (56,57). The underlying mechanisms that account for the observed
differences in chromosomal sensitivity to bleomycin among individuals are
multiple, one mechanism may be alteration in the DNA repair process.
Further, studies have shown that this assay can be used to assess the sensi-
tivity also to other carcinogens such as B(a)P. Molecular epidemiological
studies have also been conducted in which DNA repair capacity is measured
in the host-cell reactivation assay (HCR) where a damaged recombinant
plasmid, i.e., by UV or B(a)P, harboring a chloramphenicol acetyltransfer-
ase reporter gene is introduced into lymphocytes (58). Since B(a)P-adducts
and thymine dimer repair can block reporter gene expression, the measured
chloramphenicol transferase activity is the net result of DNA repair in the
cell. B(a)P-adducts are repaired by the nucleotide excision repair (NER)
pathway and XPD is one of the genetic complementation groups encoding
for proteins involved in the NER pathway. One study on DRC and XPD
genotypes suggested that the XPD variant Gln751Gln (exon 23) and
Asp312Asn (exon 11) genotypes were associated with less DRC and signifi-
cantly increased risk for lung cancer (59). In a case–control study the XPD
Asp312Asp genotype was found to have almost twice the risk of lung cancer
when the Asp/Asn plus Asn/Asn combined genotype served as reference. In
light smokers, the XPD Asp312Asp genotype was more frequent among
cases than in controls and was associated with increase risk for NSCLC
(60). XPD variant alleles have also been associated with reduced repair of
aromatic DNA adducts (61). In a case–control study, a significant interac-
tion between cumulative cigarette smoking and XPD polymorphisms
(Asp312Asn and Lys751Gln) were found (62). XRCC1 protein is involved
in the base excision repair (BER) through the interaction with poly
(ADP-ribose) polymerase, DNA polymerase β, and DNA ligase III. Three
polymorphisms have been identified (63). Recently, XRCC1 polymorphisms
have been show to modulate lung cancer susceptibiltity (64,65). The human
OGG1 (hOGG1) gene encodes a DNA glycosylase/AP-lyase that catalyzes
the removal of 8-OH-dG adducts. Several polymorphisms at the hOGG1
locus have been found and recent studies have suggested that the Ser326Cys
hOGG1 polymorphism may be associated with increased lung cancer risk
and orolaryngeal cancer risk (66,67).
6. GENDER DIFFERENCES IN LUNG CANCER RISK

Smoking rates among women are increasing, as are the number of smoking-related casualties. However, relatively few women in underdeveloped countries are smokers today. For instance, in China only 20 million women are smokers compared to 280 million men, but the number of women smokers will inevitably increase. Tobacco companies have identified women as a key target group.

Women may be particularly sensitive to certain carcinogenic compounds in tobacco smoke (68). Several recent epidemiological studies indicate that women may have a higher risk of lung cancer than men (69,70). These studies are supported by data showing a higher level of hydrophobic DNA adduct in female lung compared to men (71,72). Moreover, a higher frequency of G to T mutations in the p53 gene in lung tumors of females than in males was observed (73,74). In human lung, CYP1A1 mRNA are induced by PAH in tobacco smoke. One study showed that women smokers have significantly higher expression of lung CYP1A1 (72). In the same study, hydrophobic DNA adducts were found to be significantly associated to the level of CYP1A1 expression. Together, these data indicate that women may be more susceptible for lung cancer than males. The mechanism(s) is unknown but hormones may be involved, modulating the expression of enzymes involved in the metabolism of PAH. Estrogen receptors (ER-alpha and ER-beta) have been identified in human lung cells (75). There is also recently presented evidence that the observed sex difference in lung cancer risk may be explained by the expression of gastrin-releasing peptide receptor (GRPR) at a significant lower exposure to tobacco smoke in females than males (76). Studies have shown that bombesin-like peptides such as GRP induce cell proliferation in several cell types, also human bronchial cells and may thereby stimulate promotion in lung carcinogenesis (77).

7. CONCLUSION

Lung carcinogenesis is mediated through an interaction between several putative carcinogens. The interplay between genetics and environmental exposures is thought to be an important factor in lung carcinogenesis. Several genetically controlled polymorphic enzymes and enzyme systems have been recognized which are linked to tobacco carcinogen activation and deactivation. Genetic differences in DNA repair may also be important determinants of susceptibility. However, their interaction and control as well as their contribution to lung cancer susceptibility and tumor development is presently not well understood. Recent studies may indicates sex difference in lung cancer risk. The mechanisms are still unknown.
REFERENCES


76. Shiver SP, Bourdeau HA, Gubish CT, Tirpark DL, Davis LG, Luketich JD, Siegfried JM. Sex-specific expression of gastrin-releasing peptide receptor:

1. INTRODUCTION

Head and neck cancers, also known as cancers of the upper aerodigestive tract, are chiefly squamous cell carcinomas arising in the oral cavity, pharynx, or larynx. About 40,000 persons are diagnosed with squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (SCCHN) in the United States each year, and about 12,000 die of the disease (1). The male:female ratio of patients is about 2:1 for oral and pharyngeal cancer but 4:1 for laryngeal cancer. Only a fraction of individuals exposed to tobacco smoke and/or alcohol develop SCCHN, suggesting that there are differences in individual susceptibility to carcinogenesis and that the impact of gene–environment interactions should be considered. Tobacco carcinogens undergo a series of metabolic activation and detoxification steps that determine the internal dose of exposure and ultimately impact the level of DNA damage incurred.
Both endogenous and exogenous exposure to carcinogens or genotoxic agents cause cell-cycle delays (2) that allow cells to repair such DNA damage. Therefore, the cellular DNA repair capacity (DRC) is central to maintaining genomic integrity and normal cellular functions (3). Recently, molecular epidemiological studies of tobacco-induced carcinogenesis were comprehensively reviewed (4–6). Also, studies have shown that polymorphisms of genes that control drug metabolism (7–9) and DNA repair (10–13) may contribute to the variation in tobacco-induced carcinogenesis in the general population. This chapter focuses on recent molecular epidemiological studies with an emphasis on the role of DNA repair in susceptibility to SCCHN.

2. RISK FACTORS FOR SCCHN

2.1. Tobacco and Alcohol Exposure

Tobacco initiates a linear dose–response carcinogenic effect in which the duration of exposure is more important than the intensity of exposure. The major carcinogenic activity of cigarette smoke resides in the particulate (tar) fraction, which contains a complex mixture of interacting cancer initiators, promoters, and co-carcinogens. In the late 1950s, a landmark case–control study by Dr. Ernst Wynder established the link between tobacco use and oral cavity cancer (14). This was followed a year later by a cohort study of more than 180,000 men that demonstrated an increased risk of death due to SCCHN in cigarette smokers when compared with men who never smoked (15). These studies also demonstrated an elevated risk of death due to SCCHN in cigar and pipe smokers. Due to limitations because of the sample size and follow-up time, Hill’s classic cohort study of more than 40,000 British physicians showed only a borderline risk of SCCHN related to smoking (16). In 1964, the Advisory Committee to the Surgeon General on Smoking and Health published a report linking smoking with cancer based on many of Doll & Hill’s classic criteria of disease causality, and these criteria have been clearly demonstrated linking SCCHN and tobacco smoking over the past 40 years in multiple independent studies (17–20). Most importantly, the strength and consistency of the association between smoking and SCCHN have been demonstrated in numerous case–control and cohort studies with significant relative risks or odds ratios (ORs) in the 3–12-fold range. Furthermore, these studies consistently showed a dose–response effect of the duration and dose of smoking on increasing risk of SCCHN and of the time since quitting on decreasing risk of SCCHN (17,18,21). The specificity of the link between tobacco exposure and SCCHN (not identifying nonmucosal/unexposed head and neck malignancies), coherence and analogy of the explanation of tobacco-induced SCCHN to lung carcinogenesis, and biological plausibility of the well-established tobacco-induced carcinogenesis model have all helped establish tobacco as the chief etiological agent in SCCHN.
Although the risk of bronchogenic carcinoma appears to be less significant for cigar and pipe smokers than for cigarette smokers, these forms of tobacco use are clearly associated with an increased risk of SCCHN (21–23). The pooling of saliva containing carcinogens in gravity-dependent regions may account for the frequent occurrence of oral carcinomas along the lateral and ventral surfaces of the tongue and in the floor of the mouth (24). Smokeless tobacco use has also been demonstrated to be associated with cancer of the oral cavity (25). Smokeless tobacco users and pipe smokers who habitually use the same position for their quid and pipe stem, respectively, often develop carcinomas and dysplasias at the specific site of use, which suggests that physical and thermal trauma may be contributing factors.

While the smoking rate is declining by approximately 1.5% annually in the developed world, it is rising by 2% annually in developing countries, home to four-fifths of the world’s population. In the United States, the smoking rate has declined since the Surgeon General’s warning in 1964 (26). Specifically, in 1965, 42.4% of the U.S. adult population were current smokers, while in 1999, only 23.5% were current smokers. While the reduction in cigarette smoking has been much greater in men than in women over the past three decades, the rate of current cigarette use remains higher in men (25.7%) than in women (21.5%). Furthermore, 40.8% of Native Americans continue to smoke (27). Other concerns include the increasing rate of cigarette smoking among high school seniors and dramatic increase in the number of new cigar smokers over the past decade (26). A dramatic increase in smokeless tobacco use among younger people has been implicated by some in the rise of oral cancer mortality rates in this group (28,29). Striking variations in head and neck cancer sites and incidence seen among different regions, cultures, and demographic groups are due in large part to differing patterns of abuse of tobacco and other substances (30). For example, smokeless tobacco and similar products are used greatly in parts of Asia and Africa (30–32). In south central Asia in particular, “pano” (betel leaf, lime, catechu, and areca nut) is commonly chewed and is a strong risk factor independent of tobacco use for carcinoma of the oral cavity, one of the most common cancers in men and women in this region (32).

However, tobacco is not the only factor in the complex causality equation for these cancers. Alcohol is an important promoter of carcinogenesis and a contributing factor in at least 75% of SCCHNs (17,18). Furthermore, alcohol consumption appears to have an effect on the risk of SCCHN independent of tobacco smoking, but this effect is consistently significant only at the highest level of alcohol consumption (14,17,21). While studies attempting to correlate the different types of alcoholic beverages with specific cancer risks have been conflicting, most investigators believe that ethanol itself is the main causative factor (14,21,33). Nevertheless, it appears
that the major clinical significance of alcohol consumption is that it potentiates the carcinogenic effect of tobacco at every level of tobacco exposure. However, this effect is most striking at the highest levels of exposure, and its magnitude is at least additive but may be multiplicative dependent on the subsite of SCCHN and level of exposure (17,18).

2.2. Genetic Susceptibility

The predominant risk factor for SCCHN is a history of tobacco and alcohol use. However, because only a fraction of smokers ever develop cancer, variations in genetic susceptibility may be equally important in the disease etiology. A genetic component of this disease is supported by large family studies demonstrating a three- to eight-fold increased risk of SCCHN in first-degree relatives of patients with SCCHN (34). Furthermore, there is molecular epidemiological evidence supporting the concept of genetic susceptibility in head and neck cancer patients (35). Emerging data from case–control studies of several phenotyping and genotyping assays support the hypothesis that genetic susceptibility plays an important role in the etiology of SCCHN. According to this hypothesis, inherited differences in the efficiency of carcinogen-metabolizing, DNA repair, and/or cell cycle control/apoptosis systems influence one’s risk of tobacco-induced cancers. Identifying such at-risk individuals in the general population using these biomarker assays would have a profound impact on primary prevention, early detection, and secondary prevention strategies.

2.3. Infectious Agents

While it has been suggested that various infectious agents play a role in head and neck carcinogenesis, only Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) and human papilloma virus (HPV) can be implicated as etiological agents in head and neck carcinogenesis based on current scientific evidence. Epstein–Barr virus appears to be associated with most nasopharyngeal carcinomas, while HPV (most commonly, type 16) is associated with approximately 50% of oropharyngeal carcinomas. Although herpes simplex viruses have been suggested as risk factors for oral cavity cancer (36) and Helicobacter pylori has been suggested as a risk factor for laryngeal cancer (37), confirmation of these findings is lacking (38).

While laboratory evidence supporting the role of HPV as a risk factor for SCCHN is largely circumstantial, HPV has been established as an etiological agent in cervical cancer (39). More recently, several investigators suggested that infection with HPV, especially the high-risk HPV-16, is a risk factor for SCCHN (40). The chief oncoproteins of HPV-16 are encoded by the E6 and E7 genes. The E6 oncoprotein targets the tumor suppressor gene p53 for ubiquitination and degradation; in fact, degradation of p53
in HPV-positive cells is fully dependent on the presence of E6 (41). The E7 oncoprotein is involved in suppression of pRb function; reduced pRb expression is common in HPV-positive tonsillar cancers (42). In vitro experiments support the tumorigenicity of HPV-16 in human epithelial cells. Furthermore, numerous studies using methods such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR), Southern blotting, and in situ hybridization detected HPV DNA in the tumor tissue and sera of SCCHN patients (40). In those studies, oropharyngeal tumors and tumors in nonsmokers were the most frequently positive for HPV DNA. However, because they did not include cancer-free controls, most of these studies were unable to estimate the risk of SCCHN attributable to HPV-16. Molecular epidemiological evidence with a case–control design supporting the role of HPV-16 in SCCHN has emerged, however (36,43). In a recent nested case–control study of 292 cases and 1568 controls from a Scandinavian cohort of almost 900,000 subjects, Mork et al. (44) reported that HPV-16 seropositivity was associated with a 2.2-fold increased risk of SCCHN after multivariate adjustment. However, 25% of the cases in that study were not classic SCCHN: 3% were nasopharyngeal cancers, 20% were lip cancers, and 2% were sinus cancers. Because subjects with cancers at these sites were less frequently seropositive for HPV-16, Mork and colleagues may have underestimated the risk of SCCHN associated with HPV-16 exposure. In their subgroup analysis of oropharyngeal cancer, Mork et al. reported an estimated risk of 14.4 [95% confidence interval (CI), 3.6–58.1]. An additional serological study using a population-based case–control study design of 284 subjects with newly diagnosed oral or oropharyngeal carcinoma and 477 cancer-free controls demonstrated a significantly elevated risk associated with HPV-16 seropositivity (adjusted OR, 2.3; 95% CI, 1.6–3.3) (45). While the researchers did not perform a subgroup risk analysis for oropharyngeal cancer, the chief effect again appeared to be in the oropharyngeal cancer subgroup, approximately 35% of whom had cancer positive for HPV-16 DNA. The circumstantial, mechanistic, and molecular epidemiological evidence strongly supports the role of HPV-16 infection in oropharyngeal carcinogenesis.

### 2.4. Environmental Tobacco Smoke

A recent high-profile legal case in Australia has brought significant interest to the risk of SCCHN secondary to exposure to environmental tobacco smoke. In May 2001, the New South Wales Supreme Court found that SCCHN in a 62-year-old nonsmoker was associated with long-term exposure to environmental tobacco smoke in her job as a bar attendant significant enough to impose liability on her employer (46). Two case–control studies supported the court’s finding. In the first study of 173 SCCHN patients and 176 cancer-free controls, environmental tobacco smoke exposure was associated with a greater than two fold increased risk
of SCCHN, and a dose–response relationship was observed (47). In the second study of 44 nonsmokers with SCCHN and 132 cancer-free nonsmoking controls, environmental tobacco smoke exposure was associated with a significantly increased risk of SCCHN (OR, 5.34), particularly in female subjects (OR, 8.00) and those reporting exposure at their workplace (OR, 10.16) (48).

2.5. Laryngopharyngeal Reflux

Observational and anecdotal studies have long suggested that gastroesophageal reflux is associated with laryngeal cancer (49,50). Furthermore, multiple studies have objectively documented a high prevalence of gastric reflux into the laryngopharynx using 24-h pH probe monitoring (50,51). Recently, a retrospective case–control study of 10,140 inpatients and 12,061 outpatients with laryngeal or pharyngeal cancer and 40,560 inpatients and 48,244 outpatient controls was performed using computerized hospital and outpatient databases of the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs (52). A diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux disease was associated with a significantly elevated risk of laryngeal cancer (OR, 2.40; 95% CI, 2.15–2.69; and OR, 2.31; 95% CI, 2.10–2.53 for inpatients and outpatient groups, respectively) and of pharyngeal cancer (OR, 2.38; 95% CI, 1.87–3.02 and OR, 1.92; 96% CI, 1.72–2.15 for inpatients and outpatient groups, respectively). These risk estimates were adjusted for age, gender, ethnicity, smoking, and alcohol consumption.

2.6. Marijuana

Compared with tobacco smoke, marijuana smoke has a four times greater tar burden and 50% higher concentration of benzo[a]pyrene and aromatic hydrocarbons. While anecdotal evidence has long suggested that marijuana smoking is a risk factor for SCCHN, few reports have found direct evidence of marijuana as an etiological factor for SCCHN because most users of marijuana are also exposed to tobacco and alcohol (53). A recent case–control study that included 173 SCCHN patients and 176 cancer-free controls demonstrated a cigarette smoking-adjusted risk of SCCHN of 2.6 (95% CI, 1.1–6.6) associated with marijuana use with evidence of a dose–response relationship (54). However, a large retrospective cohort of 64,855 health maintenance organization members found no association with tobacco-related cancers (55).

2.7. Diet

Epidemiological evidence from studies using traditional case–control study designs suggests that a diet high in animal fats and low in fruits and
vegetables may be a risk factor for SCCHN (56–59). Specifically, Winn and colleagues found that the risk of oral and pharyngeal cancer in women was inversely related to consumption of fresh fruits and vegetables (56). Similarly, in a study of 871 individuals with oral or pharyngeal cancer and 979 cancer-free controls, McLaughlin et al. (57) demonstrated an inverse relationship between fruit intake and oral and pharyngeal cancer risk. In a Chinese population-based case–control study, intake of citrus fruits and dark green/yellow vegetables was associated with a decreased risk of laryngeal cancer, while intake of salted fish and meat as well as deep-fried foods was associated with an increased risk of laryngeal cancer (58). More recently, both European and U.S. studies have confirmed the protective effects of eating fruits and vegetables and the risk of animal fat consumption after adjustment for smoking and alcohol use (59,60). Some evidence suggests that vitamin A and beta-carotene are responsible for the protective effect of a diet high in fruits and vegetables and that a deficiency of carotenoids appears to be a risk factor for SCCHN and lung cancers (58). It is not known, however, which of the more than 500 carotenoids are protective, which chemical interactions may occur, and which protective roles other micronutrients in carotenoid-rich foods may play. Others have found that total intake of vitamins C and E is also protective (56,60). Moreover, diets are complex and difficult to assess and validate; in particular, there are often inaccuracies in translating foods into constituent nutrients. Further studies are needed to more precisely define the relationship between dietary intake and serum levels of the various carotenoid components. It may be impossible to determine which of the vast array of compounds is most beneficial, and controlling for other dietary variables and confounding risk factors has remained a difficult problem. Further confounding this situation is that smoking has been associated with reduced dietary intake and serum levels of carotenoids. Despite these many problems, prospective and retrospective nutritional (serum and dietary) epidemiological studies have provided important clues about the development and prevention of these cancers.

3. MOLECULAR EPIDEMIOLOGY OF SCCHN

The study of genetic susceptibility can improve the accuracy of estimates of association with carcinogen exposure (61). Tobacco toxicants affect people to variable degrees. There is considerable interindividual variation in cellular responses, for example, in metabolism and detoxification of toxicants, and DRC. As other cellular responses to DNA damage are identified (e.g., cell cycle delays, heat shock, etc.), interindividual variation in risk is likely to be attributed to these responses as well. Interindividual effects of cellular responses may be due to genetically determined differences in enzyme expression, kinetics, or stability. Induction of enzymes from
previous exposure or comorbidity also may contribute to cancer risk, and induction has a genetic component.

Disease risk due to genetic variations ranges from small to large depending on the genetic penetrance. Highly penetrant cancer susceptibility genes cause familial cancers but account for less than 1% of all cancers (62). Lowly penetrant genes cause common sporadic cancers and have greater public health consequences (4) because they are highly prevalent.

Genetic susceptibility can be assessed either phenotypically (measuring the resultant enzymatic function) or genotypically (determining the genetic code). Phenotypic assays may include determination of enzymatic activity by administering probe drugs and measuring blood levels or urinary metabolites, assessing the carcinogen metabolic capacity in cultured lymphocytes, or establishing the ratios of endogenously produced substances, such as estrogen metabolites. One of the most extensively studied phenotypes in relation to smoking risk is aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase activity (63). In general, using a genotypic assay is preferable to using a phenotypic assay to assess cancer risk because DNA is easier to obtain and the assays are technically simpler. However, phenotypes represent a multigenic trait and may not be adequately characterized with one genetic assay. Therefore, there is a role for both genotype- and phenotype-based assays in research studies of cancer risk.

3.1. Xenobiotic Metabolisms of Carcinogens in SCCHN

Mucosa of the upper aerodigestive tract can metabolically activate tobacco-smoke carcinogens, resulting in DNA damage (64). The highest levels of CYP1A1 expression have been reported in these tissues compared with that in other sites (65). Also, NAT1 but not NAT2 activity has been demonstrated in the mucosa of the head and neck, and there is evidence that CYP2C plays an important role in these tissues. Furthermore, aromatic DNA and 4-ABP adducts have been detected in laryngeal tissues at higher levels in smokers than in nonsmokers (66,67).

N-nitroso compounds in smokeless tobacco have been demonstrated to cause cancers of the mouth and lip, nasal cavity, esophagus, stomach, and lungs in laboratory animals. Urinary metabolites of tobacco-specific nitrosamines have been measured in persons using smokeless tobacco products, with higher levels associated with oral leukoplakia, indicating greater use of such products. Hemoglobin adducts to these carcinogens are measurable in the blood of smokeless tobacco users (68) and thus may be useful biomarkers for measuring exposure levels in them. For instance, hemoglobin adduct levels have been found to be higher in snuff users than in nonusers. Other exposures that occur with the use of smokeless tobacco products include those to compounds that cause oxidative DNA damage (69). Several studies have indicated that there is an increased risk of SCCHN
among individuals who have a heritable trait, such as genetic polymorphisms of these genes, although which marker plays the greatest role is not known (70–73), and there is evidence of a greater effect in persons at lower levels of smoking (73). In one study, heritable traits in carcinogen metabolism increased the frequency of \( p53 \) mutations (74).

The \( p53 \) gene is commonly mutated in cancers associated with the use of smokeless tobacco products. While some differences in the spectrum have been reported in different regions of the world, there are no consistent hotspots or patterns when compared with oral cavity cancers related to smoking. The mutational spectrum of \( p53 \) in SCCHN is similar to that in lung cancer (75), although some disagree (76). Additionally, mutations occur more often in smokers than in nonsmokers (75,77,78). In a study by Brennan et al. (77), the frequency of \( p53 \) mutations was higher in tobacco and alcohol users than in those who did not use tobacco or alcohol.

### 3.2. DNA Repair Phenotype and Risk of SCCHN

Through the process of evolution, species of all living organisms have developed sophisticated DNA repair pathways and mechanisms to battle genomic insults from environmental hazards to survive and maintain genomic integrity. The DRC appears to meet the challenge from the natural environment. For instance, the human skin repair capacity just meets the repair demand from sunlight exposure at midday (79). Overloaded DNA damage leads to either cell death or mutant cancerous cells that have escaped from repair systems. It has been reported that more than 150 human genes are involved in various repair pathways, a number that is likely to increase when the Human Genome Project refines its published draft of the human genome (80). These repair genes are grossly categorized into the four most important and well-characterized repair pathways: base excision repair (BER), nucleotide excision repair (NER), mismatch repair (MMR), and homologous recombinational repair (HRR).

Assays that measure cellular DNA repair are now being applied in population studies to investigate the association between DNA repair and susceptibility to cancer. Generally, cellular responses to DNA damage fall into three major categories: direct reversal of damage, e.g., enzymatic photoreactivation; excision of damage by BER or NER; and postreplication repair, namely, MMR and HRR (3). While the presence of only one unrepaired DNA lesion can block the transcription of an essential gene (81,82), there is a wide range of repair ability in the general population (83,84), with xeroderma pigmentosum (XP) patients representing the lowest end of the repair spectrum (85). Because there is a shortage of target tissues for laboratory experiments, peripheral blood lymphocytes have been used extensively as surrogate tissues (83,86).
3.2.1. Host-Cell Reactivation Assay for Nucleotide Excision Repair

While there are many assays that measure the efficiency of multiple steps of excision repair individually, the ability to test the whole pathway is needed for population studies, in which time, cost, and repeatability of the measurements are major concerns. Therefore, the host-cell reactivation (HCR) assay, which measures the level of expression of a damaged reporter gene as a marker of the repair proficiency in the host cell is the assay of choice (87,88). The HCR assay uses undamaged cells, is relatively fast, and is an objective method of measuring DRC. In this assay, a damaged nonreplicating recombinant plasmid (pCMVcat or pCVMluv) harboring a chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (or luciferase) reporter gene is introduced into cultured cells such as primary lymphocytes via transfection (88). For instance, reactivated chloramphenicol acetyltransferase enzyme activity is measured as a function of NER of the damaged reporter gene (87). Both lymphocytes (83) and skin fibroblasts (89) from patients who have basal cell carcinoma but not XP have lower excision-repair rates of a UV-damaged reporter gene than individuals without cancer. This finding suggests that the repair capacity of lymphocytes can be considered a reflection of an individual’s overall repair capacity.

To investigate whether differences in DRC for repairing tobacco carcinogen-induced DNA damage are associated with differential susceptibility to tobacco-related cancer, the HCR assay with benzo[a]pyrene diol epoxide (BPDE) -damaged plasmids was used in both an initial pilot study (51 lung cancer patients and 56 frequency-matched controls) (90), and a subsequent large hospital-based case–control study of lung cancer (316 lung cancer patients and 316 cancer-free controls) (84). Statistically significantly lower DRC was observed in the patients when compared with the controls, which was associated with a greater than two-fold increase in risk of lung cancer (84). Compared with the highest DRC quartile in the controls, suboptimal DRC was associated with an increased risk of lung cancer in a dose–response fashion. Patients who were younger at diagnosis (< 60 years), female, lighter smokers, or reported to have a family history of cancer exhibited the lowest DRC and therefore were associated with the highest lung cancer risk, suggesting that these subgroups may be especially susceptible to lung cancer (84). The low DRC found in women in this study is consistent with epidemiological findings showing that women are at higher risk for tobacco-induced cancer than men are at the same exposure level (91–93). Using the same assay, Cheng et al. (94) investigated the role of DRC in head and neck cancers. Again, DRC was significantly lower in the patients than in the controls with a similar dose–response trend, that is, those in the middle and lowest DRC tertiles had a greater than two-fold and four-fold increased risk, respectively. These results suggest that
suboptimal DRC may contribute to susceptibility to tobacco carcinogenesis, such as in the lung and head and neck.

3.2.2. Mutagen Sensitivity Assay

The mutagen sensitivity assay is another functional assay that measures chromatid breaks in response to in vitro exposure to carcinogens in short-term cultures of peripheral blood lymphocytes. Several case–control (95–97) and cohort studies (98,99) have suggested that induced and spontaneous lymphocytic chromosome aberrations can be used as markers of susceptibility to cancer. The implications of chromosomal aberrations and genomic instability in carcinogenesis of the head and neck have been comprehensively reviewed elsewhere (100,101).

In the general population, the frequency of spontaneous chromosome aberrations is low (102), and classic cytogenetic assays that assess these types of aberrations may not be applicable to epidemiological studies requiring a large number of samples. Therefore, Hsu et al. developed an assay of mutagen sensitivity to measure genetic susceptibility to cancer by estimating the frequency of in vitro bleomycin-induced breaks in short-term lymphocyte cultures (103,104). Bleomycin is considered radiomimetic (i.e., it causes the generation of free oxygen radicals), which is relevant to tobacco-induced carcinogenesis because numerous compounds in tobacco condensate may generate free oxygen radicals that can induce single- and double-strand breaks. Mutagen sensitivity has consistently been shown to be a significant independent predictor of the risk of upper aerodigestive tract cancers in case–control studies (96,97,103,105,106). For instance, lighter and former smokers appear to be more sensitive than heavier smokers do as measured by this bleomycin assay, as do younger patients compared with older ones. In upper aerodigestive tract cancer patients, bleomycin sensitivity has been found to be highest in those under the age of 30 years among the age groups investigated (107). These results suggest that the mutagen sensitivity assay may serve as a biomarker for susceptibility to tobacco-related cancers.

The bleomycin assay was later modified by using BPDE as the test mutagen (108), and this BPDE sensitivity was found to be associated with a significantly elevated risk for head and neck cancer (109). In this pilot case–control study of 60 SCCHN patients and 112 healthy controls, a high frequency of BPDE-induced chromatid breaks was associated with a greater than two-fold increase in the risk of head and neck cancer, and there was a dose–response relationship between the frequency of BPDE-induced chromatid breaks and risk of SCCHN, suggesting that the number of BPDE-induced breaks per cell is a significant risk factor for head and neck cancer (109). The findings that cancer is more likely to develop in younger people who have the BPDE sensitive phenotype support the hypothesis that the presence of BPDE-induced chromatid breaks is a marker for genetic susceptibility to tobacco-induced carcinogenesis.
It has been suggested that the mutagen sensitivity assay indirectly measures the effectiveness of one or more DNA repair mechanisms (110). A correlation between the cellular DRC measured using the HCR assay and frequency of mutagen-induced in vitro chromatid breaks has been reported (11,90,111). Mutagen sensitivity may also be involved in an inherent chromatin alteration that permits more efficient translation of DNA damage into chromosome damage after exposure to a mutagen (112). Although the mechanism underlying the association between induced chromosomal aberrations and susceptibility to cancer remains to be unraveled, tobacco smoke causes both oxidative damage and bulky adducts. Defects in both BER and NER mechanisms may therefore dramatically increase the risk of smoking-related cancer.

3.2.3. 32P-Postlabeling Assay of DNA Adducts

A relatively large variation has been observed in the level of persistent DNA adducts in vivo believed to be related to smoking (113,114). Although this variation may be partly due to the experimental methodology used, it may also be a true biological variation that is a valid phenotypic marker for the joint effect of host metabolic activities and DNA repair in response to carcinogen exposure (115). Using the 32P-postlabeling assay developed by Reddy and Randerath (116), Phillips et al. (117) noted a linear relationship between the levels of aromatic DNA adducts in the human lung and number of cigarettes smoked per day. While some studies have failed to find a correlation between lymphocyte adduct levels and smoking habits (118,119), one study did report a significant difference between the aromatic DNA adduct levels in smokers and nonsmokers (86).

A large variation in adduct levels in vivo may be driven by a variation in the activities of enzymes involved in carcinogen bioactivation (120,121) such as CYP1A2 (122), which can be induced by smoking in the target tissues (123). To tackle this problem, Li et al. (115) developed a new assay of in vitro induction of carcinogen–DNA adducts by an ultimate carcinogen. In this assay, stimulated lymphocytes were treated with BPDE (the ultimate carcinogen of benzo[a]pyrene, which does not need bioactivation). Therefore, variation in the level of BPDE-induced DNA adducts should reflect only genetic variation in phase II enzymes and DRC. However, phase II enzymes have little, if any, effect on the in vitro formation of adducts in this assay because of the relatively high concentration of BPDE used (4 μM) and the rapid binding of BPDE to DNA, which peaks within 15 min (124). This ultimate carcinogen generates in vitro adduct levels that are 100-fold higher than in vivo adduct levels. Furthermore, the variation in such induced adduct levels is within 100-fold rather than 1000-fold as often seen in vivo.

In a pilot study of 91 patients with SCCHN and 115 cancer-free controls, Li et al. (125) found that the levels of BPDE-induced DNA adducts
were significantly higher in patients than in the controls. Using the median level of control values \( (35/10^7) \) as the cutoff point, they also found that about 66% of the patients were distributed above this level. High levels of BPDE-induced DNA adducts were associated with a greater than two-fold increased risk. There was a statistically significant dose–response relationship between the quartile levels of BPDE-induced DNA adducts and risk of head and neck cancer, suggesting that this biomarker may compliment others in identifying individuals at increased risk for developing tobacco-related cancers. Indeed, similar findings were observed in lung cancer studies (115,126).

3.2.4. Assays of DNA Repair Gene Transcript (mRNA) Levels

While the DRC phenotype can be affected by polymorphisms of genes that participate in the repair pathway, epigenetic factors may also influence the repair outcome. For instance, the level of expression of repair genes may be affected epigenetically. To investigate the variation in expression, a multiplex RT-PCR assay has been used to measure the levels of several DNA repair gene transcripts relative to those of a ubiquitous housekeeping gene (127). In this technique, transcripts from several repair genes and the \( \beta \)-actin gene are simultaneously amplified, and the transcript levels are quantified in relation to the \( \beta \)-actin level using computerized densitometry analysis of gel electrophoresis of the multiplex RT-PCR products. This assay is also flexible in that it groups the genes involved in the same repair pathway such as MMR (128) or NER (129) into one experiment.

Using this multiplex RT-PCR assay, Wei et al. (130) simultaneously evaluated the relative levels of expression of five MMR genes (\( hMSH2, hMLH1, hPMS1, hPMS2, \) and \( hGTBP/hMSH6 \)) in the peripheral blood lymphocytes of 78 patients with head and neck cancer and 86 cancer-free controls. The relative MMR gene expression was not correlated with the disease stage or tumor site in the patients or with smoking and alcohol use in the controls, but it did increase with age in both patients and controls. The mean level of expression of \( hMLH1, hPMS1, \) and \( hGTBP/hMSH6 \) was significantly lower in the patients than in the controls. Low expression of \( hMLH1 \) was associated with a greater than four-fold increase in risk, while low expression of \( hGTBP/hMSH6 \) was associated with a greater than two-fold increase in risk. Cheng et al. (131) used this assay to measure the relative level of expression of five NER genes \( ERCC1 \) (ERCC, excision repair cross-complementing), \( XPB/ERCC3, XPG/ERCC5, CSB/ERCC6 \) (CSB, Cockayne’s syndrome complementary group B), and \( XPC \) and in phytohemagglutinin-stimulated peripheral blood lymphocytes obtained from 57 SCCHN patients and 105 cancer-free controls. They found that the levels of \( ERCC1, XPB/ERCC3, XPG/ERCC5, \) and \( CSB/ERCC6 \) transcripts were lower in the patients than in the controls. In a multivariate
logistic regression analysis (adjusting for age, gender, race, smoking status, and alcohol use), low expression of ERCC1, XPB/ERCC3, XPG/ERCC5, and CSB/ERCC6 was associated with a statistically significantly increased risk of SCCHN (adjusted OR (95% CI), 6.42 (2.63–15.69), 2.86 (1.39–5.90), 3.69 (1.73–7.90), and 2.46 (1.19–5.09), respectively). These results suggest that individuals with low expression of DNA repair genes may be at higher risk for SCCHN.

3.3. DNA Repair Genotypes and Risk of SCCHN

Polymorphisms of DNA repair genes may also contribute to variations in DRC. Clearly, functional (phenotypic) studies of DNA repair in individuals with various DNA repair genotypes are needed. However, it will be difficult to detect subtle differences in DRC in such studies due to a single polymorphism of a single gene in a very complex pathway. Recently, the entire coding regions of the following DNA repair genes on chromosome 19 were resequenced in 12 normal individuals (132): three NER genes (ERCC1, XPD/ERCC2, and XPF/ERCC4), one HRR gene (XRCC3), and one BER gene (XRCC1). Among these, 7 variants of ERCC1, 17 variants of XPD/ERCC2, 6 variants of XPF/ERCC4, 4 variants of XRCC3, and 12 variants of XRCC1 were identified. Of these variants, 4 of XPD/ERCC2, 3 of XRCC1, 1 of XRCC3 and 1 of XPF/ERCC4 result in an amino acid sequence change. Later, another 6 variants of XPF/ERCC4 were identified in 38 individuals (133), 2 variants of XPA (chromosome 9), and 2 variants of XPB/ERCC3 (chromosome 2) were identified in 35 individuals, and 2 variants of XPC (chromosome 3) (134) and 3 variants of XPG/ERCC5 (chromosome 13) (135) were also identified. Although the significance of these variants is largely unknown, the implication is those that cause amino acid substitutions may have an impact on the function of the proteins and therefore on the efficiency of DNA repair. Variants that do not cause an amino acid change may also have an impact on the DNA repair function through altered splicing, mRNA instability, or linkage with other genetic changes. Therefore, knowing the impact of these polymorphisms on disease risk is important to ultimately understanding their functional relevance.

The XPD protein is an evolutionarily conserved helicase, a subunit of transcription factor IIH (TFIIH) that is essential for transcription and NER (136). Mutations in XPD prevent its protein from interacting with p44, another subunit of TFIIH (137), and decrease helicase activity, resulting in a defect in NER. Furthermore, mutations at different sites result in distinct clinical phenotypes (138). XPD is also thought to be involved in the repair of genetic damage induced by tobacco carcinogens (111).

Several XPD polymorphisms were recently identified in the coding regions of different exons at a relatively high frequency (132,139). These
common polymorphisms (allele frequencies > 0.20) included C22541A (156Arg) of exon 6, C35326T (711Asp) without amino acid changes and G23592A (Asp312Asn) of exon 10, and A35931C (Lys751Gln) with amino acid changes of exon 23. The Lys751Gln polymorphism is located about 50 bp upstream from the poly(A) signal and therefore may alter XPD protein function (139). In a study of 31 women, those with the 751Gln/Gln genotype were found to have a higher number of chromatid aberrations induced by X-rays (140). However, this finding was not confirmed in another study that measured the frequency of smoking-induced sister chromatid exchanges and polyphenol DNA adducts (n = 61) (141).

In a case–control study of 189 SCCHN patients and 496 cancer-free controls, Sturgis et al. (111) found that the frequency of the XPD 22541 AA homozygous genotype was lower in the patients (15.9%) than in the controls (20.4%), but that the difference was not statistically significant. However, the frequency of the 751Gln/Gln homozygous genotype was higher in the patients (16.4%) than in the controls (11.5%) and was associated with a borderline increased risk (OR, 1.55). The risk was higher in older subjects (OR, 2.22), current smokers (OR, 1.83), and current drinkers (OR, 2.59). Although no studies reported the role of the Asp312Asn variant in the etiology of SCCHN, the Asp312Asn variant was found to be associated with a nearly two fold increase in the risk of lung cancer in two independent studies (142,143). The XPD C22541A and C35326T polymorphisms are silent, resulting in no amino acid substitutions (132), and they were not found to be associated with an increased risk of cancer (11,144). However, it is possible that such a sequence variation could affect RNA stability or otherwise disturb protein synthesis (139).

Several polymorphisms of XRCC1 have also been identified (132). They include those that result in a nonconservative amino acid substitution at C26304T of codon 194 (Arg194Trp) in exon 6, G27466A of codon 280 (Arg280His) in exon 9, and G28152A of codon 399 (Arg399Gln) in exon 10. Although the functional relevance of these variants is unknown, codon 399 is within the XRCC1 BRCT (breast cancer susceptibility protein-1) domain (codons 314–402) (145), which is highly homologous to BRCA1 (a gene also involved in DNA repair) and contains a binding site for poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) (146). Because the role of XRCC1 in BER involves bringing together DNA polymerase β (β-pol), DNA ligase III, and PARP at the site of DNA damage (147–149), the codon 399 variant may have an impact on repair activity. The codon 194 polymorphism resides in the linker regions of the XRCC1 N-terminal domain separating the helix 3 and β-pol involved in the binding of a single-nucleotide gap DNA substrate (150). Lunn et al. (151) reported that the codon 399 variant was associated with higher levels of both aflatoxin B1-DNA adducts and glycophorin A variants in a normal population, suggesting that this variant is an adverse genotype. However, few studies have
examined the associations between polymorphisms of the DNA repair gene XRCC1 and risk of cancer.

In another case–control study, Sturgis et al. (10) reported that 89% of 203 SCCHN patients and 86% of 424 cancer-free controls lacked the XRCC1 codon 194 Trp variant, resulting in a significant risk of oral cavity and pharyngeal cancers (OR, 2.46). Thirty-two patients (16%) and 46 controls (11%) were homozygous for the codon 399 Gln variant (adjusted OR, 1.59 for all cases). Furthermore, when the two genotypes were combined, the adjusted OR was 1.51 for either risk genotype and 2.02 for both risk genotypes. In addition, the codon 399 Arg/Gln and Gln/Gln genotypes were associated with increased risk of breast cancer in African Americans (152) and gastric cancer in a Chinese population (153), the codon 280 Arg/His and His/His genotypes were associated with increased risk of lung cancer in a Chinese population (154), and the 194Trp and 399Gln variant alleles were associated with increased risk of colon cancer in an Egyptian population (155). However, not all of these polymorphisms were found to be associated with increased risk of cancer in other studies (143,144,156). Despite some conflicting reports, the variants of XRCC1 and their impact on cancer risk have generated much interest recently (157).

The hOGG1 gene is localized on chromosome 3p25 and encodes two proteins that result from alternative splicing of a single messenger RNA (158,159). The alpha-hOGG1 protein undergoes nuclear localization, whereas the beta-hOGG1 protein is targeted to a mitochondrion. A polymorphism at codon 326 (Ser326Cys) produces the hOGG1-Ser326 and hOGG1-Cys326 proteins (160). Also, the mutant forms hOGG1-Gln46 and hOGG1-His154 are defective in their catalytic capacity, especially for 8-OH-Gua (161). The activity in the repair of 8-hydroxyguanine appears to be greater with the Ser326 protein than with the Cys326 protein. Because tobacco carcinogens produce 8-hydroxyguanine residues, the capacity to repair these lesions can be involved in cancer susceptibility. This polymorphism was identified in European patients with head and neck or kidney cancer but not associated with increased risk (162).

In a study using buccal cell DNA isolated from 169 white orolaryngeal cancer patients and 338 race-, sex-, and age-matched controls, Elahi et al. (162) screened normal orolaryngeal tissue specimens for hOGG1 expression and assessed the role of the hOGG1 Ser326Cys polymorphism in the risk of orolaryngeal cancer. They detected hOGG1 mRNA in all aerodigestive tract tissues tested, including the tonsil, tongue, floor of the mouth, larynx, and esophagus. They also found significantly increased risk of orolaryngeal cancer with the hOGG1 326(Ser)/326(Cys)(OR, 1.6; 95% CI, 1.04–2.60) and hOGG1 326(Cys)/326(Cys) genotypes (OR, 4.1; 95% CI, 1.3–13). However, no significant differences in risk of orolaryngeal cancer were observed with hOGG1 genotypes in never smokers and never drinkers of alcohol, suggesting that the hOGG1 Ser326Cys polymorphism plays
an important role in the risk of tobacco- and alcohol-related orolaryngeal cancer.

In conclusion, studies of the correlation between the DNA repair genotype and phenotype are needed, and large well-designed, confirmatory case–control or cohort studies will be required to verify the impact of the DNA repair phenotype and its genetic variants on cancer risk.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS
The authors thank Mrs Joanne Sider for assistance in preparing the manuscript. This investigation was supported in part by National Institutes of Health grants CA86390 and CA97007 and National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences grants ES11740 and ES07784.

REFERENCES


Breast Cancer

Christine B. Ambrosone and Kirsten B. Moysich
Department of Epidemiology, Roswell Park Cancer Institute, Buffalo, New York, U.S.A.

Helena Furberg
Department of Genetics, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

Despite focused efforts over the last two decades to further understand the causes of breast cancer, little new information has been gained regarding breast cancer etiology. Risk factors that are “known” explain approximately 40% of the variability in incidence (1); the remaining risks for breast cancer are yet to be determined. Breast cancer appears to be extremely heterogeneous, with multiple factors contributing to the etiology of the disease. It is plausible that a number of lifetime events and exposures, in combination with variability in key genes that metabolize steroid hormones, dietary factors, and chemical carcinogens, as well as those involved in DNA repair, signal transduction, and cell cycle control, are likely to be responsible for carcinogenesis in the breast. The focus of this chapter will be to review known and suspected risk factors for breast cancer, and the possible modification of risk relationships by genetic variability in mechanistic pathways.
2. KNOWN BREAST CANCER RISK FACTORS AND PARADIGMS OF CARCINOGENESIS

Perhaps the most consistent risk factor for breast cancer is diagnosis of the disease in a first-degree relative. A positive family history of breast cancer may or may not imply genetic susceptibility, however. It may also be due to similar environments or lifestyle habits, i.e., risk factors that are common to the mother are also common to the daughter(s). It is also possible that familial occurrence due to an inherited susceptibility is heterogeneous in mechanism and strength. Genetic susceptibility may reside in more than one gene locus, i.e., in proto-oncogenes related to signal transduction and cell cycle control, in hormone metabolism or responsiveness, in allelic loss in tumor suppressor genes, or polymorphisms in genes involved in carcinogen metabolism and detoxification, DNA repair, and immune response.

There is considerable clinical and epidemiological evidence to suggest that breast cancer is influenced by hormones, and to a lesser extent environmental exposures. Well-established risk factors for breast cancer include early age at menarche, late age at menopause, late age at first full-term pregnancy, and nulliparity. Body size also appears to influence breast cancer risk, but appears to differ according to menopausal status. High body mass index (BMI) is associated with increased risk of breast cancer among postmenopausal women, but not premenopausal women. Other putative risk factors for breast cancers originate in the environment. The presumed relationship between dietary fat and breast cancer risk has not been supported in most epidemiologic studies. There are somewhat consistent data to suggest that consumption of fruits and vegetables decreases risk, however. There are also consistent data indicating that alcohol consumption, even moderate use, increases risk of breast cancer. Cigarette smoking, despite being a biologically plausible risk factor, has been associated with increased risk of breast cancer only among certain subgroups of women.

There are primarily two paradigms proposed to link the above risk factors to breast carcinogenesis. The historically older model, which has predominated until recently, is that of two-stage carcinogenesis. Based on rodent experiments, this is a model of initiation and promotion; cells that develop mutations through DNA damage replicate and immortalize that damage. In the case of breast cancer, replication would be driven by the mitotic stimulation of circulating steroid hormones. While we now know that there are likely multiple ‘hits’ that damage DNA, and multiple genetic events occurring over a number of years, this model of DNA damage and cell replication is still plausible. There are a number of factors that could initiate DNA damage, including chemical carcinogens, hormone metabolites, spontaneous errors in replication, and reactive oxygen species (ROS) that could be generated through a number of processes.
The second paradigm of carcinogenesis in hormonally responsive tissue asserts that steroid hormones are complete carcinogens. Biosynthesis and metabolism of estrogens is mediated by a number of enzymes, many which are polymorphic. Some estrogen metabolites, namely the 4-hydroxy catechol estrogen, have been shown to bind to DNA and cause mutations. In this scenario, estrogens would act as both the DNA damaging agent and the mitotic stimulator.

The ability to link breast cancer risk factors to mechanisms of carcinogenesis can be enhanced by exploring the role of genetic polymorphisms in the various pathways related to exposure and response in affecting ultimate agents that can damage DNA. Polymorphisms in genes involved in the metabolism of steroid hormones or chemical carcinogens can be related to levels of ultimate reactive intermediates. The identification of genetic variants that might modify associations between exposure and disease has the potential to elucidate risk relationships more clearly, as well as to identify subsets of the population that are most susceptible to certain exposures.

3. MODIFICATION OF EXPOSURES BY NONGENETIC FACTORS

The primary focus of this chapter will be the effects of genetic variability on associations between risk factors and breast cancer. However, in addition to genetic factors, demographic or lifestyle variables may impact the effects of exposures on ultimate breast cancer risk. The age at which exposures occur may influence breast cancer risk and the impact of risk factors may vary depending on the age at which breast cancer is diagnosed.

3.1. Timing of Exposures

The timing of carcinogenic exposures may be critical to risk of breast cancer. In rats, carcinogens administered before a first pregnancy result in twice the tumor load than in rats exposed after mammary cell differentiation (2). As reviewed by Colditz and Frazier (3) and confirmed by Marcus et al. (4,5), studies of the effects of irradiation, alcohol consumption, and cigarette smoking have shown that breast cancer risk is increased by exposure at an early age. Colditz suggests that genetic damage resulting from exposures before a first pregnancy may be immortalized by cell proliferation during breast development and pregnancy, and that the decrease in cell turnover following pregnancy may prevent further genetic damage, thus reducing risk. An understanding of the importance of the age at which exposures occur may be of key importance for strategies in cancer prevention.

3.2. Age at Diagnosis of Breast Cancer

It is possible that etiologic pathways may differ for pre- and postmenopausal breast cancer, with the effects of specific risk factors having differential
effects by menopausal status. For example, research indicates that there is a crossover effect of BMI by menopausal status (6–9). As reviewed by Hunter and Willett (10), the majority of breast cancer studies have found that higher BMI increases risk for postmenopausal women, but leaner women are at increased risk for premenopausal breast cancer. Relationships between exposures and breast cancer risk may also vary between subsets of individuals depending upon numerous other modifying factors, a few of which include dietary intakes of macro- and micronutrients, smoking, and reproductive histories. Another extensively studied putative effect modifier of breast cancer risk is a history of breast cancer in a first-degree relative.

4. MODIFICATION OF EXPOSURE/DISEASE RELATIONSHIPS BY GENETIC FACTORS

4.1. Family History of Breast Cancer

In most epidemiological studies, the presence of breast cancer in a first-degree relative is associated with an approximate twofold elevation in breast cancer. Among women with a family history of breast cancer, a proportion of them may carry mutant alleles in BRCA1 or BRCA2, which confer a high lifetime risk of breast cancer. However, while only a small proportion of the population of women with breast cancer carry BRCA mutations (<3%), most studies indicate that approximately 15% of the cases report breast cancer in a first-degree relative. Some studies have indicated that a family history of breast cancer may alter risks associated with other factors. Sellers and colleagues reported that risks associated with hormone replacement therapy, body fat distribution, and a number of reproductive factors varied by family history of breast cancer (11–14). Other investigators have noted similar modification of risk by reported family history of a number of reproductive and dietary factors (15–22).

4.2. BRCA1 and BRCA2 Genes

The identification of breast cancer susceptibility genes, BRCA1 and BRCA2, has enabled researchers to more clearly evaluate the effects of genetic predisposition on breast cancer risk, particularly among younger women (23,24). The two genes are believed to be responsible for most hereditary breast cancers, particularly early-onset breast cancer. Breast cancer associated with BRCA1 and BRCA2 has high penetrance, and predisposition is inherited as a dominant genetic trait. While this mutation is present in families with hereditary breast cancer, it was also found in 10% of a population-based cohort of women diagnosed with breast cancer before the age of 35 (25). Even for women with hereditary breast cancer, however, it appears that risk and age at onset may be modified by a number of other exogenous and endogenous factors.
There is considerable interest in the effect endogenous hormones have on risk of breast cancer among BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. In an investigation of reproductive factors, Narod and colleagues found that low parity, but not age at first or last pregnancy, was associated with risk of developing breast cancer among women who carried the BRCA1 mutation (26). More recent evidence indicates that risk of breast cancer may be significantly reduced among BRCA1 carriers with a history of bilateral prophylactic oophorectomy (27). The proposed mechanism for this protective effect relates to the reduced exposure to endogenous ovarian hormones associated with such a procedure.

Polymorphic genes involved in endocrine processes may also influence risk of breast cancer among BRCA1 carriers. Rebbeck et al. reported that among women with a BRCA1 mutation, those with the CAG repeat-length polymorphism in the androgen receptor (AR) gene (28) and the variant A1B1 genotype (29) were at greater risk of developing breast cancer than those without these alterations. Four subsequent studies did not confirm these findings (30–33), however, Haiman et al. using data from the Nurses’ Health Study, found that longer AR repeat alleles were overrepresented among women with a family history of breast cancer (34).

5. TRADITIONAL AND SUSPECTED RISK FACTORS FOR BREAST CANCER

5.1. Diet

While ecological and animal studies indicate that dietary fat intake may increase risk, cohort and case–control studies generally do not support this hypothesis (38). Investigators have also studied possible associations with other related variables, such as total calories, animal fat and meat consumption (10,39,40), with mixed findings. There have been somewhat consistent data to indicate that a diet high in fruits and vegetables decrease risk of breast cancer, and the data strongly suggest moderate alcohol intake is associated with increased risk (41,42). Whether or not associations between these factors and risk are of the same magnitude for all women, however, has not been established. It is likely that for some women, the
deleterious or protective effects of diet are more pronounced than for other women, based on metabolic variability.

5.2. Animal Products, Dietary Fat, and Heterocyclic Amines

Studies of the consumption of animal products, particularly meat, have yielded inconsistent results, although a meta-analysis of 5 cohort and 12 case–control studies by Boyd and colleagues revealed a summary relative risk of 1.54 [95% Confidence interval (CI) 1.31–1.82] associated with consumption of red meat (43). A more recent investigation, however, involving a pooled analysis of cohort studies found no association between meat consumption and breast cancer (40). The assessment of meat as a risk factor for breast cancer has focused primarily on its role as a source of dietary fat or animal protein. Dietary fat intake has long been hypothesized to be associated with breast cancer risk (44) based on animal studies (45), ecologic studies (46,47), and studies of migrants from areas with low fat intake to those with high fat intake (48). However, many analytic epidemiological studies have not shown an effect of fat, including the results of a pooled analysis of seven cohort studies (38). Recently, it has been suggested that diet in childhood and at the time of puberty may be of importance (49). Evidence from animal studies suggests that only fat intake before the first pregnancy affects risk (50). It is possible that the failure to identify an association of fat intake with breast cancer in epidemiological studies may be because intake early in life, rather than recent consumption, is most important. Failure to detect an association may also be due to fact that there is not enough variability in fat consumption within populations (i.e., there are too few individuals with low intakes) (51,52), or because of measurement error inherent in dietary questionnaires (52). It may also be that specific types of dietary fat are more important than total fat, and investigators have not been evaluating the proper variables.

Blood levels of lipoproteins have been investigated in relation to breast cancer etiology as a potential mediating factor on the relationship between dietary fat and risk and as an independent risk factor. The associations between serum and plasma total cholesterol, high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol, and triglycerides have been widely studied, but results from these investigations are inconsistent.

The apoE protein plays an important role in lipid metabolism (53) and has three common isoforms (E2, E3, and E) coded by the alleles e2, e3, and e4. In general, compared to individuals with the e3 allele, levels of total and LDL cholesterol tend to be lower for those with the e2 allele and higher for those with the e4. The e4 allele has been associated with increased risk for coronary heart disease (54,55) and Alzheimer’s disease (56) and has been found to be underrepresented in elderly populations.
(57), including elderly coronary heart disease patients (55) and elderly smokers (58). With respect to breast cancer, Moysich et al. (59) reported that women with the highest serum triglyceride levels had an increase in risk compared to women with the lowest levels. This effect was not apparent among women with the e2 or e3 alleles, but much stronger among women with at least one e4 allele, suggesting that the apoE 4 genotype may modify the association between serum triglycerides and breast cancer risk.

If meat consumption does increase breast cancer risk, it may not be due to its fat content, but rather to other components. Three recent studies found that breast cancer risk was significantly increased by consumption of meat, after controlling for total fat or protein (39,60,61). It is possible that meat consumption may impact breast cancer risk as a result of mutagens and carcinogens, such as heterocyclic amines, which are formed in the cooking of meats and are potent mammary mutagens and carcinogens in rodent models (62,63). One of the most abundant heterocyclic amines, PhIP, has been detected in breast milk indicating direct exposure of ductal epithelial cells to this potent mutagen (64–66). Ultimate levels of heterocyclic amines depend on cooking method, cooking time, cooking temperature, and protein source (63).

In addition, metabolism of heterocyclic and aromatic amines varies among individuals and depends, in part, on polymorphisms in genes involved in their metabolism, such as N-acetyltransferases NAT1 and NAT2 and cytochrome P4501A2 (CYP1A2) (67). Several polymorphic sites have been identified at the NAT2 locus, and result in decreased N-acetyltransferase activity (68). Slow NAT2 acetylation of aromatic amines is associated with increased risk for bladder cancer (69) and may increase postmenopausal breast cancer risk associated with cigarette smoking (70). Heterocyclic amines appear to be poor substrates for N-acetylation at the liver, however, and rapid O-acetylation of the activated metabolites by NAT2 in the target tissue appears to be associated with increased risk of colon cancer related to consumption of red meat (71).

In a pilot study of colon cancer, Lang et al. found that individuals with rapid activation by CYP1A2 and rapid O-acetylation by NAT2 had almost three times the risk of colon cancer as those with slow phenotypes (72). More recently, LeMarchand et al. confirmed this finding in a population-based, case–control study in Hawaii (73). They found that well-done meat intake increases risk of colorectal cancer, particularly in people who inherited the rapid phenotype for both NAT2 and CYP1A2. This association was only observed among smokers, however, presumably since CYP1A2 is induced by cigarette smoking. Because heterocyclic amines appear to be mammary carcinogens, it is possible that rapid hepatic activation by CYP1A2 and further activation by NAT1 or NAT2, may be related to breast cancer risk (74–76). Thus, heterocyclic amines may be associated with increased breast cancer risk among women with rapid CYP1A2 and rapid NAT2 status. Findings from epidemiological studies, however, have been inconsistent.
We found no associations between meat consumption, NAT2, and breast cancer in a study of Caucasian women in western New York (77). However, the questionnaire used was not designed to evaluate heterocyclic amines per se, thus substantial misclassification was possible. Using Sinha’s questionnaire specifically designed for heterocyclic amine exposure, Zheng et al. (78) recently reported that consumption of well-done meats increased breast cancer risk in a dose-dependent manner. Deitz et al. also reported an elevated association between well-done meats and breast cancer risk among rapid/intermediate NAT2 acetylators (79). In a subsequent paper (80), Zheng et al. examined the role of NAT1 genetic polymorphisms and risk related to smoking and meat consumption. They reported that the NAT1^1 allele, thought to result in rapid activation, resulted in a significant sixfold increase in breast cancer risk among women who were high consumers of red meat. Among women with low intake, there was a nonsignificant risk of less than three associated with that putative allele. Contrary to these findings, Gertig and colleagues (81) and Delfino et al. (79) did not report an increased risk with read meat consumption, and risk was not modified by NAT2 status.

5.3. Fruit and Vegetable Consumption

There are fairly consistent data indicating that higher consumption of fruits and vegetables is associated with decreased breast cancer risk (82,83), although not all studies support such an association (84,85). Fruits and vegetables are sources of a number of nutrients, including antioxidant vitamins such as carotenoids, the tocopherols, and vitamin C. Several nutritional epidemiological studies have noted inverse associations between dietary antioxidants and breast cancer risk (86–88). The mechanistic relationship of these putative risk factors, however, has not been elucidated. One hypothesis is that dietary antioxidants affect oxidative stress and the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) by altering the balance between prooxidant cellular activity and antioxidant defenses (89). Reactive oxygen species are produced by normal cellular respiration and as a result of inflammation and cellular stress (90). When ROS are the result of normal metabolism, and there is sufficient antioxidant power and repair capacity, there are presumably few harmful effects. Excessive production of ROS resulting from toxic agents, such as tobacco smoke, or from insufficient in vivo defense mechanisms, can result in oxidative stress, leading to damage to DNA and cell membranes, mitochondrion, and protein (91–96). It is also possible that a diet low in fruits and vegetables could contribute to excessive ROS and oxidative stress. Oxidative damage has been reported to be higher in women with breast cancer, compared to controls, although studies to date remain small (97–99), and these levels vary with the consumption of meats, vegetables, and fruits (100–102).
Endogenous defenses against ROS include glutathione peroxidase, catalase, and superoxide dismutase (SOD) (90). There are three known forms of SOD: the cytosolic and extracellular copper/zinc SODs and the mitochondrial manganese SOD (MnSOD). MnSOD is synthesized in the cytosol and post-transcriptionally modified for transport into the mitochondrion (103,104). In the mitochondrion, it catalyzes the dismutation of two superoxide radicals, producing H$_2$O$_2$ and oxygen. MnSOD is induced with free radical challenge (105) and cigarette smoke (106). Recently, two genetic variants of MnSOD were identified. A nucleotide T to C substitution in the mitochondrial targeting sequence was found that changes an amino acid. The investigators who identified the polymorphism predicted that the resulting amino acid change would alter the secondary structure of the protein (104), and Rosenblum and colleagues (107) suggested that the alteration might affect the cellular allocation of the enzyme and mitochondrial transport of MnSOD into the mitochondrion. They further suggested that inefficient targeting of MnSOD could leave mitochondria without their full defense against superoxide radicals, which could lead to protein oxidation, as well as mitochondrial DNA mutations.

We hypothesized that the polymorphism in MnSOD would result in higher levels of ROS, and that in women whose diets were low in fruits and vegetables, this polymorphism would increase risk of breast cancer (108). Interestingly, we found this to be the case, particularly for premenopausal women (108). Those who were homozygous for the variant allele had a fourfold increase in breast cancer risk in comparison to those with who were homozygous or heterozygous for the common allele [odds ratio (OR) = 4.3, 95% CI, 1.7–10.8]. Risk was most pronounced among women below the median consumption of fruits and vegetables, and of dietary ascorbic acid and a-tocopherol, with little increased risk for those with diets rich in these foods. These findings were supported by Mitrunen et al. in their study of pre- and postmenopausal Finnish women (109).

These data support the hypothesis that MnSOD and oxidative stress play a significant role in breast cancer risk, particularly in premenopausal women. The finding that risk was greatest among women who consumed lower amounts of dietary antioxidants, and was minimal among high consumers, suggests that a diet rich in sources of antioxidants may compensate for the effects of the MnSOD polymorphism, thereby supporting public health recommendations for consumption of diets rich in fruits and vegetables as a preventive measure against cancer.

5.4. **Alcohol**

The potential effect of alcohol consumption on breast cancer risk has been widely studied in the past decades. The importance of determining such an association has been emphasized due to the major public health
problem associated with breast cancer as well as the notion that alcohol consumption is fairly common, yet modifiable (110). Based on findings from two meta-analyses, there appears to be a modest increase in breast cancer risk associated with daily consumption of alcoholic beverages (42,111). Several mechanisms for a role of alcohol consumption in breast carcinogenesis have been proposed, including increases of bioavailable estrogen and direct toxic effects associated with ethanol exposure (112,113).

Recently, efforts have been made to evaluate the role of alcohol metabolizing genes as a potential susceptibility marker for the adverse effect of alcohol consumption on breast cancer risk. The polymorphic alcohol dehydrogenase 3 (ADH3) gene is involved in the oxidation of ethanol to carcinogenic acetaldehyde and plays a rate-limiting role in the metabolic pathway for most human ethanol oxidation (114). The presence of the ADH3¹ allele, coding for the more rapid form of the ADH3 enzyme, has previously been associated with increased risk of cancer of the oral cavity and pharynx (115,116) and of hepatic cirrhosis and chronic pancreatitis (117).

In a population–based case–control study, Freudenheim et al. (118) observed an increased risk of premenopausal breast cancer among women with the highest self-reported alcohol consumption and at least one ADH3¹ allele. These findings are supported by a preliminary report (119) indicating that among women with at least one ADH3¹ allele, those who drank alcohol were at greater risk of breast cancer compared to those who abstained. Furthermore, there was also evidence for a risk elevation for women who drank and who carried the GSTM1 null genotype and at least ADH3¹ allele. Hines et al. conducted a prospective study on the effect of alcohol consumption, ADH3 genotype on plasma steroid hormone levels and breast cancer risk (120). While a modest association was seen for plasma hormones and alcohol consumption, no association was found between ADH3 genotype and breast cancer risk, regardless of alcohol consumption or menopausal status.

The genetic polymorphism in cytochrome P4502E1 (CYP2E1) may also modify the association between alcohol consumption and breast cancer risk. Ethanol-inducible CYP2E1 is an enzyme of major toxicological interest because it metabolizes a wide range of environmental compounds to reactive metabolites (121). Shields et al. (122) found a smoking-associated risk elevation to be restricted to women with the CYP2E1 variant genotype, but did not investigate associations with alcohol consumption due to small numbers in groups with varying alcohol intake and variant alleles. In fact, molecular epidemiological studies on the CYP2E1 genetic polymorphism may pose substantial methodological challenges, due to the low prevalence of the CYP2E1 variant genotype in the general population.
5.5. Reproductive Factors and Hormones

Because epidemiological studies indicate that key breast cancer risk factors are related to endogenous exposure to steroid hormones, intensive epidemiological research has been targeted at serum and urinary measurement of parent hormones and their metabolites in both case–control and cohort studies, yielding inconsistent results (123,124). However, measurement of serum levels of estrogens may reflect levels quite different from those hormone metabolites to which the target tissue is exposed. Many of the genes involved in the biosynthesis and metabolism of estrogen are polymorphic, and research attention has begun to focus on the impact of these variants on breast cancer risk. Investigating the distribution of functionally relevant genetic polymorphisms that alter the bioavailability of steroid hormones among persons with disease and persons without may provide more direct evidence for estrogen and estrogen metabolites as modifiers of human diseases, including breast cancer. A number of studies, to date, have evaluated relationships between breast cancer risk and genetic polymorphisms in CYP1A1, CYP17, CYP19, and COMT.

5.5.1. CYP1A1

Early studies of genetic polymorphisms in cytochrome P450 (CYP) 1A1 focused primarily on its role in lung cancer risk, since it activates polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, which are potent tobacco smoke carcinogens. However, CYP1A1 is also involved in the metabolism of estradiol. To date, four polymorphisms have been identified within this gene, one of which is specific to African-Americans (125). A number of studies have been conducted to evaluate associations between CYP1A1 and breast cancer risk, with mixed results (126–129). In a study with African-American and Caucasian women, Taioli and colleagues (128) noted that among African-American women, the m1 polymorphism significantly increased breast cancer risk (OR = 9.7, 95% CI: 2.0–47.9). Numbers in these stratified analyses, however, were quite small. In both the western New York study (129) and the Harvard study (129) it was found that while there were no main effects of CYP1A1 on breast cancer risk, the effects of CYP1A1 polymorphisms were modified by cigarette smoking. Women who were light smokers with variant alleles were at increased risk of breast cancer in the Ambrosone study (127), and those with variant alleles who began smoking before age 16 in the Ishibe study (129). Recently, Bailey et al. evaluated all four known CYP1A1 polymorphisms in relation to breast cancer risk, in a case–control study. None of these polymorphisms, including that specific to African-Americans, was associated with increased risk; smoking status “ever/never” did not modify risk. Furthermore, Basham et al. who combined data from their own study with those of four previously published, failed to observe an association.
between CYP1A1 genotype and breast cancer (130). No interactions were noted between genotype and alcohol or smoking habits.

5.5.2. CYP17

Another cytochrome P450 enzyme that has received much attention of late is the P45017a encoded by the CYP17 gene. This enzyme functions at key branch points in human steroidogenesis. The CYP17 polymorphism has also been evaluated by a number of groups; again, studies have had conflicting results. Feigelson and colleagues initially found that the variant allele conferred more than a twofold increase in risk among women with advanced disease (131). They also noted that late age at menarche was protective only among women who were homozygous for common allele. Several subsequent studies have not corroborated these findings (132–137), although analyses in the Nurses’ Health study (135) demonstrated that the protective effect of later age at menarche (>13 years) was only observed among women with the common allele and not among women carrying variant alleles. The recent meta-analysis involving data from 15 case–control studies (138) also showed that the variant allele in CYP17 acts as a weak modifier of breast cancer risk but is not an independent risk factor.

5.5.3. CYP19

Aromatase or estrogen synthetase, encoded by the CYP19 gene, converts androgens to estrogens, and completes the pathway for estrogen biosynthesis from cholesterol (139). The conversion of testosterone to estradiol in adipose tissue is the main source of estrogens in postmenopausal women. A polymorphic tetranucleotide repeat (TTTA)n has been identified and although relatively rare, Kristensen et al. (140) noted a significant association with breast cancer risk in carriers of the longest repeat variant (TTTA)12, designated the A1 allele, in a case–control study with 366 cases and 252 controls. The A1 allele was present in less than 2% of the control population, but in almost 4% of cases. Siegelmann-Danieli (141) also evaluated this association and found increased risk with the variant A1 allele. Baxter et al. confirmed this association in a study of breast cancer in England (142). These findings were not confirmed, however, by Haiman et al. who evaluated CYP19 polymorphisms in relation to breast cancer and estrogen levels in the Nurses’ Health study (143).

5.5.4. Catechol-O-Methyltransferase

Catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT) is one of several phase II enzymes involved in the conjugation and inactivation of catechol estrogens (144). Because there is evidence that catechol estrogens, particularly the 4-hydroxy catechol estrogen, may bind to DNA and result in DNA damage (145), the possible role of lower activity in the enzyme in relation to breast cancer risk is important. Several groups to date, all with conflicting results, have
evaluated the role of the COMT genetic polymorphism in relation to breast cancer risk. Lavigne et al. (146) found that women who were postmenopausal had a greater than twofold increase in risk with the low activity alleles, but inverse associations were noted for premenopausal women with the same genotype. Thompson et al. (147) performed similar analyses and observed that, among premenopausal women with breast cancer, those with at least one low activity allele showed significantly increased risk (OR = 2.4, CI, 1.4–4.3). In contrast to premenopausal women, there was an inverse association between low activity alleles and postmenopausal breast cancer. Mitrunen et al. (148) noted inverse associations for women with low activity COMT alleles in relation to premenopausal breast cancer risk, and elevated associations for postmenopausal women, particularly those using exogenous estrogens or early age at menarche. The authors hypothesized that there may be an opposing role of catechol estrogen metabolism in breast cancer etiology depending on the hormonal environment. Yim et al. (149) also reported that the low activity COMT allele was associated with increased risk of breast cancer among Asian women. Millikan (150) and Bergman-Jungerstom (151), however, found no associations with COMT genotypes and increased breast cancer risk for pre- or postmenopausal women. These discrepancies may be due to small sample sizes in the previous studies, or there may be biological factors that differentially impact risk associations.

5.6. Chemical Exposures

Environmental factors have been implicated in breast cancer etiology, due to the steady increase in incidence over the last decades (152), regional and international differences in incidence, and observed changes in incidence rates in migrant populations (153).

5.6.1. Organochlorines

One group of environmental exposures that has been examined in relation to breast cancer includes organochlorine compounds, such as 2,2-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-1,1-dichloroethane (DDE), the major metabolite of 2,2-bis(p-chlorophenyl)-1,1,1-trichloroethane (DDT), and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs). Evidence from laboratory studies has demonstrated a complex diversity of biological effects associated with these compounds. DDE and some PCB congeners have been associated with induction of cytochrome P450 enzymes (154,155), which may or may not be associated with estrogenic (156–158) and antiestrogenic effects (158) shown in some investigations. Studies have also noted changes in immune responses (159) and tumor promoting effects (154,160,161).

Several recent epidemiologic studies have investigated the role of DDE and PCBs in breast cancer etiology (162–175), but results from these studies are inconsistent. While results from an earlier investigation pointed to a
potential role of organochlorine exposure in breast carcinogenesis, most subsequent studies did not observe significant risk elevations among women with the highest blood or adipose levels of these compounds.

Some efforts have been made to examine the effect of environmental organochlorine exposure among susceptible subgroups, defined by reproductive or genetic factors. Moysich et al. (163) observed a significant increase in risk of breast cancer among parous postmenopausal women who never lactated with the highest serum PCB levels compared to those with the lowest levels. Organochlorine levels were also associated with age and serum lipids, but not fruit intake (176). It is possible that women who had lactated were less susceptible to the adverse effect of organochlorine exposure due to the fact that they had eliminated a substantial amount of organochlorine body burden at a biologically relevant period of time. Alternatively, lactation in itself may contribute to the terminal differentiation of the mammary epithelium, resulting in larger compartments of nonproliferating cells (2). It has also been suggested that organochlorine body burden may have been measured more accurately among women who had never breastfed an infant. Serum levels in this group may represent a more valid measure of chronic exposure, uninterrupted by elimination of these compounds through lactation. Based on the same study population, these investigators also attempted to determine whether or not the genetic polymorphism in the CYP1A1 gene affected the association between PCB exposure and risk (177).

In laboratory studies, PCBs are potent inducers of CYP1A1, a drug-metabolizing gene, involved in the activation of potentially genotoxic endogenous and exogenous substances (178,179). Their results indicated that postmenopausal women with the highly inducible CYP1A1 variant genotype and high PCB levels were at significantly increased risk for breast cancer compared to women with the CYP1A1 wild genotype and lower PCB levels. A potential mechanism for this finding relates to the PCB mediated enhanced induction of polymorphic CYP1A1, leading to increased activation of environmental carcinogens and subsequently resulting in the production of reactive intermediates and DNA damage. Thus, by inducing CYP1A1, PCBs, and other inducers can trigger the activation of xenobiotics, such as those found in tobacco, into mutagenic compounds.

5.6.2. Cigarette Smoking and Breast Cancer

Environmental contaminants other than organochlorines could also be associated with breast cancer risk, including aryl and heterocyclic aromatic amines, nitro- and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, and N-nitroso compounds, all of which are known mammary mutagens and carcinogens. In addition to their presence in an industrialized environment, these carcinogens are present in cigarette smoke. Aromatic amines form DNA adducts in cultured human epithelial cells (180), and cause unscheduled DNA
synthesis (180). In vivo activated aromatic amine metabolites have been shown to cause DNA damage in rodents (181,182) to transform mouse mammary glands (183), and to induce rodent mammary tumors (184,185). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons are also likely human breast carcinogens. The PAHs benzo(a)pyrene and 7,12-dimethylbenz(a)anthracene induce mammary tumors in rodents (186,187) and cause transformation in human breast epithelial cell lines in vitro (188).

The mutational spectrum of the p53 tumor suppressor gene also supports a role for chemical carcinogens in breast cancer risk. While the pattern of p53 mutations in breast cancer differs from the fingerprint mutations associated with smoking in lung cancer, they occur on sites that are suggestive of an unknown, environmental exposure (189,190). Furthermore, it is clear that chemical carcinogens reach the breast in laboratory animals and humans, and because they are lipophilic, they are stored in breast adipose tissue (191,192). Ductal epithelial cells are directly exposed to nicotine (193) and mutagenic compounds (194). Heterocyclic amines administered to nursing rat dams were found at high levels in the breast tissue, and were excreted in the milk (195). Three studies have identified DNA adducts in normal breast tissue from women with and without breast cancer (66, 196–199), some of which were putatively related to tobacco smoking. Therefore, the breast is certainly exposed to chemical carcinogens, and can be susceptible to the carcinogenic process.

If these compounds are human mammary carcinogens, one would expect to see an association between smoking and breast cancer risk. However, in the majority of epidemiological studies, an association between smoking and breast cancer risk has not been found (200–202). However, most previous studies combined passive smokers with non-smokers in the reference category. Sidestream smoke contains higher levels of aromatic amines than mainstream smoke, as much as 10 mg of aniline per cigarette, as well as many other aromatic amines [e.g., multiple isomers of toluidine, naphthylamine and aminobiphenyl (ABP)]. Thus, passive smoke exposure may result in different circulating levels of carcinogens than active smoking. The presence of passive smokers in the referent ‘non-smoking’ category would certainly dilute risk estimates. Studies that confined the referent group to those never exposed to passive smoke all found increased breast cancer risk for active and passive smokers (203–208). Using data from the Nurses’ Health study, however, Egan et al. did not find a positive association between passive smoking and breast cancer risk, but a small increase in risk was noted for smoking initiated at young ages (<17 years old) (201).

It has been suggested that some components of tobacco smoke may have antiestrogenic effects (209,210). For example, cigarette smoking induces CYP1A2, which decreases the level of circulating estradiol. It is possible that genetic variability in metabolism of chemical carcinogens may make some women more susceptible to their carcinogenic effects from
ubiquitous exposure, dietary intake, and exposure through active and passive cigarette smoke. Other women may be more affected by the putative antiestrogenic effect of tobacco smoke. When these subgroups are grouped together, however, as in population-based studies, the effects of a particular exposure may not be observable above the background of other exposures and susceptibilities. In this case, the effects may be diluted and thus, not statistically significant. Several molecular epidemiological studies have been conducted to ascertain possible associations between smoking and breast cancer risk among women likely to be susceptible to their carcinogenic effects. By evaluating genetic polymorphisms for enzymes involved in the metabolism of classes of chemical carcinogens, subgroups of the population who may be susceptible to tobacco smoke carcinogens may be identified.

**Aromatic Amine Metabolism:** Aromatic amines are likely to be first metabolized in the liver via two competing pathways. They may be either activated by CYP1A2, or detoxified through N-acetylation by NAT2. We hypothesized that among women who had inherited mutations NAT2 encoding a less efficient form of the enzyme and were thus, ‘slow acetylators’; aromatic amines would be more likely to be activated by CYP1A2. In this scenario, activated hydroxylamines could be further activated either in the liver or in the breast, DNA adducts could form, and breast cancer could result. In a study of several hundred pre- and postmenopausal women in western New York (70), we found that neither smoking nor the slow NAT2 genotype impacted breast cancer risk. However, postmenopausal women who had slow NAT2 and smoked were at dose-dependent, increased risk. This hypothesis was subsequently explored by other groups, with mixed results (207,211,212).

**Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbon Metabolism:** PAHs are metabolized by a complex of phase I and phase II enzymes. Those studied in relation to smoking and breast cancer include CYP1A1 and glutathione S-transferase M1 (GSTM1). CYP1A1 activates PAHs, and as mentioned previously, Ambrosone et al. found that the exon 7 polymorphism (m2) increased risk among postmenopausal women who were light smokers. This finding was supported by data from the Nurses’ Health study (m1 and m2) (129), but Bailey and colleagues found no associations with any of the polymorphisms (m1–m4) (125). Earlier, Taioli et al. (128) evaluated CYP1A1 polymorphisms (m1–m3) among Caucasians and African-Americans, and found that the m1 allele increased risk among African-American women. These data were not presented in relation to smoking, however.

Phase II metabolism includes detoxification of reactive metabolites by conjugation with glutathione, which is catalyzed by glutathione S-transferases. GSTM1 has a deletion that is present in approximately 50% of Caucasian populations, resulting in loss of the enzyme. A number of groups have evaluated the possible association of the GSTM1 polymorphism
with breast cancer risk. For the most part, studies have found no association between the null allele and breast cancer regardless of smoking status (125,127,213–217). Helzlsouer et al., however, reported an increased risk of postmenopausal breast cancer associated with GSTM1 deletion (218). This association was not modified by exposure to tobacco smoke.

6. FUTURE DIRECTIONS

While molecular epidemiology studies hold the promise of elucidating mechanisms behind breast cancer risk factors, it is still subject to limitations of traditional epidemiological studies. Much of the molecular epidemiology literature is rife with inconsistencies, as described in this chapter. This is likely due to the small sample sizes of the studies, which result in low power to detect associations. A recent article described the sobering numbers of participants required to detect stable estimates from epidemiological studies of gene–environment interactions (219).

Additionally, examining one gene at a time in relation to breast cancer risk is likely too simplistic. Future studies should consider the roles of other genes involved in metabolic pathways and examine several genes at a time in relation to cancer risk (220). Multigenic studies have been conducted recently with suggestive findings. Feigelson et al. examined CYP17 and 17β-HSD in combination, in relation to breast cancer risk in a large, multi-ethnic population. They demonstrated an increased risk from high-risk alleles limited to advanced stage breast cancer and postulated that these tumors may be more aggressive as a result of increased estrogenic exposure (221). Huang et al. also considered the effect of several estrogen-metabolizing genes involved at different points within the pathway, including CYP17, CYP1A1, and COMT (222). A trend in increasing risk was observed with increasing number of at risk genotypes. This effect was especially pronounced in women with prolonged estrogen exposure, providing further support of the possibility that breast cancer can be initiated by estrogen exposure and is influenced by genotypes. Eventually, techniques that provide simultaneous assessment of tens-to-hundreds-to-thousands of genes at a time will be useful in studies of cancer. However, it is unrealistic to anticipate the incorporation of a large number of genes into current molecular epidemiological practice, since proper statistical methods are not in place.

7. CONCLUSION

It is becoming quite clear that the etiology of human breast cancer is exceedingly complex, with probable multiple factors involved in its etiology. Molecular epidemiology and the use of markers of susceptibility, internal
dose, and early effects may elucidate not only mechanisms, but also clarify relationships between risk factors and disease among subsets of the population who are specifically at risk. For the public, however, lifestyle modification to maintain normal weight, eat a diet high in fruits and vegetables, and refraining from tobacco use and alcohol consumption, should be advised for all women, regardless of genetic makeup.

REFERENCES


178. Drahushuk AT, Choy CO, Kumar S, McReynolds JH, Olson JR. Modulation of cytochrome P450 by 5,5’-bis-trifluoromethyl-2,2’-dichlorobiphenyl, a unique environmental contaminant. Toxicology 1997; 120:197–205.


1. INTRODUCTION

Gynecological malignancies can result in significant morbidity and mortality. In the United States alone, it is estimated that about 24,000 women will die from cancers of the ovary, endometrium, and cervix annually (1). Women diagnosed with ovarian cancer have the highest mortality, when compared to those with endometrial or cervical cancer. This difference in mortality for ovarian cancer has been attributed to the delay in the diagnoses due to a lack of symptoms in early stage disease, and the fact that we do not have a curative treatment for advanced stage disease (2). The 5-year survival rate for localized disease is 95% (3). Therefore, we could potentially decrease the overall mortality if we are able to detect ovarian cancer at an earlier stage. This has been the focus of current research, along with the search for effective treatment and prevention strategies. In the case of endometrial cancer the issues are different. Despite being detected at an early stage, due to symptoms such as vaginal bleeding, the 5-year survival rates for local-regional disease are still lower than that for breast cancer.
suggesting a need for better treatments. In comparison with ovarian and endometrial cancer, major advances have been made in cervical cancer. High-risk human papilloma viruses (HPVs) have been identified as the primary etiologic factor and early detection testing with regular pap smears is available the possibility of primary prevention with vaccines exist (4). In addition, a current challenge is identifying women infected with HPV who will go on refer sheet attached to develop cervical cancer. At any one time, up to 6 million women in the United States alone are thought to have contracted HPV (5). Additional challenges include developing effective treatments for HPV, behavioral programs, and effective vaccines to decrease the rates of high-risk HPV infection.

The focus of this chapter is to review the risk and susceptibility factors associated with ovarian, endometrial, and cervical cancer. Knowledge of these factors, help us gain a better understanding of the various carcinogenesis pathways and may help us identify susceptible individuals in whom preventive measures can potentially be implemented (Fig. 1).

2. OVARIAN CANCER
2.1. Overview

During the last three decades, there has been little change in the incidence of ovarian cancer in North America and Europe (the high-risk countries). However, a steady increase in the incidence has been observed in developing countries. This may reflect a true increase in incidence or an increase in reporting or both. Japan has always been classified along developing countries as a low-risk country. Up to a fourfold difference in the risk of ovarian cancer has been reported between the high- and low-risk countries (6).

![Risk and Susceptibility Factors Diagram](Figure 1) The influence of risk and susceptibility factors on the carcinogenesis pathway. Source: Adapted from Schulte and Perera 1993.
In the United States, the incidence rate of ovarian cancer in the general population is 14 per 100,000 persons and the mortality rate is 9 per 100,000 persons (3). Incidence rates and mortality rates have decreased over time primarily among women less than 65 years of age. The decrease in mortality varies according to race and ethnicity; the largest decline was seen among American Indians (3.3%), Blacks (1.7%), and Asians (1.6%) and the smallest decrease among the White non-Hispanics (0.6%). A recent study demonstrated that migrants take on the risk of their adoptive country after successive generations suggesting environmental and lifestyle factors, such as use of the oral contraceptive pill (7).

Survival varies by age and stage of disease at diagnosis. The 5-year survival for ovarian cancer, irrespective of stage is 50% (3). It is 95% for localized disease, 79% for regional disease, and 28% for distant disease (3). The 5-year survival of women under 65 was 64% and for 65 years and over 30% (3).

2.2. Histological Types

Epithelial ovarian tumors are the most common type accounting for between 80% and 90% of neoplasms, and the remaining are either sex-cord stromal or germ cell tumors (8). Approximately 10–20% of epithelial carcinomas that are primarily serous can be classified as borderline tumors, which implies that they are of low malignant potential (2). Ovarian cancer is primarily a disease of peri- and postmenopausal women, with 80–90% occurring after the age of 40 (3). The peak incidence of epithelial ovarian cancer is 63 years of age, whereas germ cell tumors commonly occur in younger patients (2).

2.3. Etiology

The etiology of ovarian cancer is poorly understood. From epidemiological studies it is evident that multiple pathways are involved, incorporating genetic, hormonal, and environmental factors. Three major theories or models of carcinogenesis have been suggested. The first was Fathalla’s theory of “incessant ovulation” (9). This theory suggests that repeated ovulation traumatizes the ovarian epithelium, increasing the likelihood of errors occurring during DNA repair and the exposure of the epithelial cells to the estrogen-rich follicular fluid that is present during ovulation, thereby making the cells within the ovary more susceptible to malignant change.

Cramer and Welch proposed a second theory related to persistent elevation of gonadotropins (10). From their observations that the ovarian epithelium repeatedly invaginates throughout life to form clefts and inclusion cysts, they proposed a theory that under excessive stimulation by gonadotropins (FSH and LH), estrogen and its precursors, the ovarian epithelium may undergo malignant transformation.
Risch suggested that ovarian cancer may be increased by factors associated with excess androgenic stimulation of ovarian epithelial cells, and may be decreased by factors related to greater progesterone stimulation (11).

2.4. Risk and Susceptibility Factors

2.4.1. Inherited Factors

Family History: Approximately 5–10% of women diagnosed with ovarian cancer report a positive family history (12). Depending on the number of affected relatives on either the maternal and paternal side, and a family history of breast cancer below the age of 50, the relative risk of developing ovarian cancer can range anywhere between 2 and 18 times the average population risk (13). A case–control study by Tavani et al. found that women with both a positive family history and other known risk factors had three and a half times the risk of developing ovarian cancer compared to women without a family history or any other risk factors (14).

In 1990, Lynch et al. reported three separate hereditary ovarian cancer syndromes: site-specific ovarian cancer; hereditary ovarian and breast cancer; and Lynch type II or hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), (in which case there is an increased risk of ovarian, colorectal, endometrial, and/or genitourinary cancers) (15–18). All three syndromes are associated with an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance with variable penetrance and early onset cancer (17,19,20). This means that each first-degree relative of an individual with a mutation has a 50% chance of inheriting it. Clues in a family history to suggest such a strong hereditary predisposition include: multiple cancers occurring in close relatives over multiple generations, early age of onset of cancer (i.e., before 40 or 50 years), multiple cancers occurring in a single individual and a pattern consistent with an autosomal dominant inheritance or a familial association with tumors of other organs, particularly the breast, colon, and uterus.

Germline Mutations: Specific mutations in two known cancer susceptibility genes, BRCA1 and BRCA2 can explain some of the “cancer families” with breast and ovarian cancer. They are both tumor suppressor genes and may also be involved in DNA repair (21–23). The BRCA1 gene was cloned in 1994 and codes for a protein of 1863 amino acids (24,25) whereas the BRCA2 gene was identified in 1995, is located on the 13q12–13, and codes for a protein twice its size (26). Both these proteins are expressed in large quantities in the breast and ovaries (24,25). Eighty percent of the known mutations are due to the insertion or deletion of bases in the coding sequence (frame shifts) or nonsense mutations that convert the to a stop codon and results in the truncation of the protein (27). All of the breast-ovarian cancer families cannot be explained by these two mutations, it is estimated that between 10% and 20% of cancer families do not have a
BRCA1 or 2 mutations suggesting the possibility of further mutations in these genes or unidentified genes (28).

The probability that a woman with ovarian cancer is a mutation carrier has been shown to vary by the stringency of family history criteria. Prevalence rises with increasing number of ovarian cancer families and the early onset of breast cancer. The frequency of BRCA1 mutations in breast/ovarian cancer families range from 30% to 81%, and the frequency of a BRCA2 mutation ranges from 7% to 14% (19,29–34). When BRCA1 mutation testing was done in women with ovarian cancer for whom there was no information on family history, only 5% of women were found to be mutation carriers (35–38). In the general population between 0.04% and 0.20% of individuals have been estimated to be BRCA1 mutation carriers (39).

The estimated lifetime risk for women with a BRCA1 mutation of ovarian cancer varies from 16–63% by the age of 70, to 20–30% for BRCA2 mutation carriers (19,40–43). The range of estimates reflects variation in penetrance, due to the selection of families into the studies, the analysis of specific mutations or other unknown genetic or environmental modifying factors.

BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations also are associated with an increased risk of other malignancies. Individuals from high-risk families with BRCA1 mutations have up to 85% cumulative risk for breast cancer by age 70, while the specific risk varies by mutation and other modifying factors, there is a 6% risk for colon and prostate cancer (39,44). The estimated risk of breast cancer in BRCA2 mutation carriers is 85% (44). The risk of other cancers associated with BRCA2 include a 6–14% risk in prostate cancer and gall bladder and bile duct cancer as well as a threefold increase in pancreatic cancer and an increase in stomach cancer and malignant melanoma (44).

Certain ethnic populations, for example, the Ashkenazi Jews and the Icelandic population, have specific founder mutations that account for most of the mutations identified on the BRCA1 and BRCA2 genes. These mutations occur at a higher than average frequency than in a population of unrelated families within a certain ethnic or racial group. Specifically, three mutations, two in the BRCA1 gene (185delAG and 5382 insC) and one in the BRCA2 gene (6174delT) 185 have been found in the Ashkenazi Jewish population (43,45–47). The combined frequency of these three mutations among 5318 Ashkenazi Jewish volunteers from the Washington, DC area, (both male and female) was 2.3% (95% CI 1.9–2.7). The individual prevalences were 0.8% (185delAG), 0.4% (5382insC), and 1.2% (6174delT). The probability of an Ashkenazi Jewish women in the study of having one of the three specific mutations was higher if they were less than 50 years of age, at the time of breast cancer diagnosis (14%) or had at least one first-degree relative with ovarian or breast cancer (5.1%). In Iceland, the 999del5 BRCA1 mutation has been described and the 5382insC in the Eastern European population (48–50).
HNPCC contributes to approximately 1–2% of all hereditary ovarian cancers. An individual with HNPCC has a 9–12% lifetime risk of developing ovarian cancer (51,52). Cancer susceptibility genes in the form of DNA repair genes (hMSH2, hMLH1, PMS1, PMS2, hMSH6) have also been identified with the respect to the HNPCC syndrome (53–55). The HNPCC genes will be discussed further in the section on endometrial cancer.

**Genetic Polymorphisms:** The role of other inherited factors such as low penetrant mutations that commonly occur in the population are unclear. Polymorphisms are genetic mutations occurring with a frequency of >1% in the general population. These genetic polymorphisms may code for enzymes involved in the metabolism or detoxification of carcinogens or in DNA repair. In conjunction with particular exposures they may be associated with either an increase or decrease an individual’s risk of particular cancers. Given that the both polymorphisms and exposures are prevalent in the population, the attributable risk of such a gene environment association with respect to the development of ovarian cancer could be high. However, because ovarian cancer is rare, studies of these associations are challenging due to the need for large sample sizes. Examples of such genetic polymorphisms relevant to ovarian cancer include microsomal epoxide hyrolase and galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase (GALT).

Epoxide hydrolases (EPHX) play an important role in both the activation and detoxification of exogenous chemicals such as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, a carcinogen found in cigarette smoke. Microsomal epoxide hydrolase is one of many enzymes that are part of the epoxide hydrolase family and is strongly expressed in the human ovary (56). A number of genetic polymorphisms coding for the EPHX gene have been described. In 1994, Hassett et al. identified the Tyr113His polymorphism on the EPHX gene that is the result of a substitution of Histidine for Tyrosine at codon 113. Further, a 40% decrease in EPHX activity has been demonstrated in vitro DNA expression studies for the His113His allelic variant compared to the Tyr113His variant (57). Consistent with these laboratory findings, a greater than twofold increase in the risk of ovarian cancer was observed in a case–control study among women who were homozygous for this polymorphism (Tyr113Tyr) compared to those who were homozygous or heterozygous (56). A limitation of the study was the lack of information on other risk factors. In order to confirm these results further replication is required.

A number of other polymorphisms in genes involved in hormone biosynthesis and detoxification pathways have also been examined. CYP17 and COMT are examples of two that code for enzymes that are part of the hormone biosynthesis pathway (59, 59a, Goodman et al., 2001,). Polymorphisms of the androgen receptor (AR) gene and progesterone receptor (PR) gene have also been studied (59b). Results from these studies have been inconsistent so far. No association has been observed
between polymorphisms of the glutathione S-transferases (GSTM1 and GSTT1), which encode for enzymes that are responsible for the detoxification of a large number of carcinogens in the liver (Coughlin SS et al., 2002).

2.4.2. Hormonal Factors

Hormones, both endogenous and exogenous have been thought to play an important role in the etiology of ovarian cancer.

**Endogenous:** *Menstrual factors:* Early age at menarche and late age of menopause have not been consistently associated with an increased risk of ovarian cancer, as one might have expected based on Fathalla’s theory of incessant ovulation. Some studies have suggested a modest increase in risk of 10–20% in women who began to menstruate at less than or equal to 12 years of age compared to women greater than 15 years old (61,62). Similarly late age of menopause has been associated with anywhere between 1.4 and 4.6 times the risk of ovarian cancer (62–68) while others have reported no association (69,70).

*Serum levels:* Consistent with Risch’s androgen hypothesis theory, serum androgen levels have been shown to be potential predictors of increased ovarian cancer risk (71). In a nested case–control study after an average follow up time of 8 years mean levels of androstenedione and dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEAS) were significantly higher among cases than controls ($p$ trend = 0.008, and 0.11, respectively). Increasing levels of androstenedione were associated with increasing risk. Whereas decreasing levels of gonadotropin, in particular FSH was lower among cases than controls ($p$ for trend = 0.02). A similar increase in risk was not reported when urinary androgen levels were measured (72). Along with hormones, growth factors, such as insulin are believed to be important in cancer by regulating cell proliferation, differentiation, and apoptosis. In a pooled case control analysis of 3 prospective studies there was no overall association between insulin growth factor (IGF) binding proteins 1 and 2 (Lukanova et al., 2003). However, a protective effect was observed in women diagnosed before the age of 55 for both binding proteins. However, the odds ratios were not statistically significant.

**Exogenous:** *Oral contraceptive pill (OCP):* The complex numerical instructions that may predispose to ovarian cancer require further investigation. Numerous cohort and case–control studies have demonstrated a 40–50% reduction in the risk of ovarian cancer in women taking the combined oral contraceptive pill for at least 5 years (62,69,73–78). Biologically, it has been hypothesized that by inducing ovarian suppression the oral contraceptives decreases the degree of trauma to the ovary and thereby an
individual’s risk of ovarian cancer (9,79,80). In some studies the protective association increased further with longer duration of use for up to 10 years (77,78,81–83) and continued for up to 15 years after cessation of use (69,82,84,85). A 40% reduction in mortality from ovarian cancer was also observed by Beral et al. among women who had ever used the OCP compared to those who had not (relative risk, 0.6; 95% CI, 0.3, 1.0) (77). A protective association was also observed in women with epithelial borderline tumors but the sample size was small (75,79,86).

The results have been mixed in BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers (87,88). Narod et al. in a family study, reported a similar risk reduction of ovarian cancer among mutation carriers compared to non mutation carriers in a population-based case–control study conducted in Israel (88). However, Modan et al. did not observe a risk reduction associated with OCP use among mutation carriers. Risk was reduced with increasing parity similar to what has been observed in the general population of women similar risk (87).

**Hormone replacement therapy (HRT):** Several studies have observed a small increase in the risk of ovarian cancer associated with HRT. The American Cancer Society’s Cancer Prevention Study II, a prospective cohort study of 211,581 postmenopausal women observed a 20% increase in mortality from ovarian cancer among women who gave a history of HRT use compared to those who did not (89). This risk was higher among current users (relative risk = 1.51; 95% CI 1.16, 1.96) and those who used estrogen replacement therapy (ERT) for 10 or more years (relative risk = 2.20; 95% CI 1.53, 3.17). After 15 years of cessation of use women were no longer at risk. Similar results were observed in a large case control study (Riman et al., 2002). They observed that the risk of invasive epithelial ovarian cancer was increased among women who use regimens that sequentially added progestins and not regimens in which progestins were continually added. In a prospective cohort study only women who used estrogen only replacements were at significantly increased risk of ovarian cancer (R.R. 1.6, 95% CI 1.2, 2.0). The risk increase with increasing duration of use. An increase in risk was not observed in women who used short term estrogen and progestin replacement therapy (89a). Other studies have reported no association (60,90) or a modest association between estrogen replacement therapy use and the risk of ovarian cancer (62,75,91–93).

### 2.4.3. Reproductive Factors

**Pregnancy:** A large number of studies have focused on the association between reproductive factors and the risk of ovarian cancer. Women who develop ovarian cancer are significantly more likely to be nulliparous or to have fewer pregnancies. Pregnancy has been consistently shown to be associated with a decreased risk of ovarian cancer by between 10% and 50% (61,62,65,74,83,94–97). The risk reduction increases with increasing number of births. In a combined analysis of 12 U.S. case–control...
studies, a 40% reduction in risk was found for the first full term pregnancy, and a 14% reduction for each subsequent birth when compared to nulliparous women (69). The number of years since last pregnancy has also been associated with an increased risk of ovarian cancer (98). A twofold increase in risk was observed among women who had been pregnant greater than or equal to 25 years ago (99). A similar risk reduction has also been reported in BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers (87). This protective association was not seen for mucinous tumors (93). The decreased risk of ovarian cancer associated with multiparity, pregnancy, and lactation is consistent with Fathalla’s theory of incessant ovulation.

Tubal ligation has been associated with a decreased risk of ovarian cancer by between 10% and 40% and persists up to 25 years after surgery (73,100–102). It has been hypothesized that tubal ligation interrupts utero-ovarian blood flow decreasing the number of ovulations (10,69,100). Intrauterine devices (IUD) and the barrier method have all been shown to decrease the risk of ovarian cancer by 10–20% (73). It has been suggested that these methods of contraception may protect the ovaries from toxins reaching the ovaries (103,104).

Lactation has also been shown to be protective resulting in a 10–30% reduction in the risk of ovarian cancer (10,61,62,80,83,105,106). Whittemore et al. reported that ovarian cancer risk decreases almost 1% for each month of lactation (69). The protective association was strongest the months immediately following the birth.

Infertility: It is unclear whether infertility or medications used to treat infertility are risk factors for ovarian cancer. One of the difficulties in assessing the impact of infertility is separating the effect of infertility or its treatment from that of nulliparity by choice. Whittemore et al. in a collaborative analysis of 12 case–control studies used information on length of longest pregnancy attempt and total duration of unprotected intercourse as surrogate measurements for infertility along with information on parity, separating women who never had children, women who conceived but did not carry to term and those who had children. A 60% increase in the risk of ovarian cancer was reported among women who had greater than or equal to 15 years of unprotected intercourse compared to less than 2 years. Among studies having information on physician diagnosis of infertility and type of infertility, women that had an ovulatory abnormality had a twofold increase in risk compared to women with no physician diagnosed infertility (69). A 60% increase in the risk of ovarian cancer among a cohort of 2496 infertile Israeli women was observed compared to the general population rates (107). However, this increase could be partially explained by the increase in positive family history of ovarian cancer among the cohort compared to the general population.

Controversy has been raised regarding the impact of fertility drugs. Whittemore et al. reported almost a threefold increase in the risk of invasive
epithelial ovarian cancer in women taking fertility drugs (OR = 2.8, 95% CI 1.3, 6.1) (69). This risk was significantly greater among nulliparous women and in women with borderline tumors. Parity was protective, in that infertile women who used fertility drugs and subsequently became pregnant did not have a significantly increased risk of ovarian cancer. This finding is consistent with other studies (69,75,108). A large case-cohort study that found infertile women had an increased risk of developing both invasive epithelial carcinoma significant (relative risk = 1.5; 95% CI 0.4, 3.7) and borderline tumors (relative risk = 3.3; 95% CI 1.1, 7.8) compared to the general population. Though, in the case of invasive epithelial tumors this association was not statistically significant. This study had good detail with regard to type of infertility and drugs used to treat it, with the majority of women using Clomiphene as the ovulation induction agent (109). These results are consistent with other studies that have shown an association between fertility drug use and the risk of borderline ovarian cancers (108). In a cohort of of women from in vitro fertilisation (IVF) clinics in Australia, Venn et al. found no increase in the risk of ovarian cancer among women who had undergone treatment (110).

Hysterectomy without oophorectomy has been associated with a 10–60% decrease in the risk of ovarian cancer (69,101). This risk attenuates with time since hysterectomy. The risk reduction may be greater in women who have hysterectomies before the age of 40 (69). Proposed mechanisms for this risk reduction include a decrease in androstendione which has been observed in women who have had hysterectomy and would be consistent with Risch’s hypothesis of androgen excess and a decreased exposure of the ovaries to external toxins (111,112).

2.4.4. Lifestyle Factors

Diet: The majority of dietary studies have been case-control studies and the results have been inconsistent. Despite an observed association between milk consumption and the risk of ovarian cancer and biological evidence that galactose is toxic to the oocytes, a positive association was not found between the consumption of lactose or free galactose and the risk of ovarian cancer (83,113–115). Associations between enzymes involved in the metabolism of galactose and the risk of ovarian cancer have also been inconsistent. Cramer et al. found the mean activity of erythrocyte galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase, a key enzyme in galactose metabolism, to be lower among cases who had a family history of ovarian cancer compared to controls, however, these findings were not replicated by Herrington et al. (115,116). A number of studies have reported an increased risk of ovarian cancer due to the intake of saturated fats (68,83) and a protective association between the intake of green leafy vegetables, total dietary fiber, fiber from vegetables, crude fiber, carotenoids, and carrots (83,117–122). Low serum levels of vitamin A and selenium among cases compared to controls
has been observed but no differences in the levels of total carotenoids and vitamin E were reported (123–125).

A few prospective studies have also examined the association between dietary intake or serum micronutrients and the risk of ovarian cancer. Kushi et al. using information from a dietary questionnaire demonstrated an increasing risk of ovarian cancer with increasing intake of lactose ($p$ trend $= 0.12$) and cholesterol ($p$ trend $= 0.06$). Total vegetable intake was inversely associated with risk of ovarian cancer ($p$ trend $= 0.21$) in particular green leafy vegetables ($P$ trend $= 0.010$) (117). Knekt et al. found no association between prediagnostic alpha-tocopherol levels and the risk of gynecological cancers (126). These results were similar to those seen in case–control studies. In another prospective study, Helzlsouer et al. examined the association between serum micronutrients and the risk of ovarian cancer. A protective association was only observed between serum selenium and the risk of ovarian cancer ($p$ trend $= 0.02$) (127). The findings on selenium were not replicated in a prospective study by Garland et al. (128). An incidental finding of the study by Helzlsouer et al. (127) was an increase in the risk of ovarian cancer in women with cholesterol levels greater than 200 mg/dL that has also been reported by Kushi et al. (117) but not by Hiatt and Fireman (129).

**Weight:** The available studies suggest that distribution of body fat may be a more important risk factor than absolute weight. Further studies are needed to confirm this. Mink et al., in a prospective study, observed almost a two fold increase in the incidence of ovarian cancer among women who had the greatest waist to hip ratio (>0.89) (130). A similar association was not seen between BMI and ovarian cancer. The results of other studies with respect to BMI have been mixed (70,131,132). In a nested case–control study in England, women with ovarian cancer were found to have gained significantly more weight during their first year of life than controls (133). In a prospective study of more than 900,000 U.S. adults, women with a BMI of 35.0 were at a greater risk of dying from ovarian cancer (R.R. 1.51, 95% CI 1.12, 2.02) (Calle et al., 2003).

**Physical Activity:** Only a few studies have specifically examined the association between physical activity and the risk of ovarian cancer and their results have been conflicting. In a prospective study of 31,396 women, Mink et al. reported a twofold increase in the risk of ovarian cancer in post-menopausal women who currently were undertaking vigorous physical activity compared to those who took part in low or no physical activity. This risk was greatest among women who took part in vigorous physical activity more than four times per week (relative risk $= 2.52$, 95% CI 1.01, 6.8) (130). Whereas Couttreau et al. in a case–control study, found high levels of lifetime leisure-time physical activity to be protective. A 27% reduction in risk was observed among women in the highest category of lifetime leisure physical activity compared with those in the lowest level (134). The degree of
reduction correlated with the number of hours of leisure physical activity. It is difficult to explain the conflicting results of these two studies even after taking into consideration the limitations of their respective study designs. Possible explanations include the potential difference in risk between pre and post-menopausal women and current and lifetime physical activity. In the study by Mink et al. all women were between 55 and 69, whereas in Coutttreau’s study the mean age in the high physical activity group was 47 years (130,134). Two other studies, one retrospectively comparing the incidence of reproductive cancers among former college nonathletes compared to athletes, and the other comparing physical education teachers and language teachers with respect to physical activity, reported opposite results (135,136). In terms of etiology, it is easier to explain why physical activity may be protective rather than associated with an increased risk of ovarian cancer, as continuous vigorous activity can delay menarche and cause ammenorrhea, and anovulatory cycles in young women, as well alterations in hormonal and metabolic pathways (137–144).

**Medications:** A number of case–control studies have examined the association between over-the-counter analgesics and the risk of ovarian cancer, initially based on the protective association seen with colorectal cancer. Cramer et al. looked at aspirin, ibuprofen, paracetamol, and prescribed analgesics in a case–control study (145). A 48% decrease in the risk of ovarian cancer was observed among those women who took paracetamol compared to those who did not. Paracetamol is the same medication as acetaminophen. This risk decreased further with frequency and duration of use. Whereas Rosenberg et al. reported a 20% decrease in the risk of ovarian cancer among women who took nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDS) 1 day per week for at least 6 months that began a year before hospital admission compared with those who did not take NSAIDS (146). A further reduction up to 50% was found with increasing frequency of use. They did not observe a decrease in risk in those women taking acetaminophen. In another case–control study by Moysich et al. aspirin users were not at a reduced risk but women who took acetaminophen were (43%) (147). A decrease in risk was seen with increasing frequency and duration of use. In a prospective study looking at mortality, a 45% decrease in the death rate from ovarian cancer was observed among current paracetamol users compared to nonusers. The risk was not lowered with increased frequency of use (148). The biological mechanism under lying this decrease in risk seen with acetaminophen is unknown, however, Cramer et al. did demonstrate lower gonadotropin and estradiol levels in women taking acetaminophen compared to women taking no drugs or other analgesics (149).

The use of psychotropic medications was found to increase the risk of ovarian cancer in three case–control studies done in the North Eastern part of the United States. It is hypothesized that these medications may increase
the risk of ovarian cancer by inducing gonadotropin secretion (150). Self-reported use of psychotropic medications, including amphetamines, sedatives, antidepressants, and antipsychotics for 6 months or longer was associated with between a 1.6 and twofold increase in the risk of invasive ovarian cancer compared to nonusers (150,151). The risk was greater with longer duration of use.

**Other Exposures:** Talc powder, has been studied as a potential risk factor for ovarian cancer for almost 20 years. It was originally examined because of its chemical similarity to the rod like asbestoses that has been shown to be associated with ovarian cancer in the occupational setting (152–155). Talc is thought to cause damage to the ovary by retrograde entry through fallopian tubes. When 14 case–control studies were combined that included eight studies with more than 200 cases, women who used talc in the genital area had a small excess risk compared to those who did not use talc (OR = 1.36; 95% CI 1.24, 1.49) (156). No dose response was seen. However, in a prospective study of 78,630 women no association was seen for talc (relative risk = 1.09; 95% CI = 0.86, 1.37) (152). A modest association was observed among women who used talc and had invasive serous carcinoma (relative risk = 1.40; 95% CI 1.02, 1.91). However, there were certain limitations to the study including no information on duration of use and a short follow-up of 9 years. A case–control study by Cramer et al. also suggested that women might be at an increased risk of ovarian cancer if the male partner used talc on their genital area (156). In the same study, genital talc use that began after a first pregnancy appeared to be associated with lower risk compared to use, which began before the first pregnancy. In summary, further prospective studies are needed to address possible recall or selection bias and to help decide whether perineal talc is in fact a risk factor for ovarian cancer.

Weak associations have been reported between tobacco smoke, radiation exposure, mumps virus, caffeine, hair dye and the development of ovarian cancer (86,158–160).

2.4.5. Diseases Associated with Ovarian Cancer

**Polycystic Ovarian Disease and Endometriosis:** The data relating polycystic ovarian disease (PCOD) to ovarian cancer are conflicting. Based on Fathalla’s hypothesis one may expect women with polycystic ovarian disease to have a lower risk of ovarian cancer due to decrease ovulation whereas based on Risch’s or Cramer and Welch’s theories women may have a higher risk due to endogenous hormone profiles. The increased use of fertility drugs among women with PCOD may also affect risk further. From a population-based case–control study a diagnosis of PCOD was associated with greater than a twofold increase in the risk of ovarian cancer (OR = 2.5, 95% CI 1.1, 5.9) (161). Data from a Mayo Clinic cohort study did not demonstrated a similar association (162). Further studies are required.
An increased risk of ovarian cancer has also been observed in women with a history of endometriosis. Brinton et al. examined the records of 20,686 women who were hospitalized for endometriosis and found almost a twofold increase in the risk of ovarian cancer compared to the general population (SIR = 1.9, 95% CI 1.3, 2.8) (163).

2.5. Biomarkers of Early Detection

The search for effective screening marker(s) for ovarian cancer is ongoing. An ideal screening test should have a high sensitivity, that is the ability to detect true positives, and a high specificity, that is a low number of false positives, to avoid unnecessary testing and anxiety, particularly when the prevalence of the disease is low. The positive predictive value (the probability that a positive test indicates the presence of disease) is influenced by the specificity of the test and the prevalence of the disease in the screened population. One method of increasing the positive predictive value of the test is to target high-risk groups, who have higher prevalence rather than the general population. For this to be effective at a population level, the factors used to select the high-risk groups should capture most of the women who have disease. Qualities of a good marker of early detection include the ease at which it can be done, cost effectiveness, and ultimately, the demonstration that early detection translates into a reduction in mortality.

2.5.1. CA125

CA125 is a serum marker associated with ovarian cancer first described by Bast et al. (164). CA125 is a glycoprotein (molecular weight = 200,000) detected by the murine monoclonal antibody OC 125 (164). This antibody is produced by the somatic hybridization of spleen cells from mice immunized with ovarian cell lines (164). Its use as a prognostic marker and in the follow-up and therapy of ovarian cancer has been established, but not its use as a marker for early detection (165).

The idea that serum CA125 may be a potential biomarker for early detection came from a report published by Bast et al. in 1985 and was confirmed by Zurawski et al. in 1988 (166,167). Both these studies demonstrated the CA125 levels increase between 1 year and 18 months preceeding diagnosis. Subsequently, a number of studies have attempted to assess the sensitivity and specificity of CA125 as an early detection marker. In a case–control study, Zurawski et al. reported that only 38% of patients with stage 1 disease and 75% of women with stage II disease had CA125 levels in excess of 65 U/mL suggesting that the sensitivity of the test was not optimal. Further, Bast et al. measured the serum CA125 level in 888 healthy women, 143 women with nonmalignant disease, and 101 women with ovarian cancer and found that the specificity was also low (167). One percent of healthy women, 6% of women with nonmalignant disease, and 82% of patients
had a CA125 level greater than 35 U/mL (168). In a nested case–control study Zurawaski et al. reported a sensitivity of 20% for a CA125 level over 35 U/mL for a 3-year period prior to the diagnosis (167). They also noticed an increase in specificity with increasing age and in postmenopausal women. In a prospective study of 5500 women, Einhorn et al. reported a specificity of 98.5% for a CA125 level >35 U/mL for women aged 50 years or older for a 3-year period (169). For the same time period similar results were reported by Helzlsouer et al. in a nested case–control study of 37 women who developed ovarian cancer and 73 controls. A maximum sensitivity of 57% for a serum level CA125 greater than 35 U/ml within the first 3 years of follow-up and a specificity of 100% was observed. However, the specificity and sensitivity decreased over time (170). The new second generation assays, combining monoclonal antibodies recognize epitopes on two distinct regions and are potentially more sensitive.

The next phase of studies with regard to CA125 involve looking at serial levels or CA125 in combination with other tests. The sensitivity of the screening program can be increased by the use of two parallel tests, to screen for a disease. Zurawski et al. in 1990, demonstrated the increase of serial CA125s compared to a single value in a nested case–control study (171). Among women who had an elevated CA125 level at baseline, they reported a specificity of 99.9% if a woman’s CA125 level had doubled over a 6-month period. In a retrospective study of 5550 women from the Stockholm study, a sensitivity of 83%, and a specificity of 99.7% to detect ovarian cancer was reported using serial CA125s (172). Both these studies were limited by sample size.

Another approach has been to increase the specificity of the test by using a two-stage screening procedure, where women who test positive for the first test are then screened using a second test. The drawback is this will lower over-all program sensitivity. Jacobs et al. designed a two-stage screening procedure: 22,000 volunteers had a serum CA125 level and if that was abnormal (defined as greater than 30 U/mL), they were called back for an abdominal ultrasound (173). Those women with an abnormal ultrasound were then referred to their gynecologist. Transvaginal ultrasonography has an estimated sensitivity between 80% and 100% and a specificity of around 99.6% (174,175). Eleven ovarian cancers were detected as a result of the two-stage screening. Only 4 of the 11 had early stage disease. As expected within the short follow-up period of 2 years, the screening program achieved an increase in specificity (99.9%), but a sensitivity of only 58% (173). This study was followed by a pilot randomized trial comparing a two-stage screening program (annual CA125 followed by ultrasound screening in those with an abnormal CA125 result) with follow-up without screening. Postmenopausal women aged 45 years and older were randomized to either the screened group (n = 10,977) or the control group (n = 10,958). The follow-up period was 7 years. The primary aims of the study were to assess feasibility and
compliance. Seventy-one percent of women were screened annually over the 3-year period (176). Parallel screening programs also have been instigated in ovarian cancer with the hope to increase the sensitivity of the program. The National Cancer Institute is currently conducting the prostate, lung, colorectal, and ovarian (PLCO) cancer screening trial, in which 148,000 men and women between the ages of 55 and 74 have been enrolled from nine geographic areas in the United States. The women are randomized to a screening or control group. Those women who are being screened are receiving an annual physical examination, CA125 and transvaginal ultrasound.

2.5.2. Other Biomarkers

A number of studies have begun to assess the feasibility of other biomarkers that could be potentially used in conjunction with CA125 or independently. So far no biological marker has been proven to be effective in early detection. Some of the markers that have been investigated include; CEA, CA 19-9, CA 15-3, CA 54-61, CA 72-4, TAG 72, HMFG2, IL-6, IL-10, M-CSF, placental alkaline phosphatase, tissue peptide antigen, lipid associated sialic acid, NB70K, OVX1, D Dimer, prostasin, urinary gonadotropin fragment, and plasma lysophosphatidic acid (177–181).

Proteomics, which examines protein patterns in association with disease states, has offered hope for developing an effective test for the detection of ovarian cancer. Preliminary studies identified a pattern of proteins that could distinguish women with ovarian cancer from healthy women nearly 100% of the time. Clinical research using patterns of proteins as a means for identifying those with disease are underway. The technology is also used to identify specific proteins that could then be developed into clinical tests for early detection. Studies of these has been limited.

3. ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

3.1. Overview

Endometrial cancer, like ovarian cancer, is a disease of the elderly. Most women diagnosed are over the age of 60 and it rarely occurs below the age of 40. The overall age-adjusted incidence of endometrial cancer in the United States is 25 per 100,000 women and the mortality is about 4 per 100,000 women. Stratified by race, the incidence is higher among white females but the mortality is greater among black women. Incidence and mortality increase markedly with age (3). For women 65 and older, the incidence and mortality rates are 94 and 23 per 100,000 women, respectively (3).

Historically, the increased use of estrogen replacement therapy in the late 1960s and early 1970s led to a transient increase in the incidence of endometrial cancer between 1974 and 1976. Once it became clear that
unopposed estrogen therapy increased a women’s risk of endometrial cancer, a warning was issued by the Food and Drug Administration in 1976 and there was a subsequent decline in the use of unopposed estrogen and less endometrial cancer.

Stage and age also affects mortality rates. Women less than 65 years old have a 5-year survival rate of 88% compared to 80% in those who are 65 years or older (3). The 5-year survival rate for local-regional disease was 64% compared to 25% for distant disease (3).

3.2. Histological Types

The most common histological type of endometrial cancer is endometrioid, accounting for 75–80% of cases, (squamous differentiation occurs in one-third of those); 10% are papillary serous carcinomas and 4–5% are clear cell adenocarcinomas.

There is evidence that atypical hyperplasia in endometrial tissue may be a precursor or intermediate marker in the development of endometrial cancer, raising the possibility that early screening or preventive measures could be implemented. A retrospective study of 170 women with endometrial carcinoma who were followed for 13.4 years, only 2% of women with endometrial hyperplasia without atypia developed carcinoma compared to 23% of those with atypical hyperplasia (182). Ho et al. in a retrospective study, reported a 27.6% incidence in endometrial cancer among patients with atypia compared to a 3.4% incidence among women without atypia (183).

3.3. Etiology

Both epidemiological and laboratory studies strongly implicate hormonal exposure, in particular estrogen, in the etiology of endometrial cancer. The exact mechanism by which estrogen exerts its effect, as well as the contribution of other factors to the carcinogenesis pathway, is still unclear.

The “unopposed estrogen” hypothesis was first coined in the late 1970s and subsequently modified to explain the various associations observed between many of the known risk factors and the development of endometrial cancer (184–186). It is based on the premise that prolonged and uncontrolled mitosis of endometrial cells, as a result of unopposed estrogen exposure, increases the susceptibility of these cells to developing endometrial cancer. During a normal menstrual cycle, the mitotic rate of endometrial cells rises rapidly during menstruation to reach maximum levels early in the cycle and then stays constant until around day 19, where it falls due to an increase in progesterone. The maximum endometrial mitotic rate is induced in the early follicular phase. Progesterone reduces mitotic activity by decreasing the number of available estrogen receptors, increasing the metabolism of estradiol to the less active estrone and promoting the prolif-
erating endometrial cells to move to a secretory state. In postmenopausal women, plasma estrogen is mainly derived from extraglandular conversion of androstenedione to estrone. Obese women have higher estrogen levels. There is a limit to the extent to which estrogen can increase the mitotic rate. Above a threshold, the mitotic rate remains constant. Because leaner postmenopausal women have a lower amount of endogenous estrogen than obese women, exogenous estrogen has greater potential to increase the mitotic rate before the threshold is reached.

3.4. Risk and Susceptibility Factors

The main risk factors can be divided into: inherited factors, hormonal factors, reproductive factors, lifestyle factors, diseases associated with endometrial cancer, and biomarkers of early detection.

3.4.1. Inherited Factors

**Germline Mutation:** A small percentage of women with endometrial cancer may have inherited genetic susceptibility to colon cancer. Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC) syndrome is associated with increased risk of colon, endometrial and ovarian cancer. In 1990, the International Collaborative Group on HNPCC proposed the Amsterdam criteria (Table 1) to identify high-risk groups predominantly in the research setting (186a,b). The criteria were revised in 1998 to take into consideration extracolonic malignancies (186c) (Table 1). A second set of criteria that is used, is called the revised Bethesda Guidelines. Clinically (186d) in table. HNPCC is an autosomal dominant disorder that is associated with mutations in DNA mismatch repair genes (53–55,187–191). In particular, germline mutations in hMSH2, hMLH1, PMS1, PMS2, and hMSH6 have been observed in up to 70% of HNPCC families (192). Microsatellite instability was also demonstrated in 75% of endometrial tumors associated with HNPCC (193). It is estimated that between 30% and 60% of women with

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>Amsterdam Criteria for Hereditary Nonpolyposis Colorectal Cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Histologically confirmed colorectal cancer in at least three relatives, one of whom is a first-degree relative of the other two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Occurrence of disease in at least two successive generations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Age at diagnosis below 50 years in at least one colorectal cancer case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Exclusion of familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

this syndrome may develop endometrial cancer by the age of 70 (52,194,195). Little is known about the natural history of women with HNPCC. On average, women with the HNPCC syndrome were diagnosed with endometrial cancer 15 years earlier than the general population (52,196). Vassen et al. collected data on 125 endometrial cancer cases that were known to have HNPCC (196). Of the 125 women, 61% had a second primary cancer of which 72% had colorectal cancer, and 9% had both ovary and stomach cancer. There were also a few reports of synchronous cancers. In this group the mortality from endometrial cancer was 7% higher than the expected population rate.

Genetic Polymorphisms: As in ovarian cancer, the role of other inherited factors in endometrial cancer causation such as low penetrant mutations that commonly occur in the population are unclear. The focus has been on polymorphisms in genes encoding for enzymes involved in hormone biosynthesis in particular CYP17, and the androgen receptor CAG repeat length (197,198). Few studies have been done. Himan et al. examined the association between a single nucleotide change (T to C) in the 5' region of CYP17, which encodes a cytochrome P450 enzyme involved in androgen biosynthesis and the risk of endometrial cancer (197). This polymorphism was found to be protective in women who were homozygous for the allelic variant (OR = 0.43, 95% CI 0.23, 0.80). In another study, Yaron et al. examined the CAG length of the androgen receptor gene and the association with endometrial cancer (198). The mean number of CAG repeats was 19.8 in cases and 17.9 in controls (p < 0.01).

3.4.2. Hormonal Factors

Endogenous: Menstrual factors: consistent with the estrogen hypothesis both early menarche and late menopause are associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer. An early menarche, defined as less than or equal to 12 years of age, increases a women’s risk of endometrial cancer anywhere between 1.6 and 3.9 times the risk of women who undergo menarche at a later age (159,199–204). Similarly, an increased risk, between 1.7 and 2.4, was observed in women who became postmenopausal at the age of 52 or greater compared to those who were less than 49 years old (159,199,201–207). Increasing years of ovulation and longer duration of flow during each menstrual cycle were also observed to be risk factors (199,200,208).

Serum levels: in line with the “unopposed estrogen” hypothesis and other risk factors that have been discussed above, several studies have demonstrated an increased risk of endometrial cancer in women who have higher endogenous plasma levels of estrogen and androgens and a decreased risk in women with high levels of sex hormone binding globulin that tightly
bind estrogen (209–213). In a study by Potischman et al. these hormonal differences were only seen among postmenopausal women and they observed a relative progesterone deficiency among premenopausal women with endometrial cancer compared to controls, suggesting that progesterone exposure may be a more important factor in premenopausal women (213).

**Exogenous:** *Oral contraceptive pill:* the majority of epidemiological studies have reported a risk reduction in endometrial cancer of approximately 50% in women who have used an OCP that contains both progesterone and estrogen for at least a year (78, 82, 84, 201, 203, 210, 214–222). This risk continues to decrease with increasing duration of use. Studies also suggest that the protective effect continues for 15 years or more even after cessation of the OCP (82, 214, 217). In some studies, OCPs that contained higher levels of progesterone correlated with a greater reduction in risk of endometrial cancer (216, 223). It is unclear whether this is due to the dose of progestogen or their duration of use (224).

In the mid-1970s, case reports indicated an association between sequential oral contraceptive use (in particular a brand called Oracon that used a strong estrogen and weak progesterone dose) and a range of endometrial lesions including proliferative lesions, severe atypical hyperplasia, and endometrial cancer and as a result it was withdrawn from the market (215, 225–228).

**Hormone replacement therapy:** HRT is used to treat many of the symptoms and prevent further health risks such as osteoporosis and cardiovascular disease in postmenopausal women. It can be administered in two forms, as estrogen replacement alone or a combination of both estrogen and progesterone. Estrogen alone carries an increased risk of endometrial cancer. In observational studies, the relative risk of endometrial cancer has been estimated between 1.3 and 12 for women who used estrogen replacement compared to nonusers (159, 203, 229–245). In some studies, the risk increased with duration of use (242–247), and although the risk gradually decreased after cessation of use, it did not return to that of nonusers (240, 247–249). Most of these cancers occurring among users of estrogen replacement therapy have been detected at an early stage and are well differentiated (232, 234, 241, 242). In some studies, an increased risk was not seen in women who took estrogen replacement therapy for less than 6 months (232, 233, 235, 238). In the meta-analysis by Grady et al. in 1995 a twofold increase in risk for estrogen users when compared to nonusers was found and the risk for less than 1 year of use was 1.4, and for greater than 10 years was 9.5 (250). Irrespective of estrogen dose or the manner it was administered (continuously or cyclically), an elevated risk in endometrial cancer was observed (250). Combining progesterone therapy with estrogen for women with a uterus attenuates the risk of endometrial cancer (220, 243, 245, 246, 251–253). In a randomized double blind placebo
controlled trial continuous combines estrogen plus progestin therapy does not increase a women’s risk of endometrial cancer (H.R. 0.81, 95% CI 0.48, 1.36) (253a).

In some studies, the association between estrogen therapy and endometrial cancer has been modified by weight and smoking. In women taking estrogen therapy alone, those who did not smoke had a higher risk of developing endometrial cancer than nonsmokers. It appears that smoking negates the risk associated with estrogen therapy and may be due to the anti-estrogen effects of smoking (201,260,261). Leaner women on estrogen therapy demonstrated a higher risk for endometrial cancer compared to women with a higher BMI (262).

3.4.3. Reproductive Factors

**Pregnancy:** Compared with nulliparous women, parous women have a 10–50% reduction in the risk of endometrial cancer (79,199,200,203,263–265). Increasing number of pregnancies and increasing age of first and last pregnancy were also found to be protective in some studies (82,199,200,203,204,217,264,266). These findings are also consistent with the estrogen hypothesis since pregnancy reduces the time of exposure to unopposed estrogens. The increased exposure to progesterone may also lower the risk.

An ongoing question is whether the increased risk associated with nulliparity may be related to infertility. Brinton et al. reported a twofold increase in risk among nulliparous women who had difficulty conceiving compared to nulliparous women with no difficulty, and a sevenfold increase in risk among nulliparous women who had sought medical advice regarding infertility (200). Infertility is one of the factors attributed to the increased risk of endometrial cancer observed among nulliparous women who have married and never had children (264,267).

Studies on the role of induced and spontaneous abortions/miscarriages as risk factors for endometrial cancer have mixed results (199,200,264,265,267). McPherson et al. observed 2.5 times the risk of endometrial cancer in women who had an induced abortion compared to those who did not but the sample size was small (199). In contrast, Parazzini et al. had reported a protective association in women who had either an induced or spontaneous abortion, with a greater effect in premenopausal women (267). An increased risk was observed among women whose last pregnancy ended in a miscarriage compared with women who had a miscarriage during their first or middle pregnancy suggesting that the timing of the unopposed estrogen surge that occurs when in the case of a miscarriage may be an important risk factor (199).

3.4.4. Lifestyle Factors

**Diet:** Evaluating the association of various dietary factors and the risk of endometrial cancer is complicated by the variations in study design, diet-
ary assessment tools, and information on potential confounding factors. However, most of these studies suggest that diets low in fat, high in fiber, and rich in fruits and vegetables may reduce the risk of endometrial cancer.

Dietary fat has been consistently associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer. Reported odds ratios range between 1.5 and 5.6 (268–272). Both, animal fat (269,270), and saturated fat such as oleic acid and linoleic acid (269) have been associated with increased risk, whereas, mono-unsaturated fats may be protective (272). There are some data linking low fat diets to a reduction in serum estrogen levels or a shift in estrogen metabolism towards less active metabolites which may explain the association (273–275). In a clinical study, premenopausal women given a low-fat diet were observed to have decreased plasma levels of free estradiol and free testosterone (276).

Some studies suggest that the consumption of fruit and vegetables are protective. A 30–60% reduction in endometrial cancer was observed among women who consumed the highest fourth of fruit consumption compared to the lowest fourth (248,270,277). A risk reduction of 50–70% was also seen with the consumption of green vegetables (271), carotene, which is found in green and yellow vegetables (248,270,271,278,279), and lycopene (279). Decreased plasma estradiol levels have been observed in women whose diet contains large amounts of plant food. Lower plasma estradiol and urinary estrogen levels have also been measured among postmenopausal women who are vegetarian compared to those who are nonvegetarians (280,281). Carotene may alter estrogen metabolism by producing less active metabolites (278).

Increased soy and dietary fiber intakes from cereal, vegetable and fruit, have also been associated with a decreased risk of endometrial cancer (279,282). A risk reduction between 29% and 50% for women in the highest fourth of consumption of cereal, vegetable and fruit fiber compared to the lowest fourth has been reported (279,282). High consumption of soy products was associated with a 54% decrease in the risk of endometrial cancer compared to the lowest soy intake. Potentially, both soy and fiber could alter estrogen levels in the following ways; (1) altering the metabolism of estrogen at the receptor site (283,284), (2) decreased enterohepatic circulation and increased elimination of estrogen (281,285), or (3) increasing levels of sex hormone binding globulin resulting in lower levels of free estrogen (286,287).

Other dietary factors such as alcohol (248,271,288–292), protein intake (268–270,278,279), and total energy (248,268–270,278,293) have not been consistently associated with an increased or decreased risk of endometrial cancer (269,278).

Weight: In postmenopausal women, increasing BMI and increasing body weight has been consistently associated with an increased risk of
endometrial cancer. Odds ratios ranging between 1.5 and 4.0 have been reported in postmenopausal women with BMI of greater than 28 kg/m² or body weight of greater than 165 lb when compared to women with a BMI of less than 22.5 kg/m² or less than 130 lb (199,202–204,232,235,236,282,294–301). A few studies have observed an even greater risk among obese premenopausal women with odds ratio between 17 and 20 (159,184). In postmenopausal women, the increased conversion of androstenedione to estrogens in adipose tissue and the decreased levels of sex hormone binding globulins results in an increased availability of free estrogen (302,303), which could explain these findings. DeWaard et al. demonstrated a positive correlation between changes in body weight and the excretion of estrone, estradiol, and total estrogen (304). In premenopausal women, increased BMI has been associated with anovulatory cycles and diminished production of progesterone suggesting a different mechanism of action (305,306). Although current weight seems to be the strongest predictor of risk, an increased risk was also seen in women with a past history of obesity. The risk appears to persist regardless of age (295,296). It is unclear whether rate of change in weight is an independent risk factor (295). In a large prospective study increasing BMI was associated with and increased risk of dying from endometrial cancer (Calle et al., 2003). The increase in risk was 6-fold in women with a BMI of 40 (Calle et al., 2003).

Physical Activity: Low levels of physical activity have been associated with a modest increase in the risk of endometrial cancer (odds ratios of 1.3–2.5) independent of age and after adjusting for BMI and caloric intake (248,282,294,307–310). A greater risk was observed among women who reported lower levels of occupational activity compared to those who reported lower levels of recreational activities (282,309–312). Sturgeon et al. reported an increased risk only in inactive women who had a BMI greater than 28 suggesting that decreased physical activity is a surrogate marker for high BMI (294). Higher levels of physical activity have been associated with lower estrogen levels (313,314) and a reduction in the length of the luteal phase and/or frequency of ovulatory cycles (139,315–317). Based on existing studies, it is unclear whether physical activity is an independent risk factor for endometrial cancer.

Smoking: In observational studies a risk reduction of up to 40% has been consistently observed in postmenopausal women who currently smoke (203,242,243,260,261,298–321). However, in most studies a clear dose–response has not been observed (243,260,261,321), and studies have not consistently shown decreasing risk with increasing duration of use (201,243,299,320). The protective association with smoking may be due to a decrease in estrogen levels. Women who smoke are known to have an earlier menopause and decreased urinary estrogen secretion (214,322–324).
The antiestrogenic effects of smoking may also be mediated by induction of microsomal mixed function oxidase systems that metabolize sex hormones (298).

**Medications:** *Tamoxifen:* tamoxifen is a nonsteroidal hormone that has both estrogen antagonist and agonist properties. In some tissues, like the breast, it exhibits antiestrogenic properties, whereas, in other tissues such as the endometrium, bone, and liver, it acts as an estrogen agonist. In 1978, tamoxifen was approved for the treatment of metastatic breast cancer and then subsequently for the adjuvant treatment of breast cancer and to reduce risk of the onset of breast cancer.

The risk of endometrial cancer is increased among tamoxifen users. The initial report of an association between endometrial cancer and tamoxifen appeared in the literature in 1985 (325). Subsequently, at least 14 randomized trials and a number of observational studies have confirmed this association (326–331). Tamoxifen has been classified as a human carcinogen by IARC based on these studies (332).

Women on tamoxifen as part of the adjuvant treatment for breast cancer were observed to have between 1.5 and 6 times the risk of endometrial cancer when compared with those who were not taking it (328–331,333). This risk increased with longer duration of use (328,331), a history of prior use of hormone replacement therapy (331) and BMI greater than 24.5 kg/m\(^2\) (331). A twofold increase in risk of endometrial cancer was also observed in women participating in the Breast Cancer Prevention Trial (BCPT). The risk of endometrial cancer occurred primarily in women over 50 years, \(RR = 4.01\) (95% CI = 1.70–10.90) (334).

**Diabetes:** A number of studies have reported a significant association between diabetes mellitus and cancer of the endometrium with odds ratios ranging from 1.2 to 3.3 even after adjusting for body weight suggesting that diabetes may also be an independent risk factor (204,207,335–338). Consistent with the unopposed estrogen hypothesis, increased levels of estrogen and decreased levels of luteinizing hormones and follicular stimulating hormone have been reported in postmenopausal diabetic women (339,340). In most studies, an increased risk has been observed in diabetic women over the age of 40 suggesting an association between noninsulin dependent diabetes and endometrial cancer. Abnormalities in glucose tolerance have also been associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer (341–343).

**Polycystic Ovarian Syndrome:** It is unclear whether polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) increases a women’s risk of endometrial cancer because factors such as obesity, infertility, and nulliparity are commonly...
associated with PCOS (69,344). Chamlian et al. also reported a 25% increase in the incidence of PCOS among women with endometrial hyperplasia (345).

4. CERVICAL CANCER

4.1. Overview

Cervical cancer is the third most common cancer in women in the world today, accounting for approximately 9.8% of all new cancer cases. In the United States alone, in the year 2005, an estimated 10,370 new cervical cancers will be diagnosed and 3710 deaths from cervical cancer will occur (1). During the period 1973–1999 there was a 44% decrease in the incidence and a 47% decrease in the mortality of cervical cancer in the United States (3). A similar trend has been observed in other developed countries. The decline in mortality rates predated the implementation of widespread screening programs therefore it is felt that factors other than screening may have been responsible for the initial decline (346–348). These factors include; increasing affluence, improvements in standard of living, nutrition, increasing use of barrier contraceptives, and decline in sexually transmitted diseases (349).

Unfortunately, racial, ethnic, and socioeconomic disparities exist. The incidence of cervical cancer is at least three times higher in women living in developing countries, in areas where there are no screening programs, and in lower socioeconomic groups (346–348). The incidence and mortality rates in the United States are higher for Black women, (11.2 per 100,000 and 2.8 per 100,000, respectively), compared to White women (7.9 per 100,000 and 5.9 per 100,000), respectively. White Hispanics, Hispanics, American Indians, and Asian Pacific Islanders also have higher incidence and mortality rates compared to White women (3).

The incidence of cervical cancer is two times higher among women 65 and over compared to those under 65 (3). This difference could be due to poor access to screening as well as to decreased participation in screening programs (349). The 5-year survival rate for women 65 and over is 52% compared to 74% for women under 65 years of age (3). With respect to staging, the 5-year survival rate for localized disease is 91% compared to 13% for distant disease (3).

4.2. Histological Types

Invasive carcinoma of the cervix can be divided into three types; squamous, adenocarcinoma, and adeno squamous. Squamous carcinoma accounts for approximately 80% of cervical cancers while adenocarcinoma and adeno-squamous carcinomas account for 10%. The other 10% are usually classified as undefined (350). The peak incidence of squamous carcinoma occurs between the ages of 48 and 55 years, whereas adenocarcinoma of the cervix is seen more often among younger women (267,351).
The majority of invasive squamous cell carcinomas are thought to arise from premalignant intraepithelial or dysplastic lesions (352). Dysplastic changes in the cervical epithelium were first described in the 1940s by Papanicolaou (353). These lesions were classified into histological grades based on the degree of dysplasia (CIN I–III) (354). In 1988, the histological and cytological changes were combined to form a new classification known as the Bethesda System (355). Using this system, cervical lesions were classified into low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSIL) and high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (HSIL). The CIN and Bethesda system are often interchanged. LSIL contains CIN I and HSIL includes CIN II and CIN III. In 1998, a separate category for atypical squamous cells of uncertain significance (ASCUS) was added followed by categories for atypical glandular cells of uncertain significance (AGUS) and adenocarcinoma in situ (AIS) (356). These squamous intraepithelial lesions can spontaneously regress, persist or progress to invasive cancer (357). CIN I lesions are more likely to regress, whereas CIN II lesions are more likely to progress on to CIN III or invasive cancer (358–360). Spontaneous regression has been reported in up to 56% of women with CIN I, and 43% with CIN II. Whereas up to 11% of women with CIN I, and 22% of women with CIN II progress to CIN III, and 1% of women with CIN I and 5% of women with CIN III progress to invasive cancer (361,362).

4.3. Etiology

Human papilloma virus (HPV) infection is necessary for the development of cervical cancer (363). HPV is a member of the papovaviridae family of double-strand DNA viruses (364). It measures about 50–55 nm in diameter. The papilloma virus genome is about 7900 base pairs and can be divided into three regions: the long control region, required for DNA expression and replication, the early region that codes for proteins involved in the regulation of viral transcription (E2), DNA replication (E1 and E2) and cell proliferation (E5, E6, and E7), and the late region that contains two genes which code for the capsid proteins, (L1 and L2) (332). There are over 100 genotypes that have been identified, of which 35 are known to infect the anogenital tract (365). In order to be classified as a specific type of HPV there must be less than 90% homology between base pairs (366). HPVs have been categorized into low-risk (6,11,39,41–44,51), intermediate, and high-risk types (16,18,45,31,33,35,52–59) based on their oncogenic potential (367).

From an international prevalence study of 1035 frozen biopsies, HPV DNA was detected in 93% of invasive squamous cervical tumors (368). Twenty different strains were detected. Fiftyone percent of the 881 cases of invasive squamous carcinoma were positive for HPV 16, and 12% were positive for HPV 18. Human papilloma virus 16 was the predominant type seen in all countries, except Indonesia where HPV 18 was found to be more prevalent. Among the HPV 16 positive specimens, just over half were well
differentiated as opposed to moderately or poorly differentiated and no difference in prevalence was found according to clinical stage. HPV 45 was also common in western Africa and HPV 39 and 59 in Central and South America. In contrast, among 25 specimens of adenocarcinoma, 28% were positive for HPV 16 and 56% were positive for HPV 18 (368). A similar pattern was also seen in the adenosquamous specimens. HPV type 40, 42, 53, 54, 66 and PAP155 were not detected in any of the specimens. When the negative cases from this study were reanalyzed in 1999 with a more sensitive HPV DNA test, the prevalence of HPV in those specimens increased even further to 99.7% (363). HPV infections, have also been closely linked to CIN I–III and carcinoma in situ (369).

Genital HPV is acquired primarily through sexual intercourse. Once a cell is infected it undergoes cellular differentiation, followed by replication and transcription of the HPV DNA virus (364). In two prospective studies involving young women in Western countries aged between 15 and 23, the incidence of HPV infection over 36 months ranged from 26% to 43% (370,371). Whereas in a population-based prospective study of 1425 low income women between the ages of 18 and 80, the cumulative incidence was 38% at 18 months (372). In all these studies, incident cases were defined as women who were HPV negative at baseline and became positive on subsequent testing. Thus, the incidence rate may represent recurrent infections as well as new infections. In all three studies, HPV 16 was one of the most common types detected (370–372). The medium duration of infection by type 16 ranged from between 8.1 and 11 months (370–372). The average incubation period for all types of HPV infection was between 3 and 7 months (370,372). However, for those women with type 16 the medium duration varied from 8.1 to 11 months (370–372).

A number of prospective and nested case–control studies have examined the association between positive HPV antibodies and the risk of cervical cancer reporting odds ratios ranging from 2.0 to 7.5 (373–376). The association between HPV DNA typing, a more sensitive test, and the risk of high-grade squamous epithelial lesions have also been examined in a number of prospective studies (371,372,377,378). Women who were HPV DNA 16 positive had between 8.5 and 13 times the risk of developing CIN II &III compared to CIN I (371,372,377,378). Given that only a small number of women who are infected with the HPV develop cervical cancer, other inherited and environmental factors must play an important role in the carcinogenesis pathway.

4.4. Risk and Susceptibility Factors

4.4.1. Risk Factors for Oncogenic HPV Infections

Exposures increasing the incidence of oncogenic HPV infections are also important risk factors for the development of cervical cancer (379,380).
These factors include young age, duration of oral contraceptive use, number of lifetime sexual partners, sexual practices, and HIV infection (379,380). Rousseau et al. reported a 70% reduction in the incidence of high-risk HPV infection in women greater than 45 years of age compared to women 24 years or less (379,380). A threefold increase in the incidence of high-risk HPV infection was observed in women who used the oral contraceptive pill (OCP) for greater than or equal to 6 years compared to women who used the OCP for less than 6 years (OR 3.36, 95% CI 1.30, 8.68). Silins et al. observed that women with a history of greater than six lifetime sexual partners were at a tenfold increase in the risk of oncogenic HPV infections compared to women who had one lifetime sexual partner (OR 10.2, 95% CI 3.5, 29.6) (380). Increased rates of HPV infection have also been reported among HIV-positive women who took part in high-risk sexual practices compared to HIV-negative women (381–385). Among HIV positive women, higher viral load and lower CD4 count was also associated with an increased risk of HPV infection (381–385).

4.4.2. Persistence of HPV Infection and Viral Load

Persistence of high-risk HPV infection is thought to be related to the development of CIN III and invasive cervical cancer (372,386,387). Nobbenhuis found that 95% of women with CIN III had persistent HPV infection (386). Factors such as viral load may directly affect persistence of infection. In a nested case–control study, the risk of developing cervical cancer in women with a high viral load increased steadily up to 23% (95% CI 12.4, 31.8) after 15 years of surveillance (388). Josefsson et al. demonstrated a 60-fold increase in the risk of cervical cancer in women with a high HPV 16 viral load compared to women who were HPV 16 negative. Viral load was measured 7.8 years prior to the diagnosis of cervical cancer (389). Studies suggest that an individual’s HIV status may also affect viral persistence (385,390). In a longitudinal study, 20% of HIV positive women were positive for HPV types 16 and 18 infection on repeated measurements compared to 3% in HIV negative women ($p < 0.001$) (385).

4.4.3. Inherited Factors

**Genetic Polymorphisms:** Human leukocyte antigen polymorphisms: An individual’s level of immunity is one factor that may be associated with a woman’s risk of CIN III or invasive cervical cancer. Human leukocyte antigen (HLA) classes I and II genes, are known to be involved in the immune response (364). There are 20 class I genes in the HLA region, three of these, HLA-A, B, and C, are mainly involved in the immune response. Class I genes are expressed in most somatic cells and class II are expressed by a subgroup of immune cells including B cells, activated T cells,
macrophages, dendritic cells and thymic epithelial cells. The function of both class I and II molecules is to present short peptides to T cells thereby initiate an immune response (391). A number of studies have shown an association between particular HLA polymorphisms and cervical neoplasia. Hildeshem et al. reported a ninefold increased risk of HSIL if a woman was homozygous for DQB1*302 or a carrier of both B7 and DQB1*302 (302,392,393). Neuman et al. reported a positive association, between HLA DQB1*0303 and the risk of invasive cancer, only among HPV positive patients ($p = 0.005$) (394). Cuzick et al. reported similar findings of increased risk but with different variants of HLADQB1 (395).

**MTHFR polymorphisms:** Given that folate may be protective for cervical cancer, Piyathilake et al. investigated the association between a polymorphism of MTHFR and the risk of cervical cancer using cervical tissue from 64 women with CIN lesions and 31 controls (396). MTHFR is a critical enzyme regulating the metabolism of folate and methionine that are important in DNA methylation and repair. A common base change from C to T at the nucleotide position 677 of the MTHFR gene results in substitution of valine for alanine (397). Both heterozygous (Ala/Val) and homozygous (Val/Val) variants have been shown to have reduced MTHFR enzyme activity and significantly higher circulating homocysteine levels compared to those homozygous for (Ala/Ala) (398,399). Therefore, it is postulated that women who had at least one valine allele would be at an increased risk of cervical cancer. Piyathilake et al. found a threefold increase in the risk of cervical cancer among women who were homozygous or heterozygous for the valine allele (396). The greatest risk was seen among parous women who had the mutant polymorphism. This may be explained by the fact that pregnancy stresses folate status, making the folate deficiency even greater.

**Glutathione S-transferase polymorphisms:** The glutathione S-transferases (GSTs) are enzymes that detoxify a large number of carcinogens by catalyzing the conjugation of reactive chemical intermediates to soluble glutathione in the liver. The GSTM1 and GSTT1 polymorphisms result in a reduction in enzyme activity due to the inheritance of two null alleles. Both GSTM1 and GSTT1 polymorphisms occur in slightly less than 50% of Caucasians (400).

Two studies have examined the association between the GSTM1 and GSTT1 genotypes and the risk of cervical cancer in Caucasians (401,402). Neither study reported a positive association. However, a study in Japan where GSTT1 null is more prevalent, a twofold increase in the risk in women who had the GSTT1 null genotype compared to those with the GSTT1 was observed present. This risk increased when GSTT1 and GSTM1 were analyzed in combination. No information on other risk factors, such as smoking, was available (403).
P53 Arg72Pro polymorphisms: HPV 16 and HPV 18 encode two major oncoproteins E6 and E7. The E6 protein binds to the tumor suppressor protein P53 and directs its degradation (404,405). The tumor suppressor gene P53 inhibits cell growth through the activation of cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis. Alteration or inactivation of p53 by mutation or the interaction of p53 with DNA tumor viruses can lead to cancer (404). In early cervical tumors, the P53 protein is usually not mutated. Inactivation of p53 by E6 oncoprotein may be analogous to being inactivated by a mutation (404,406). In 1987, a polymorphism of wild type p53 was identified from human cells amino acid residue 72 resulting in the substitution of arginine for proline (407). There have been at least 37 studies examining this association. A meta-analysis of these studies demonstrated a 20% increased risk of cervical cancer in women who were homozygous for the Arg variant compared to those who were heterozygous for the Arg variant (Jee SH et al., 2004). When stratified by cancer type, the risk of adenocarcinoma of the cervix was increased but not squamous cell carcinoma.

4.4.4. Hormonal Factors

Oral Contraceptives: Results from studies that have examined the association between OCP use and the risk of carcinoma of the cervix, taking into consideration HPV status have been mixed. Ylitalo et al. reported almost a fourfold increase among current users compared with nonusers (OR = 3.78, 95% CI 2.09, 6.85) and an increasing risk with increasing duration of use (p trend < 0.001) (417). Kruger-Kjaer et al. reported an increased risk only among women who had HSIL (OR = 1.6, 95% CI 0.8, 3.2) (418). Five other studies that also tested for HPV DNA did not observe an association between OCP and cervical cancer (420–424). The mixed picture may reflect the difficulty in fully assessing other factors that might confound the association between OCP use and the risk of cervical cancer, both positively and negatively. For example, OCP use is highly correlated with sexual behaviors that increase exposure to HPVs. On the other hand, women who use OCPs also tend to have more regular Pap smears, which is associated with a decreased risk of cervical cancer (425,426). In a meta-analysis of 28 studies, the relative risk of cervical cancer increased with increasing duration of use (Smith JS., 2003). The relative risk of cervical cancer in women who had used oral contraceptives for 10 years or more was 2.2 (95 % CI 1.9, 2.4) irrespective of HPV status. In HPV positive women the relative risk was similar, as would be expected (RR 2.5, 95% CI 1.6, 3.9). A direct association between OCP use and cervical cancer is biologically plausible, through a mechanism involving folic acid. Studies have detected megaloblastic changes in the cervical epithelium of women associated with the OCP that were reversed by folic acid (427,428). Folate deficiency can lead to impaired DNA methylation and repair. These changes were then reversed by folic acid.
4.4.5. Reproductive Factors

Parity has been consistently found to be a risk factor for cervical cancer even after taking HPV DNA into account (429,430). The biological mechanism behind this association is obscure but is thought to be due to either hormonal effects, low folic acid, or trauma to the cervix (429).

4.4.6. Lifestyle Factors

**Diet:** In a number of case–control studies, high dietary carotene, vitamins C and E, folate, and low levels of carotenoids have been associated with a reduced risk of cervical cancer (277,431–439). Unfortunately, the majority of studies were completed before sensitive HPV DNA tests were available and few studies took into consideration the effect of both smoking and oral contraceptive use on these associations (440). Oral contraceptive use appears to reduce both plasma levels of vitamin C and red blood cell folate even in women whose dietary intake is adequate (427,428). Smoking decreases plasma β-carotene, folate, and Vitamin C levels (441).

A number of dietary and serological studies have shown that the low intake of carotenoids are associated with an increased risk of cervical dysplasia and invasive carcinoma (436,439,442–448). The risk of cervical cancer was increased threefold in women with serum levels of β-carotene and α-carotene in the lower third compared to the highest tertile in a prospective study (439). Similar results have been reported in case–control studies (442,449,450). An increased risk in cervical cancer was also been observed in women with low serum levels of cryptoxanthin and lycopene (439,441,446,449).

Vitamin C, or ascorbic acid, has been consistently associated with decreased risk of both dysplasia and invasive cancer (437,444,445,451–454). Few studies have been able to assess serological levels of ascorbic acid, as it is necessary to use fresh blood samples for valid assays or samples specifically preserved (387,446). Two studies found that vitamin C was protective only among smokers (432,433). A study of in situ disease noted a protective association of vitamin C supplements (455). A sixfold risk was observed among women with the lowest intake of dietary vitamin C supplements compared to the highest group (456). In a clinic-based case–control study, HPV seropositive women with plasma levels of reduced ascorbic acid greater than 0.803 mg/dL were found to have a 60% reduction in the risk of developing intraepithelial neoplasia compared to women with less than 0.803 mg/dL (95% CI 0.19, 0.89) (457).

Low serum levels of retinol have also been associated with an increased risk of cervical cancer (449). An increased rate of progression (4.5 times) to carcinoma in situ or invasive cancer was observed among women with cervical dysplasia who had low serum retinol levels compared to those with high serum levels (449). In a prospective study, the association
between HPV 16, 18, and 33 and the risk of cervical cancer was greater in women with lower serum level of retinol compared to higher levels (relative risk = 2.6, 95% CI 0.7, 8.8) (458).

The association between vitamin E and the risk of cervical cancer is unclear. Verreault et al. in a case–control study, reported a 60% decreased risk of cervical cancer among women with highest intake of vitamin E (≥ 5.9 mg/day) compared to the lowest intake (444). Two case–control studies reported lower α-tocopherol levels in women with CIN and cervical cancer (387,442) but these results were not observed in two nested case–control studies and one case–control study controlling for HPV infection (439,443,458).

Folate has been postulated to have a protective role in the etiology of cervical dysplasia and cancer. The majority of studies have been case–control and demonstrated either a mild protective association with increasing amounts folate intake or serum concentration (428,432,444,445,452,455,459,460). A nonstatistically significant trend in the protective direction was reported in a prospective study for increasing serum concentration of folate and vitamin B12 (431). Human papilloma virus status was known for all study participants. In the same study, the serum levels of homocysteine, a marker of low vitamin B12 levels was increased twofold in women with cervical cancer (431). Folate intake may be associated with HPV and cervical cancer. In case–control studies, low levels of folic acid was associated with HPV infection (428). Women with HPV and lower level of folic acid had a sevenfold risk of CIN (OR 7.5, 95% CI 1.2, 9.7) (461).

Smoking: Like so many other factors, smoking was initially thought to be a surrogate for HPV infection because women who were heavy smokers also had many of the other high-risk behaviors that were associated with cervical cancer (Trimble et.al.). However, subsequent studies suggest that smoking may be an independent cofactor, where there is a modest increase in the risk of cervical cancer associated with cigarette smoking (OR between 1.5 and 2.6) after taking into consideration HPV status (417,418,422–424,430,457,462,463). A dose response was seen in some studies (417,457,464,465). An increased risk of cervical cancer was also observed with longer duration of smoking (417,465). A strong association between smoking and cervical cancer was observed among women infected with HPV 16 or 18 high-risk genotypes (418,423,424,457,463,466,467). A positive association has also been reported between smoking and adenocarcinoma of the cervix, although the sample sizes were much smaller (422).

Biological plausibility for this positive association stems from a number of findings among smokers including the detection of mutagenic cervical fluids (468), high concentrations of nicotine and tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in cervical mucus of smokers (469), increased levels of DNA adducts of benzo(a)pyrene and its metabolites in cervical mucus (470) and
evidence of decreased cervical epithelial immunity which may increase persistence of the HPV infection (471). In support of a causal link between smoking and cervical cancer, Szarewski, et al. demonstrated a significant correlation between the extent of smoking reduction and the change in cervical lesion size in a randomized intervention trial (472).

4.4.7. Diseases Associated with Cervical Cancer

**Chlamydia Trachomatis:** Although there is often a correlation in sexual behavior between HPV and other sexually transmitted diseases, studies suggest that *Chlamydia trachomatis* may be an independent risk factor for cervical cancer.

In a nested case–control study of 182 cases and matched controls, serum samples were analyzed for IgG antibodies to *C. trachomatis* (a test for past infection) and HPV types 16, 18, and 33 (473). Positive IgG antibodies were associated with a twofold increase in the risk of cervical cancer after adjusting for smoking and HPV status (OR = 2.2, 95% CI 1.3, 3.5). There was no difference according to type of HPV infection. An increased risk was not seen for adenocarcinoma of the cervix. These results are consistent with prior case–control studies (474,475). A longitudinal study by Anttilla et al. demonstrated a sixfold increase in the risk of cervical squamous carcinoma among women who had been exposed to a specific *C. trachomatis* serotype, G (OR = 6.6, 95% CI 1.6, 27.0) (476).

4.4.8. Biomarkers of Early Detection

**Human Papilloma Virus DNA Testing as a Screening Tool:** Despite the advent of HPV DNA testing its exact role in cervical cancer screening is yet to elucidated. Initial studies suggest that HPV DNA testing may be more sensitive but less specific compared to conventional cytological screening and therefore is unlikely to replace pap smears (477–479). However, a modest improvement in screening efficacy has been observed when the two tests are used in combination (477).

A greater focus is being placed on the use of HPV DNA testing as a second screening test in women who have equivocal pap smears (ASCUS). To avoid missing women with high-risk lesions, many physicians currently refer all women with atypical smears for colposcopy, which is an expensive and invasive procedure (480–485). In a group of women diagnosed with atypical smears repeat pap smears had a sensitivity of 60% and a specificity of 77% compared to a sensitivity of 86% and a specificity of 71% for HPV DNA using hybrid capture which identifies 14 HPV viruses as the second line test. When the two tests were used concurrently the sensitivity increased to 90% but the specificity decreased to 58%. Manos et al. reported similar results (479). There is a multicenter randomized clinical trial study organized by the National Cancer Institute in progress to evaluate three alternative
methods of managing low grade and atypical cervical cytologic diagnoses. Women who have either of these two diagnoses are referred to immediate referral for colposcopy, follow up with cytology alone, or use of HPVDNA to triage to colposcopy. All women are being followed every 6 months for 2 years (486).

5. FUTURE RESEARCH NEEDS

Significant advances have been made in understanding the etiology of ovarian, endometrial, and cervical cancers. This chapter highlights the importance of both inherited and environmental factors as risk and susceptibility factors. With the sequencing of the human genome research there has been a greater focus on understanding the role of inherited factors in the different cancers and how they interact with particular environmental factors. With advancements in the laboratory a greater understanding of the biological mechanisms underlying these environmental exposures is also ongoing. These developments should be able to yield new approaches for the prevention of these cancers and biomarkers to assist in early detection.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank Gomathi Visvanathan, Ram Tenkasi, Megan McSorley, Patti Gravitt, and Gloria Zepp for their help.

REFERENCES


35. Berchuck A, Heron KA, Carney ME, Lancaster JM, Fraser EG, Vinson VL, Deffenbaugh AM, Miron A, Marks JR, Futreal PA, Frank TS. Frequency of
mutation in male and female breast cancer families from Iceland with varied


89a. Lancy JV, Brinton LA, Abbas FM, Barnes WA, Gravitt PE, Greenbery MD, Greene SM, Hadjimichael OC, McGowan L, Mortel R, Schwartz PE,


199. McPherson CP, Sellers TA, Potter JD, Bostick RM, Folsom AR. Reproduc-


202. Ewertz M, Schou G, Boice JD Jr. The joint effect of risk factors on endome-


205. Fox H, Sen DK. A controlled study of the constitutional stigmata of endome-


209. Nyholm HC, Nielsen AL, Lyndrop J, Thorpe SM. Progesterone receptor con-


The Natural History of Esophageal Cancer

Philippe Tanière, Ruggero Montesano, and Pierre Hainaut
International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon, France

1. INTRODUCTION

Esophageal cancer is the sixth most frequent cancer worldwide. It is estimated that in 1996 the number of deaths due to esophageal cancer amounted to some 286,000 out of a total of 5.2 million cancer deaths (1). Two distinct types of primitive epithelial neoplasm, squamous cell carcinoma (SCCE) and adenocarcinoma (ADCE), represent more than 95% of all esophageal cancers. Since these cancers are usually detected at a late stage, and current therapy is rather ineffective, the 5-year survival rate is very poor (~10%), with no significant difference observed between developed and developing countries.

More than 80% of esophageal cancers occur in developing countries, where the great majority are SCCE. The incidence varies greatly in different parts of the world (2), with areas of extremely high rates in north-eastern Iran (Turkoman plain) and central China (Henan province) (Fig. 1). In these areas, incidence rates higher than 100 per 100,000 have been reported in both males and females. Other less clearly defined high-incidence areas are found in parts of South America and in South and East Africa. In most parts of Europe and the United States, the age-standardized annual mortality from SCCE is no more than five in males and one in females (per 100,000). However, there are areas in Europe, particularly in Normandy and Brittany in France and north-eastern Italy, where the incidence rates...
Adenocarcinoma has a very different geographical distribution to SCCE. First, in contrast to SCCE, it occurs mainly in industrialized countries. Recent epidemiological data show that ADCE incidence is steadily increasing in Europe and the United States at a rate of 5 to 10% per year (3). This type of cancer now accounts for more than 50% of all esophageal cancers in the United States and in some European countries (e.g., England) (4).

The cellular and molecular natural history of esophageal cancers is still poorly understood. In particular, there are no reliable markers for assessment of exposure to specific risk factors, or for early diagnosis and prognosis. In this chapter, we discuss the data currently available on the molecular pathology of esophageal cancers and their temporal sequence. We present data suggesting that ADC arising in the cardia and ADC of the lower part of the esophagus with Barrett’s mucosa may represent two independent pathological entities. We also show how analysis of mutation patterns in the TP53 gene may help to unravel the complexity of the epidemiology of SCCE. Finally, we discuss how these various lines of research may contribute to better management of the worldwide challenge posed by esophageal cancers.

Figure 1  Incidence of squamous cell carcinoma of the esophagus in various populations and geographic areas. Examples of high- and low-incidence areas and/or populations are shown in Europe, Asia, and the United States. * includes Scandinavian countries, Iceland, and Finland. Source: Data from Muñoz and Day, 1996.
2. RISK FACTORS AND PRENEOPLASTIC LESIONS

Epidemiological studies have clearly shown that tobacco smoking and consumption of alcohol, associated with a low intake of fresh fruit, vegetables and meat, is causally associated with SCCE. However, the relative contributions of these risk factors may vary between geographical areas. In industrialized countries, it is estimated that 90% of this cancer is attributable to tobacco and alcohol consumption, with a multiplicative effect in individuals exposed to both factors. In the Japanese population, a polymorphism in the gene encoding aldehyde dehydrogenase 2 (ALDH2) has been shown to be significantly associated with several cancers of the upper digestive tract, including SCCE (5–7). This suggests that acetaldehyde, one of the main carcinogenic metabolites of alcohol, may play a role in the development of esophageal cancer. The consumption of scalding hot beverages is a proposed risk factor, as are betel chewing in South-East Asia and consumption of pickled vegetables and oral consumption of opium by-products in the Caspian Sea area. Conflicting reports have proposed a role for human papilloma viruses in SCCE (8).

Squamous cell carcinoma develops from squamous epithelium according to a classical dysplasia–carcinoma sequence. Esophagitis, a benign, chronic inflammatory disease, seems to represent a risk factor for dysplasia. Esophagitis occurs frequently in response to various types of physical and chemical stress that may harm the esophagus. A hereditary basis of esophageal cancer has been described in the case of an extremely rare syndrome, tylosis, characterized by acute palmoplantar hypekeratosis. The gene responsible for this disease has been mapped to a locus (TOC, Tylosis and Esophageal Cancer) on 17q25, but has not been cloned so far (9,10). Apart from this very rare disease, there is no clear evidence for inherited susceptibility to SCCE, although some familial clustering has been reported in high-risk areas of China. In India, a recent study showed an association between a particular polymorphism in the \( CDKN1A \) gene and SCCE (11).

Adenocarcinomas of the esophagogastric junction include both adenocarcinomas of the esophagus with Barrett’s mucosa (ADCE) and adenocarcinomas of the cardia (ADCC). Barrett’s mucosa is a glandular metaplastic mucosa of the normal squamous epithelium. The origin of this metaplasia is not clearly understood. It is often associated with chronic gastroesophageal acid reflux. However, it also occurs in a context of chronic biliary alkaline reflux, as well as, in some cases, in the absence of a detectable reflux (12). Recent evidence suggests that polymorphic expression of glutathione S-transferase P1 may determine a genetic susceptibility for developing Barrett’s mucosa (13). Barrett’s mucosa is reported to occur in more than 10% of the general population in Western countries. Its risk of occurrence may be increased in obese individuals and by the use of muscle-relaxing drugs.
The origin of glandular cells of Barrett’s mucosa is not clear. Some evidence suggests that these cells derive from pluripotent cells in the basal cell layer of the normal esophageal epithelium, which can differentiate into either squamous or glandular cells. This hypothesis is consistent with the observation that epithelial cells of Barrett’s mucosa show a hybrid pattern of cytokeratin expression, of both squamous and glandular origins (14), as well as of ultrastructural features in both cell types (15). Some authors believe that the metaplastic mucosa originates from the ducts of the normal esophageal glands of the submucosa. Barrett’s mucosa can be further classified into different morphological subtypes (intestinal, fundic, and cardiac). Only the intestinal type is thought to be a preneoplastic lesion for ADCE. The estimated risk of developing an adenocarcinoma among patients with Barrett’s metaplasia is 30–125 times greater than in the general population (16).

The cardia is the anatomical region at the transition between the esophagus and the stomach. It cannot be identified at the macroscopic level but at the microscopic level, it is characterized by a thin mucosa with clear glandular cells and one of the acid-secreting cells that are present in the fundic mucosa. There are no preneoplastic lesions identified as leading to ADCC. The contributions of gastroesophageal reflux disease and *Helicobacter pylori* infection as risk factors for ADCC remain uncertain (12,17).

There are no exogenic risk factors identified for tumors of the esophagogastric junction. Evidence on the role of tobacco smoking is still controversial (18–21).

3. SEQUENCE OF GENETIC EVENTS IN ESOPHAGEAL CANCERS

Table 1 provides a list of genetic changes that consistently occur in esophageal cancers. Mutation of the *TP53* gene is the most frequent alteration described to date, occurring in both ADCE and SCCE at a prevalence of between 35% and 70%, depending on the study and on the geographical origin of the tumors. However, the two tumor types show widely different mutation patterns (see below). In both cancers, mutation of *TP53* occurs at relatively early stages (22,23) (Fig. 2A and B). Prospective studies have shown the presence of a *TP53* mutation in Barrett’s mucosa and in the dysplasia that precedes the development of ADCE (24). In high-grade dysplasia, a prevalence of *TP53* mutation of approximately 60% is found, similar to that in ADCE (25,26). In squamous lesions, mutations have been observed in dysplasia, in normal mucosa adjacent to cancer lesions and in mucosa with esophagitis without any evidence of cancer (27–31).

Recently, two genes encoding p53 homologues, *TP73* and *P63* (*p40,p73L,p51*), have been identified (32). The *P63* gene plays an essential role in the development of squamous epithelia, since mice lacking this gene
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene, locus, or marker</th>
<th>Locus</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>APC</td>
<td>5q</td>
<td>LOH in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCND1</td>
<td>1q13</td>
<td>Amplification and overexpression in SCC and in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2A, CDKN2B</td>
<td>9p22</td>
<td>LOH, promoter methylation, mutations in exon 2 in SCC and ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN1A</td>
<td>6p21.2</td>
<td>Overexpression in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDH1</td>
<td>16q22.1</td>
<td>Loss of expression in intraepithelial and invasive ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COX2</td>
<td>1q25</td>
<td>Overexpression in SCC and in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC1</td>
<td>3p21.3</td>
<td>Transcription shutdown in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC1</td>
<td>9q32</td>
<td>LOH in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR</td>
<td>17pl3</td>
<td>Amplification and overexpression in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAS</td>
<td>10q24</td>
<td>Decrease of expression in SCC and in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAS-L</td>
<td>1q23</td>
<td>Expression in preneoplastic and neoplastic lesions in SCC and ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEZ1</td>
<td>8p22</td>
<td>Transcription shutdown in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHIT</td>
<td>3pl4.2</td>
<td>Loss of expression in SCC and ADC, promoter methylation in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATA-4,Cathepsin B</td>
<td>8p</td>
<td>Amplification in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST1</td>
<td>1q13.3</td>
<td>Amplification in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST2</td>
<td>12p13</td>
<td>Amplification in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRF-1</td>
<td>5q31.1</td>
<td>LOH in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLH1</td>
<td>3p21.3</td>
<td>LOH in SCC and ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSH2</td>
<td>2p22</td>
<td>LOH in SCC and ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYC</td>
<td>8q24.1</td>
<td>Amplification in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOS2</td>
<td>17cen-q11</td>
<td>Overexpression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P63</td>
<td>3q27-28</td>
<td>Amplification in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteases UPA</td>
<td></td>
<td>Prognostic factor in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAB11</td>
<td></td>
<td>High expression in low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(membrane trafficking)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RB1</td>
<td>13q14</td>
<td>LOH, absence of expression in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOC</td>
<td>17q25</td>
<td>LOH in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP53</td>
<td>17pl3</td>
<td>Point mutations, LOH in SCC and in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>4q</td>
<td>LOH in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>5p15</td>
<td>LOH in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>5q31.1</td>
<td>LOH in SCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>8p</td>
<td>Amplification in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSHR?</td>
<td>14q31-32.1</td>
<td>LOH in ADC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>20q</td>
<td>Amplification in ADC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For full gene names and synonyms, see Tumor Suppressor and Oncogene Directory at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/CGAP/tTG1/tso/cgaptso.cgi*
(A) Esophagitis  Low Grade Dysplasia  High Grade Dysplasia  Squamous Cell Carcinoma

TP53 mutations

LOH 3p14 (FHit), LOH 17q25 (TOC)

Overexpression of Cyclin D1,
LOH 3p21, LOH 9p31

Multiple LOH; Amplification of
MYC, EGFR, CCDNI, HST1
Figure 2  A model of the temporal sequence of events in squamous cell carcinoma (A) and in adenocarcinoma (B) of the esophagus. A representative picture of the histopathological steps is shown, and the timing of common genetic changes is indicated by arrows. See Table 1 and text for further description.
die at birth from multiple defects due to improper skin formation (33). This gene, as well as TP73 is expressed in multiple splice-variant forms. Recent results show that the P63 gene and its variants are often amplified in primary human squamous carcinomas of the lung and the head and neck (34,35). Hibi et al. (2000) (34) have proposed to term this gene (and its expression variants) AIS (amplified in human squamous cell carcinomas). Recent studies in our laboratory have shown that P63 was frequently amplified in esophageal SCC (36). Moreover, by immunohistochemistry, the P63 protein appears to be strongly expressed in all SCC. In contrast, this expression is virually absent in ADC as well as in Barrett’s mucosa. These observations suggest that P63 is a key gene for the differentiation of the esophageal mucosa and that its deregulation may be an essential event in the pathogenesis of esophageal cancers.

Other commonly mutated genes include those involved in the control of the G1/S cell-cycle checkpoint. Amplification of CDKN1 (encoding cyclin D1 on 11ql3) occurs in 20–40% of SCCE and is frequently detected in cancers that retain expression of the Rb protein, in agreement with the notion that these two factors cooperate within the same signalling cascade (37). Amplification of CDKN1 has also been detected in Barrett’s mucosa and in ADCE (38,39). Inactivation of the CDKN2A gene (9p22) is likely to have an important role, since this locus appears to be frequently altered by several distinct mechanisms in both types of esophageal cancer (40–44). This gene encodes two totally distinct proteins, pl6mtsl and pl4arf. The former is a cyclin-kinase inhibitor that suppresses the activities of the cyclin D- and cyclin E-dependent kinase complexes which regulate the phosphorylation of Rb in G1 (45). The latter binds to mdm2, a protein that regulates p53 protein levels. By this indirect mechanism, pl4arf acts as a tumor suppressor that utilizes a p53-dependent pathway. Deletion of the short arm of chromosome 9 has been observed in esophageal SCCE and ADCE. Homologous deletions have been reported in both cancer types. However, the most prevalent inactivation mechanism may be specific hypermethylation of the promoter of exon 1, resulting in the silencing of pl6 protein expression. Mutations of the gene can also contribute to inactivation of this locus, although they appear to occur in only 10–20% of the tumors. Most of the mutations described to date affect exon 2, which contains coding sequences for both pl6mtsl and pl4arf. In a recent study, we have analyzed the expression of mRNA specific for pl6mtsl and pl4arf in ADCE, and compared it with that seen in matched, normal esophageal mucosa. Our results indicate that tumors frequently show an imbalance in the relative levels of the two transcripts, suggesting that deregulation of expression may also be a mechanism of alteration of pathways controlled by CDKN2A (46).

In SCCE, other potentially important genetic alterations include transcriptional inactivation of FHIT (fragile histidine triad, a presumptive tumor suppressor on 3pl4) by methylation of 5’-CpG islands (47,48), and
deletion of the TOC gene on 17q25 (49,50). Recent evidence suggests that loss of heterozygosity (LOH) at a new putative tumor-suppressor locus on 5pl5 (51) and 9q32 (52) may occur in a majority of SCCE. Amplification of several proto-oncogenes has also been reported (HST-1, HST-2, EGFR, MYC) (53).

In Barrett’s mucosa, alteration of the transcription of FHIT may also be an early event (48,54). In contrast, a number of other loci are altered relatively late during the development of ADCE, with no obligate sequence of events. Prevalent changes (>50%) include LOH on 4q (55–57), 5q (several loci including APC) (56,57), 17q (58) and amplification of ERBB2 (60) and of 14q (61). Molecules involved in membrane trafficking, such as rab11, have been reported to be specific for the loss of polarity seen in low-grade dysplasia (62,63). In invasive ADCE, reduced expression of the cadherin/catenin complex and increased expression of various proteases are detectable (64).

In both SCCE and ADCE, loss of alleles at loci such as those containing the mismatch repair genes MLH1 (3p21) and MSH2 genes (2p22) has been reported in several studies. It is not known whether these losses are accompanied by inactivation of the remaining allele. The fact that microsatellite instability is relatively rare in SCCE and ADCE (65–68) suggests that inactivation of this DNA repair pathway does not play an important role.

Several studies have shown that the expression of Fas, a cell surface receptor for pro-apoptotic signals, is downregulated and that Fas-L is upregulated in the tumoral cells in SCCE. This could represent a way to evade the immune surveillance of the host (68). In Barrett’s mucosa, Fas-L expression has been shown to be increasingly expressed during the progression to ADC through dysplasia (70,71).

Recently, frequent overexpression of Cox2 in SCCE (72,73) and in ADCE (74) has been reported. Since this molecule is a mediator of inflammation and a regulator of cell proliferation through the synthesis of prostaglandins, it has been suggested that this overexpression could be directly involved in the tumorigenesis of both types of esophageal cancers (72). Whether this overexpression is a cause or a consequence of tumor progression is not known.

Figure 2 proposes a temporal sequence for genetic events in SCCE and in ADCE. Although the two tumors progress through distinct genetic pathways, they have in common the fact that genes regulating the G/S transition of cell cycle are often altered before the detection of an overt tumor. The functions of the products of these genes are complex, with much cross-talk, redundancy and complementarity between pathways. Therefore, it is not surprising that none of these genes, taken alone, represents a reliable marker for risk assessment, early detection or prognosis. The only noticeable exception to this rule is overexpression of cyclin D1 in Barrett’s mucosa.
It is very tempting to speculate that alterations in these genes all converge to upset a critical control point for the maintenance of the integrity of the esophageal mucosa. Indeed, G/S regulation is essential for the delicate balance between proliferation and differentiation which controls the formation and renewal of the esophageal mucosa. Further studies are necessary to elucidate the concerted action of these genes in the development of esophageal cancers.

4. ADENOCARCINOMA OF THE CARDIA: A SPECIFIC GENETIC ENTITY

Until now, it has been difficult to clearly distinguish between adenocarcinomas of the gastric cardia (ADCC) and adenocarcinomas of the esophagus (ADCE) at the histopathological level.

In a recent prospective study (75), we used strict anatomopathological criteria to distinguish between these two types of lesion. Adenocarcinoma of the cardia was defined as a tumor developing at the esophagogastric junction, extending essentially to the stomach for which no Barrett’s mucosa could be identified even by microscopic analysis of the whole junction. Adenocarcinoma of the esophagus was defined as a tumor developing at the lower part of the esophagus or as a tumor developing at the esophago-gastric junction with a Barrett’s mucosa identified at the macroscopic or at the microscopic level.

We found that ADCE and ADCC differ in the prevalence of TP53 mutations, which is lower in ADCC (35%) than in ADCE (50%). We also found several other molecular differences, in particular in MDM2 amplification. Amplification of MDM2 is a common phenomenon in several types of cancer, in particular in tumors expressing wild-type TP53. The mdm2 protein binds and down-regulates the p53 protein, and amplification of MDM2 has been proposed to represent an alternative mechanism to inactivate p53 (39,76). MDM2 gene amplification has been observed in 19 tumor types, with the highest frequency observed in soft-tissue tumors (20%), osteosarcomas (16%), and esophageal carcinomas (13%) (76). MDM2 amplification has been reported to be present in SCCE from Europe (39) and Japan (18%) (77). In our series, amplification of the MDM2 gene was detected in 22% of ADCC, but in only one of the ADCE tested. Furthermore, the two tumor types showed different patterns of cytokeratin 7 expression. This expression was seen in 100% of our ADCE, but only in 37% of ADCC. These results suggest that ADCC and ADCE are distinct pathological entities at the molecular level. This hypothesis is supported by clinical data showing that the two groups of patients differ in sex ratio (male/female ratio of 0.65 in ADCC vs. 0.97 in ADCE) and in the frequency of secondary neoplasms in patients with ADCC.
5. LESSONS FROM TP53 MUTATION ANALYSIS

Mutations in TP53 are distributed throughout the central portion of the gene (mostly in exons 5–8) and differ in their chemical nature. In several cancers, specific mutation patterns have been shown to exist. These patterns can often be interpreted as “fingerprints” of the agents or events involved in TP53 mutagenesis, either exogenous (such as chemical carcinogens) or endogenous (such as spontaneous mutations) (78).

The pattern of mutations in ADCE differs greatly from that in SCCE. Whereas the latter shows a very mixed pattern of mutations, almost half of the mutations found in ADCE are C to T transitions at dipyrimidine sites (CpG). This type of mutation represents about 25% of all known TP53 mutations in human cancers. To date, ADCE is among the pathologies showing the highest prevalence of CpG mutations. Transitions at CpG sites are known to be related to endogenous mutation mechanisms. A common pathway involves methylation of cytosine and spontaneous deamination to thymine. The latter step is enhanced by exposure to nitric oxide (NO). Several recent studies have shown overexpression of the nitric oxide synthase gene NOS2 in ADCE, that could be responsible for a high level of exposure to NO.

In SCCE, the pattern of mutations shows wide variations according to the geographical origin of the tumor. In SCCE from the high-incidence area of western Europe, a high prevalence of mutations at A:T base pairs has been observed. These mutations, which are relatively infrequent in other cancers, may reflect a contribution of metabolites of alcohol. This hypothesis has received recent support from studies by Noori et al. (79), who have shown that the mutation spectrum induced by acetaldehyde in the reporter gene hypoxanthine phosphoribosyl transferase (HPRT) resembled that in the TP53 gene in esophageal cancers. In SCCE from eastern Asia, mutations at A:T base pairs are less common but transversions at G:C base pairs occur at a higher rate than in western Europe (80) (Fig. 3). These differences are consistent with the notion that alcohol may not be a major contributor to esophageal carcinogenesis in eastern Asia, where specific exogenous factors may cause a higher rate of G to T transversions. The search for correlations between epidemiological data and TP53 mutation patterns may reveal further clues as to the nature of the agents involved in the etiology of esophageal cancers.

6. GENETIC BIOMARKERS OF EARLY TUMORIGENESIS OR PROGNOSIS

To date, the use of genetic markers and immunohistochemistry has been of little use for the identification, diagnosis, or prognosis of esophageal cancers. However, several recent studies have indicated that overexpression of cyclin D1 in Barrett’s mucosa could be associated with a higher risk of evolution into a carcinoma (38,81). Since Barrett’s mucosa is common in
the general population, the availability of a predictive marker would be a crucial contribution to the identification of patients at high risk of developing ADCE. Other markers which correlate with the neoplastic transformation of Barrett’s mucosa are hyperexpression of P21 (82,83) and mutation of \( TP53 \). Although these changes may be useful for the detection of cancer, their predictive value remains to be ascertained.

Several genetic and expression changes have been identified as possible markers of poor prognosis. In ADCE, a significantly worse outcome has been shown to be associated with the presence of \( TP53 \) mutations (26). Limited evidence also suggests that downregulation of expression of CD44v4 (83) or amplification of \( ERBB2 \) (85) may be predictive of poor survival. Other useful markers may include microvessel density and expression of \( vEGF \) (86,87). For SCCE, predictors of poor prognosis include expression of P21 (83,88) as well as of cyclin D1. \( TP53 \) mutations and loss of p16 expression may also be markers of poor prognosis (43). Other possible, independent factors may include overexpression of metalloproteinase 7, high levels of the proliferation antigen Ki67, high microvessel density (89), and expression of \( vEGF \) (90) and Ki67 (90). In contrast, expression of heat-shock proteins 27 and 70 was found to be reduced in SCCE and to correlate negatively with depth of tumor invasion and distant metastasis (92,93). Moreover, the Fas antigen was shown to be expressed in the upper portion

Figure 3  TP53 mutation spectrum in tumors from areas of high incidence of SCCE in Asia (Lixian country, Henan Province) and in western Europe (Normandy and Brittany, France, and northern Italy). Source: Data from Ref. 80.
of the squamous epithelium (69). Its presence in cancer lesions correlates with good histological differentiation and may represent an independent marker of favorable outcome (77). It is interesting to note that expression of the Fas ligand (FasL) is restricted to the basal layer of normal squamous epithelium (69). However, the prognostic relevance of FasL expression remains to be evaluated.

7. CONCLUSIONS AND PERSPECTIVES

Despite significant progress in the description of genetic alterations, our knowledge of the sequence of events leading to esophageal cancer remains limited. A major challenge for the years to come is to exploit recent advances in high-throughput genetic analysis to better identify patterns of gene expression during the progression of these cancers. Such studies may help in further dissecting the genetic heterogeneity of these cancers and to identify new genes involved in esophageal carcinogenesis. In the long term, this knowledge may help in designing and selecting adequate therapeutic strategies, taking into account the specific nature of the genetic alterations observed in the tumor.

Over the past 10 years, it has been shown that SCCE and ADCE develop through different genetic mechanisms. A crucial aspect of the natural history of these two cancers is what cellular and molecular factors induce esophageal stem cells to switch from a squamous to a glandular differentiation pathway in the pathogenesis of Barrett’s mucosa. Adenocarcinoma of the esophagus is mostly a tumor prevalent in developed, industrialized countries. One of the main problems raised by these cancers is the development of adequate screening assays to identify patients with Barrett’s mucosa or early dysplasias which are at high risk of neoplastic evolution. These patients may benefit from more intensive intervention, including local or systemic therapies. It will also be essential to determine the reasons for the rapid increase observed in the incidence of ADCE throughout Western countries.

In contrast to ADCE, SCCE is most prevalent in developing countries. Major efforts should be primarily aimed at better identification of risk factors as well as possible genetic susceptibility factors. Molecular epidemiological studies should be performed in order to identify the causes of the high incidences observed in regions such as northern Iran, central China, and South Africa. This will require careful, prospective tissue collection. Knowledge of the specific geographical risk factors causing these cancers will allow better primary prevention, as well as possible chemopreventive intervention. It is hoped that a combination of these approaches may lead to a significant decrease in the tumor burden and reduction of mortality in these populations.
REFERENCES


61. van Dekken H, Geelen E, Dinjens WN, Wijnhoven BP, Tilanus HW, Tanke HJ, Rosenberg C. Comparative genomic hybridization of cancer of the gastroesophageal junction: deletion of 14Q31–32.1 discriminates between esophageal (Barrett’s) and gastric cardia adenocarcinomas. Cancer Res 1999; 59:748.


1. OVERVIEW

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), is the most common primary malignancy affecting the liver, accounting for 75% of all liver cancers (1,2). Benign types of liver tumors, which occur very rarely, include hepatocellular adenoma, hemangioma, and mixed or mesenchymal hamartomas. Primary malignancies of the liver involve a wide variety of cell types, from angiosarcoma to hepatoblastoma and bile duct carcinoma, but HCC is by far the most common of these malignant tumors. Hepatocellular carcinoma is characterized histologically by well, moderately, or poorly differentiated parenchymal cells, with trabeculae ranging in thickness from two to eight cells and separated by sinusoids. Grossly, HCC is more likely to occur in the right lobe than in the left, and may present as a single mass, multiple diffuse nodules, or in a slow-growing fibrolamellar pattern.

Despite rapid advances in knowledge of tumor biology, HCC remains one of the most serious and challenging malignancies in terms of mortality and survival. Early detection and effective treatments are major problems, with most patients coming to medical attention in late stages of the disease. In the United States in the year 2000, for example, the ratio of liver cancer
deaths to new cases was expected to be 0.90 (3), indicating the poor prognosis of this disease and highlighting the need for prevention.

Worldwide, HCC is a serious public health problem with wide geographic variation in its prevalence. It affects many more males than females, for reasons not yet well understood but probably related in part to differences in exposure histories and partly to patterns of sex hormone levels at different life stages (4,5). Several viruses, most importantly hepatitis B (HBV) and hepatitis C (HCV), are major risk factors for HCC in different parts of the world (6) and in certain susceptible subgroups within populations (7). A recent model of future morbidity and mortality, anticipated from the growing prevalence of HCV in the United States, predicts that between 2010 and 2019 there will be 27,200 deaths from HCC and $10.7 billion in direct medical expenditures for HCV-related diseases (8). Fortunately, the wide availability of an existing vaccine for HBV and the anticipated development of a vaccine for HCV offer hope of the primary prevention of viral hepatitis-associated HCC, especially as childhood vaccination against these viral diseases becomes routine around the world (9).

Several environmental risk factors for HCC are known: definitely alcohol abuse, aflatoxin, and certain herbicides and industrial solvents, and perhaps tobacco in susceptible individuals. Public health strategies to reduce the impacts of these risk factors will continue to evolve as new information from basic research and epidemiological studies clarifies the role of these agents in HCC causality. Finally, as new molecular tools are being applied to study human genetic susceptibility to viral and environmental risk factors of HCC, medical science is poised to understand more fully the biology and natural history of HCC, and ways to diagnose, treat, and prevent this serious disease.

2. PREVALENCE OF HEPATOCELLULAR CARCINOMA

The prevalence of HCC exhibits striking geographical prevalence, suggesting possible etiologic differences in genetic, environmental, or social risk factors. Hepatocellular carcinoma ranks eighth among the world’s most common cancers, and is particularly common in parts of Africa and eastern Asia (Table 1). The incidence of HCC per 100,000 persons is extremely high in China and in Eastern, Middle, and Western Africa, and varies considerably by sex (10,11). Rates as high as 113 among males and 31 among females in Mozambique, and 65 among males and 25 among females in Zimbabwe have been reported (12). In comparison, HCC rates in Europe and in North America are generally reported to be below 6 per 100,000 persons, with consistently higher rates among males than among females (Table 1).

Not surprisingly, the highest rates of HCC tend to occur in areas of the world with high rates of chronic HBV and/or HCV infections (13–15). These viral risk factors are discussed below.
The consistent pattern of higher rates in males compared to females suggests that HCC might be influenced by environmental or hormonal factors. For example, males might experience higher levels of exposures to carcinogens, or tend to be exposed earlier in life, compared to females. This hypothesis is supported by evidence of different rates of alcohol consumption and heavy cigarette smoking between men and women, particularly in Asian societies in which fewer women than men drink or smoke cigarettes regularly (4,16). Male–female variations in liver cancer incidence may also reflect hormonal influences. Some case–control studies have reported an association between oral contraceptive use in women and the risk of HCC. For example, Yu et al. (17) reported an odds ratio (OR) of 3.0 (95% CI 1.0–8.8) for this exposure, and an even higher risk among those who used oral contraceptives for 5 or more years (OR=5.5; 95% CI 1.2–24.8). Lui et al. (5) proposed that the growth of HCC tumors is significantly delayed among females compared to males, due to high levels of estradiol metabolized in the livers of women during their reproductive years. Supporting this hypothesis is the observation that 2-methoxyestradiol, a metabolite of estradiol produced in the liver, inhibits the growth of various tumors in situ. Also, a prospective study of nearly 10,000 men in Taiwan (18) found that elevated testosterone levels were associated with increased risk of HCC, even after adjusting for viral markers, age, and other risk factors, suggesting a role for androgens in the etiology of primary liver tumors. The clinical implications of these observations is not yet clear.

### Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age-Standardized Rates of Liver Cancer Incidence (Per 100,000 Persons) by Sex and Area, 1990</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southeast Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micronesia and Polynesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **GENDER DIFFERENCES**

The consistent pattern of higher rates in males compared to females suggests that HCC might be influenced by environmental or hormonal factors. For example, males might experience higher levels of exposures to carcinogens, or tend to be exposed earlier in life, compared to females. This hypothesis is supported by evidence of different rates of alcohol consumption and heavy cigarette smoking between men and women, particularly in Asian societies in which fewer women than men drink or smoke cigarettes regularly (4,16). Male–female variations in liver cancer incidence may also reflect hormonal influences. Some case–control studies have reported an association between oral contraceptive use in women and the risk of HCC. For example, Yu et al. (17) reported an odds ratio (OR) of 3.0 (95% CI 1.0–8.8) for this exposure, and an even higher risk among those who used oral contraceptives for 5 or more years (OR=5.5; 95% CI 1.2–24.8). Lui et al. (5) proposed that the growth of HCC tumors is significantly delayed among females compared to males, due to high levels of estradiol metabolized in the livers of women during their reproductive years. Supporting this hypothesis is the observation that 2-methoxyestradiol, a metabolite of estradiol produced in the liver, inhibits the growth of various tumors in situ. Also, a prospective study of nearly 10,000 men in Taiwan (18) found that elevated testosterone levels were associated with increased risk of HCC, even after adjusting for viral markers, age, and other risk factors, suggesting a role for androgens in the etiology of primary liver tumors. The clinical implications of these observations is not yet clear.
The relative contributions of the male and female sex hormones to HCC risk may also depend on other patient characteristics, such as HBV status and cirrhosis, as suggested in a recent prospective study of male cirrhotic patients at risk for HCC (19). In this study, serially collected serum samples were analyzed for levels of free testosterone, estradiol, and other markers in relation to the risk of developing HCC during 5 years of follow-up. The results indicated significant associations of increasing free testosterone level and elevated testosterone:estradiol ratio with increased risk of HCC, even after statistical adjustment for age, viral markers, and other clinical factors. This suggests that male sex hormones may promote the oncogenesis of HCC in male patients with cirrhosis. It remains to be seen whether a more general phenomenon of hormone-associated HCC risk exists among noncirrhotic individuals.

4. INFECTIOUS AGENTS

4.1. Hepatitis B Virus

Hepatitis B virus is a DNA virus with a circular genome of approximately 3.2 kilobases. Four open reading frames code for the different viral antigens. Hepatitis B virus is the only known human hepadnavirus. Six genotypes, A–F, have been identified. It is host-specific for humans and has a high affinity for infecting hepatocytes.

Hepatitis B virus infection occurs worldwide, but the highest population prevalence of chronic HBV infection is found in Southeast Asia (East of India and excluding Japan), sub-Saharan Africa, north-central South America, and the North American Arctic. Presence of antibodies to the hepatitis B core antigen (anti-HBc) reliably identifies any previous HBV infection. HBV surface antigen (HBsAg), the foremost marker for active HBV infection, was discovered in 1965 by Blumberg (20). HBsAg in serum becomes measurable at the end of a 4–12-week incubation period and typically persists in chronic HBV infection. However, the occurrence of occult HBV infection, defined as the presence of HBV DNA in liver tissue or serum in the absence of measurable HBsAg, has been described as well (21,22). This situation is particularly common in cases of dual HBV and HCV infection, hinting at viral interference and at least partial suppression of HBV replication by HCV (23).

Hepatitis B virus can be isolated from most body fluids of infected individuals. It is quite stable in the environment (24), and is effectively transmitted parenterally, sexually, and vertically. In industrialized countries, sexual transmission and transmission through needle sharing among drug users predominate. In hyperendemic areas of the developing world, perinatal transmission is very common. Healthcare workers are at risk of HBV infection through needle stick injuries, and healthcare clients through the reuse of nonsterile medical equipment.
Based on the considerable time lag between initial HBV viremia and the manifestation of acute symptoms, HBV itself is considered a noncytopathic virus. Its associated hepatocellular destruction is mainly a function of the HBV-directed immune response (25). HBV usually causes only mild clinical disease upon infection (26). The rate of symptomatic infections increases with age, and approximately 25% of adults with HBV show signs of hepatic dysfunction, including fatigue and jaundice. Cases of fulminant hepatitis with an associated high mortality are rare and also most common in older individuals.

Almost all (90–95%) infected adults clear the virus within a few months. Only a minority of cases develops chronic HBV infection. The rate of chronicity is inversely associated with age—younger age at the time of infection confers higher risk of chronic infection. For vertical transmission from mother to child (either at birth or in early childhood), the rate of chronic infections is as high as 80%. In those subjects who are chronically infected, the annual rate of HBsAg clearance is approximately 1% (27). Over time, approximately 10–30% of those chronically infected show some clinical signs of active hepatitis. The symptoms reflect inflammatory and necrotic histology in the liver, which can progress to cirrhosis and HCC. Hepatitis B virus infection acquired early in life carries the highest risk of HCC (15,28). There is some evidence that the HBV associated risk of HCC may also depend on the viral genotype (29).

The risk of HCC in Taiwan is almost 200 times higher in HBV-infected persons than in those not infected. It has been estimated that approximately 40% of chronic HBV-infected Chinese males die of cirrhosis or HCC (15). In Western countries, this risk ratio is significantly lower, probably due to a higher average age at infection and competing risk factors for mortality: In Italy, for example, Donato et al. (30) found an odds ratio of 11.4 for HBsAg-positivity (95% CI 5.7–22.8) in 172 HCC cases compared to 332 matched hospital controls.

Multiple studies have measured disease progression. In 66 Italian HBsAg-positive (anti-HCV negative) patients with cirrhosis followed for an average of 64.5 months, Chiramonte et al. (31) observed an annual rate of progression to HCC of 2% (95% CI 0.4–3.6). Male gender and age over 50 years were independent predictors of HCC development. In Japan, Ikeda et al. (32) measured 2.1%, 4.8%, and 18.8% of HCC development in a cohort of 645 cirrhotic patients with HBsAg (and no HCV markers) at 5, 10, and 15 years of follow-up, respectively.

Hepatitis B virus-associated hepatocarcinogenesis is thought to occur through both direct and indirect pathways: indirectly, malignant cell transformations can be a result of decades of immune-mediated hepatocellular injury and mitogenic regeneration in response to HBV infection. This process allows for the accumulation of mutations and can give rise to the formation of hyperplastic nodules and subsequent HCC. A high hepatocyte
proliferation rate, as well as signs of irregular regeneration in liver biopsy samples, have been found to be predictive for the development of HCC (33,34).

In addition to this indirect oncogenic action of HBV, HBV DNA fragments coding for trans-activating proteins can integrate into the host genome and directly interfere with host gene expression (35,36). Chimeric HBV sequences are found in about 80% of HBV-associated HCC (37) and have been shown to transform cell lines in vitro (38). Sequences coding for the hepatitis X antigen (HBxAg) are especially implicated in HCC development, particularly if integrated in proximity to oncogenes or tumor-suppressor protein-encoding genes (39–41). Studies have demonstrated that inserted HBV DNA can indirectly inactivate the p53 tumor-suppressor gene (42,43) and inhibit negative growth regulatory pathways that normally prevent unchecked cell proliferation (44). Any impairment of the cellular DNA repair and growth regulatory systems also opens the door to potential co-carcinogens (45,46). Recent research has identified highly complex viral–host–environment interactions involved in HBV-related carcinogenesis (47,48).

A safe and effective recombinant vaccine for HBV is available (49). A high cost still precludes its general use in some of the most affected populations in industrialized and developing countries alike. However, studies in Taiwan have demonstrated the spectacular preventive effect that general HBV vaccination can have in a high prevalence population with high rates of perinatal transmission: the incidence of HCC in children aged 6–9 was reduced by three quarters, in those born after the implementation of nationwide HBV childhood vaccination in 1984, compared to children born before universal HBV vaccination (50). The World Health Organization’s “Expanded Programme of Immunizations” (EPI) has recommended inclusion of the HBV vaccine into national vaccination programs (51).

Regrettably, the vaccine is of no help to those estimated 350 million people worldwide (52) already chronically infected and ultimately at risk for HCC. Treatment with interferon-alpha (IFN-alpha) until recently was the only option for therapy of chronic HBV infection (53). However, this form of therapy is expensive, has considerable side effects and is only successful in certain populations of patients. More recently, the better tolerated nucleoside-analogue lamivudine has been approved for therapy of chronic HBV infections. The drug has shown reduction of hepatic inflammation in 38–52% of treated patients, as well as sustained clearance of HBV DNA from serum in 65% (54,55). The successful combination of therapy with IFN-alpha and lamivudine has been described by Schalm et al. (56).

Aside from vaccination, prevention of HBV infection relies on education about the risks and prevention of sexually transmitted diseases, addiction treatment, and needle exchange programs for intravenous (IV) drug users, and the introduction and upkeep of good hygiene practices in medicine and alternative medicine.
4.2. Hepatitis C Virus

Hepatitis C virus is an RNA virus, taxonomically grouped into the family \textit{Flaviviridae}. Its positive-stranded RNA is 9.4 kilobases long and constitutes a single open reading frame. Hepatitis C virus was first cloned by Choo et al. in 1989 (57) and subsequently shown to be the most common etiologic agent for what had been previously labeled “non-A, non-B hepatitis.” Serological testing methods for HCV antibodies were published in 1989 (58); polymerase chain reaction (PCR) protocols for the detection of viral RNA in serum became available shortly thereafter (59,60).

Humans are the only natural host of HCV, though chimpanzees can be experimentally infected. The virus displays a marked hepatotropism and replicates primarily in hepatocytes (61–63). There are currently six genotypic groups of virus isolates, encompassing multiple subtypes. Immunity against one strain may not confer immunity against another (64,65), and infections of mixed genotypes are possible. Moreover, the virus has a tendency to produce quasispecies within the infected host, probably as a response to immune pressure (66).

Transmission of HCV occurs mainly through blood contact, resulting in a high potential for iatrogenic transmission of the virus. In developed countries, population subgroups at risk of HCV infection are those who received blood or blood products that were either not screened for HCV or did not undergo viral inactivation (67,68), injection drug users who share injection equipment (69,70), patients with renal failure undergoing dialysis (71), and healthcare workers at risk for needle stick injuries (72,73). Household, sexual, and perinatal transmission of HCV are known to occur (74), but the risk of transmission via these routes of exposure is considered low. A small percentage of persons with antibody to HCV have no known risk factor for HCV infection (75). However, it has been found that stigmatized risk factors like IV drug use are likely to be denied by study participants in risk factor studies, even if present (76).

In developing countries, the major routes of HCV transmission are apt to be medical and dental procedures carried out with nonsterile equipment, skin-breaking practices in traditional medicine, and injection drug use (77,78).

Hepatitis C virus is found worldwide, but published antibody prevalence in the general population varies widely between less than 1% and more than 20%. Prevalence in developing countries is typically higher than in industrialized countries. Within populations, prevalence typically rises with age and is inversely related with socioeconomic status (75,79). Genotypes 1a, 1b, 2a, and 2b are most common in Europe and the Americas; types 1a, 2a, and 2b in East Asia; type 3 in Southeast Asia; type 4 in the Middle East and type 5 in Southern Africa (80). In some areas, genotypes show distinctive age profiles, suggesting cohort-specific waves of epidemics (81). Chronic infection with HCV is considered carcinogenic to humans by the IARC (82).
Little acute hepatitis, and very little fulminant hepatitis (<1%) is associated with HCV infection. Instead, approximately 70% of incident infections are asymptomatic during the early phase of infection. Within months, 15–30% of newly infected persons clear the virus permanently. The other 70–85% remain HCV infected. Approximately 50% will progress to some level of chronic hepatitis 10–15 years after infection, often with progressive fibrotic changes in the liver. The most serious long-term sequelae of HCV infection, cirrhosis and HCC, develop in only a minority of chronic carriers decades after infection. Approximately 15% of those initially infected will become cirrhotic. Only 1–4% will develop HCC—typically through the intermediary step of cirrhosis.

The association between HCV infection and HCC was established by a series of epidemiological studies: Kiyosawa et al. (83) retrospectively evaluated a group of transfusion HCV-infected patients with chronic non-A, non-B hepatitis. Serial liver biopsies in some patients described a progression from inflammation of varying severity, via fibrosis and cirrhosis, to HCC. The time between presumed infection and development of HCC was 17–60 years, most commonly more than 30 years. To investigate the effect of HCV on HCC aside from HBV infections in the United States, Hasan et al. (84) studied the prevalence of anti-HCV in a group of 59 HBsAg negative cases of HCC. The study found 66% of the HCC cases to have evidence of HCV infection, compared to 0.5% in blood donors. In Japan, a study of 105 HBsAg-negative HCC cases and blood donor controls found 76% anti-HCV prevalence in the cases compared to 1% in the controls (85). A meta-analysis by Resnick and Koff (86) calculated an OR of 25 for anti-HCV positivity in HCC cases compared to controls.

Progression of chronic HCV to HCC was studied in multiple cohorts of patients with cirrhosis. Fattovich et al. (87) observed 384 European patients with compensated HCV-related cirrhosis. In over 11 years of follow-up, 29 patients developed HCC, with an average yearly incidence of 1.4%. In Japan, Ikeda et al. (32) found HCC progression rates of 4.8%, 13.6%, and 26% among 1500 anti-HCV positive (HBsAg-negative) cirrhotics after 5, 10, and 15 years of follow-up, respectively. Degos et al. (88) followed 416 patients with HCV-related uncomplicated Child–Pugh A cirrhosis and found an even higher rate of HCC, with 13.4% of patients developing liver cancer within 5 years. Tong et al. (89) followed a cohort of patients presumably infected through unscreened blood transfusions for a specified time before being referred to their hospital for chronic hepatitis. In this cohort, the average time from infection to development of symptomatic chronic hepatitis was 13.7 years, to cirrhosis 20.6 years, and to HCC 28.3 years. Moreover, HCV-associated disease apparently progressed faster in those infected over the age of 50 compared to those infected earlier in life (mean time to HCC: 14.7 and 31.5 years, respectively).
The epidemiological evidence for a causal relationship between chronic HCV infection, cirrhosis and HCC is compelling. In contrast to HBV, the mechanism of HCV carcinogenesis seems to indirect, through the intermediate step of cirrhosis: the accelerated cell cycle of constant compensatory regeneration as a response to chronic viral and immune-mediated hepatocellular injury carries an increased risk of malignant transformations. The exact molecular oncogenic mechanism associated with HCV is still unclear (90).

The etiology of HCC cases without underlying cirrhosis (approximately 10%) and their relation to HCV infection also remains obscure (91). Possibly their etiology is fundamentally different despite the occasional presence of HCV markers. Kubo et al. (92) showed that HCC without cirrhosis was more common in HCV-positive patients also having anti-HBc evidence of a previous HBV infection, than in those with markers for HCV only.

There are few data on chronicity rates and clinical course of chronic HCV infection in children. Two studies of transfusion-infected children in Germany and Japan found low rates of clinical and morphological liver disease, and no cases of HCC after up to 27 years of follow-up (93,94). Results from other studies concur that children seem to experience a comparatively mild course of chronic HCV infection compared to adults (95,96). For persons infected early in their lifetime, a slow and mild course of chronic HCV infection may confer a lower risk of HCC development per year or decade compared to those infected as adults. However, their cumulative risk of HCC development may be higher, reflecting longer durations of lifelong chronic infections.

Currently there is no vaccination available for HCV. The main impediment for the development of a vaccine is the highly variable nature of the virus. Due to the existence of multiple genotypes, a multivalent vaccine approach will likely be needed. The isolation of stable viral epitopes that elicit a protective immune response is complicated by the existence of quasispecies within individual hosts. Additional obstacles are the lack of an in vitro culture system for HCV and an animal model aside from chimpanzees.

The main focus of primary prevention of HCV infection thus lies in the interruption of transmission via iatrogenic and accidental exposure to infected blood. In the developed world, HCV transmission through contaminated blood and blood products has been all but eliminated since the advent of anti-HCV screening in the early 1990s. An area of great concern is the continued spread of HCV in populations of illicit drug users. Programs aimed at fighting addiction as well as needle exchange projects are the most promising avenues to curb further spread of HCV and other blood borne viruses in these populations.

In the developing world, low levels of infection control in the medical and traditional medicine establishments continue to provide ample
opportunity for the spread of blood borne viruses like HCV. Lack of awareness often goes hand in hand with a chronic shortage of funds for the most basic supplies needed for standard precautions. While large-scale vaccination campaigns are generally conducted in a safe manner due to international involvement and monitoring, other medical procedures may carry a substantial risk of HCV transmission—especially where HCV prevalence in the population is already high. Programs need to be instituted guaranteeing the safety of the blood supply, the single-use of nonsterilizable syringes, the sterilization of medical instruments and the safe disposal of medical wastes.

Chronic HCV infection can be treated with a combination therapy of IFN-alpha and ribavirin (97,98). Sustained biochemical and virological response to this drug combination is achieved in around 40–50% of the cases and depends, among other factors, on viral genotype (99,100). High cost and considerable side effects preclude widespread use of this form of therapy in the most severely HCV-affected countries in the developing world.

Multiple studies of cohorts of interferon-treated patients with chronic HCV infection have reported reduced incidence of HCC in patients with sustained virological or even just transient biochemical response to treatment (101–106). Possibly the treatment is able to slow or halt the cirrhotic process and thus interrupt HCV’s carcinogenic mechanism. However, it has also been suggested that those who respond to therapy may also be the cirrhotic patients at lower risk from HCC in the first place (107).

4.3. Viral Interactions

Multiple studies have shown at least additive and potentially multiplicative effects of dual, or even triple, infections with hepatitis viruses on the risk of HCC (30,108–112). Chiramonte et al. (31) described an annual rate of progression from cirrhosis of 2% in HBsAg-positive patients, 3.7% in anti-HCV positive patients, and 6.4% in patients with both markers present. The risk of HCC in dually infected patients was 2.3 times (95% CI 1.1–4.6) as high as that in patients infected with only HBV. The mechanism behind this phenomenon may be an increased level (or duration) of fibrotic and cirrhotic activity associated with such at least partially concomitant infections. As in simple HCV infection, the resultant accelerated process of tissue regeneration may bear an increased risk of cell transformation and malignancy.

Hepatitis D virus (HDV) is an RNA virus dependent on HBV as a helper virus, co-infecting or super-infecting varying proportions of HBV carriers worldwide. Dual infection with HBV and HDV has been implicated in more rapid progression of chronic liver disease to HCC (113,114).

Some reports from high prevalence areas in Japan indicate at a potential interaction between HCV and the human T-lymphotropic virus type I (HTLV-I) with regard to the development of HCC (115–118). In dual infections with HCV and the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) higher levels of HCV viremia (119) and more rapidly progressing clinical liver disease
have been described. The effect of these possible viral interactions on HCC development remains unclear.

5. ENVIRONMENTAL AND GENETIC FACTORS

5.1. Alcohol

Chronic alcohol abuse is associated with an increased risk for both cirrhosis and HCC (122,123). Cirrhosis of the liver is the primary mechanism by which alcohol exposure predisposes to HCC, although some researchers believe that alcohol itself may be carcinogenic either by affecting the metabolism and distribution of other carcinogens (124) or through nutritional imbalances often associated with alcoholism (125).

Most HCC tumors are found in cirrhotic livers, and the epidemiology of HCC supports the view that alcohol is an independent risk factor for HCC as well as an exacerbating influence on other risk factors such as chronic HBV infection, depending on the prevalence of these factors in the population under study. In areas of low HCC incidence, for example, where HBV and HCV are rare, alcohol-induced cirrhosis may be the major risk factor associated with HCC, with a much higher attributable risk in the population relative to other factors (126,127). In high-incidence areas, it has been observed that alcohol consumption alters the natural history of HCV infection, leading to a more rapid histological and clinical progression to HCC compared to nonalcoholic HCV carriers (2,128). Thus, it has been often recommended that HCV-infected persons avoid excessive alcohol consumption in order to reduce the risks of progressive liver disease and cancer.

Genetic variations among individuals in their capacity to detoxify ethanol may play an additional role in susceptibility to HCC. Ethanol metabolism is mediated by several enzymes, including alcohol dehydrogenase and cytochrome p450 2E1, both of which are encoded by genes known to be polymorphic in populations. Individuals with mutations in one or both of these genes may be at greater or lesser risk from ethanol toxicity depending on the phenotypic consequences of the mutations. A meta-analysis of the Rsal polymorphism in the CYP2E1 gene revealed no association with alcoholic liver disease nor with HCC, while the TaqI allele was significantly less prevalent in persons with alcoholic liver disease compared to healthy subjects (129), suggesting a protective effect. However, there is no direct evidence that the TaqI allele alters the metabolism of ethanol, and the apparent protective effect might be due to linkage disequilibrium with other, unidentified protective genes or factors. More research is clearly needed on this topic.

5.2. Aflatoxin and p53

Aflatoxins are substances produced by the ubiquitous fungi Aspergillus flavis and A. parasiticus which can infect improperly stored grains, such as
peanuts and corn. Aflatoxin B1 (AFB1) is metabolized in the human body to form potent epoxide compounds capable of damaging the DNA; measurable macromolecule adducts are detectable in biological samples, such as AFB1–albumin adducts in serum and AFB1–N7-guanine adducts in urine (130). Considerable research has documented the unique molecular dosimetry of aflatoxin exposure markers, with the development and validation of these biomarkers representing a tremendous advance over the use of dietary questionnaires to estimate the dose.

The metabolism of AFB1 is complex and involves several different enzymatic pathways, with recent discovery of new mechanisms by which the compound is bioactivated and subsequently detoxified (131). Genetic variations in the enzymes responsible for detoxifying AFB1 appear to mediate the risk of HCC, as suggested by a study of epoxide hydrolase genotypes (132). Aflatoxin–albumin adduct levels have been shown to vary according to environmental factors (rural vs. urban, season) and host factors (HBV status, GSTM1 genotype), notably in a study conducted in Gambia, West Africa (133). Aflatoxin B1 is also associated with a mutation at codon 249 of the tumor suppressor gene, p53, indicating that the effects of AFB1 on liver cells may include both direct toxicity of the epoxide metabolites and DNA mutations. Other aflatoxins, such as AFM1, are also cytotoxic and undergo complex metabolic reactions in the liver (134), and are probably associated with increased liver cancer risk.

In some populations, dietary exposure to AFB1 is a major risk factor for HCC (135–137); however, analysis of cancer risk is complicated by the dependence of aflatoxin biomarkers on factors such as cigarette smoking, alcohol consumption, age, HBV status, and plasma levels of antioxidant vitamins (138,139). Studies of HBV and AFB1 interactions in populations where both risk factors are prevalent reveal a supra-multiplicative effect on HCC risk. Qian et al. (140) reported from their prospective study of over 18,000 men in Shanghai the following risk estimates for HCC: relative to subjects with neither risk factor, those with HBV only had an OR of 7.3, those with AFB1 only had an OR of 3.4, and those with both factors had an OR of 59.4.

There may be hope for chemoprevention of aflatoxin toxicity due to expanding knowledge of its biotransformation pathways. A randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial is underway in Qidong, China, to test whether oltipraz, an antischistosomal drug with significant effects in reducing hepatocarcinogenesis in animal models, can prevent human hepatocarcinogenesis by inhibiting the bioactivation of aflatoxins (141). Early results indicate that 1 month of weekly dosing of 500 g of this drug resulted in a 51% decrease in urinary levels of a phase I metabolite of AFM1, relative to placebo, while sustained low-dose administration led to a 2.6-fold increase in the urinary excretion of a phase II metabolite (142). The authors of that report concluded that it “highlights the feasibility of inducing phase 2 enzymes as a chemopreventive strategy in humans.”
5.3. Solvents and Pesticides

A wide variety of industrial chemicals and commonly used pesticides has been shown to cause liver cancer in laboratory animals. Among hepatocarcinogenic chemicals that have a high potential for human exposures are: organic solvents (such as vinyl chloride), fumigants (such as ethylene oxide), and pesticides (including arsenic-containing sprays, organochlorine compounds, and chlorophenoxy herbicides). Highly elevated risks of HCC have been associated with occupational exposures to the solvents vinyl chloride and carbon tetrachloride (143,144), which are still used in a wide variety of industrial processes and in certain household products. Vinyl chloride contamination of ground water and landfill sites, partly due to its origin as a breakdown product of other chlorinated hydrocarbon compounds, is a continuing public health problem in some areas (145). Organochlorine pesticides such as chlordane (Kepone) are known liver carcinogens (146). Selected solvents and pesticides that appear to increase the risks for human HCC, listed by the IARC as Group I or Group II carcinogens (12), are listed in Table 2.

Epidemiological studies of human pesticide exposures and HCC suggest a positive association. Hayashi and Zeldis (147) reported that exposure to organochlorine compounds by Chinese rice workers increased their risk for HCC. Sterling and Arundel (148) reviewed studies of cancer and birth defects among Vietnamese populations exposed to herbicides, and reported an OR of 5.2 for liver cancer. Another epidemiological study in Vietnam (149) reported that agricultural workers exposed to organophosphorus pesticides were at increased risk for HCC. In addition to pesticide exposures and agricultural occupations, elevated risks for HCC were also associated with highway construction occupations using asphalt in the United States (150). Finally, concern over potential associations of chemical exposures and HCC may be especially urgent in less-developed parts of the world where occupational levels are still too high: a pilot study recently conducted in rural areas of Egypt (151) reported that serum measurements of organochlorine pesticides, including DDE and DDT, in cancer patients were 50–300 times higher than levels measured in U.S. rural populations.

Table 2  Selected Solvents and Pesticides Implicated as Human Liver Carcinogens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group I (carcinogenic)</th>
<th>Group II-A (probably carcinogenic)</th>
<th>Group II-B (possibly carcinogenic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arsenical compounds</td>
<td>Ethylene dibromide</td>
<td>Chlorophenoxy herbicides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinyl chloride</td>
<td>Ethylene oxide</td>
<td>Kepone, Mirex, TCDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4. Smoking

Cigarette smoking may also increase the risk for HCC but the evidence is not consistent, and the risk may be confined to certain subgroups such as heavy drinkers and HBV carriers. Probably in some of the earlier epidemiological studies the role of smoking was obscured due to the comparison of HCC cases to hospital controls, who might be similar on smoking history compared to persons in the general population, and therefore more likely to be hospitalized than members of the general population. Several such case–control studies using hospital controls as the comparison group, but not all, for example, (152) have reported no association between levels of cigarette smoking and HCC (126,153–155), in contrast to studies using population-based controls which have tended to report positive associations between cigarette smoking and HCC risk (17,156). In the case–control study of Yu et al. in California, the OR was 2.1 (95% CI 1.1–4.0) for any positive cigarette smoking history, while in a larger study in Taiwan there was a dose-dependent association with odds ratios of 1.1, 1.5, and 2.6 for men who smoked 1–10, 11–20, and > 20 cigarettes per day, respectively (156).

Prospective studies of the smoking–HCC association are often limited by small numbers of incident cancers, possibly accounting for the lack of significant associations with smoking in many such studies (157,158). Some studies have found that cigarette smoking can enhance the risk of HCC, when assessed by careful dosimetry or in susceptible subgroups. A case–control study that measured smoking-related DNA adducts in surgical liver samples (159) detected a significant dose-related increase in the risk of HCC among cigarette smokers. Yu et al. (47) examined the risk of HCC in relation to several risk factors, including interactions between HBV, cigarette smoking, and the N-acetyltransferase 2 gene (NAT2) which mediates the toxicity of certain carcinogenic compounds in cigarette smoke. In that study, the risk of HCC among HBV carriers who smoked was elevated (OR 2.67, 95% CI 1.15–6.22) among subjects who were heterozygous for the NAT2*4 functional allele, relative to those who lacked this allele, and no association with NAT2 was found among HBV carriers who were nonsmokers. The use of sensitive biomarkers of exposure and of genetic susceptibility in these two studies may explain their strongly positive results, which are in contrast to weaker associations with cigarettes reported in previous studies.

Finally, the question arises of whether smoking and alcohol both contribute to the risk of HCC, and in what manner: independently, additively, synergistically, or otherwise. A recent case–control study by Kuper et al. (160) examined this question in a comparison of 333 HCC cases (including both men and women) to a group of 360 cancer-free hospital controls in Athens, Greece. In age-adjusted descriptive analyses, both smoking and alcohol showed dose-dependent associations with increased risk of HCC,
with similar trends in men and women. Adjusted for both gender and age, as well as educational level and HBV and HCV markers, the OR for smoking ≥2 packs per day was 2.5 (95% CI 1.1–5.5) and the OR for heavy drinking (≥40 glasses per week) was 1.9 (95% CI 0.9–3.9). The synergistic (i.e., supra-multiplicative) effects of these two exposures are shown in Table 3, in which the OR for heavy drinking and heavy smoking combined is 9.6. When the analysis was restricted to subjects without HbsAg or anti-HCV, similar results were observed for the combination of heavy smoking and drinking (OR=10.9, 95% CI 3.5–33.8). At least one other case–control study (161) has reported a similar interaction between heavy smoking and heavy drinking, suggesting that both factors may be important in the etiology of HCC.

### Table 3
Interaction of Smoking and Drinking in Association with the Risk of HCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alcohol consumption</th>
<th>Never smoked</th>
<th>&lt;2 packs per day</th>
<th>≥2 packs per day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;40 glasses per week</td>
<td>1.0 (reference)</td>
<td>1.7 (0.9–3.2)</td>
<td>1.5 (0.6–3.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥40 glasses per week</td>
<td>2.0 (0.4–11.0)</td>
<td>2.5 (1.0–5.9)</td>
<td>9.6 (3.4–27.5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Odds ratios and 95% confidence intervals shown here are adjusted for age, gender, education, coffee drinking, HbsAg, and anti-HCV. Source: Ref. 160.

6. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

The major risk factors for HCC today are HBV, HCV, aflatoxin, alcohol, and smoking, with additional risks from certain occupational exposures to pesticides and vinyl chloride. The combinations and attributable risks of these risk factors varies globally, with profound implications for risk assessment and risk reduction strategies. It has been suggested, for example, that in the developed nations of North America and western Europe, the population impacts of HBV and HCV on liver cancer rates are relatively low due to the rarity of those infections (even though the relative risks from HBV and HCV are quite high), whereas more HCC cases in those regions may be attributable to heavy smoking and chronic alcohol abuse even though these factors are nonspecific and have low relative risks (152). The situation in other areas may be quite different. Egypt, with a large proportion of non-drinkers and high rates of HCV, may be illustrative of a population with a high attributable risk from chronic HCV infection, with additional risk inputs from HBV and cigarette smoking. In parts of the world where dietary aflatoxin exposure is prevalent, constellations of risk factors may be present, encompassing not only aflatoxin but HBV, HCV, alcohol, and smoking as
well. This is why studies designed to examine different combinations of risk factors are urgently needed to help clarify their impacts on HCC, and to ultimately aid in designing effective prevention strategies at the local level.

REFERENCES


42. Feitelson MA, Zhu M, Duan LX, London WT. Hepatitis B x antigen and p53 are associated in vitro and in liver tissues from patients with primary hepatocellular carcinoma. Oncogene 1993; 8:1109–1117.


74. Dienstag JL. Sexual and perinatal transmission of hepatitis C. Hepatology 1997; 26:66S–70S.


82. IARC. Hepatitis viruses. IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum 1994; 59:1–255.

95. Luban N, Post J, Glynf C. Transfusion associated hepatitis C and G in pediatric patients identified through a universal look-back approach. Transfusion 1999; 106 (suppl.):110S.


120. Lesens O, Deschenes M, Steben M, Belanger G, Tsoukas CM. Hepatitis C virus is related to progressive liver disease in human immunodeficiency virus-positive hemophiliacs and should be treated as an opportunistic infection. J Infect Dis 1999; 179:1254–1258.


Brain Cancer

Randa El-Zein, Yuri Minn, Margaret Wrensch, and Melissa L. Bondy

Department of Epidemiology, M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, U.S.A.

1. INTRODUCTION

Brain cancer accounts for approximately 1.4% of all cancers and 2.3% of all cancer-related deaths. The dangerous aspect of these tumors is that they can interfere with normal brain function that is essential for life (1). The American Cancer Society estimates that 18,500 individuals will be diagnosed with malignant brain tumors in 2005, and 12,760 of them will die (1). Despite the high lethality and inescapable traumatic impact, brain tumors rarely metastasize outside the central nervous system.

Despite the recent increase in the number of epidemiological studies on brain cancer, there is little consensus on the nature and magnitude of the risk factors for it. Contributing to the confusion, in addition to the methodological differences in eligibility and the representativeness of the patients studied, are the variable use of proxies to report information about the case subjects; the choices of control groups; the substantial heterogeneity of primary brain tumors; the inconsistencies in histological diagnoses; definitions and groupings; and the difficulties of measuring exposure retrospectively.
2. HISTOLOGY AND MOLECULAR GENETICS OF BRAIN TUMORS

Any central nervous system cell can become cancerous. Primary brain tumors are currently classified in a manner that reflects their histological appearance and location. Some brain tumors contain a mixture of cell types. Gliomas are the most common primary brain tumors and account for more than 40% of all central nervous system neoplasms (2). Glioma is a general category that includes astrocytomas, oligodendrogliomas, and ependymomas. According to the World Health Organization (WHO) (3), there are four major grades of astrocytoma.

2.1. Astrocytomas

Astrocytomas, the most frequent and most invasive brain tumors in children and adults, arise and take their name from the astrocyte cells.

1. WHO Grade I or pilocytic astrocytomas are the most frequent brain tumors in children. These tumors rarely undergo neoplastic transformation.
2. WHO Grade II or low-grade astrocytomas account for 25% of all gliomas and are infiltrative in nature.
3. WHO Grade III or anaplastic malignant astrocytomas are highly malignant gliomas and have an increased tendency to progress to glioblastoma.
4. WHO Grade IV or glioblastoma multiforme is a highly malignant brain tumor and typically affects adults. This type of glioma has poor prognosis, largely because the tumor rapidly spreads to other regions of the brain.

The identification of the genetical alterations found in astrocytomas led to the recognition that the nonrandom series of genetical changes that take place reflects increase of malignancy and clinical grade (4). Several common chromosomal alterations are observed and lead to changes in the expression of several genes. For example, mutations in the \( p53 \) gene (located on chromosome 17p) have been reported in 40% of astrocytic tumors of all grades. These mutations are primarily found in gliomas in young adults and not in supratentorial astrocytic tumors in children (5). Another tumor suppressor gene frequently inactivated in astrocytic neoplasms is cyclin-dependent kinase N2 (\( CDKN2 \)) or \( p16 \). The \( CDKN2 \) gene is located on chromosome 9p and is inactivated by deletion of both copies of the gene. Loss of \( CDKN2 \) occurs rarely in low-grade astrocytomas but frequently in high-grade astrocytomas (6). Deletions of chromosome 10 commonly occur in astrocytic tumors, and there is considerable evidence for the presence of several tumor suppressor genes on chromosome 10 (7). Loss of heterozygosity at 10q23 has been reported to occur in approximately
70% of glioblastomas. Mutated in multiple advanced cancers (MMAC1) or phosphatase tensin homolog, also known as PTEN, is a tumor suppressor gene located on 10q and mutated in 40% of glioblastomas. Because MMAC1 mutations are rarely found in low-grade gliomas, MMAC1 is assumed to play an important role in progression from low-grade to high-grade tumors (8).

In contrast to loss of tumor suppressor genes, activation of oncogenes increases cell proliferation. The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) gene is the gene most frequently amplified in malignant astrocytomas. The EGFR protein is a receptor for epidermal growth factor, an important stimulant for astrocytes. Amplification of a mutated EGFR allele has been found in approximately one-third of glioblastomas but not in low-grade astrocytomas (9).

2.2. Oligodendrogliomas

Accounting for less than 10% of intracranial tumors, oligodendrogliomas take their name and arise from the oligodendrocytes in the brain. Oligodendrogliomas are less aggressive than astrocytomas but are invasive and can traverse the cerebral spinal fluid (CSF). The ability of oligodendrogliomas to metastasize complicates their surgical removal, but because they are limited to the brain and CSF, some patients have a better prognosis and longer survival. Oligodendrogliomas characteristically exhibit loss of chromosomal regions on 1p and 19q13, and less frequently 9q and 22 (10).

2.3. Ependymomas

Ependymomas are tumors arising from the cell lining of the brain ventricles or ependymal cells. Their growth may block the flow of CSF, causing notable swelling of the ventricle or hydrocephalus. Although ependymomas may move along the CSF, they characteristically do not infiltrate normal brain tissue and are sometimes amenable to surgical treatment, especially surgery of the spinal cord. The most commonly described genetic alterations in ependymomas are deletions of 17p and monosomy 22 (4). Although believed to be derived from astrocytomas, oligodendrocytes, or ependymal cells, gliomas display a broad spectrum of histological features. The variation in the behavior of the gliomas probably reflects the genes involved in their transformation (2).

2.4. Meningiomas

Meningiomas arise from the sheaths surrounding the brain. The growth of meningiomas and the pressure they produce lead to the symptoms of brain tumors. Meningiomas are quite common, accounting for about 50% of primary central nervous system tumors. Because meningiomas are usually
near the surface of the brain, they are often operable and are usually benign. Malignant meningiomas are associated with deletions of loci on chromosome 1 and, to a lesser extent, deletions on 6p, 9q, and 17p (4). Mutations in the $p53$ gene have also been reported in malignant meningioma.

2.5. Medulloblastomas

Medulloblastomas are primitive neuroectodermal tumors that arise in the cerebellum. Medulloblastomas replicate quickly but can be treated with radiation because of their site specificity and early age of onset. They occur most commonly in children and frequently spread throughout the CSF. Chromosome 17p is a frequent site of deletions in medulloblastomas. Other, less frequent, sites of deletions are 2p, 6q 10q, 11p, 11q, and 16q (4).

2.6. Ganglioglioma

Gangliogliomas are tumors containing both neurons and glial cells. They have a high rate of cure by surgery alone or surgery combined with radiation therapy.

2.7. Schwannomas (Neurilelemomas)

Schwannomas arise from Schwann cells, which surround cranial and other nerves. Schwannomas are usually benign tumors and often form near the cerebellum and in the cranial nerves responsible for hearing and balance (5).

2.8. Chordomas

These spinal tumors preferentially arise at the extremities of the spinal column and usually do not invade brain tissues and other organs. They are amenable to treatment but stubbornly recur over a span of 10–20 years.

3. ETIOLOGY AND RISK FACTORS OF BRAIN TUMORS

3.1. Ionizing Radiation

There is reasonable consensus of research that therapeutic ionizing radiation is a strong risk factor for intracranial tumors (11–13). Even the relatively low doses (averaging 1.5 Gy) used to treat ringworm of the scalp (tinea capitis) have been associated with relative risks of 18, 10, and 3 for nerve sheath tumors, meningiomas, and gliomas respectively (11,12,14). Other studies showed a high (17%) prevalence of prior therapeutic radiation among patients with glioblastoma or glioma and increased risk of brain tumors in children after radiation for acute lymphoblastic leukemia.

On the other hand, diagnostic radiation does not seem to play a role in glioma; three case–control studies of history of dental x-rays reported
relative risks of 0.4, 1.2, and 3.0 for exposure to dental x-rays. The evidence is slightly stronger for meningioma, for which three of four studies have shown relative risks exceeding 2 for exposure to dental x-rays. All of the positive studies were conducted in Los Angeles (12,15) and so these findings should be replicated in other geographical areas.

The role of prenatal exposure to radiation in the etiology of childhood brain tumors is unclear. Japanese studies of individuals exposed in utero to atomic bomb radiation revealed no increase in brain tumor incidence (12). Other studies that reported increased relative risks of 1.2–1.6 for those exposed prenatally were statistically insignificant because of the small sample size. Furthermore, relative risks of this low magnitude associated with a comparatively uncommon exposure cannot account for many childhood brain tumors. Parental exposure to ionizing radiation before conception of the affected child has not been shown to be a risk factor for childhood brain tumors (12).

Occupational findings from atomic energy and airline employees are equivocal. A small but statistically significant elevated risk of 1.2 for brain tumors in nuclear facility employees and nuclear materials production workers has been reported (16). However, confounding or effect modification by chemical exposures complicates the interpretation of causality. A large cohort of U.S. nuclear workers was recently re-examined and again shown to have about 15% increased risk of brain tumors (17). There is no consensus about the risk of malignant brain tumor among pilots, although some believe that exposure to cosmic radiation at high altitudes may contribute to a brain tumor risk (18,19). However, a recent study of British Airway flight deck workers did not show statistically significant mortality from brain tumors (20).

3.2. Electromagnetic Fields

The debate on the impact of electromagnetic fields (EMFs) on brain cancer continues, despite largely negative findings. The debate has been prolonged by methodological difficulties with some studies. In 1979, Wertheimer and Leeper reported increased risks of brain tumors and leukemia in children living in homes in Denver near high-current vs. low-current wiring. This triggered widespread public and scientific interest in the potential health effects of electromagnetic fields. One meta-analysis revealed a nonsignificant 50% increased risk of childhood brain tumors with residence in high vs. low wire-coded homes (21). In a meta-analysis of 29 studies of adult brain tumors in relation to occupational exposures to electrical and magnetic fields, Kheifets et al. (22) found a significant 10–20% increased risk for brain cancer among electrical workers. However, they found no evidence for a consistent dose–response relationship with jobs considered to have higher vs. lower exposure. Three recent occupational studies reported an association among EMF exposed workers (23–25) and others did not (26,27).
Studies have not found an association between maternal EMF exposures and brain tumors in children (28,29). Although one meta-analysis has shown a nonstatistically significant 50% increased risk of brain tumors for children living in high as opposed to low wire-coded homes (21), a comprehensive assessment of childhood brain tumors in relation to residential EMF concluded that the evidence did not support an association (30). Another epidemiological study of adult brain tumors [reviewed in Ref. (31)] and a recent large population-based study of adult glioma in the San Francisco Bay area did not provide strong support for the hypothesis that electromagnetic fields in homes may increase the risk of brain tumors (32). In the San Francisco study, 492 adults with glioma and 463 controls were equally likely to have lived in homes with high wire codes during the 7 years before diagnosis. Spot measurements taken in homes also showed no pattern of higher residential electromagnetic field exposures for cases compared to controls (32).

However, measurements of electromagnetic fields are not precise. Wire codes of electrical distribution to homes and spot measurements of electromagnetic fields in and around homes can lead to incorrect exposure estimates (33). Wire codes also do not reflect exposures from internal wiring or sources such as appliances. Spot measurements change over time and do not always reflect the overall measurement in homes. The spot measurements can also be made at places where the subjects spend little or no time. Such assessments also neglect exposures outside the home, which may exceed those inside the home. A positive Swedish study of adult leukemia and central nervous system tumors found increased risks in those exposed both residentially and occupationally but not in those with neither exposure or with only residential or only occupational exposure (33). The Swedish study also was able to calculate residential magnetic field exposures over time because of detailed information available from Swedish power suppliers, which is not available in the United States (34).

Although there is no proof that EMF does not influence the risk of brain tumors, no causal connection has been established either. Methodological and conceptual issues of equivalency make it especially difficult (and perhaps impossible) to prove the existence of no association between power-frequency EMF and brain tumors. Apart from the lack of information about total electromagnetic field exposure and its duration, a more basic limitation in assessing the relative risk is the failure, thus far, to show that electromagnetic fields induce mutations that in turn might promote tumorigenesis and brain tumors (35).

3.3. Diet

3.3.1. N-Nitroso Compounds, Vitamins, Alcohol, Tobacco

Several observations have led to studies of diet and brain tumors. First, in experimental animal studies, N-nitroso compounds have been clearly
identified as neurocarcinogens (36). Other investigators have suggested several mechanisms involving DNA damage through which \( N \)-nitroso compounds might cause brain tumors (37,38). These compounds can initiate neurocancerogenesis through both prenatal and postnatal exposure, although in animals more tumors result from fetal than from postnatal exposures (36). Because there can be a substantial lag between exposure and tumor formation it is conceivable that early exposure could produce adult tumors. Animal studies showed that a wide variety of primates and other mammals are susceptible to chemically induced brain tumors.

In humans, the ubiquity of \( N \)-nitroso compounds has complicated their epidemiological evaluation as carcinogens. About half of all human exposures in the digestive system occur when common amino compounds produced from fish, other foods, or drugs contact a nitrosating agent (such as nitrates from cured meats) in the right enzymatic milieu (37). Equally common external exposures include agents such as tobacco smoke, cosmetics, auto interiors, and cured meats. To complicate matters further, some vegetables have nitrates convertible to nitrites but also contain a high level of vitamins that block formation of \( N \)-nitroso compounds.

A comprehensive assessment of exposure to dietary and environmental compounds is thus difficult. Despite this, many studies have tried to examine major dietary sources of these chemicals and to assess the safeguards against formation of nitrosoureas presented by vitamins such as C and E, which are thought to inhibit \( N \)-nitroso formation.

No consensus has been achieved in human studies. Diet and vitamin supplementation investigations have provided only partial support for the hypothesis that dietary \( N \)-nitroso compounds increase the risk of both childhood and adult brain tumors (37–41). However, increased consumption of foods cured with nitrosamines has been observed among brain tumor cases (or their mothers) compared with controls (42). Also, lower rates after increased consumption of fruits and vegetables or vitamins that might block nitrosation or the harmful effects of nitrosamines have been observed in some, but not all, studies.

Lee et al. (43) found that adults with glioma were more likely than controls to consume diets high in cured foods or nitrates and low in fruits and vegetables rich in vitamin C. The effect was more pronounced and only achieved statistical significance in men. Although the finding is compatible with the hypothesis that \( N \)-nitroso compounds might play a role in human neuro-oncogenesis, the observed patterns also support the hypothesis of oxidative burden and antioxidant protection.

After a comprehensive survey of nitrosamines in food and beverages, beer contamination with the nitrosamine derivative (NDMA) was considered a serious matter, especially in Germany. The source of the contamination was traced to oxidation of malt (44). Beer in several countries was a major source of exposure to carcinogenic nitrosamines, because of the very
large quantities consumed. Nitrosamine derivative was also present in whiskies of various kinds but at lower concentrations than in beer and therefore posing a lower cancer risk probably because of the smaller amounts consumed. In spite of much research, particularly in connection with pediatric brain tumors, alcoholic products have not been implicated in brain tumors (39).

Since tobacco smoke contains polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and nitroso compounds, many studies have sought connections between brain tumors and cigarette smoke. No significant effect has been established from smoke, although two studies report increased risk of adult glioma with smoking unfiltered but not filtered cigarettes [reviewed in Refs. (39,43)]. Both a meta-analysis and a review (45,46) found no clear association between a mother’s smoking tobacco during pregnancy and risk of brain tumor in the child. The suspected role of secondary or passive smoking has more support. Several studies found slightly increased relative risks, generally lower than 1.5, i.e., the order of magnitude associated with some recognized hazards of exposure to passive smoking (1.2–1.3 for adult lung cancer and cardiovascular diseases) (47,48). Tumors most often found associated with maternal smoking in pregnancy or passive smoke exposures are childhood brain tumors and leukemia-lymphoma, with risks of up to 2 or greater in selected studies (49,50). A few studies have found elevated risk more closely associated with paternal smoking rather than the maternal smoking (51). Even in the absence of the definitive findings on the impact of the secondary smoke, the evidence from human studies coupled with demonstration of genotoxic effects on the fetus exposed to metabolites of tobacco smoke, and the demonstrable presence of adducts, should lead to strong recommendations aiming at fully protecting fetuses, newborns, and infants from exposure to tobacco smoke (52).

3.4. Industry and Occupation

Attempts to link specific chemicals to human brain tumors in occupationally or industrially exposed groups have proved inconclusive. In 1986, Thomas and Waxweiler (53) published a comprehensive review of occupational risk factors for brain tumors and established a group of suspect chemicals and occupations. Additional studies in the intervening 13 years have not established a conclusive link between any of these factors and brain tumor risk. Many occupational and industrial studies focused on individuals exposed to carcinogenic and/or neurotoxic substances such as organic solvents, lubricating oils, acrylonitrile, formaldehyde, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, and phenols and phenolic compounds, which are part of workplace exposures and induce brain tumors in experimental animals. Animal neurocarcinogenicity studies, mainly in rats, have shown that susceptibility is significantly influenced by strain, gestational age, and fetal vs. adult status,
factors that cannot be accounted for in or generalized to human occupa-
tional cohort exposure studies.

Animal studies can also test exposures that cannot be tested in human studies. For instance, some compounds such as polycyclic aromatic hydro-
carbons generally induce brain tumors only through direct placental implan-
tation, not through inhalation or dermal exposure as in worker populations. Workers also are rarely exposed to a single chemical but rather are exposed to many chemicals that probably interact to affect risk. Follow-up studies of occupationally induced brain cancer usually consist of too few affected subjects to permit pinpointing the causal chemicals, physical agents, work processes, or interactions.

Thus, no definitive link has been established between brain tumors and specific chemicals or strongly suspected carcinogens. For example, organochlorides, alkyl ureas, and copper sulfate compounds reliably induce cancer in laboratory animals. Yet studies of agricultural workers using these chemicals have about equally often produced negative and positive findings with regard to brain tumor risk. Nor have studies shown excess risk for workers involved in manufacturing these pesticides or fertilizers. In the meta-analysis of brain malignancies and farming by Khuder et al. (54), the 33 studies yielded a relative risk of 1.3 (95% CI 1.1–1.6). Although studies of workers in pesticide or fertilizer manufacturing have not shown an unusual risk of brain tumors, four of five studies of pesticide applicators have shown an increased risk of brain tumors with a nearly threefold median relative risk (55). In an occupational study of women in the United States, insecticide and fungicide exposure was associated with a small but statistically significant increased risk of brain tumors [odds ratio (OR) 1.3; 95% Cl 1.1–1.5] (56). A recent study reported a positive association between wheat producing acreage and brain tumor mortality in Minnesota, Montana, and the Dakotas, suggesting a possible role of chlorophynoxy herbicides employed in wheat agriculture (57).

Because they involve production of many suspect carcinogens, synthetic rubber production and processing have received careful scrutiny by investigators who generally found a median increase in brain tumors of as much as 90% (36,38). A recent study also showed increased risks (58). The by-products of synthetic rubber processing, such as coal tars, carbon tetrachloride, N-nitroso compounds, and carbon disulfide, might appear to account for this increased risk of brain tumors. However, several studies showed no increased risk or a decreased risk of brain tumors in this industry, and studies have usually failed to show a link with a single chemical.

The picture seems clearer with vinyl chloride. Vinyl chloride induces brain tumors in rats, and nine of 11 studies of polyvinyl chloride production workers have shown a median twofold increased relative risk of dying from brain tumors. Some argue, however, that the small number of brain tumor cases and statistical insignificance cast doubt on causality. A recent review
of the association between vinyl chloride and cancers indicated that the role of vinyl chloride in the development of brain tumors is still inconclusive (59). A large cohort study supports this notion, stating that mortality from brain cancer has attenuated, but the role of vinyl chloride is still unclear (60). Another study also did not demonstrate a relationship of brain tumors to the extent of vinyl chloride exposure (61). However, in reviews of animal studies that indicated neurocarcinogenicity of vinyl chloride, there have been difficulties in determining whether the tumors were primary or metastatic (62). Future plans for trying to understand the role, if any, of vinyl chloride in causing human brain tumors need to reconsider the biological plausibility of the association.

With formaldehyde, another long-suspected compound, conclusions for carcinogenesis are elusive. Formaldehyde produces cancer in laboratory animals, and nearly two million workers in the United States are occupationally exposed to it. Thirty epidemiological studies of segments of this large group were evaluated by Blair et al. (63). The unclear result was that the risk was elevated about 50% for those exposed in professional roles such as embalmers, pathologists, and anatomists (63). However, Blair et al., did not find a similar risk for industrial workers with formaldehyde exposure, and therefore rejected a causal role for formaldehyde in human brain tumorigenesis. Other unknown cofactors may obscure the true risk in industrially exposed workers and create a skewed estimate of risk in occupational groups.

3.5. Viruses

Certain viruses, like the suspect chemicals, have been found to induce brain tumors in animal studies. As in the chemical studies, small numbers and negative findings hinder epidemiological evaluation. Repeatedly, calls have been made for aggressive studies of the role of viruses (and other infectious agents), in causing human brain tumors (39,41). The putative cancer–virus connection has been supported by several studies of animal tumor induction by viral exposure. Unfortunately, very few epidemiological studies have addressed the virus–tumor relationship, probably because of the difficulties in designing meaningful studies.

Between 1955 and 1963, 92 million U.S. residents received Salk polio vaccine that may have been contaminated with simian virus 40 (SV40) (64,65). The levels of the SV40 varied among lots and manufacturers. The vaccine was treated with formalin, but because SV40 is less susceptible to formalin inactivation than poliovirus is, the IPV contained infectious SV40. Early cohort studies of cancer in SV40-contaminated poliovirus vaccine recipients generally demonstrated no association between SV40 exposure and cancer mortality among children in the United States (66–68) and in Germany (69). A recently published cohort study specifically
examined the risk of ependymoma, osteosarcoma, and mesothelioma among Americans who as children received SV40-contaminated poliovirus vaccine. The study indicated that exposure was not associated with significantly increased rates of brain cancers, osteosarcomas, mesotheliomas, or medulloblastomas (70,71). Another study also showed no association between poliovirus immunization and childhood cancer among children in England, while yet another study showed a small association between poliovirus immunization and cancer among Australian children (72). Studies of maternal vaccination with the SV40-contaminated vaccines have shown a possible risk between vaccine-related exposure and childhood cancer [and brain cancers in particular (73,67)], but interpreting these reports is difficult because of the small number of cases and methodological limitations. As with other brain tumor investigations, studies of SV40 often resemble case reports and follow-ups, offering hints, clues, or perhaps merely coincidences that must be further tested.

Another virus investigated in a small number of studies is the JC virus, which is commonly excreted in urine, particularly by immunosuppressed, immunodeficient, and pregnant women. JC virus—a polyoma virus similar to SV40—induces brain tumors in experimental animals (74) and infects more than 70% of the human population worldwide (75). Khalili et al. (76) recently detected JC virus in paraffin-embedded tissues from children with medulloblastoma. JC virus was also found in a rare case of pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma (77) and in oligodendrogliomas (78). However, JC virus exists in cancer-free subjects and its connection, if any, to tumorigenesis is only speculation at this time.

Contradicting studies have found that more mothers of children with medulloblastoma than mothers of children without it were exposed to chicken pox during pregnancy. Wrensch et al. (79) found that adults in the San Francisco Bay area with glioma were significantly less likely to report having had either chicken pox or shingles than controls were. This observation was supported by serological evidence that cases were less likely than controls to have antibody to varicella zoster virus, the agent for chicken pox and shingles (80). There is some plausibility that viruses and infectious agents could be an explanation for a proportion of brain tumors, and therefore intriguing results addressing this issue are preliminary.

### 3.6. Drugs and Medications

The need for research on drugs and medications is also evident, as very few studies have examined the effects of medications and drugs on the risk of adult brain tumors. A nonsignificant protective association was observed for headache, sleep, and pain medications [reviewed in Ref. (40)]. Ryan et al. (81) found that diuretics have a nonsignificant protective association against meningioma but the opposite for adult glioma. They also found
essentially no association between antihistamine use and adult glioma but a 60% increased relative risk for meningioma. Three studies have assessed childhood brain tumors and prenatal exposures to some or all of the following drugs: fertility drugs, oral contraceptives, sleeping pills or tranquilizers, pain medications, antihistamines, and diuretics. These studies showed few significant findings. Prenatal exposure to diuretics was half as common among children with brain tumors as among controls in two studies, but twice as common in one study. Prenatal exposure to barbiturates has not been consistently or convincingly linked to childhood brain tumors. As non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may be protective against certain cancers, the role of these drugs in brain tumors should be investigated.

4. SUSCEPTIBILITY TO BRAIN TUMORS

The most generally accepted current model of carcinogenesis holds that cancers develop through accumulation of genetical alterations which allow the cells to grow out of control of normal regulatory mechanisms and/or escape destruction by the immune system. Some inherited alterations in crucial cell-cycle control genes, such as p53, as well as chemical, physical, and biological agents that damage DNA, are therefore considered candidate carcinogens. Although rapid advances in molecular biology, genetics, and virology promise to help elucidate the molecular causes of brain tumors, continued epidemiological work will be necessary to clarify the relative roles of different mechanisms in the full scope of human brain tumors. Genetical and familial factors implicated in brain tumors have been the subject of many studies and were previously reviewed by us (82).

4.1. Familial Aggregation

Because only a small proportion of brain tumors are due solely to heredity, most are probably due to gene–environment interactions. Although findings of familial cancer aggregation may suggest a genetical etiology, such aggregations can be the result of common familial exposure to environmental agents. Some epidemiological studies that compare family medical histories of brain tumor cases with those of controls find significantly increased family histories both of brain tumors and of other cancers. Other studies find no increase for any cancer, with a relative risk ranging from 1 to 1.8 and from 1 to 9 for brain tumors (82–85). These contradictions might be explained by differences in study methodologies, sample size, types of relatives included in the study, how cancers were ascertained and validated, and the country where the study was conducted.

Also supporting a genetical role in etiology are studies of cases reporting a high frequency of siblings with brain tumors, although twin studies have not. In a family study of 250 childhood brain tumor patients, we
(82) showed by segregation analysis that familial aggregation, although small, supported multifactorial inheritance, not chance alone. Segregation analyses of the families of more than 600 adult glioma patients revealed that a polygenic environment-interactive model best explained the pattern of occurrence of brain tumors (86). Segregation analyses of 2,141 first-degree relatives of 297 glioma families did not reject a multifactorial model, but an autosomal recessive model provided the best fit (87). The study estimated that 5% of all glioma cases were familial. Grossman et al. (88) showed that brain tumors can occur in families without a known predisposing hereditary disease and that the pattern of occurrence in many families suggests environmental causes. Given the previously described complexities of environmental impact and the multiplicity of possible heritable factors, more work will be required to delineate how genetical susceptibility affects brain cancer risk.

4.2. Hereditary Syndromes

A few rare genes and chromosomal abnormalities can greatly increase the chances of developing brain tumors. Numerous case reports have associated central nervous system tumors with gross malformations, including medulloblastoma with gastrointestinal and genitourinary system abnormalities, ependymoma with multisystem abnormalities, astrocytoma with arteriovenous malformation of the overlying meninges, and glioblastoma multiforme with adjacent arteriovenous angiomatous malformation and pulmonary arteriovenous fistula. Central nervous system tumors may also be associated with Down’s syndrome, a disorder involving chromosome 21. Three epidemiological studies have found that brain tumor cases are two to five times more likely than controls to have a mentally retarded relative although the result was statistically significant in only one study [reviewed in Ref. (82)]. The heritability of brain tumors is also suggested by many reports of these tumors in individuals with hereditary syndromes such as tuberous sclerosis, neurofibromatosis types 1 and 2, nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome, and syndromes involving adenomatous polyps [reviewed in Ref. (82)].

Although there is convincing evidence that genetics plays a role in most cancers, including brain tumors, inherited predisposition through high penetrant genetical traits to brain tumors probably accounts for only a very small percentage (5–10%) of these tumors (89). In a review of 16,564 cases of childhood cancers diagnosed from 1971 to 1983, and reported to the National Registry of Childhood Tumors in Great Britain, Narod et al. (89) estimated that the heritable fraction of childhood brain tumors was about 2%. In a population-based study of nearly 500 adults with glioma, only four individuals (less than 1%), all of whom were diagnosed in their
thirties, reported having a known heritable syndrome (three had neurofibromatosis and one had tuberous sclerosis) (83).

Another class of heritable conditions are the cancer family syndromes [such as the Li–Fraumeni syndrome (LFS)], so called because individuals in affected families have an increased risk of developing certain types of cancers. In LFS, the cancers include brain tumors, sarcomas, breast cancer, and cancer of the adrenal gland. Individuals with LFS have inherited at least one copy of a defective gene—which can be passed from parent to child.

In some families, LFS has been linked to a gene mutation in \( p53 \) on chromosome 17p (82). In addition, germline \( p53 \) mutations were found to be more frequent in patients with multifocal glioma, glioma and another primary malignancy, and a family history of cancer. In a population-based study of malignant glioma, Li et al. (90) reported that \( p53 \) mutation-positive patients were more likely to have a first-degree relative affected with cancer (58% vs. 42%) or a personal history of a previous cancer (17% vs. 8%). Further research needs to be done to determine the role of heredity, the frequency of \( p53 \) mutations, and whether specific \( p53 \) mutations correlate with specific exposures.

4.3. Metabolic Susceptibility

Genetic traits involved in susceptibility refer to more common genetic alterations that influence oxidative metabolism, carcinogen detoxification, and DNA stability and repair. The role of genetic polymorphisms (alternative states of genes established in the population) in modulating susceptibility to carcinogenic exposures has been explored in some detail for tobacco-related neoplasms but much less so for other neoplasms including gliomas. Due to rapid developments in genetic technology, an increasing number of potentially relevant polymorphisms are available for epidemiological evaluation, including genes involved in carcinogen detoxification, oxidative metabolism, and DNA repair. The first study to report the role of metabolic polymorphisms in brain tumor risk found that the variants of cytochrome P450 2D6 (\( CYP2D6 \)) and glutathione transferase (\( GSTT1 \)) were significantly associated with increased risk of brain tumors (91). Kelsey et al. (92) were unable to find an association of adult onset glioma with either the \( GSTT1 \) null genotype or homozygosity for the \( CYP2D6 \) variant poor-metabolizer genotype. However, when they stratified the data by histological subtype, there was a significant threefold increased risk for oligodendro-glioma associated with the \( GSTT1 \) null genotype. Trizna et al. (93) found no statistically significant associations between the null genotypes of glutathione transferase \( \mu \), \( GSTT1 \), and \( CYP1A1 \) and the risk of adult gliomas. However, they observed an intriguing pattern with \( N \)-acetyltransferase acetylation status, with a nearly twofold increased risk for rapid acetylation and a 30% increased risk for intermediate acetylation.
It is unlikely that any single polymorphism will be sufficiently predictive of brain tumor risk. Therefore, a panel of relevant markers integrated with epidemiological data should be assessed in a large number of study participants to clarify the role of genetic polymorphisms and brain tumor risk.

4.4. **Mutagen Sensitivity**

Cytogenetical assays of peripheral blood lymphocytes have been extensively used to determine response to genotoxic agents. The basis for these cytogenetical assays is that genetical damage reflects critical events in carcinogenesis in the affected tissue. To test this hypothesis, Hsu et al. (94) developed a mutagen sensitivity assay in which the frequency of in vitro bleomycin-induced breaks in short-term lymphocyte cultures is used to measure genetical susceptibility. We (95) have modified the assay by using gamma radiation to induce chromosome breaks because radiation is a risk factor for brain tumors and can produce double-stranded DNA breaks and mutations. It is believed that mutagen sensitivity indirectly assesses the effectiveness of one or more DNA repair mechanisms. The following observations support this hypothesis. First, the relationship between chromosome instability syndromes and cancer susceptibility is well established (96). Patients with these syndromes also have defective DNA repair systems (97). Furthermore, patients with ataxia telangiectasia, who are extremely sensitive to the clastogenic effects of x-irradiation and bleomycin, differ from normal people in the speed with which aberrations induced by these agents are repaired but not in the number of aberrations produced (98).

Gamma-radiation-induced mutagen sensitivity is one of the few significant independent risk factors for brain tumors (95). DNA repair capability and predisposition to cancer are hallmarks of rare chromosome instability syndromes, and are related to differences in radiosensitivity. An in vitro study showed that individuals vary in lymphocyte radiosensitivity, which correlates with DNA repair capacity (95). Therefore, it is biologically plausible that increased sensitivity to gamma radiation results in increased risk of developing brain tumors because of individuals’ inability to repair radiation damage. However, this finding needs to be tested in a larger study to determine the roles of mutagen sensitivity and radiation exposure in the risk of developing gliomas. The mutagen sensitivity assay has been shown to be an independent risk factor for other cancers including head and neck and lung, suggesting that the phenotype is constitutional (99). The breaks are not affected by smoking status or dietary factors (micronutrients) (100).

4.5. **Chromosome Instability**

A number of chromosomal loci have been reported to play a role in brain tumorigenesis because of the numerous gains and losses in those loci. For
example, Bigner et al., (101) reported gain of chromosome 7 and loss of chromosome 10 in malignant gliomas and structural abnormalities involving chromosomes 1, 6p, 9p, and 19q; Bello et al. (102) reported involvement of chromosome 1 in oligodendrogliomas and meningiomas; and Magnani et al. (103) demonstrated involvement of chromosomes 1, 7, 10, and 19 in anaplastic gliomas and glioblastomas. Loss of heterozygosity for loci on chromosome 17p (104) and 11p15 (105) has also been reported.

There are few data on chromosomal alterations in the peripheral blood lymphocytes of brain tumor patients. Information on such changes might shed light on premalignant changes that lead to tumor development. We (95) demonstrated that compared with controls, glioma cases have less efficient DNA repair, measured by increased chromosome sensitivity to gamma radiation in stimulated peripheral blood lymphocytes. This inefficiency was shown to be an independent risk factor for glioma (95). Recently, we investigated whether glioma patients have increased chromosomal instability that could account for their increased susceptibility to cancer (106). Using fluorescent in situ hybridization methods, background instability in these patients was measured at hyper-breakable regions in the genome. Reports indicate that the human heterochromatin regions are frequently involved in stable chromosome rearrangements (107,108). Smith and Grosovsky (109) and Grosovsky et al. (110) reported that breakage affecting the centromeric and pericentromeric heterochromatin regions of human chromosomes can lead to mutations and chromosomal rearrangements and increase genomic instability. Our (106) study demonstrated that individuals with a significantly higher level of background chromosomal instability have a 15-fold increased risk of development of gliomas. A significantly higher level of hyperdiploidy was also detected. Chromosome instability leading to aneuploidy has been observed in many cancer types (111). Although previous studies have demonstrated the presence of chromosomal instability in brain tumor tissues (112–115), our (105) study was the first study to investigate the role of background chromosomal instability in the peripheral blood lymphocytes of patients with gliomas. This suggests that accumulated chromosomal damage in peripheral blood lymphocytes may be an important biomarker for identifying individuals at risk of developing gliomas.

5. SUMMARY

In summary, the etiology of brain tumors remains largely unknown. Biologically intensive studies incorporating new molecular genetical techniques have the potential to increase our understanding of the etiology of gliomas. Use of more consistent applied histopathological classification systems, and greater understanding and use of molecular and genetical markers to classify tumors, should help to create a more complete picture of the natural history...
and pathogenesis of brain tumors. We now know that primary brain tumors have many causes. Because not one cause thus far identified accounts for a very large proportion of cases, many possibilities remain that will enable us to discover important risk factors. Moreover, in the continuing search for explanations for this devastating disease, new concepts about neuro-oncogenesis might emerge, making the study of brain tumor epidemiology particularly exciting.

REFERENCES


29. Sorahan T, Hamilton L, Gardiner K, Hodgson JT, Harrington, JM. Maternal occupational exposure to electromagnetic fields before, during, and after


New Perspectives on the Epidemiology of Hematological Malignancies and Related Disorders

Martha S. Linet and Susan S. Devesa
Division of Cancer Epidemiology and Genetics, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, U.S.A.

Gareth J. Morgan
Department of Hematology, Institute of Pathology, University of Leeds, Leeds, U.K.

1. INTRODUCTION

Hematological malignancies originate in the bone marrow, lymph nodes, and/or other lymphoid tissue with immune function. For decades, hematological malignancies were classified morphologically, culminating in an international effort that systematized the approach (1–5). Recently, a classification was adopted, under the auspices of the World Health Organization (WHO) (6), that incorporated information about normal development and function of cells according to lineage, pathogenesis, prognostic indicators, cytogenetic, and immunophenotypic characteristics (7–10). The epidemiology of hematological disorders is presented within two major sections in this chapter that correspond to the myeloid and lymphoid lineage origins of the entities.
2. MYELOID MALIGNANCIES AND MYELODYSPLASIA

Myeloid malignancies originate in pluripotential precursor cells that normally give rise to red blood cells, polymorphonuclear neutrophils, monocytes, and platelets. Acute myeloid leukemia (AML) may arise de novo or following a myelodysplastic or myeloproliferative state. Myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS) and myeloproliferative disorders (MPD), in contrast, are the clinical consequences of disordered, but relatively complete, maturation (11).

Acute myeloid leukemia comprises four categories in the WHO classification, including: (1) AML with recurrent cytogenetic abnormalities, (2) AML with multilineage dysplasia, (3) AML not otherwise categorized, and (4) AML/MDS that is therapy or occupation related (10). Nonrandomly occurring cytogenetic abnormalities characterizing the myeloid disorders include the Philadelphia (Ph) chromosome, which results from a reciprocal translocation in which the ABL oncogene from chromosome 9 is transposed to chromosome 22 within the breakpoint cluster region (BCR) of a gene, balanced translocations [such as t(8; 21)], partial deletions or loss of whole chromosomes (such as 5q or 7q), and numerical forms (such as trisomy 21). Acute myeloid leukemia is usually preceded by MDS among elderly and Fanconi’s anemia patients, but not in 85–90% of younger patients. Myelodysplastic syndromes are characterized by bone marrow hyperplasia, peripheral cytopenias, and morphologically recognizable abnormal differentiation.

Myeloproliferative disorders, which are associated with bone marrow hyperplasia and an excess of differentiated progeny, include polycythemia vera (comprising progenitors of red blood cells), primary (essential) thrombocytopenia (comprising the progeny of platelets), chronic myeloid leukemia (CML, comprising the progeny of myeloid cells), and chronic myelomonocytic leukemia (comprising the progeny of monocytes) (12,13). Chronic myeloid leukemia results from transformation of a hemopoietic stem cell, is initially manifest by an excess of committed precursors and their differentiated progeny, and, after a typical interval of 4 years, transforms, following a “blast crisis,” into acute leukemia.

Figure 1 depicts the international variation in age-adjusted incidence rates for AML and CML by gender. In general, for both AML and CML, age-adjusted incidence rates are lower for females than for males, although the geographic patterns are similar for both sexes. The highest AML rates occur in Caucasians in northern and western Europe, North America, and Oceania; midlevel rates in African-Americans, U.S. Hispanics, southern Europeans, and Israeli Jews; and the lowest rates in Asians (14). Chronic myeloid leukemia incidence varies less than the incidence for all other myeloid and lymphopoietic disorders, with only a fourfold gradient between the highest and the lowest age-standardized incidence rates.
As shown in Figure 2, AML incidence in the nine U.S. Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) program registries peaks slightly in infancy, then declines until age 10 when incidence begins to rise slowly; after age 40, incidence rates rise more rapidly, with a slower rate of increase after age 70 (15). In late middle age, AML rates begin rising more rapidly in males than in females of both races, and in U.S. Caucasians than in African-Americans for persons of both sexes (Fig. 2). Chronic myeloid leukemia rates are consistently higher in males than in females, and higher in African-Americans than in U.S. Caucasians of both sexes until age 70; among the elderly, rates for African-Americans begin to flatten with increasing age, whereas rates for elderly Caucasians continue to increase linearly (Fig. 2).

2.1. Causes of Myeloid Malignancies and Myelodysplasia

Since few epidemiological studies focus solely on MDS, the literature is summarized for both AML and MDS in this section. Known risk factors explain a very small proportion of the leukemias, but more is known about the causes of AML than of other leukemia subtypes.

Ionizing radiation, consistently linked with increased risk of AML and other leukemias except CLL, induces DNA strand breaks (16). The most
important epidemiological investigation quantifying cancer risks associated with radiation exposures is the long-term follow-up of the Japanese atomic bomb survivors. While the bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki occurred in 1945, follow-up studies of the survivors did not begin until 1950, so cancer incidence and mortality are unknown during 1945–1950 (17,18). A significant dose–response pattern was observed for AML incidence during 1950–1987. Males had twofold higher absolute excess risks than females, and those exposed before age 10 had substantially higher average absolute excess risks than persons who were older at exposure (19,20). Patients treated with radiotherapy for non-Hodgkin lymphoma, Ewing’s sarcoma, and breast, uterine cervix, or uterine corpus cancers consistently experience two- to threefold excess risks of secondary AML 5–15 years after exposure (21–29). Increased AML risk has been observed following radiation treatment for anklyosing spondylitis (30), benign gynecological disorders (31), menorrhagia not associated with malignancy (32,33), peptic ulcers (34),

and tinea capitis (35). In the occupational setting, relative risks of leukemia mortality were 6- to 8.8-fold increased among British (36) and U.S. (37,38) radiologists joining specialty societies during 1897–1921 and 1920–1929, but not in those joining later. Leukemia mortality was modestly increased in U.S. (39) and Japanese (40) radiological technologists who first worked before 1950 or 1960, respectively, and incidence was significantly elevated among Chinese technologists during 1950–80 (41). There is debate on whether diagnostic x-rays are etiologically associated with adult AML (42,43), or merely statistically linked because x-rays are used to evaluate early symptoms of AML (44). In contrast to ionizing radiation, there is insufficient evidence to link AML with nonionizing radiation, such as extremely low-frequency (ELF) residential magnetic field levels (45,46). Also, the data are inconsistent for AML and ELF magnetic fields in the occupational setting (47–56).

Chronic myelogenous leukemia also has been extensively studied in the context of radiation. Japanese atomic bomb survivors experienced a significantly elevated risk of CML (17,19). Radiotherapy for selected malignant and benign conditions, including histiocytosis X (58), uterine bleeding treated with intrauterine radiation (33), and metastatic papillary and follicular thyroid cancer treated with low-dose $^{131}$I (59), has been associated with increased risk of CML in some clinical reports (60,61) and a few epidemiological studies (19,33). Thorotrast, has been linked with increased risk of CML (62).

Benzene-exposed painters, printers, and workers employed in chemical, rubber, Pliofilm, and shoe manufacturing and in petroleum refining (63–68) industries have consistently shown 1.9- to 10-fold increased risks of AML and aplastic anemia. Chronic myeloid leukemia has been reported among benzene-exposed workers in China (69,70) and the United States (64), but the small numbers of cases preclude precise quantification of risk. Excesses of myelomonocytic leukemia (71) and myelofibrosis (72) have been identified among pressmen and printers. Risks were also elevated for MDS, CML, ALL, CLL, or non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL) in a few studies (64,66,67,73–79). Much debated aspects of the findings of U.S. (64) and Chinese (67) studies of benzene workers are risk estimates, dose–response, and latency at low benzene exposure levels (80–85).

Treatment of Hodgkin lymphoma, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, multiple myeloma (MM), polycythemia vera, and breast, ovarian, or testicular cancers with alkylating agents is associated with increased risk of therapy-related MDS (t-MDS) and AML. The risk is related to cumulative dose and is characterized by a typical latency of 5–7 years, a preleukemic phase in 70% of patients developing t-MDS/AML, trilineage dysplasia, and partial deletions of chromosomes 5 and 7 (86). Some alkylating agents (e.g., melphalan), pose higher risks than others (e.g., cyclophosphamide) (24,26,87–92). Treatment with topoisomerase II inhibitors (specifically...
epipodophyllotoxins) has also been linked with elevated risk of t-AML, which is generally not related to cumulative dose and typically develops after a 2 year latency, not preceded by a preleukemic phase, characterized by the t(11q23) translocation (93–95). Platinum-based chemotherapy used to treat ovarian (92) and testicular cancers (96) has been associated with elevated risks of t-MDS/AML, as have treatments with mitoxantrone and methotrexate or methotrexate and mitomycin C for breast cancer (97), and pretransplantation chemotherapy (e.g., mechlorethamine) (98) and/or conditioning treatments (e.g., total body irradiation) (99), particularly at doses >12 Gy, or VP-16 (91) in preparation for autologous stem cell transplantation for lymphoma or other malignant diseases (98). Predisposing genetic factors are currently under study (100,101).

Several large studies (102–104), but not all (105,106), have linked cigarette smoking with small 1.2- to 1.5-fold excesses of AML (107). Thus, the evidence linking smoking and AML is less convincing than data linking smoking with many other cancers. Limited data link smoking with MDS (108).

Many other exposures have been tested for an increased AML or MDS risk, but there are limited data to support them, inconsistencies, or no measurable association. These include painters (109,110); machine operators and assemblers (111); embalmers (112,113); garage and transport workers (114,115); shoe workers (116); hairdressers and cosmetologists (117,118); seamen on tankers (119); and laboratory and science technicians (120). There are inconsistent findings for AML/MDS risk in farmers (121–124), which may reflect the variation in agricultural workers’ exposure to pesticides, fertilizers, diesel fuel and exhaust, or infectious agents (125–130). But increased risk of myeloid leukemia occurred within 10 years in 20,000 persons under age 19 who resided in Seveso, Italy, after an industrial accident contaminated the region with 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorobibenzop-dioxin (TCDD) (131).

### 2.2. Familial Aggregation

Families with multiple members in different generations who develop AML, MDS, or both are rare, but data support the contribution of highly penetrant mutations in leukemia susceptibility genes (132). Some familial AML cases are characterized by monosomy 7 (133,134), others demonstrate loss of the long arm of chromosome 5 (135,136), while yet a third group have other or no karyotypic abnormalities (137). Approximately 5% of AML/MDS may be associated with inherited genetical syndromes (138), such as Down syndrome (139), the bone marrow failure syndromes of Fanconi’s anemia (140), Bloom’s (141,142) and Schwachman–Diamond syndromes (143), amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia, dyskeratosis congenita, and Kostmann’s syndrome (144).
2.3. Genetic Polymorphisms

Because the etiology of most hematological malignancies is believed to be multifactorial, common genetic variants, including single-nucleotide polymorphisms, may influence susceptibility.

The metabolizer enzymes \( GST\ T1 \), \( GST\ M1 \), and \( GST\ P1 \) detoxify environmental carcinogens associated with AML/MDS, such as chemicals in cigarette smoke, ethylene oxide, and certain cytotoxic drugs (145–148). It was postulated that homozygosity for null alleles for one or more \( GST\)s might predispose to increased risk of AML/MDS, due to the inability to detoxify specific leukemogens (149,150). Persons with null alleles for \( GST\ T1 \) were at modestly increased risk of developing de novo MDS/AML in some (145,149,151,152), but not all (153,154), case–control studies. However, three studies showed that null alleles for \( GST\ T1 \) were not related to risk of t-AML (153–155). Individuals with null alleles for \( GST\ M1 \) were at elevated risk of developing de novo AML (151,152) or MDS (156), but not t-AML (154,155), whereas persons with null alleles for both \( GST\ T1 \) and \( GST\ M1 \) experienced an excess risk of developing t-AML (157). Risks of t-AML were increased among patients previously treated with chemotherapy agents that are known substrates of \( GST\ P1 \); the \( GST\ P1 \) codon 105 Val allele occurred more often in the t-AML cases than in those with de novo AML (155). The null genotype of \( GST\ T1 \) was not associated with increased risk of developing t-AML among children treated with epipodophyllotoxins for ALL (100).

The potential predisposing nature of the slow acetylator \( N\)-acetyl transferase (NAT) status to leukemogenesis was suggested by increased DNA adduct levels in peripheral blood lymphocytes (158), but adult AML was not linked with \( NAT2 \) metabolizer status in the large U.K. case–control study (159).

Roddam et al. (2000) (159a) found that the \( CYP2C19 \) PM phenotype, but not the \( CYP1A1^{*3} \) allele, was associated with an increased risk of both AML and sAML; there were no interactions with age, gender, or smoking status for either of these alleles. Among 447 patients with an abnormal karyotype treated in the U.K. Medical Research Council AML clinical trials, the \( CYP1A1^{*2B} \) (Val) variant allele was overrepresented in patients with \( NRAS \) mutation compared with no mutation in both the entire population and the poor-risk karyotype group of patients with partial or complete deletion of chromosomes 5 or 7 or abnormalities of chromosome 3 (160). There were no differences in the frequencies for the \( CYP3A5^{*3} \) or the \( CYP3A4^{*1B} \) alleles between childhood ALL patients who developed t-AML and those who did not develop t-AML (161).

\( NQO1 \), an enzyme induced by synthetic antioxidants and cruciferous vegetables, detoxifies quinones, derivatives, and other natural and synthetic compounds, and protects cells against oxidative stress (162,163). Individuals
who are homozygous for the variant allele completely lack *NQO1* activity, while heterozygotes have low-to-intermediate activity compared to individuals with the wild-type alleles. Disruption of the *NQO1* gene in mice has been shown to cause myeloid hyperplasia of bone marrow (164). Occupational benzene poisoning (e.g., hematotoxicity, particularly leukopenia), which was strongly linked with development of hematopoietic neoplasms in Chinese benzene-exposed workers, was associated with polymorphisms in genotypes of enzymes that activate (i.e., *CYP2E1*) and detoxify (i.e., *NQO1*) benzene and its metabolites (165). The *NQO1* variant allele also appears to be significantly over-represented in therapy-related myeloid leukemias in adults (154,166). In addition, null alleles for *NQO1* predisposed to increased risk of de novo AML in adults (167). Infants with leukemia characterized by *MLL* gene rearrangements were eightfold more likely to have low *NQO1* function than healthy children or childhood leukemia patients with *TEL-AML1* gene fusions or with hyperdiploidy (168). Low *NQO1* function was not more common in childhood ALL patients treated with chemotherapy who developed tAML than in those who did not develop tAML (161).

Limited data suggest that variant alleles and/or mutations in genes involved in DNA repair may be important in the etiology of t-AML and genetic syndromes that predispose to increased risk of myeloid leukemias (169). At least one copy of the variant allele XRCC1 399Glu conferred a protective effect against t-AML in a small case–control study (170). Families with individuals homozygous for mutations in mismatch repair genes are at increased risk for developing hematological malignancies and/or neurofibromatous, type 1, at an early age (171,172). Patients with Fanconi’s anemia, a condition characterized by cells that are sensitive to DNA cross-linking, are at increased risk of developing AML (173,174).

### 3. DISEASES OF LYMPHOID LINEAGE

The WHO classification (6) recognizes: (1) precursor disease lymphoid disorders comprising stem or immature precursor cells, including pediatric and adult forms of acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL), and (2) peripheral disease lymphoid disorders comprising functional peripheral B-cells and T-cells, which include non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), Hodgkin lymphoma (HL), chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), and multiple myeloma (MM) (6,8). Peripheral diseases are further classified according to B-cell (further categorized by stage of differentiation of the cells compared to the germinal center) or T-cell lineage. Understanding of etiology requires recognition of the characteristic genetic instability and highly variable history of the normal life cycle of lymphocytes, which undergo genetic recombination and mutation to generate high-affinity antibodies (175,176).
3.1. Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia

Acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) includes three subtypes: (1) precursor B-cell ALL, (2) precursor T-cell ALL, and (3) Burkitt-cell leukemia (6). Acute lymphoblastic leukemia is the most common cancer in children, comprising about 30% of all pediatric cancers in most populations internationally except in Africa and the Middle East (177). Patterns for childhood ALL, similar to those for adults, demonstrate highest incidence in Hispanics (pediatric ALL is highest in Costa Rica and in Latinos in Los Angeles), and lowest rates in African-Americans, the Middle East, and India (Fig. 3). Pediatric ALL is notably higher in U.S. Caucasians than in African-Americans of both sexes. The age-specific incidence pattern for ALL is quite distinctive, with a peak at ages 2–4, followed by a declining incidence rate throughout the remainder of childhood, adolescence, and early adulthood to a nadir at age 40; subsequently, incidence of ALL rises with increasing age to a second, albeit lower, peak among the elderly (Fig. 4). Incidence rates of ALL are consistently highest in males than in females at all ages.

Ionizing radiation is among the best documented causes of ALL. Exposed Japanese atomic bomb survivors who were less than 10 years old at exposure experienced the highest excess absolute risks for ALL. Risks decreased by 5% for each 1-year increase in-age, and peaked at less than 10 years after exposure (178). The pattern of risk following adult exposure was similar, but with a substantially lower peak also occurring less than 10 years after exposure, the excess absolute risk declining rapidly at 14% per year. Females had a risk less than half of that for males.

While it has been hypothesized that children of radiation workers are at an increased risk of ALL (179), risks are probably very small or not increased. A large record linkage U.K. study revealed a small increase in childhood leukemia and NHL of children of nuclear workers, but no dose–response trend (180). There was no association in a case–control record linkage study in Ontario, Canada (181). Small clusters of childhood leukemia cases in geographical proximity to nuclear plants in the United Kingdom in the mid-1980s prompted large surveys, which revealed excess leukemia and lymphoma in persons under age 25 living near nuclear fuel reprocessing or weapons production plants (particularly the Sellafield and Dounreay plants) (182), but no excess among populations residing close to nuclear plants generating electricity (183–185). Environmental radiation levels measured in proximity to Sellafield and other nuclear facilities were too low to be etiologically related.

Exposure to pesticides also has been extensively studied for ALL risk, where the overall evidence is consistent with an association. In California, excess risks of childhood leukemia were linked with mothers’ and fathers’ use of pesticides and herbicides in gardens and residences during pregnancy
(186,187), with the use of indoor insecticides from the beginning of pregnancy until diagnosis (188), and with the use of a professional pest control service (187). Childhood leukemia in Denver was associated with the use of pest strips in the home during the last 3 months of pregnancy and postnatally (189). Pesticide application on farms was linked with a modest increase in childhood leukemia in Germany (190), as was preconception paternal exposure to pesticides in Quebec (191). Frequent use of pesticides in the garden or on interior plants during pregnancy was associated with elevated risk of childhood ALL in offspring who were carriers of the CYP1A1m1 and CYP1A1m2 polymorphisms in Quebec (192). In contrast, childhood ALL was not associated with pesticide use density at the residence at diagnosis in California (193), nor in relation to parental occupational exposure to pesticides in the Netherlands (194) or Sweden (195), or paternal exposure to chlorophenate fungicides in British Columbia sawmills (196).

Lifestyle exposures also are implicated in ALL risk. Paternal smoking during the preconception period was associated with significantly elevated risks of childhood ALL in Shanghai, China (197), and in the United Kingdom, the latter based on two investigations (198,199), but not in Italy (200). Paternal preconception smoking was linked with an excess of leukemia among children less than 18 months old in the United States and Canada (201). Most investigations have shown 20–30% reduced risks of ALL among children who were breastfed during infancy (202–205), with a declining risk observed for prolonged breastfeeding in two investigations (205,206). Other studies have shown a smaller reduction in risk (207) or no clear relationship (208).

A large literature on childhood leukemia clusters (209–211) suggests an infectious etiology for childhood ALL. Some of the supportive studies utilize such measures as maternal infection during pregnancy (212,213); the type (214–217) and timing (217–220) of childhood vaccinations; daycare attendance (204,205,221,222), household crowding (223); household pets (221,224); and seasonal variation in diagnosis (225–227), temporal trends in incidence among the youngest children (228,229), and ecological investigations assessing correlations of childhood ALL birth and diagnosis data with mycoplasma pneumonia surveillance data (210). The specific infectious agents, however, have not been identified. Screening studies have shown no novel herpesvirus genomes (230,231), or evidence of genomes of the JC and BK polyoma viruses (232) in childhood ALL cases.

Two- to threefold excesses of childhood leukemia were observed in children residing in homes with high levels of extremely low-frequency 60 Hz magnetic field (EMF) exposures induced by nearby power lines based on proxy (233,234) or measured levels in the United States (188) and Sweden (235). Larger studies, however, characterized by more extensive and direct measures of children’s exposures (236–239), and pooled analyses (240,241) revealed no increase in risks for children residing in homes with magnetic field
Individuals with specific polymorphisms in the methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene (MTHFR) have been found to be at reduced risk of adult ALL (242). Folic acid is essential in the transfer of methyl groups to various biochemical targets in mammalian tissues involved in amino acid metabolism and in the synthesis of the purine and pyrimidine components of DNA and RNA (243). The MTHFR and ALL relationship was found for a common polymorphism (677 C → T) that results in reduced specific activity of the enzyme, thus affecting folate metabolism (244,245). Up to 15% of individuals are homozygous (677TT) for this allelic variant (244–246); homozygotes have significantly reduced levels of enzyme activity (245).

### 3.2. Hodgkin Lymphoma

The two major forms are classical Hodgkin lymphoma (including nodular sclerosis, mixed cellularity, and lymphocyte-depleted) and lymphocyte-predominant nodular HL (8). At least 95% of the pathognomonic Reed–Sternberg (RS) cells of classic HL are clonally derived malignant cells of germinal center B-cell origin, characterized by crippling mutations due to functional defects in the immunoglobulin gene regulatory elements (247–251). Approximately 2% of RS cells appear to be derived from T-cells (250).

Hodgkin lymphoma is characterized by a bimodal age-specific incidence pattern in most western populations, with rates low in early childhood, rising to a peak early in the third decade, then declining to a nadir at age 40, and subsequently rising until age 70. In developing countries there is a small peak in childhood among boys, low rates among young adults, and a second peak among the elderly (14). Incidence rates for HL are higher in U.S. Caucasians than in African-Americans in early adulthood. From ages 25 to age 60, rates are higher in males of both races than in females; subsequent to age 70, rates are highest in U.S. Caucasian males, somewhat lower although overlapping in U.S. Caucasian females and African-American males, but decline precipitously in African-American females (Fig. 4).

The differing incidence patterns of HL in economically advantaged vs. disadvantaged populations and the relationship of HL subtypes with social class suggest that HL may develop as a rare consequence of a common infection. Risk is believed to increase if occurrence of infections typically encountered in early childhood is delayed until adolescence or young adulthood (252). Growing evidence, including the presence of Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) genomes in RS cells and the expression of viral proteins and other evidence of EBV latent infections in up to 50% of HL tumors, suggests that EBV is etiologically related to HL (253–255). Infectious mononucleosis, a common viral disorder caused by EBV, has been linked with HL in numerous case–control and cohort studies [reviewed in Mueller (252)]. In large
cohorts of infectious mononucleosis patients in Denmark and Sweden followed for cancer occurrence, significantly elevated risks were seen only for Hodgkin lymphoma and skin cancer. The excess risk for HL persisted for up to two decades, but declined with time since diagnosis (256). Glaser et al. (253) examined data from 14 studies that had applied EBV assays to HL tumors, and found that EBV-associated HL was notably higher in Hispanics than in whites, in those with mixed cellularity than in those with nodular sclerosis histology, in children from economically less developed than in those from more developed geographical regions, and in young adult males than in females. Recently, investigators found a stronger association of a reported history of infectious mononucleosis with DNA evidence for EBV in the RS cells of young adults with HL who typed positive for HLA-DPB1*0301 than in cases who did not type positive for this HLA subtype, which may implicate an inherited component to susceptibility to EBV in the etiology of Epstein–Barr DNA-positive HL (257).

Some occupational studies have implicated exposures to HL. These include employment in agriculture, particularly among those exposed to livestock and meat processing, farming (258,259), and woodworking (260,261).

Familial HL has been estimated to occur in approximately 4–5% of all HL cases, with a male-to-female ratio of 1.5 in the familial HL population similar to that of sporadic HL (263). In a linked registry study in Israel, the interval between lymphoma occurring among siblings was 1–4 years for siblings with concordant types of HL or NHL, whereas the interval ranged from 16 to 21 years for HL/NHL among sibling pairs (264). Elevated risks of NHL and HL have been observed among subjects who had a sibling with lymphoma (265,264) and among first-degree relatives of children with NHL (266). Lymphoma was 2.5-fold increased among siblings of lymphoma probands and the risk of HL in siblings was even higher for identical twins (267), whereas the risk was lower for HL among family members other than siblings. The difference may reflect the greater likelihood of familial HL concordance generally occurring among siblings in the 15- to 34-year age group (263), whereas familial concordant NHL may be more common in parent/child pairs (268).

### 3.3. Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma

The classification of NHL is complex. Follicular lymphoma is characterized by the translocation t(14;18). Occurrence of this translocation in the peripheral blood of normal individuals (269–271) suggests that additional genetic abnormalities are required in the pathogenesis of follicular lymphoma. Large-cell lymphoma in the new WHO classification is clinically distinct (272), combining the previously differentiated immunoblastic and centroblastic NHL and nonendemic Burkitt’s lymphoma (e.g., those
occurring outside Africa) (273). Marginal-zone lymphoma, characterized by an indolent natural history, often presents at extranodal sites (including thyroid, salivary glands, and stomach) that were closely associated with chronic inflammatory conditions.

Internationally, NHL is highest among non-Hispanic whites in the U.S., followed in declining order by rates in Italians, Canadians, Israeli Jews, Australians and Africans-Americans; lowest rates occur in China, India, and other parts of Asia and in Spain (Fig. 3). Incidence of NHL, all types combined, rises dramatically with increasing age, beginning in early childhood among U.S. boys and in early adolescence among girls, to age 70, when the rate of the increase slows down (Fig. 4). While incidence rates are higher in males than in females at all ages in the United States (Fig. 4), internationally the male excess is most marked among children [274]. Before age 70 there is little racial difference in U.S. incidence rates, whereas after age 70, rates are higher in whites than in African-Americans of either gender (Fig. 4).

There are several known associations for exposures and NHL. Severe immunosuppression from medication, with or without organ transplantation, may dramatically increase the risk of developing NHL (275,276). Post-transplantation lymphoproliferative disorders (PTLD) occur following renal (associated with 20- to 59-fold increases) (275,277–279), heart, or bone marrow transplants (associated with 48- to 336-fold increases) (278,280). Risks of PTLD appear to be lower in recent years (281), but some persons transplanted recently experienced higher PTLD risks, including patients with graft- vs. -host disease and recipients of HLA-mismatched or T-cell depleted bone marrow transplants (282,283).

Autoimmune or connective tissue disorders that have been linked with 2- to 44-fold increased risks of NHL include systemic lupus erythematosus (284–287), rheumatoid arthritis (288–290), Felty syndrome (291), Sjogren’s disease (276,292), and celiac disease and/or dermatitis herpetiformis (293–296). The highest relative risks often derive from hospital-based epidemiological investigations, while lower relative risks generally characterize population-based studies. Subtype information is limited. In patients with autoimmune disorders treated with an immunosuppressive drug, it is not clear whether an excess of NHL occurring among these patients is due to the autoimmune disorders per se or to one or more immunosuppressive drugs sometimes used to treat the disorder (284).

There are several viral etiologies to NHL. Epidemiological, serological, and molecular data have consistently linked early EBV infection with African Burkitt’s lymphoma, in conjunction with malaria as a cofactor, the latter implicated because of the overlapping geographical distribution of malaria and Burkitt’s lymphoma, high rates of both in the same population, and reduction in the occurrence of both conditions following malarial prophylaxis (297).
Non-Hodgkin lymphoma may be one of the presenting manifestations of the acquired immunodeficiency disorder (AIDS) and is the most frequent malignancy associated with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (the relative risks range from 60 to 100, and the cumulative incidence is as high as 29%) (298–300). AIDS patients with the CCR5-delta 32 allele experience a threefold lower risk of developing NHL (301).

Gastric mucosal-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphomas, low-grade B-cell lymphomas, are usually preceded by infection with *Helicobacter pylori*, which is often not clinically recognized (302,303). Eradication of *H. pylori* following treatment with antibiotics often results in complete remission of the gastric B-cell MALT lymphoma, which appears to be stable, although PCR sometimes reveals residual evidence of monoclonal B cells (304).

Numerous studies have reported small increases in the risk of NHL among farmers in the United States and elsewhere (121,305), pesticide applicators (306,307), and grain workers (308,309). Higher risks were observed among farmers who reported using any pesticides, 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D) pesticides, or organophosphate insecticides more than 20 days per year (310,311); using dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT) at least 5 days per year (312); or mixing and applying herbicides themselves (310). Herbicides increased risk of follicular large-cell NHL, and farmers using dieldrin, toxaphene, lindane, atrazine, and fungicides had significantly elevated risks of t(14;18)-positive, but not 5(14;18)-negative, NHL (313). Small excesses of NHL, particularly follicular NHL, have been observed in meat packaging and processing workers (313a). Not all studies of farmers (124) pesticide applicators (125), or persons agriculturally exposed to 2,4-D, phenoxy acids, and the associated contaminant TCDD, have found elevated risks. Risks of NHL were also not associated with measured levels of DDT (313b), individual organochlorine compounds, or summed chlordane related compounds in serum obtained years prior to diagnosis of NHL, although there was a strong dose–response relation between measured serum PCB concentrations and NHL (313b).

Studies of chemical manufacturing workers exposed to TCDD have been inconsistent for NHL (314–316). A pooled analysis of 21,863 workers exposed to phenoxy herbicides, chlorophenols, and dioxins from 36 cohorts in 12 countries showed a nonsignificant modest excess risk of NHL [standardized mortality ratio (SMR) = 1.39, 95% CI = 0.89–2.06, based on 24 deaths] (317). In 1997, the International Agency for Research on Cancer classified TCDD as a Group 1 human carcinogen, based on excesses for all cancers combined observed in four cohort studies (317a). Significant excess risks of NHL (and/or CLL) have been reported among rubber manufacturing and processing workers in one U.S. cohort (318–320). Non-Hodgkin lymphoma (321) and sometimes CLL were significantly increased among some, but not most, workers manufacturing styrene or butadiene
(322,323) (see section on CLL below). Similarly, occupational exposure to ethylene oxide has also not been conclusively linked with NHL (324,324a). Other occupational solvent exposures sometimes linked with elevated risk of NHL include benzene (67), carbon tetrachloride, xylene, carbon disulfide, and hexane (325). These results require further investigation.

A few case–control (326,327) and cohort investigations (328,329) have reported increased risks for high-grade and follicular NHL, respectively, associated with cigarette smoking, but the majority of large studies found no relationship (105,106,329a). The small epidemiological literature evaluating diet includes studies linking red meat (330,331) particularly if broiled or barbecued (332), beef, pork, lamb (332), and butter, liver, ham, milk, and dietary products containing transunsaturated fat (332) with elevated risks, while fruit (330), carrots, and whole-grain products (332a) reduced risks of NHL. Alcohol consumption by women was associated with reduced NHL in two studies (330,331). Small increases in risk were associated with the use of black or brown hair dyes for 10 or more years in two studies (333,334), but not in others (335).

### 3.4. Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia

Chronic lymphocytic leukemia can be classified into two major subtypes based on the pattern of immunoglobulin gene mutations of pre- and postgerminal center CLL (336). Molecular pathogenesis remains largely unknown, but common cytogenetic abnormalities include interstitial deletions of 13q, trisomy 12, deletions of 11q at the AT gene locus, and 6p and 6q rearrangements.

CLL shows greater international variation (ranging from 26- to 38-fold differences) in age-adjusted incidence than other lymphoid neoplasms. Rates are consistently higher in males than in females, although the male:female ratio varies from 1.4 in Zurich, Switzerland to 3.2 in Shanghai, China. Rates are highest among Caucasians in North America, Denmark, and Oceania, whereas rates are lowest in China, India, Japan, and Israeli Jews (Fig. 3). Chronic lymphocytic leukemia is uncommon before age 30, then increases exponentially until age 60, when the rate of the increase becomes slower. At all ages, rates are higher in males than in females in the United States; in the United Kingdom, the greatest male excess is observed among persons in their 40s and 60s (337). Incidence rates of CLL are similar in U.S. Caucasians and African-Americans until age 50, when the Caucasian: African-American ratio increases (Fig. 4).

There are studies to suggest a relationship between CLL risk and occupation, but the data allow for only limited conclusions. Several studies have implicated farming and related exposures in risk of CLL (338–340), including DDT (341), animal breeding (127), and working in flourmills (308). While some case–control studies have suggested a link between benzene
exposure and CLL (325,342), cohort studies of benzene-exposed workers show little evidence of increased risk of CLL (64,67,80). A few studies have described excesses of lymphocytic leukemia or CLL (343,344) among petroleum industry workers, but no excess risk was found for CLL in other studies (74,345–348) or in a leukemia type-specific meta-analysis of 208,000 workers (349). A retrospective cohort study of 40,683 workers in the reinforced plastics industry from Denmark, Finland, Italy, Norway, Sweden, and the United Kingdom (350) revealed no excesses of neoplasms of the lymphatic and hematopoietic system overall or increasing risk with longer duration of exposure, but mortality from leukemia and lymphoma rose two-fold 20 years after first exposure. Elevated risks were observed in workers employed in the 1960s in companies producing reinforced plastics in Denmark. Interpretation of much of the literature on occupation and risk of CLL is complicated by lack of homogeneity of the lymphopoietic disorders studied and lack of validation of diagnosis in most studies. An International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) committee concluded that there was a small excess of CLL after a detailed review of 12 cohort studies of the rubber industry (351). Chronic lymphocytic leukemia has not been associated with exposure to ionizing radiation (43,352).

Smoking was linked with elevated risk of lymphocytic leukemia in three cohort investigations (102,353,354) and one case–control study (355), but not in other large cohort studies (106,356). There is little information on diet or alcohol consumption and CLL.

Familial clustering of CLL, recognized for more than 50 years (357), is one of the strongest risk factors for development of CLL (358). First-degree relatives with leukemia were more frequent in families of CLL cases than in CML cases (359), but only a small percentage of CLL cases have affected close family members (132,360). The proportion may be higher among families of CLL cases among Ashkenazi Jews of Eastern European or Russian descent (361). Within a family with two or more cases of leukemia among close family members, the subtypes of leukemia are generally concordant, particularly for CLL (265,329). Postulated genetical mechanisms for familial leukemia include inherited germline mutations, primary immunological alterations, sharing of common haplotypes, and/or consanguinity.

### 3.5. Multiple Myeloma

Multiple myeloma, comprising 10% of all hematological malignancies, is characterized by an accumulation of malignant plasma cells in the bone marrow (13). Genetic changes include a rearrangement involving the IgH gene at 14q32, with reciprocal translocations involving 11q13 or 4p16 (seen in 60–75% of patients), aneuploidy (seen in almost all cases), and interstitial deletion of chromosome 13q (which appears to be a poor prognostic feature).
Internationally, incidence of MM is highest among African-Americans, while mid-level rates occur among Caucasians in North America, Europe, and Oceania, and lowest rates are apparent in China, India, Japan, and Israeli Jews (Fig.3). Multiple myeloma like CLL, is rare before age 30, then increases exponentially with age, until age 70 when the rate of increase steadies in all groups. Incidence rates are higher at all ages among African-Americans than among U.S. Caucasians. Rates are similar for both men and women of each race in young and middle-aged adults, but at age 60 rates diverge, with higher rates apparent for males than for females of each race (Fig. 4).

Radiation treatment was linked with small but significantly elevated risk, which remained elevated 35 years since the first treatment and a dose–response trend for MM among patients with ankylosing spondylitis (estimated mean total body dose was 2.64 Gy, with the heaviest dose to the vertebrae) (362). A trend analysis revealed significantly increased risks of MM 10 years following the first radiation treatment in a large cohort of women treated for cervical cancer, but no overall excess risk for all time periods combined (363). Women in Scotland treated with radiotherapy for metropathia hemorrhagica developed significantly elevated risk of MM 5 or more years after receiving a mean bone marrow dose of 1.3 Gy (364). Thorotrast was associated with a significantly increased risk of MM among Danish women (365).

Several epidemiological studies have reported positive associations between employment in agriculture and risk of MM (121,366–369). Multiple myeloma was significantly elevated among 140,208 Swedish farmers, even in those parts of Sweden where the use of pesticides has been less frequent (370); 246,104 Norwegian farmers, particularly those cultivating potatoes (371); and 205,000 Finnish farmers, particularly those on pig or poultry farms (259). A meta-analysis of 32 studies published between 1981 and 1996 revealed a modest increase in MM (369). Specific agricultural exposures implicated include triazine herbicides (123,347), (DDT, used in application or inspection jobs (372), grain dusts (308,373), and farm animals (374).

Mortality studies of atomic bomb survivors have reported a radiation effect (17,57), with an estimated excess risk of 0.17 per $10^4$ person-years per sievert (PY Sv) (95% CI = 0.02–0.40) for both sexes combined, that was slightly higher for females (0.19 per $10^4$ PY Sv, based on 35 cases) than for males (0.15 per per $10^4$ PY Sv, based on 16 cases). However, incidence analyses for 1950–1987 show no evidence of a significant dose–response relationship (178). The estimated absolute risk was 0.08 cases per $10^4$ PY Sv (95% CI < 0–0.3), with no variation by gender, age at exposure, or time since exposure (178). Reasons for the apparent differences between mortality and incidence risks included poorer agreement (only 59%) between tumor registry and death certificate diagnoses for MM than for other hematological malignancies, and exclusion of a relatively large proportion
(8.4% of MM cases which were second primaries) from the incidence analyses. Because of the small numbers of exposed persons who developed MM, more years of follow-up and continued monitoring of the atomic bomb survivors will be required to clarify the nature of the relationship. An excess of deaths from MM among American radiologists was first reported 40 years ago (375). Subsequently, risk of MM was found to be two times higher among U.S. radiologists than among physicians in other specialties (38), but risk was not increased in British radiologists (376), or among Chinese (41), Japanese (40), or U.S. (39) radiological technologists. In a combined analysis of cancer mortality data for 95,673 nuclear industry workers in the United States, the United Kingdom, and Canada, the relative risk of MM was almost twofold increased and the excess relative risk was 4.2 per sievert for MM (377). The authors concluded that the excess most likely reflected the increase in MM previously reported for two of the nuclear plants (e.g., Hanford and Sellafield). Among 124,743 workers included in the National Registry for Radiation Workers in the United Kingdom, there was some evidence of an increasing trend in the risk of multiple myeloma with increasing estimated external radiation dose, although the rising trend disappeared after the investigators excluded workers monitored for exposure to internal radiation emitters (377a). Increases in MM mortality and incidence were observed among British military participants in above-ground nuclear weapons tests (378), but not in New Zealand (379) or U.S. soldiers participating in nuclear tests (380,381). In contrast, no association has been found between risk of myeloma and diagnostic x-rays in most case–control (382,383) or cohort (384,385) studies, although a positive dose–response and a significant excess risk was observed among members of a prepaid health plan who had had a mean of 35 or more x-ray procedures (386).

One of the most contentious topics is whether or not benzene exposure is linked with elevated risk of multiple myeloma (387–389). A U.S. study initially described four workers with MM and nine with myeloid leukemia in a population of approximately 1100 workers manufacturing Pliofilm (64), but an updated follow-up revealed no association of benzene with MM (68). In a study reported in 1996, shoe workers in Florence with the highest exposure to solvents developed an elevated risk of MM (390). Non-significant modest excesses of MM occurred among chemical manufacturing workers 20 or more years after their first exposure to low levels of benzene (77), workers in the crude and fluid catalytic cracking units within the research and petrochemical units of Texaco (348), and workers at Texas oil refineries (391,392), but were not supported in studies of Canadian petroleum distribution workers (74) or in a meta-analysis of 22 cohort mortality studies of petroleum workers (393).

Cigarette smoking has not been found to be a risk factor for multiple myeloma (106,107,327,328,356,373,384,394–397), except in a single study of
Seventh Day Adventists (397a). There is little evidence about the possible role of diet in the etiology of MM, although increased risks were found for liver and butter intake, and animal fat (332a); reduced risks for fish consumption (398), whole-grain intake (399), and diets rich in green vegetables (332a); and elevated risks in overweight and obese persons (400). Alcohol consumption has not been linked with MM (373,384,397). Women who used permanent darkening hair dyes had increased risk of MM in one case-control (397b) and one cohort study (334,401), but these findings were not confirmed in other case-control (402), or large cohort (335) studies.

Multiple myeloma is three- to sixfold elevated among persons with a history of a first-degree relative with multiple myeloma (262,403,404). Risks of familial occurrence of lymphoproliferative malignancies in families of probands with MM were higher for African-Americans than for Caucasians, although the difference was not statistically significant (404).

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are grateful to the staff of the NCI Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results registries for the high quality of data collection and preparation, and to John Lahey of Information Management Systems, Inc. for preparation of the figures.

REFERENCES


95. Andersen MK, Pedersen-Bjergaard J. Increased frequency of dicentric chromosomes in therapy-related MDS and AML compared to de novo disease is significantly related to previous treatment with alkylating agents and suggests a specific susceptibility to chromosome breakage at the centromere. Leukemia 2000; 14:105–111.


248. Braeuninger A, Kuppers R, Strickler JG, Wacker HH, Rajewsky K, Hansmann ML. Hodgkin and Reed-Sternberg cells in lymphocyte predomi-


393. Wong O, Raabe GK. Multiple myeloma and benzene exposure in a multinational cohort of more than 250,000 petroleum workers. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 1997; 26:188–199.


1. INTRODUCTION

In this chapter we review the most relevant data that permit the risk assessment of bladder cancer, based on the measurement of biomarkers. We consider separately biomarkers relevant to the etiology, and biomarkers relevant to the clinical assessment of such cancers. Many biomarkers have been suggested for use, particularly for clinical purposes, and our review cannot be exhaustive. Therefore, we have selected $p53$ as a particularly representative clinical marker.

2. POPULATION RISK ASSESSMENT

2.1. Molecular Epidemiology of Bladder Cancer

2.1.1. Tobacco and Occupational Exposures

Bladder cancer is a relatively prevalent cancer, with age-adjusted incidence rates in Western population of about 30/100,000 men per year and 7–10/100,000 women (1).

The most important, single class of bladder carcinogens consists of aromatic amines. Aromatic amines are present in tobacco smoke and contaminate the ambient air where smokers are present (2). Exposure to aromatic amines occurs in different industrial and agricultural activities. Aromatic amines have been used as antioxidants in the production of rubber and in cutting oils, as intermediates in azo dye manufacturing, and as pesticides.
They are a common contaminant in several working environments, including the chemical and mechanical industries and aluminum transformation. Aromatic amine-based dyes are widely used, particularly in the textile industry.

The strongest evidence on the carcinogenicity of arylamines (benzidine, 2-naphthylamine) comes from large cohort investigations conducted in the 1950s in the British chemical industry. Carcinogenic arylamines such as 2-naphthylamine have been banned in the U.K. since 1967 (Carcinogenic Substances Regulation) (3) and in other Western countries subsequently (4). The International Labour Office had already concluded in 1921, based on early observations in humans, that 2-naphthylamine and benzidine were carcinogenic (5).

Occupational exposures to aromatic amines account for 5%–25% of bladder cancers occurring in some areas of Western countries. Estimates of the attributable fraction are strictly space- and time-specific, and might be higher in limited areas of developing countries.

According to the Working Groups of the International Agency for Research on Cancer Monographs Programme, seven arylamines have been classified as carcinogenic to humans (Group 1) or “probably” carcinogenic to humans (Group 2A). Categorized as such are three specific occupational chemicals (2-naphthylamine, benzidine, and MOCA), one medication (Chlornaphazine), one group of industrial compounds (benzidine-based dyes, i.e., Direct Black 38, Direct Blue 6, and Direct Brown 95), and two manufacturing processes (manufacture of auramine and magenta). Whereas for the other chemicals or industrial processes, the evidence of carcinogenicity in humans was sufficient, benzidine-based dyes and MOCA were considered “probably” carcinogenic because of a high level of evidence in experimental animals.

Tobacco smoking is a well-known cause of bladder cancer—accounting for more than 50% bladder cancers in men and 20% in women, in Western societies—and is a source of arylamines (6). Air-cured (black) tobacco, is particularly rich in arylamines such as 4-aminobiphenyl; smokers of black tobacco have a risk of bladder cancer that is about 2.5-fold in comparison with smokers of flue-cured blond tobacco (7). Studies of “molecular epidemiology” have suggested that smokers of air-cured black tobacco have higher levels of 4-aminobiphenyl–hemoglobin adducts (a marker of internal dose) in their blood, compared to smokers of flue-cured tobacco (8). Biopsies of bladder cancer from smokers contain a DNA adduct identified as a derivative of 4-aminobiphenyl (9). This same DNA adduct was present in exfoliated bladder cells of smokers (10); the presence and concentration of the DNA adducts was strongly correlated with 4-amino biphenyl–hemoglobin adducts but not with urinary 1-hydroxypyrene-glucuronide, a metabolite of benzopyrene (11) (Table 1; the derivative of 4-aminobiphenyl is adduct 4). The latter observation suggests that arylamines and not polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in tobacco smoke may be responsible of bladder cancer in smokers.
The concentration of 4-aminobiphenyl–hemoglobin adducts in both smokers and non-smokers is modulated by the N-acetylation phenotype; irrespective of the smoking status of the subjects, the genetically based slow acetylator phenotype was associated with higher concentrations of the adduct (12). N-Acetyltransferase deactivates carcinogenic arylamines and has a genetically based polymorphic distribution in the population, with about 50% of Caucasians being slow acetylators. Slow acetylators have been shown to be at high risk of bladder cancer in epidemiological investigations (13). The consistency among the results obtained in different Caucasian

Table 1  Correlation Coefficients (Pearson) and \( p \)-Values (in Parentheses): Urinary Cotinine–Nicotine, Urinary 1-Hydroxypyrene, Levels of 4-Aminobiphenyl–Hemoglobin Adducts (4-ABP), and Log DNA Adducts in Exfoliated Ladder Cells (39 Healthy Men)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adduct no.</th>
<th>1-Hydroxypyrene</th>
<th>4-ABP</th>
<th>1-Hydroxypyrene</th>
<th>4-ABP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>−0.01</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.95)</td>
<td>(0.70)</td>
<td>(0.92)</td>
<td>(0.72)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.005)</td>
<td>(0.007)</td>
<td>(0.12)</td>
<td>(0.03)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>−0.22</td>
<td>−0.03</td>
<td>−0.19</td>
<td>0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.17)</td>
<td>(0.84)</td>
<td>(0.44)</td>
<td>(0.13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.90)</td>
<td>(0.04)</td>
<td>(0.97)</td>
<td>(0.02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.62)</td>
<td>(0.67)</td>
<td>(0.53)</td>
<td>(0.26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>−0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>−0.08</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.93)</td>
<td>(0.96)</td>
<td>(0.74)</td>
<td>(0.09)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>−0.10</td>
<td>−0.02</td>
<td>−0.17</td>
<td>−0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.52)</td>
<td>(0.88)</td>
<td>(0.49)</td>
<td>(0.27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>−0.04</td>
<td>−0.10</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.77)</td>
<td>(0.53)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>−0.14</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>−0.22</td>
<td>−0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.39)</td>
<td>(0.75)</td>
<td>(0.36)</td>
<td>(0.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>−0.09</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>−0.15</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.58)</td>
<td>(0.02)</td>
<td>(0.55)</td>
<td>(0.16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>−0.03</td>
<td>−0.14</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.87)</td>
<td>(0.40)</td>
<td>(0.71)</td>
<td>(0.82)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>−0.13</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>−0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.38)</td>
<td>(0.42)</td>
<td>(0.84)</td>
<td>(0.48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total diagonal zone</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.57)</td>
<td>(0.29)</td>
<td>(0.61)</td>
<td>(0.06)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: From Ref. 11.
populations and with different study designs seems to suggest that \(N\)-acetyltransferase exerts a causal role in modulating the risk of bladder cancer in arylamine-exposed subjects (13). An exception is represented by studies in Asians, which show low relative risks in slow acetylators. In a meta-analysis of bladder cancer and the NAT-2 phenotype, the overall odds ratio (OR) was 1.37, while for GSTM1 the estimate was 1.57. However, such estimates tend to be higher in subjects exposed to specific carcinogens (13).

In conclusion, the risk of bladder cancer in Western countries is mainly explained by exposure to tobacco smoke and some occupational agents, and it is modulated by polymorphic genetic traits. Our knowledge, however, is insufficient as to allow individual risk assessment.

2.1.2. Dietary Factors

Several studies have suggested that “Mediterranean diet,” and, more generally, a high consumption of cereals, fruits and vegetables decrease the risk of cancers at different sites, including colon, breast, bladder, and prostate cancers (14,15). In the case of bladder cancer, Table 2 shows the results of some epidemiological investigations suggesting a protective effect for this site. Different components of Mediterranean diet have attracted attention, particularly olive oil and tomatoes. A recent cohort study on American health professionals (15) has found a consistently decreased risk of prostatic cancer among heavy consumers of tomatoes and tomato sauce. It is not known which specific micronutrients are responsible for the protective effect of tomatoes, olive oil and other components of Mediterranean diet, although it is likely that different antioxidants including vitamins play a role (16). In vitro studies have shown that polyphenolic components of mediterranean diet, in particular oleuropein (responsible for the bitter taste of olives), interfere with biochemical events which are involved in atherogenic disease (17). In addition, in vivo studies have suggested that phenolics in red wine increase plasmatic antioxidant capacity and reduce the propensity of low density lipoprotein (LDL) to undergo peroxidation (18).

The consumption of phenolics has been shown to decrease the level of DNA adducts in experimental studies in humans and animals. Moderate wine consumption (a source of phenolics) inhibited peroxide-induced micronucleated cells (19), while the consumption of flavonoids inhibited DNA damage related to lipid peroxidation (20). The relationship of fruit and vegetable consumption to DNA adduct formation has been examined in a case–control study on bladder cancer (21). The level of aromatic DNA adducts in white blood cells (measured by \(^{32}\)P-postlabeling) decreased with increasing levels of fruit and vegetable consumption; in addition, the association between the case/control status and the level of adducts (below or above the median value) was stronger in the subjects who consumed less than two portions of vegetables per day (OR 7.80; 95% confidence interval
CI 3.0–20.3) than in heavy consumers (OR = 4.98 for consumers of two portions per day; OR = 2.0 for consumers of three or more portions) (Table 3).

3. CLINICAL RISK ASSESSMENT

3.1. Oncogenes

Several genetic alterations have been detected in bladder cancer, and these have been proposed as biomarkers for the clinical follow-up of the patients. Recent reviews are available (see, e.g., 22–25). They suggest that currently no single marker is able to accurately predict the clinical course of bladder tumors and would serve as a reliable prognosticator. A combination of prognostic markers could predict which tumors need an aggressive form of therapy and/or adjuvant therapy.
The ras family was first discovered by studies of bladder cancer. Specifically, a point mutation of codon 12 of the H-ras gene, in the bladder cancer cell line T24 (26), polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based methods suggest that the prevalence of ras mutations is around 40% in bladder tumors. Other oncogenes have been studied. p21 expression (waf1/cip1) was predictive of the outcome, but no relationship was found with survival (27).

Overexpression of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) has been reported in bladder cancer. Neal et al. observed increased expression in invasive vs. superficial bladder tumors, and suggested that overexpression was associated with high-grade, high-stage cancer and was an independent prognostic factor (28). However, in another study Nguyen et al. (29) reported that overexpression of EGFR was not an independent prognostic marker in advanced bladder cancer.

Promising data on oncogenes concern overexpression of ErbB2. Underwood et al. (30) studied 236 bladder patients and found that 16 out of 89 patients with recurrent disease had ErbB2 amplification, while amplification was not observed in nonrecurrent tumors. Although ErbB2 amplification was predictive of survival in multivariate analysis, stage and grade remained the most significant independent prognostic parameters. In another study (31) ErbB2 was a prognostic indicator in association with the combined EGRF and ErbB3 expression profile (31). Other markers have been reviewed elsewhere, including cell cycle markers like p27, and potential targets for novel therapies, such as cyclooxygenase 2 (COX 2) and factors of angiogenesis (32).

### Table 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quartiles of DNA adducts</th>
<th>Cases</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.1 (detection limit)</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;0.1</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>(2.2–6.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below median [0.23]</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above median</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>(2.1–6.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1 (detection limit)</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiles above 0.1:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.11–0.23</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>(1.1–4.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.23–0.51</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>(1.7–7.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;0.51</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>(3.6–16.1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORs are adjusted by age. Adducts are expressed as RAL \times 10^{-8} (21).

*Missing data for seven cases and one control.

OR, odds ratio; CI, confidence interval.
3.2. Tumor Suppressor Genes

Deletions of 3p and 17p have been correlated with tumor grade and stage. It has been suggested that different patterns of deletions or loss of heterozygosity (LOH), including 5q, 9q, 13q, and 19q, can be associated with different clinical behaviors (33,34). Loss of heterozygosity of 19q was particularly informative, since this chromosome includes the retinoblastoma (RB) locus, while 17p includes the p53 gene. Both tumor suppressor genes exert a key role in carcinogenesis, and have collaborative roles. In two studies, survival was significantly decreased in patients with altered RB expression (35,36). Altered expression was more frequent in muscle invasive tumors.

Mutations of the p53 gene were identified as common events in bladder cancer. p53 nuclear overexpression correlated with both 17p LOH and gene mutations as identified by SSCP and sequencing (37). A series of studies have shown that p53 overexpression is associated with tumour invasiveness and survival. However, it is not clear whether overexpression is a really independent predictive factor.

The relationship between p53 mutations/overexpression, lymphnode invasion, covariates, and prognosis for bladder cancer has been considered in several investigations (Table 4). The most striking observation is the inconsistency of the findings: some studies show an association with prognostic factors or survival, while others do not. Overall, there seems to be an agreement on the fact that p53 mutations are associated with higher stage/grade and poorer prognosis. However, it is premature to develop guidelines for clinical practice on this basis. Issues that are still open, in particular, are (a) whether p53 is predictive of the outcome as such, or its effect is mediated or confounded by lymphnode invasion; and (b) the degree of correspondence between immunohistochemistry and gene mutations. Additional methodological problems are related to the different antibodies and different thresholds (0, 5 or 20%) used in the investigations based on immunohistochemistry. In conclusion, it is not clear (a) whether the measurement of p53 is worthwhile, in addition to the more traditional clinical markers in order to modify therapeutic choices; (b) whether immunohistochemistry can be reliably used as a surrogate of the search for mutations. This picture is confirmed by recent reviews. Schmitz-Drager et al. (38) have reviewed 43 trials on urothelial cancer and p53 immunohistochemistry, including 3764 patients. They have concluded that the comparison between the trials yielded considerable differences due to technical aspects (selection of the antibody and the use of different cut-off values, study design and patient selection), and that there is an obvious need for standardization of the assay.

In conclusion, like for other cancer sites, it is premature to develop guidelines for the routinary use of p53 mutation search or immunohistochemistry to make therapeutic decisions in bladder cancer patients (38).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>No. of cases</th>
<th>Biomarker</th>
<th>Results</th>
<th>Covariates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caliskan et al., 1997 (40)</td>
<td>30 TCC pTa/pT1</td>
<td>Nuclear accumulation of p53 (Pab1801)</td>
<td>6/30 (20%) had nuclear accum.: invasion or MTS 5/6 in: p53+ 6/24 p53 neg.</td>
<td>Grade, stage, treatment (Cox model)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casetta et al., 1997 (41)</td>
<td>31 pTa grade I without recurrence vs. 28 with recurrence</td>
<td>p53 immunohistochemistry (threshold &gt;0%)</td>
<td>16.1% p53 positive in non-recurrent vs 53.6% in recurrent (chi-square p = 0.02)</td>
<td>Multivariate analysis: p53 predicted progression (OR = 10) and recurrence (OR = 54)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vollmer et al., 1998 (42)</td>
<td>229 TCC</td>
<td>p53 immunohistochemistry</td>
<td>In grade II p53 was predictive of invasion Interaction with MIB-1</td>
<td>Grade, stage, MIB-1, bcl-2, C-erbB-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al Abadi et al., 1998 (43)</td>
<td>147 TCC, 76 pTa/pT1, 35 pT2, 25 pT3, 11 pT4</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody DO-7 (DAKO) threshold &gt;7%</td>
<td>Association of p53 with grade and stage: pTa=28% positive; pT1=2 73%; pT3=4 68%</td>
<td>Ploidy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korkolopoulou et al., 1997 (44)</td>
<td>106 TCC</td>
<td>p53 immunohistochemistry</td>
<td>p53 was associated with grade, stage and papillary status. No significant impact on survival</td>
<td>Simultaneous expression of MDM2 and p53 greatly shortened survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Patients</td>
<td>p53 Analysis</td>
<td>p53 Results</td>
<td>MIB-1 Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siu et al., 1998 (45)</td>
<td>118 TCC</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>p53 did not predict for survival</td>
<td>Metallo-thionein, performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>treated</td>
<td>immunohistochemistry</td>
<td></td>
<td>status, grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with cisplatin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raitanen et al., 1997 (46)</td>
<td>51 TCC</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>p53 positive: group 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>group 1: Ta/T1 with group 2: progressive group 3: metastatic</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/12 (25%) group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>immunohistochemistry</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:5/17 (29%) group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:14/22 (64%) progression was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>associated with p53 positivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liukkonen et al., 1997 (47)</td>
<td>185 TCC</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>36% positive for p53 (&gt;20% threshold)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>superficial</td>
<td></td>
<td>p53 significantly related to stage and grade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popov et al., 1997 (48)</td>
<td>114 TCC +13 normal bladders</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody Pab1801 (median value used as threshold)</td>
<td>Strong association between proliferation (MIB-1) and p53 expression ($p&lt;0.0001$)</td>
<td>In multivariate analysis p53, MIB-1 and stage were independently predictive of survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebret et al., 1998 (49)</td>
<td>35 T1 G3</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>Patients responding to BCG did not differ from nonresponding patients, using different p53 thresholds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>immunomarking in 25 cases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>No. of cases</th>
<th>Biomarker</th>
<th>Results</th>
<th>Covariates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abdel Fattah et al., 1998</td>
<td>54 TCC</td>
<td><em>p53</em> immunohistochemistry and PCR direct sequencing</td>
<td>Association between <em>p53</em> and grade and stage (<em>p</em> = 0.01); <em>p53</em> positivity in &gt;50% nuclei was associated with lower survival (<em>p</em> = 0.03)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sengelov et al., 1997</td>
<td>50 bladder cancers with MTS</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody PAb1801</td>
<td>No relationship of <em>p53</em> with response to cisplatin (<em>p</em> = 0.14) or with survival (<em>p</em> = 0.38)</td>
<td>Performance status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hermann et al., 1998</td>
<td>143 TCC: 31 T1a, 60 T1b, 52 T1c</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody Pab1801</td>
<td><em>p53</em> correlated with grade (<em>p</em> &lt; 0.05) survival higher in <em>p53</em> negative (73%) than in positive (61%) tumors (<em>p</em> &lt; 0.05)</td>
<td>Multivariate analysis with age, grade and <em>p53</em>: only histology predicted survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ogura et al., 1998</td>
<td>111 TCC</td>
<td><em>p53</em> immunohistochemistry</td>
<td>No correlation of <em>p53</em> with nuclear roundness factor; <em>p53</em> associated with mean nuclear volume (<em>p</em> = 0.008)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study</td>
<td>Sample Size</td>
<td>Method</td>
<td>Findings</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfister et al., 1998 (54)</td>
<td>83 TCC</td>
<td>$p_53$ immunohistochemistry</td>
<td>$p_53$ correlated with stage and grade but was independent of MIB-1 in predicting progression</td>
<td>More marked progression if $p_53$ and pRB were both altered; stage and grade-adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsuji et al., 1997 (55)</td>
<td>31 TCC with radical cystectomy</td>
<td>$p_53$ immunohistochemistry</td>
<td>Correlation between $p_53$ and Ki67 (MIB-1); expression of $p_53$ correlated with survival ($p &lt; 0.05$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schmitz et al., 1997 (56)</td>
<td>200 archival specimens from 92 patients</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody DO-1 against $p_53$</td>
<td>In 61 patients followed for &gt;2 years, $p_53$ analysis with correlated with progression ($p = 0.01$)</td>
<td>Multivariate MDM2 and multifocality: both $p_53$ ($p = 0.01$) and MDM2 ($p = 0.009$) were associated with progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsutsumi et al., 1997 (57)</td>
<td>47 patients</td>
<td>LOH of $p_53$ gene (SSCP analysis)</td>
<td>LOH: 0/10 grade 1; 9/23 grade 2 4/7 grade 3 LOH was associated with progression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grossman et al., 1998 (58)</td>
<td>45 pT1 TCC</td>
<td>$p_53$ immunostaining</td>
<td>Association of $p_53$ with progression ($p = 0.04$)</td>
<td>Interaction with RB expression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>No. of cases</th>
<th>Biomarker</th>
<th>Results</th>
<th>Covariates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lianes et al., 1998 (59)</td>
<td>109 TCC T2-T3 and grade 2 or higher 57 lymphnode MTS 52 no MTS</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody Pab1801 (&gt;20%)</td>
<td>No significant association of ( p53 ) with node invasion ((p &gt; 0.05))</td>
<td>MIB-1, DNA ploidy, microvascular counts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jahnson et al., 1998 (60)</td>
<td>173 advanced bladder cancers</td>
<td>Antibody DO-7</td>
<td>Proportional hazards model: no association of ( p53 ) with survival ((p &gt; 0.05))</td>
<td>PMG3-245 for RB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCES


36. Logothetis.


1. INTRODUCTION

Prostate cancer is the most commonly diagnosed form of cancer in men in the United States and, following lung cancer, is the second most common cause of cancer-related death, with 189,000 cases and 30,200 deaths in 2002. There is marked ethnic variation in prostate cancer incidence and mortality; the disease is most common among African-Americans. Internationally, prostate cancer rates also vary widely, with greater than a 25-fold difference in cancer incidence between low-risk countries, such as China, and high-risk countries, such as the United States.

Incidence of prostate cancer increases dramatically with age; about 80% of new cases occur among men 65 years of age or older. With advances in human longevity, the burden of prostate cancer will only increase. Reduction of the prostate cancer burden requires an understanding of the factors that cause the disease. Here, the current state of knowledge regarding risk factors for prostate cancer is reviewed, with particular attention to molecular and biochemical approaches to understanding the causes of this disease.
2. **FAMILIAL RISK AND MAJOR CANCER GENES**

Risks for prostate cancer are approximately doubled among men who have a family history of this disease (1–9) (Table 1). Risks tend to be greater for men who report prostate cancer in their brothers than in their fathers, consistent with recessive or X-linked transmission (4), however, segregation analyses tend to show an autosomal dominant pattern (8,10).

Three loci on chromosome 1 (HPC1, PCAP, CAPB) (11–13), a locus on chromosome X (HPCX) (14), a locus on chromosome 20 (HPC20) (15), and a locus on chromosome 17 (HPC2/ELAC)(16) have been identified by linkage analysis in high-risk families as potential sites for high-penetrance prostate cancer genes, however, confirmation in other family series has failed, suggesting that familial prostate cancer is heterogeneous. Several loci have also been suggested for prostate tumor aggressiveness (17), but the search to determine specific prostate cancer genes at these and other loci is still underway.

3. **STEROIDAL HORMONES**

Testosterone is required at puberty for prostate gland maturation and is essential in adulthood for normal prostate function. Testosterone (T) is converted in the prostate to the more strongly androgenic dihydrotestosterone (DHT) by 5-\(\alpha\)-reductase. Dihydrotestosterone and, to a lesser extent, T bind to cytosolic androgen receptors (ARs). These complexes translocate to the nucleus to bind with DNA at androgen response elements, activating target genes, including genes involved in the control of cell division.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>Family History and Risk for Prostate Cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woolf, 1960 (1)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whittemore et al., 1995 (2)</td>
<td>n.r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayes et al., 1995 (3)</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monroe et al., 1995 (4)</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keetch et al., 1995 (5)</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narod et al., 1995 (6)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesko et al., 1996 (7)</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaid et al., 1998 (8)</td>
<td>n.r.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bratt et al., 1999 (9)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Father or son.
<sup>b</sup>Father’s risk as referent.

n.r., not reported.
Interethnic comparisons provide evidence that serum androgen profiles may parallel population risks for prostate cancer. In one series of studies, T and T unbound to serum-binding proteins were higher in young African-American than white men (18), T was increased in pregnant African-American women, compared to whites (19), and androstanediol glucuronide (A-diol-g), a possible marker for DHT, was reduced in Japanese men (20). Another investigation did not find ethnic associations for T or unbound T, yet showed that the DHT:T ratio, a measure of 5-α-reductase enzyme activity, was highest in African-Americans, intermediate in whites, and lowest in Asian-Americans, corresponding to the respective incidence rates in these groups (21).

Although many epidemiologic investigations have been carried out, prostate cancer does not systematically show differences in serum levels of T and related compounds (22). Large studies that take into account more complex hormone interrelationships may be needed, as shown in a report that T is related to prostate cancer risk, after adjustment for SHBG, its major binding protein in blood (23).

The blood-based observational studies of androgenic hormones and prostate cancer risk may be limited for several reasons. Serum levels are only an indirect indicator of intraprostatic levels. All studies of prostate cancer cases have evaluated hormone levels at only one point in time; multiple measures may be needed to account for intraindividual variation. These studies have considered hormone levels in later adult life, while exposures at a younger age may also be important. An ongoing randomized trial of the 5-α-reductase inhibitor, finasteride, which blocks the intraprostatic conversion of T to DHT should provide insight about the role in prostate carcinogenesis of this key enzyme in androgen metabolism (24).

With increased understanding of the human genome, investigations have begun to explore the relationship to prostate cancer risk of genetic polymorphisms in the human prostatic (type II) steroid 5-α-reductase gene (SRD5A2, located at chromosome 2p23 and associated with prostatic metabolism of T to DHT), with polymorphisms in the androgen receptor gene (AR, located at chromosome Xq11–q12), and with CYP17 (located on chromosome 10 and involved in testosterone biosynthesis in the gonads and adrenals).

Boys with selected germline mutations in SRD5A2 are phenotypically female (25). A common polymorphic missense substitution (A49T) in SRD5A2 was associated with increased risk for prostate cancer in African-American and Hispanic men (26). Longer TA dinucleotide repeats in the 3’ untranslated region of SRD5A2 are more common in African-Americans, however, in one study longer TA repeats tended to be underrepresented among prostate cancer cases (27). Another missense substitution (V89L) in SRD5A2, resulting in decreased 5-α-reductase activity tended to be associated with increased risk for prostate cancer (28).
The N-terminal transactivation domain of \( AR \) is encoded by one large exon that contains two highly polymorphic trinucleotide repeats, coding, respectively, for glutamine (CAG) and glycine (GGN, where N is any one of the four nucleotides). A more than twofold expansion in the number of glutamine repeats causes Kennedy’s disease, an androgen insensitivity syndrome (29), possibly through defective binding to an \( AR \) coactivator (30). Relatively long CAG repeats are also associated with infertility in otherwise healthy men (31) and have been related to decreased levels of T, free T, and albumin-bound T (32) and to decreased transcriptional activation by \( AR \) (33).

The length of CAG repeat sequences tend to be shorter in African-American than white and Asian men [34]. Several, but not all, studies show shorter CAG repeat sequences among prostate cancer cases, particular for advanced disease (9,35–40) (Table 2). Evidence of gene–gene interrelationships has been found in two studies. In one, subjects with short CAG and short CGN repeats had the greatest risk (38), while in another investigation an interrelationship of risk was noted with short CAG repeat sequences and a polymorphism in the prostate-specific antigen (PSA) gene (41).

The \( CYP17 \) A2 allele contains a \( T \rightarrow C \) transition in the 5’ promoter region that creates an additional (CCACC box) promoter site, which may increase the rate of transcription. The A2 allele has been associated with male pattern baldness in men and polycystic ovarian cancer in women, both of which are related to androgen metabolism and this allele has been associated with increased risk for prostate cancer in some studies (28,42).

### 4. GROWTH FACTORS

Greater serum levels of insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) and its major binding protein (IGFBP-3) have been related to prostate cancer in several

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>All cancer</th>
<th>Advanced cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( n )</td>
<td>Risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingles et al., 1997</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giovannucci et al.,</td>
<td>587</td>
<td>1.5(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hakimi et al., 1997</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>3.7(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stanford et al., 1997</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correa-Cerro et al.,</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bratt et al., 1999</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>n.s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hsing et al., 2000</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>1.6(^a)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\) \( p < 0.05 \)

n.s., not significant, risk estimates not specified.
studies (43) In a multivariate analysis, decreased levels of the serum IGF-1 binding protein, IGFBP-3, were also associated with increased risk, suggesting that the interrelationship of IGF-1 and its major binding protein are the important determinants of risk (44). Increased serum levels of IGFBP-1, which is involved in transvascular transport of IGF-1, has also been associated with increased risk for prostate cancer (45).

Other data support a role for insulin-like growth factors and related binding proteins in prostate cancer development. In some studies, risks for prostate cancer were greater for taller men (46–48), which may indirectly indicate the influence of the IGF axis on prostate cancer. IGFBP-3 is also lower in African-American men (49,50), consistent with their excess risk for this disease. Dietary factors (51,52) and tobacco use (53) influence the IGF axis and physiological control is exerted by vitamin D (54), androgens (55,56), and PSA (57). IGF-1 is a potent mitogen and antiapoptotic agent. IGFBP-3 inhibits cell growth by inhibiting access of IGF-1 to the IGF receptor. IGFBP-3 also stimulates apoptosis, independent of IGF-1 (58).

5. Dietary Factors

Diet likely has a great impact on prostate cancer risk, however, the precise interrelationships of energy intake, dietary macronutrients, micronutrients, and other constituents are still not well understood. Dietary fat, particularly from animal sources, has been implicated as a risk factor for prostate cancer in many epidemiological studies; however, other studies have not shown an effect (59). Evidence that vegetarians have a lower risk of prostate cancer is also mixed (60,61). Total caloric intake (62) and energy imbalance (63), mutagens produced in cooking meats at high temperatures (64), and increased calcium intake (65,66) may increase risk for this disease, while intake of fish oils (67), micronutrients in fruits and vegetables (68,69), phytoestrogens (70), selenium (71), and vitamin E (72) may reduce risk.

5.1. Dietary Supplementation

A 32% decrease in the incidence of prostate cancer was found in the α-tocopherol (a form of vitamin E) treatment arm of a randomized control trial of α-tocopherol and β-carotene supplementation among 29,000 smokers in Finland (72). Vitamin E supplement users also had reduced risks for prostate cancer in some (73,74) but not all observational studies (75). Supplemental dietary selenium (Se) was associated with a 63% reduction in prostate cancer incidence among 974 men with a history of nonmelanoma skin cancer who were randomized to a daily supplement of Se (71). Observational studies tend also to support this finding (76,77).

Other dietary supplements, including β-carotene (78,79) and vitamins A and C have shown little association with prostate cancer (75), but interest
in lycopene as a preventive is strong, based primarily on results from a
number of observational epidemiological studies (80). The reductions in risk
for prostate cancer identified in randomized control trials of \( \alpha \)-tocopherol
and Se are important because this study design eliminates many sources
of bias found in observational studies. Prostate cancer was, however, not
an a priori endpoint for the trials. Because of the earlier results, new random-
ized trials are beginning, to evaluate the effects on prostate cancer of sup-
plementation, in one trial, with \( \alpha \)-tocopherol and Se (SELECT Trial, D.
Albanes, personal communication) and, in another trial, with \( \alpha \)-tocopherol
and \( \beta \)-carotene (81).

5.2. Calcium and Vitamin D

The interplay with prostate cancer of dietary calcium, dietary vitamin D and
its metabolites, and polymorphisms in the vitamin D receptor are areas of
current research. Vitamin D, derived from dietary sources and endogenous
conversion in the skin via ultraviolet light, is metabolized by sequential
hydroxylations, first in the liver to 25(OH)D, and subsequently in the kid-
ney, mediated by 1-\( \alpha \)-OH-ase, to 1,25(OH)\(_2\)D. Renal 1-\( \alpha \)-OH-ase activity
is enhanced by hypocalcemia, probably through stimulation of parathyroid
hormone. The biologically active 1,25(OH)\(_2\)D binds to and activates the
nuclear vitamin D receptor (VDR), promoting cellular differentiation and
inhibiting cellular proliferation. The mechanism for this is unknown,
although inter-relationships with IGF binding proteins (54) and the andro-
gen receptor (82) may be involved.

Vitamin D levels decrease with age and can be reduced in the winter
months in northern latitudes, even when dietary supplementation is in
effect. High prostate cancer death rates are found among whites in northern
latitudes of the United States, giving rise to the hypothesis that low UV
exposure may be a risk factor for prostate cancer (83). Animal studies also
show that 1,25(OH)\(_2\)D inhibits prostate tumors in experimental animals
(84). However, serum 1,25(OH)\(_2\)D levels in humans have been inconsistently
associated with prostate cancer, with one positive (85) and two negative stu-
dies (86,87). High calcium intake, which suppresses conversion of 25(OH)D
to 1,25(OH)\(_2\)D (88), has also been linked to increased risk for prostate can-
cer in some (65,66) but not all studies (66,89).

Genetic approaches have also been used to study interrelationships of
the vitamin D axis with prostate cancer. Three polymorphisms in the vita-
m in D receptor (VDR), BsmI, and TaqI restriction site polymorphisms
and a \( poly(A) \) length polymorphism, are in strong linkage disequilibrium
in whites, such that only two \( BsmI/TaqI/poly(A) \) haplotypes, \( BtS \) and
\( bTL \), are commonly observed (90,91). These variants are not thought to
be functional, but to possibly serve, through linkage disequilibrium, as mar-
kers for another as yet unidentified functional polymorphism, related to
In whites, the \(B_{smI}\) B, \(T_{aqI}\) t, and \([poly(A)]\) short allelic variants have been associated with reduced risk for prostate cancer in some studies (35,94). Others have not confirmed these findings, although effects have been noted in some subgroups (93,95–97) (Table 3).

In Asians and African-Americans, the linkage between the identified variants is weaker (90) and, consequently, the strength or direction of associations observed for these markers with prostate cancer risk may be different than those observed in whites. A Japanese study found no association with \(T_{aqI}\) variants (98) and a Chinese study found no association with the \(B_{smI}\) polymorphism or with variants in an unrelated \(5'\) FokI polymorphic site (99), except for a subgroup of subjects in the highest tertile of IGFBP-3. In a study of African-Americans (91), risk for advanced cancer (but not localized cancer) was associated with the \(B_{smI}/poly(A)\) \(BL\) haplotype. It remains unclear whether VDR variants play a substantial role in prostate carcinogenesis.

### 6. METABOLIC POLYMORPHISMS

Meat cooked at high temperatures produces heterocyclic amines including PhIP (2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo[4,5-b]pyridine). PhIP causes
prostate cancer in rats; the cancers showing invasive characteristics in the presence of testosterone propionate (64).

Polymorphisms in the N-acetyltransferases (\textit{NAT1} and \textit{NAT2}) result in differential metabolism of PhIP to carcinogenic metabolites and the homozygous $^{*}10$ polymorphism in \textit{NAT1}, which is related to rapid metabolism, tends to be associated with prostate cancer (100,101).

Prostate cancer was associated with the \textit{CYP2D6 B} allele in one study ($p = 0.07$) (102) and, in another study, with the nondeleted (functional) genotype of \textit{GSTTI} (odds ratio, 1.83; 95% confidence interval, 1.19–2.80) but not \textit{GSTM1} (odds ratio, 1.07; 95% confidence interval, 0.73–1.55) (103). No differences were found in a small case–control study of prostate cancer assessing the 609 C $\rightarrow$ T polymorphism in \textit{NQO1} (the NAD(P)H: quinone oxidoreductase gene) (104). These results need to be evaluated in larger studies examining the inter-relationship of series of metabolic enzymes and prostate cancer risk.

7. SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES

A history of syphilis and gonorrhea has been associated with risk for prostate cancer in a series of epidemiological studies (Table 4) (105–114). In the largest study, risks were shown to increase with increasing occurrences of gonorrhea and to be related to characteristics of sexual behavior. Also, serological investigations showed that risks were significantly greater for men exposed to \textit{Treponema pallidum} (the causative agent of syphilis) (114).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposed cases</th>
<th>Risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wynder et al., 1971 (106)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whites</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blacks</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Krain, 1974 (107)</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heshmat et al., 1975 (108)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lees et al., 1985 (109)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mishina et al., 1985 (110)</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandel and Schuman, 1987, (111)</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ross et al., 1987 (112)</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honda et al., 1988 (113)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayes et al., 2000 (114)</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosenblatt et al., 2000 (105)</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{a}p < 0.05.
Since gonorrhea and syphilis could be sentinels for another sexually transmitted infectious agent, the risks observed may only partially reflect the true risks associated with the putative agent. For example, only after sensitive and specific assays were developed for human papilloma virus (HPV) did the relatively modest risks for cervical intraepithelial neoplasia associated with sexual activity (two- to fourfold) translate to the substantial (50-fold) risks now established for cervical disease due to specific HPV subtypes (115).

Human papilloma virus, which occurs in human prostate cancer and benign prostatic tissue (116), transforms human prostate cells in vitro. Seropositivity for HPV-18 and HPV-16 has been associated with subsequent prostate cancer in a Finnish cohort study (117). Other studies (114,118), but not all (119) tend to support this. While an excess of prostate cancer has been observed in men with anal cancer, which is linked to HPV infection, the epidemiological patterns of HPV-related cervical cancer are not closely correlated with prostate cancer, although one study reported increased occurrence of cervical cancer in spouses of prostate cancer patients (120). No case-control differences have been found for prostate cancer with serologic responses to herpes simplex, cytomegalovirus, and Epstein–Barr virus (111,121,122). HHV8 RNA transcripts were reported in prostate cancers (123) but serologic studies for antibody have been negative (124).

8. SUMMARY

Age, race, and family history of prostate cancer are the three established risk factors for prostate cancer. Steroidal hormones are likely important in the pathogenesis of this disease, although the precise hormonal interrelationships and associated metabolic pathways are not yet defined.

Expanded molecular studies and an intervention trial with finasteride will provide insight about the role of hormones in prostate cancer. There is substantial evidence that some dietary factors, such as animal fat, increase risk for this disease and that other dietary factors, including selected micronutrients, are protective. Randomized trials have been initiated to assess the preventive impact on prostate cancer of selenium, α-tocopherol, and β-carotene. The association in epidemiologic studies of prostate cancer with sexually transmitted diseases suggests that sexually transmitted agents may also contribute to the occurrence of these tumors.

REFERENCES

2. Whittemore AS, Wu AH, Kolonel LN, John EM, Gallagher RP, Howe GR, West DW, Teh CZ, Stamey T. Family history and prostate cancer risk in


61. Fraser GE. Associations between diet and cancer, ischemic heart disease, and all-cause mortality in non-Hispanic white California Seventh-day Adventists. Am J Clin Nutr 1999; 70:532S–538S.


Index

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32P-postlabeling assay, 70</td>
<td>Age-adjusted incidence rates, 672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aberrant methylation, 78, 90</td>
<td>Age-specific seroprevalence, 290, 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACB-PCR, 81, 82</td>
<td>family size, 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 295</td>
<td>hygiene, 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL), 82, 679</td>
<td>socioeconomic status, 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subtypes, 673, 679, 683</td>
<td>Air Pollution, 457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>precursor B-cell ALL, 679</td>
<td>Alcohol consumption, 511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>precursor T-cell ALL, 679</td>
<td>alcohol dehydrogenase 3(ADH3), 378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burkitt-cell leukemia, 679</td>
<td>ALL, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causes, 673, 679</td>
<td>Ames test, 140, 341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ionizing radiation, 673, 675, 679</td>
<td>Anal cancer, 297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environmental radiation, 679</td>
<td>incidence of, 297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exposure to pesticides, 676, 679</td>
<td>Aneuploidies, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lifestyle exposures, 680</td>
<td>Aneuploidy, 78, 77, 82, 84, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnetic field exposures, 680</td>
<td>Angiogenesis, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute Myeloid Leukemia, 89</td>
<td>Angiosarcoma, 332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adrenocarcinoma of the cardia, 603, 610</td>
<td>potential links between, 332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxin B₁ exposure, 139</td>
<td>Animal studies, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aflatoxins, 631</td>
<td>extrapolation to humans, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industrial chemicals, 633</td>
<td>pharmacologically based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metabolism of aflatoxin B₁ (AFB₁), 632</td>
<td>pharmacokinetic (PBPK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p53, 632</td>
<td>modeling, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pesticides, 633</td>
<td>Anogenital cancers, 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genetic polymorphisms, 445</td>
<td>Anogenital dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anoikis, 220, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antibody levels, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in cancer patients, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in seropositive controls, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antibody profiles, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Apoptosis, 213</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Apoptotic cell death, 2
Aromatic amines, 517
   metabolism, 518
   passive smoke, 517
Asbestosis, 333
Astrocytic tumor, 648

B-lymphocytes, 290
Barrett’s mucosa, 603
   genetic changes, 604
   morphological subtypes, 604
Baseline cancer rate, 313, 317, 319, 324, 327
Benzo[a]pyrene diol epoxide (BPDE), 484
Bias, 119
   selection, 24
   ascertainment, 26
   response, 26
   information, 26
   recall, 26
   surveillance, 27
   interviewer, 27
Bioinformatics, 43
Biological markers, 445
Biological plausibility, 120, 129
Biological response, 43
   carcinogens, 43
   specified dose, 43
Biologically effective dose, 70, 360, 361, 362
   associated malignancies, 290
   environmental exposure, 170
Biomarker, 40, 168, 170, 290, 331, 338, 373
   applications, 40, 55
   cancer epidemiology, 40
   cancer risk, 290
   harm, 373
   internal dose, 373
   markers of effect, 338
   markers of exposure, 338
   biologically effective dose, 44, 46
   early biological effects, 44
   susceptibility, 40, 44
   markers of susceptibility, 48, 338

[Biomarker]
   in risk assessment, 40
   Bischloromethylether exposure, 333
   in plexiglass industry, 333
   Bladder cancer, 331, 717
   biomarkers, 717
   epidemiology, 717
   occupational exposures, 717
   tobacco, 717
   Bladder carcinogens, 717
   aromatic amines, 717
   Bone cancer, 333
   among radium dial painters, 333
   BRAC2, 447
   Brain tumors, 647
   Breast tissue age, 444
   BRCA1 and BRCA2 genes, 447
   BRCA1, 447
   Breakpoint cluster region (BCR), 672
   Breast cancer, 380, 406, 408–418, 442, 503
   CHRT, 409, 410
   ERT, 409
   estrogen, 414, 415, 413
   etiology, 508, 515, 519
   family history, 504
   gene locus, 504
   HRT, 409
   phytoestrogens, 411, 412
   progestins, 415
   risk factors, 413, 503
   estrogen, 413
   SEER data, 442
   Breast, 409
   Burkitt's lymphoma, 291

   CAG repeat sequences, 738
   Calculus formation, 132
   Cancer etiology, 39, 40
   Cancer family syndromes, 660
   glioma, 660
   LFS, 660
   Li–Fraumeni syndrome, 660
   neoplasms, 660
   Cancer genes, 63
   oncogenes, 63
Cancer, 5
breast, 2, 5
cervical, 4, 7
colorectal, 5
colon, 7
pancreation, 6
lung, 5, 8
skin, 6
stomach, 8
Cancer incidence, 154
cancer risk, 438
carotenoid and multiethnic
career, 438
cancer risk, 438
multiracial and multiethnic
career, 438
Cancer incidence rate, 153, 160, 438
age specific, 154, 167
cumulative, 154, 168, 174
age standardized, 154
across racial and ethnic groups, 438
differential expressions, 441
etiological factors, 441
lung cancer, 160
non-Hodgkin lymphoma, 162
during this quarter, 438
Cancer incidence, 154
characteristic of carcinomas of the
lungs, colon, rectum, 156
hodgkin's disease, 157
leukemia, 156
nephroblastoma, 157
retinoblastoma, 157
urinary tract, 156
Cancer mortality rate, 20
Cancer predisposing genes, 196
identification, 183, 196
gene variants, 181, 196
gene tests, 196
moderate risk assessment, 196
risk assessments, 196
cancer risk, 438
multiracial and multiethnic
career, 438
Cancer-related genes, 2, 63, 150, 437
career, 63
gatekeeper, 63
landscaper, 63
Cancers, 39
endogenous factors, 39
environmental factors, 39
gene genetic factor, 39
inherited susceptibilities, 39
incidence, 289
molecular and genetic markers, 438
population subgroups, 437
multiethnic, 437
multiracial, 437
skin cancer, 150
basal cell carcinoma, 150
melanoma, 150
Carcinogen, 3, 369, 482
P53, 483
classification, 101
alphabetic system, 101
basis, 101
dose-response assessment, 103
extrapolation, 104
maximum likelihood estimate (MLE), 103
quantitative nature, 103
risk assessment, 100
Caretaker and gatekeeper genes, 139
Case reports and series, 334
Case–control study, 18, 23, 24, 46, 289,
354, 363
[Case–control studies]
  community based, 18, 23
  nested, 23
  occupational, 23
  prospective, 23
  retrospective, 21, 25
  population based, 22, 26
Cohort, 356
Cohorts, 335
Combination oral contraceptives, 408
Combinations of risk factors, 635
Comparative genome hybridization (CGH), 86
Confounder, 24
Confounding factors, 337
Confounding, 119
Conjunctival squamous cell carcinoma, 296
  equatorial Africa, 296
Constant neutral loss, 239
Control selection, 24
  hospital controls, 24
  population controls, 24
CSF, 650
  gangliogliomas, 650
  gliomas, 649
  medulloblastomas, 650
  meningiomas, 649
  schwannomas, 650
Cumulative exposure, 19, 360, 363
Cumulative risk, 154
Cycasis, 229
Cyclin E, 216
Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors, 301
Cytochrome P450 (CYP), 460, 513
  catechol estrogens, 514
  premenopausal women, 515
Cytochrome P450 (CYP), 372
Cytogenetical studies, 183
Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) response, 294
  human leukocyte antigens, 294
DDT, 347
Defect repair genes, 189
Defective gene, 341
Detoxifying enzymes, 195
Development of a biomarker, 50
Diagnostic radiation, 316
Diet, 480
Dietary factors, 444, 720, 739
  z-tocopherol, 739
  calcium, 740
  differences between racial/ethnic groups, 444
  impact on prostate cancer risk, 739
  mediterranean diet, 720
  olive oil, 720
  risk of breast cancer, 444
  selenium (Se), 739
  vitamin D, 740
Dietary fat, 508
  fruits and vegetables, 480
  canotenoids, 481
Digital PCR, 92
Dihydrötestosterone (DHT)
Disease entities, 42
Disease outcome, 336
  diagnostic, 336
  histopathologic criteria, 336
Disease registries, 339
Disease-agent associations, 288
  component, 288
  sufficient, 288
DNA adducts, 70, 372, 486
  levels, 486
DNA genome, 290
DNA microarrays, 43
DNA repair capacity (DRC), 476
DNA repair genotypes, 488
  polymorphisms, 488
DNA repair, 3, 63, 66, 483
  lung cancer, 456, 461, 467
  pathways, 483
DNA replication, 3
DNA sequencing, 67
DNA synthesis, 3
Dose equivalent, 315
Dose reconstruction error, 313, 323, 327
Dose–response function, 317
Dose–response relationship, 288, 353, 355, 360, 364
Early detection, 548
  biomarkers, 548
  CA125, 548
EBV-encoded products, 290
  EBV-encoded RNA, 290
  latent membrane proteins, 290
  nuclear antigens, 290
Effect modifiers, 42
Effective control limits, 336
Electromagnetic field, 652, 651
EMF, 651
  glioma, 652
Endogenous agents, 206, 213
Endogenous sources, 406, 409,
  410, 422
Endometrial cancers, 408, 550, 558
  combination oral contraceptives, 422
  diseases associated, 558
  diabetes, 558
  elderly, 550
eRT, 410
estrogen replacement therapy, 554
etiology, 551
  estrogen, 551
  histological types, 551
lifestyle factors, 555
  BMI, 556
  body weight, 556
  dietary fat, 556
  fruit and vegetables, 556
reproductive factors, 555
  nulliparous women, 555
risk factors, 552
  estrogen hypothesis, 553
  hormonal factors, 553
  inherited factors, 552
Endometrial cancer, 409
  disease associated with diabetes, 558
Environmental carcinogens, 677
Environmental estrogens, 408, 410, 411,
  412, 413
  phytoestrogen, 411, 408, 413
  xenobiotics, 413
Environmental radiation, 315
Environmental risk factors, 39
  drugs, 39
  environmental pollutants, 39
  [Environmental risk factors]
  infection agents, 39
  lifestyle factors, 39
  radiation, 39
Environmental tabacco smoke (ETS), 458
  genetic changes, 458
Environmental tobacco smoke, 479, 375
  increased risk of SCCHN, 479, 480
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 293
Enzymes, 460
  detoxification, 461
  DNA-adduct formation, 460
  environmental exposures, 461
  genetic, 461
  susceptibility, 461
EPA, 333
Epidemiological evidence, 504
Epidemiological studies, 100
Epidemiology, 39, 149
  analytical, 149
    cross-sectional study
    cohort study, 164
    double-cohort study, 166
    case-control study, 151, 166
descriptive, 149
  experimental, 150
  observational, 151, 164
  record and questionnaire information, 39
Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), 649
glioblastomas, 649
Epithelial cells, 5
Epstein–Barr virus (EBV), 683
  associated malignancies, 623
ERR, 320, 324, 325, 326
Esophageal cancer, 601, 604
  adenocarcinoma, 601
  consumption of alcohol, 603
  developing countries, 601
  geographical distribution, 602
  genetic changes, 604
  Tp53 gene, 602, 611
  P63, 608
  squamous cell carcinoma, 601
Index

[Esophageal cancer]
tobacco smoking, 603
Esophago–gastric junction, 610
Estimated hazard ratio (HR), 410
Estimated risk, 314, 320, 321, 322, 323
Estrogen receptors (ER), 411
estrogen, 415
Estrogen-only replacement therapy (ERT), 409
Ethnic variation, 735
age, 735
incidence, 735
Events, 150
Excess relative risk, 318, 320
Exogenous sources, 406
combination oral contraceptives, 408, 422
hormone replacement therapy (HRT), 406
estrogen-only replacement therapy (ERT), 409
combination hormone replacement therapy (CHRT), 409
xenobiotics, 410, 413
phytoestrogens, 408, 411
Experimental evidence, 288
Exposure assessment, 21, 107, 356, 357, 360
contaminated air, 108
contaminated drinking water, 107
Exposure index, 361
time dependent, 361
intensity dependent, 361
time and intensity dependent, 361
case–control, 167
plexiglass industry, 333
Exposure to bischloromethylether, 333
Exposure, to cancer risk, 150
occupational, 167
Exposure, 150, 166
timing, 505
age at diagnosis, 505
Exposure–biomarker relationship, 296, 353, 361
Exposure–disease relationship, 363
Exposure–outcome assessment, 337
prospective, 17

[Exposure–outcome assessment]
retrospective, 17
Exposure–response relationship, 17, 21
occupational, 20
lung cancer, 167
Familial adenomators polyposis (FAP), 189
Familial aggregation, 658, 659
glioma, 659
Familial cancer syndromes, 46
familial adenomatous polyposis, 46
familial breast–ovary cancers, 46
hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer, 46
li–Fraumeni syndrome, 46
retinoblastoma, 46
von Hippel–Lindau disease, 46
wilm’s tumor, 46
Familial cancer, 64
Familial clustering, 181
Familial risk, 735, 736
x-linked transmission, 736
gliomas, 660
meat, 508
First-degree relative, 506
FISH, 84, 85, 86, 87
Flower cells, 294
Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), 78
Fluorescence in situ hybridization, 84
Fruit and vegetable consumption, 510
antioxidants, 510
reactive oxygen species (ROS), 504, 510
oxidative stress, 510
Food additives, 99
determinations, 99
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 99
Gastroesophageal reflux, 480
laryngeal cancer, 480
Gastrointestinal cancers, 380
Gender Differences, 623
[Gender Differences]

male–female variations, 623
Gene mutation assays, 341
mammalian mouse lymphoma thymidine kinase assay, 341
Gene–environment interactions, 23, 49, 195, 360

Genes cancer, 2
growth control genes, 207, 216, 244
proto-oncogenes, 207, 220
oncogenes, 2
tumor suppressor genes, 2
overexpression, 2, 5
proto-oncogene, 4
transcription, 7
Genetic biomarkers, 338
Genetic defect, 42
localized, 42
genome-wide, 42
Genetic penetrance, 482
genotypic assay, 482
phenotypic assays, 482
xenobiotic metabolisms, 482
Genetic Polymorphisms, 445
hormones, 513
Genetic risk factors, 345
polymorphisms, 345
Genetic screening, 345
Genetic susceptibility markers, 361
Genetic susceptibility, 478, 504
gene locus, 504
molecular epidemiological evidence, 478
Genetic variations, 631
ethanol metabolism, 631
Genetical Polymorphisms, 677
Genetical susceptibility markers, 360
Genetical variants, 677
single-nucleotide polymorphisms, 677
Genome, 4
b cell tumor, 4
burkitt’s lymphoma, 4
proto-oncogenes, 4
Genomics, 40
proteomics, 40
Genotoxic activity, 131
Genotoxic insult, 3
Genomic instability, 3, 4
Genotypic selection, 81, 91
Genotyping, 66, 67
Germline mutations, 183
carriers, 183, 190

GSTM1 gene, 463
N-Acetyltransaminase, 464
combinations, 465
EPHX, 464
lung cancer risk, 463
lung cancer risk, 464
Gynecological malignancies, 535
mortality, 535
ovarian cancer, 535

Hazard identification, 334
HBV infection, 624
associated hepatocellular destruction, 625
hepatocarcinogenesis, 625
pathway, 625
Iatrogenic transmission, 627
rate of chronicity, 625
age, 624, 632
recombinant vaccine, 626
HCC tumors, 623
growth, 623
HCR infection, 627
chronic HCV, 628
cirrhosis, 629
HCC cases, 628
Viral Interactions, 630
introgenic transmission, 627
prevalence, 622, 627
children, 626, 629
primary prevention, 622, 629
Head and neck cancer, 475
gene–environment interactions, 475
squamous cell carcinoma, 475
Healthy worker effect, 340
Helicobacter pylori, 686
 genetic biomarkers, 611
Hematological malignancies, 671
myeloid, 671
acute myeloid leukemia (AML), 672
Hematological malignancies

- myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS), 672
- lymphoid, 678, 686
- precursor disease
- lymphoid disorders, 678
- peripheral disease lymphoid disorders, 678
- myeloproliferative disorders (MPD), 672

Heliobacter pylori, 686
Henle–Koch postulates, 171
Hepatitis B virus, 301
- acute and chronic hepatitis, 301
- liver cirrhosis, 301
- hepatocellular carcinoma, 30
Hepatitis C virus, 301
- liver disease, 301
- mixed cryoglobulinemia, 301

Hepatocellular carcinoma, 139, 621
Hepatitis B virus (HBV), 73, 622
Hepatitis C virus (HCV), 150, 622
- geographical prevalence, 622

Hereditary cancer syndrome, 183
Hereditary syndromes, 659
- glioblastoma, 659
- glioma, 659
Heritable syndrome, 659, 660

Heterocyclic amines, 509
- metabolism, 509

HHV-8 coinfection, 297
- primary effusion lymphoma, 297

High penetrance genes, 140
High proviral load, 293

Highly active antiretroviral therapy, 297

Hill’s criteria of causality, 171

Histological types
- diet, 565
- vitamin C, 565
- risk and susceptibility factors, 561
- oncogenic HPV Infections, 561
- viral load, 562

Historical exposure information, 356, 357
Hodgkin’s disease, 291
Homeostatic balance, 1

Hormonal Factors, 541
- endogenous, 541
- androgen hypothesis theory, 541
- exogenous, 541

Hormone replacement therapy, 406, 408
Hormone-responsive tissue, 406, 408

Hormones, 513
- genetic polymorphisms, 505, 510

Host susceptibility, 43

Host-Cell Reactivation Assay, 484

Hormonal factors, 541, 552, 564
- endogenous, 541, 552
- androgen hypothesis theory, 541
- exogenous, 540, 554
- oral contraceptive pill, 537, 541, 562

Host cell protooncogenes, 294

Host factors, 360

Human breast, 412
Human genome project, 345, 483
Human genome, 40

Human herpesvirus type, 8, 297
- lytic replication, 298

Human immunodeficiency viruses, 295
- mother-to-child transmission, 295, 305

associated malignancies in humans, 291, 300

Human papilloma virus, 4

Human papilloma viruses (HPVs), 536
- incidence, 536
- models, 537
- cervical, 4

Human papillomavirus, 297

Human pathogens, 288
Human pesticide exposures, 633
epidemiological studies, 622, 628, 633
risk for HCC, 633
Human T-lymphotropic virus type I, 292
adult T-cell leukemia, 292
T-cell lymphoma, 292
Hyperinsulinemia, 254
breast and colon cancer risk, 254
Hypermethylation, 7
lung, 8
pancreatic, 8
skin, 8
stomach, 8

IARC Group 1—carcinogenic
to humans, 123
IARC Group 2A—probably carcinogenic
to humans, 126
IARC Group 2B—possibly carcinogenic
to humans, 127
IARC Group 3—not classifiable as to
carcinogenicity to humans, 129
IARC Group 4—probably not
carcinogenic to humans, 130
IARC Monograph Program, 348
Inherited cancer genes, 189
identification, 183, 196
function, 183
oncogenes, 189
Inherited cancer genes]
tumor suppressor genes, 189
defect repair genes, 189
Insulin-like growth factors (IGFs), 414
Intensity-dependent, 361
Interindividual variations, 52
International Agency for Research on
cancer (IARC), 348
International Expert Panel on
carcinogen Risk Assessment, 103
Intra, 52
Invasive carcinoma, 565
carotenoids, 544, 565
vitamin C, 565
In vitro experiments, 342
In vitro studies, 334, 341
mutagenicity assay, 341
Ionizing radiation, 313, 314, 325, 650
Job exposure matrices (JEMs), 355, 338
Latent period, 151
bladder cancer, 152
experimental, 151
leukemia, 151
lung cancer, 152
observational, 151
occupational, 152
scrotal cancer, 152
skin cancer, 152
Lesion recognition, 241
Leukemia susceptibility genes, 676
inherited genetical syndromes, 676
Leukemia, 247, 333
among radiologists, 333
Leukemogens, 677
acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL),
678
lymphoid, 678
Li–Fraumeni syndrome, 140, 191
 carriers, 191
gene variants, 192
Life table analysis, 20
Life style factors, 544
carotenoids, 565
diet, 544
case-control studies, 544
Index

[Lifestyle factors]
- serum micronutrients, 545
- medications, 546
- analgesics, 546
- talc, 547
- vitamin C, 565
- weight, 545, 556

Lung carcinogenesis, 461
- genetic, 458, 460

[Liver cancer]
- gender differences, 545
- weight, 545, 556
- linkage analysis, 183
- positional cloning strategy, 183
- male-female variations, 623
- epidemiological studies, 633
- growth, 623

Liver, 621
- primary malignancies, 621
- geographical prevalence, 622
- hepatitis B (HBV), 622
- hepatitis C (HCV), 622
- prevalence, 622

Loss of heterozygosity (LOH), 68

Loss of heterozygosity, 62, 207, 373, 648, 662
- adenocarcinoma (AD), 374
- glioblastomas, 648, 649
- large cell carcinoma (LCC), 374
- small cell lung cancer (SCLC), 374
- squamous cell cancer (SCC), 374

Loss of heterozygosity (LOH), 189
- function, 189

Low-dose exposures, 42

Lung cancer, 369, 455, 456, 458
- due to radon, 458
- biological subtypes, 456
- etiology, 456
- occupation, 458
- genetic changes, 458
- chromosomal regions, 459
- allelic loss, 459
- etiology, 456
- histological subtypes, 456
- metabolism, 460
- occurrence, 455

Lung carcinogenesis, 461
- genetic, 458, 460

Mammalian oncoviruses, 287
- cause, 287
- pathogenesis, 287

Mammary carcinogens, 517

MDM2 gene, 610

Malignancies, associated with chronic disease, 303
- ulcerative colitis, 303
- Crohn’s disease, 303
- rheumatoid arthritis, 303
- sarcoidosis, 303
- multiple sclerosis, 303

Marijuana, 480

Maximum tolerated dose, 342

Mechanisms of cancer, 341

Measurement error, 29
- systematic, 26
- random, 29
- differential, 29
- nondifferential, 29

Mechanisms of carcinogenesis, 505
- polymorphisms, 505

Mendelian inheritance, 181, 183

Menopausal status, 505, 506

Mesotheliomas, 331
- glioma, 660
- gliomas, 660

Metabolic polymorphisms, 660

Metabolic saturation, 364, 364
- antioxidant, 510
- heterocyclic amines, 509
- oxidative stress, 510
- reactive oxygen species (ROS), 510
Metastasis, 139
Metastatic colonies, 138
Meta-analysis, 32
Methylation of DNA, 7
Microsatellite instability, 42, 69, 214
Migrant studies, 162
breast cancer, 162
cervical cancer, 163
colon, 163
colorectal, 162
prostate cancer, 163
stomach, colorectal, and breast cancer, 162
time trends, 162
Mismatch repair (MMR), 190
Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA), 379
Mitogenic event, 150
Mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), 217
Molecular assays, 42
applied to tumor tissue, 42
genome-wide, 42
localized, 42
Molecular beacons, 91
Molecular epidemiology, 718
black tobacco, 718
Molecular genetics, 2
Monte Carlo simulation, 322
Multiple gene–environment interactions, 138
Multiplex PCR, 91
Multiplex RT-PCR assay, 487
Mutagen sensitivity assay, 485
chromosome aberrations, 485
Mutagen sensitivity events, 661
gliomas, 661
Mutagenesis, 140
Mutagenic event, 150
Mutagenicity of a substance, 341
mutagenicity assay, 341
Mutagens, 369
tobacco-specific nitrosamines (TSNs), 370
Mutation, 315
Mutational hotspots, 92, 81
cytotoxic chemotherapy, 92
[Mutational hotspots]
other association, 92
inherited genetical syndrome, 92
Mutations, 62
frame-shift, 62
missense, 62
nonsense, 62
Mutator phenotype, 3
Mycosis fungoides, 295
Myelodysplasia causes, 673
ionizing radiation, 673
other exposures, 676
smoking, 676
Myeloid malignancies, 673
Myeloproliferative disorders (MPD), 672
chronic myeloid leukemia (CML), 672
Nanogenetic factor, 505
Nasopharyngeal carcinoma, 291
National Academy of Sciences (NAS), 100
framework, 100
National Institute for Occupational safety and Health (NIOSH), 333
Natural background radiation, 315
Neo-vascularization, 4
Neoplasia, 405, 406
Neoplasm, 116
Neoplasma, 131, 213, 648
Neoplastic cells, 4
Neoplastic development, 213, 223
Neoplastic effects, 103
Neoplastic growth, 150
Neoplastic transformation, 648
glioblastoma, 648
glioma, 648
Neurocarcinogens, 652
Neutron-weighted dose, 320
Nitrosamine derivative (NDMA), 653
Non-Hodgkin’s lymphomas, 291
Northern blot, 67
prevention, 331
Occupational cancer risks, 331
methods for determining, 331
epidemiological investigation, 334
animal investigation, 334
in vitro investigation, 335
Occupational cancer, 331
causes, 331
risks, 331
prevention, 331
Occupational carcinogen, 331
biologic, 331
chemical, 331
physical, 331
Occupational epidemiology, 337
Occupational settings, 42
environmental disaster, 42
Odds ratio, 357, 361
Of biomarkers, 44
biologically effective dose, 44
early biological effects, 44
internal dose, 44
susceptibility, 44
Of cancers, 345
Oligodendroglomas, 657
glioma, 657, 658
medulloblastoma, 657
meningioma, 657, 658
Oncogenes, 66, 189, 721
h-ras gene, 722
Oncogenesis, 205
population-based, 22, 23
prospective, 22
retrospective, 22
One-time (or short term) exposure, 22
prospective, 22
One-time exposures, 22
prospective, 22
Oral cancer, 456
Organochlorines, 445
Oropharyngeal cancers, 375
Osteosarcoma, 138, 139
Outcome, 164
Ovarian cancer, 409, 410, 421, 536, 547
incidence, 537, 545
etiology, 537
models, 537
gene, 537
[Ovarian cancer]
diseases associated, 547
Polycystic Ovarian Disease (PCOD), 547
estrogen, 421
progestins, 421
HRT, 410
CHRT, 410
p53 gene, 446
mutations, 723
higher stage/grade, 723
immunohistochemistry, 723
Particle agglutination assay, 293
PCR, 66, 79, 89, 90
Peptide nucleic acids (PNA), 82
Peripheral disease lymphoid disorders, 678
chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), 678
hodgkin lymphoma (HL), 678
non-hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), 678
Peroxisome proliferation, 133, 134
Person-years-at-risk (PYAR), 20
Phenocopies, 183
identification, 183
Phosphorylation, 216
Point and frameshift mutations, 341
Point mutations, 243, 77, 82
genotypic selection, 81
Polybrominated biphenyls, 347
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), 370
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, 654, 655
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, 70
glioma, 654
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 64, 78, 300
Polymorphism, 461
gluta thione S-transferase, 460, 463
N-acetyl transferase, 460
EPHX, 462
lung cancer risk, 458, 464
alcohol dehydrogenase, 464
Pooled analysis, 32
Population attributable risk, 172
Post-translational phosphorylation, 294
Precursor disease lymphoid disorders, 678
Acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL)
Peripheral disease lymphoid disorders, 678, 679
non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), 675, 684
hodgkin lymphoma, 678, 684
chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), 678
multiple myeloma (MM), 675, 688
Predictor variables, 168
Predictor, 164
Preneoplastic cells, 207
Prevalence rate, 164
cohort study, 164
double-cohort study, 166
Prevention of cancer, 332
related to work, 337
Primary brain tumors, 647, 662
glioma, 648
astrocytoma, 648
oligodendrogliaoma, 649
ependymoma, 649
meningioma, 649
medulloblastoma, 650
ganglioglioma, 650
schwannoma, 650
chordoma, 650
glioblastoma, 650
Primary DNA damage assays, 341
sister chromatid exchange assays, 342
Primary effusion lymphoma, 298
Prognosis, 611
genetic biomarkers, 611
fas antigen, 612
Prognostic factor, 722
epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), 722
erbB2s, 722
overexpression, 722
Prophylaxis, 256
Proportional mortality ratio (PMR), 31
Prospective studies, 49
Prospective, 22
Prostate cancer, 418
Prostate-specific antigen test, 738
risk factors, 418
Protein adducts, 42
Protein droplet accumulation, 131
Proteosomal degradation, 216
Proto-oncogenes, 207
Proviral load, 293
Public health policy, 332
Putative tumor cells, 292
reed–Sternberg cells, 292
Quantitative epidemiological studies, 333
Quantitative uncertainty analysis, 313, 314, 328
Radiation protection, 313, 317
Radiation-related risk, 313, 319, 320, 323, 328
Real-time PCR, 90
Recall bias, 167
Receptor protein tyrosine kinase (RPTK)
Recombinant western blot (WB) assay, 293
Recombinase infidelity, 139
Reed–Sternberg (RS) cells, 683
Registry, 153
age standardized, 154
age-specific, 154
cumulative, 154
hospital-based, 153
population-based, 153
Regulatory agencies, 102
Regulated carcinogens, 343
Related to work, 345
Relative risk, 652, 654
glioblastoma, 650
glioma, 650
gliomas, 650
meningioma, 651
Reproductive factors, 513, 542
nulliparous women, 543, 555
infertility, 543
Index

[Reproductive factors]
  pregnancy, 542
Respiratory tract cancer, 455
Restriction fragment length
  polymorphism (RFLP), 66
Restriction enzyme, 67
Retinoblastoma, 138
Reverse causality, 46
Reverse transcriptase, 293
  control expression, 293
  viral replication, 293
Reverse-transcriptase PCR (RT-PCR), 86
Reversible binding, 132
RFLP, 66, 67
Risk and susceptibility factors, 538
  family history, 538
  genetic polymorphisms, 540
  germline mutations, 538
  ethnic populations, 539
Risk assessment and prevention, 39, 40
Risk assessment, 99, 100, 717
  framework, 100
  determinations, 99
  methods, 107
  moderate risk assessment, 196
  dose–response assessment, 100
  exposure assessment, 100
  hazard identification, 100
  risk characterization, 100, 109
  individual, 109
  maximum individual lifetime risk (MIR), 109
  population, 109
  uncertainty analysis, 110
Risk estimate, 40, 326, 353, 362
  exposures, 40
Risk factor, 18, 25, 650, 353, 654, 663
  consumption of alcohol, 603
  estrogen hypothesis, 553, 558
  estrogen replacement therapy, 542, 550
  hormonal factors, 541
  inherited factors, 552
  lifestyle factors, 537, 544
  dietary test, 544
  fruits and vegetables, 556
[Risk factor]
  body mass index (BMI), 545, 555
  body weight, 556
  meat, 509
  reproductive factors, 542, 555
    nulliparous women, 543
  suspected, 507
  tobacco and alcohol exposure, 476
  tobacco smoking, 603
  traditional, 507, 519
  prospective, 23
Risk Genotypes, 465
  combinations, 460
  gender Differences, 467
  lung cancer, 465
Risk management, 111
  permissible exposure limit (PEL), 111
Risk of HCC, 630
  viral infections, 630
  multiplicative effects, 630
Rous sarcoma virus, 287
RT-PCR, 86
Sampling variability, 52
Screening assays, 613
Scrotal cancer, 332
  radiation-induced, 333
  radon, 333
Selection bias, 167, 337
Serine/threonine specificity, 219
Seroepidemiological studies, 289
Seroprevalence, 293
Serum androgen profiles, 737
  inter-ethnic comparisons, 737
Sex steroid hormones, 406
  estrogen, 406, 412
  progestin, 406, 415, 421
  androgen, 406, 419
Sexually transmitted diseases, 742
  risk for prostate cancer, 742
Sezary syndrome, 295
Shope papillovirus, 299
Simian immunodeficiency syndrome, 295
  mother-to-child transmission, 296
Single-base polymorphism, 61
Single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP), 196
Single-strand conformational polymorphism, 67
Single-stranded conformation polymorphism (SSCP), 79
Sinonasal carcinoma, 333
Sir Austin Bradford–Hill’s proposed criteria, 142
Site-specific cancer, 331
angiosarcoma of the liver, 331
Skin cancer, 333
carcinogenic arylamines, 719
Smokeless tobacco, 477
Smoking and SCCHN, 476
association, 476
Smoking rate, 477
United States, 477
Smoking, 566, 634
HPV, 536
N-acetyltransferase 2 (NAT 2) gene, 634
Smooth muscle tumors, 296
leiomyomas, 296
leiomyosarcoma, 296
SNP, 68
Somatic alteration, 190
Somatic mutations, 42, 406
Southern blot, 67
Southern blotting, 68
Spectral karyotyping (SKY), 86
Squamous cell carcinoma, 603
dysplasia-carcinoma sequence, 603
esophagitis, 603
SSCP, 68
Standard mortality ratio, 166
Standardized incidence ratios (SIRs), 20
Standardized mortality ratios (SMRs), 20
Statistical power, 26
Steroid 5-α-reductase gene (SRD5A2), 737
Steroid hormone biosynthesis, 414, 406, 405
phytoestrogens, 410
xenobiotics, 410
Steroid hormones, 406
androgens, 406
estrogens, 406
progestins, 406
Steroid receptors, 408
colorectal, 5
Strength of association, 288
Stromal cells, 5
colon, 7
transcription, 7
Subclinical immune suppression, 292
Superoxide dismutase (SOD), 511
mnSoD, 511
Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End results Program (SEER), 441
migration effect, 443
macro-environment, 443
Susceptibility genes, 174, 183, 189
bladder cancer, 174
environmental, 175
gene–environment interaction, 176
SV40 exposure, 656
ependymoma, 656, 657
medulloblastoma, 657
mesothelioma, 656, 657
Syncarcinogenesis, 224
T-cell lymphoma, 292
sinonasal angiocentric, 292
sinonasal carcinoma, 292
T-cell tumors, 292
peripheral, 292
TaqMan technology, 88, 89
TaqMan, 91
Telomere length, 221
Telomere reduction, 139
Testicular cancer, 422, 423
Testicular germ-cell tumors, 297
Testosterone, 736
dihydrotestosterone (DHT), 736
The Occupational Safety and Health administration (OSHA), 333
Therapeutic radiation, 315, 327
Third-generation antibody assays, 302
Thyroid cancer, 424
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) dysregulation, 129, 130
Time trends, 159, 162
  liver cancers, 160
  lung cancer, 160, 162
uterine, 160
Time-and-intensity-dependent, 361
Time-dependent, 361
  intensity-dependent, 362
Time-weighting method, 358
To cancer risk, 150
Tobacco smoking, 456
  lung cancer, 456, 461
Tobacco-induced carcinogenesis, 476
  association between, 476
Toxicological studies, 100
Tp53, 602, 611
  fingerprints, 611
  mutation analysis, 611
  association between, 476
Transcription factors, 124
Transcriptional silencing, 90
Transfer of risk, 323
True positivity, 293
Tumor characterization, 42
Tumor promoters, 213
Tumor suppressor gene, 189, 648, 649
  loss of heterozygosity (LOH), 723
  glioblastomas, 649
  gliomas, 649
Tumor vascularization, 222
Tumor, 1, 287
  b cell tumor
  burkitt's lymphoma, 291
  cause, 288
[Tumor]
  pathogenesis, 289
  malignant, 291
Tumorigenesis, 62, 63
Two-stage carcinogenesis, 504
  DNA damage, 504
Uncertainty distribution, 320, 326
U.S. Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER), 673
Variability of exposure, 360
Variables, 164
Vinyl chloride, 332
Viral genome, 289
Viral markers, 289
  antibody titers, 289
  antigenemia, 289
Viral protein expression, 291
Viral proteins, 293
  control expression, 293
  viral replication, 293
Viral-associated cancers, 288
  humans
Viremia, 299
Virus–cancer association, 290
Virus-induced cancer, 289
Vogelstein and Kinzler model, 79
Warburg effect, 221
Wingless pathway (WNT), 190
Work and illness, 332
  potential links between, 332
Workplace exposures, 332